STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOLS FOR REGISTERED PROFESSIONAL NURSES IN PUBLIC HEALTH 2020

Office of Nursing

Approved December 2019

Date of last revision 1/8/2021

TABLE OF CONTENTS

UPDATES TO 2020 NURSE PROTOCOLS 10

NURSE PROTOCOL INTRODUCTION 11

THE NURSE PROTOCOL PROCESS 15

A. MECHANISM FOR NURSE PROTOCOL DEVELOPMENT, REVIEW AND REVISION 17

B. General TimeLine for BI-Annual Review and Update of Nurse Protocols (ODD-NUMBERED YEARS) 19

C. TOOL FOR REVIEWING NEW NURSE PROTOCOLS 21

D. STANDARD FORMAT FOR NURSE PROTOCOLS 22

E. WORD PROCESSING FOR NURSE PROTOCOLS 23

F. CERTIFIED NURSE PROTOCOL REVIEW FORM 25

G. ACKNOWLEDGMENTS 26

GUIDELINES FOR NURSE PROTOCOLS 31

GUIDELINES FOR NURSE PROTOCOLS 33

A. PURPOSE 33

B. DEFINITIONS 33

C. Drugs to be Covered by Nurse Protocol 35

D. Drugs covered by NURSE PROTOCOL Or Other Policy or procedure 35

E. REQUIREMENTS FOR A REGISTERED PROFESSIONAL NURSE WHO USES A NURSE PROTOCOL 36

F. LICENSED PRACTICAL NURSES 37

G. Requirements for Nurse Protocols 37

H. Delegated Authority for Ordering Dangerous Drugs 37

I. DISPENSING DANGEROUS DRUGS 38

J. Accountability 39

K. Signing Nurse Protocol Agreements 40

L. EXAMPLE nurse protocol signature page 42

M. EXAMPLE Nurse protocol for administering vaccines 43

N. EXAMPLE emergency nurse protocol agreement 44

O. Retention of Nurse Protocols 46

P. NURSE Protocol agreement formats for APRNS 46

Q. GENERAL TEMPLATE for aprn nurse protocol agreement 48

R. TEMPLATE for Women's Health nurse protocol agreement 50

S. TEMPLATE for HIV nurse protocol agreement 52

T. EXAMPLE Drug Formulary for advanced practice registered nurses 55

H. TEXTS/REFERENCES USED/RECOMMENDED FOR APRNS 58

DRUG DISPENSING PROCEDURE 61

A. Definitions 64

B. General Requirements 65

C. Drug Storage and Record Keeping 66

D. Outdated, Deteriorated, Returned and Recalled Drugs 69

E. Inventory 70

F. Labeling and Appropriate Containers 70

G. Patient Counseling Components 72

H. Drug Programs/Contracts 74

I. Dispensing/Administering of 340B and 340B PVP Products 75

J. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION 75

TRANSPORTING DANGEROUS DRUGS 79

A. PURPOSE 80

B. ACCOUNTABILITY STANDARDS 81

C. TRANSPORTING DANGEROUS DRUGS TRAINING COMPONENTS 81

Example of acknowledgement of completion of transporting dangerous drugs training components 83

ORIENTATION, TRAINING, AND QUALITY ASSURANCE FOR NURSE PROTOCOLS 85

A. Initial Orientation and Training 86

B. Training 86

C. Documentation of Training 87

CHILD HEALTH NURSE PROTOCOLS 89

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR MILD ACNE 93

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PEDIATRIC ALLERGIC RHINITIS 99

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR IMPACTED CERUMEN/EARWAX 109

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR CONJUNCTIVITIS 113

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR CONSTIPATION 122

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR CRADLE CAP 132

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR ATOPIC DERMATITIS (ECZEMA) 135

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR MILD CONTACT DERMATITIS 143

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR DIAPER DERMATITIS (DIAPER RASH) 149

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR DYSLIPIDEMIA SCREENING 153

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR FEVER 160

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR IMPETIGO 169

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR TREATMENT OF IRON DEFICIENCY ANEMIA 177

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR OTITIS EXTERNA 188

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PEDICULOSIS CAPITIS (HEAD LICE) 193

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PINWORMS 205

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR RINGWORM: NON-HAIRY SKIN (TINEA CORPORIS) 210

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR RUBRAL/HEAT RASH 214

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SCABIES 218

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR TEETHING 225

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR THRUSH (ORAL CANDIDIASIS) 230

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR TINEA PEDIS 235

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR UPPER RESPIRATORY INFECTION (COMMON COLD) 240

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR TYPE II DIABETES MELLITUS IN ADULTS 247

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR TYPE II DIABETES MELLITUS IN ADULTS 250

CHOLESTEROL MANAGEMENT-HIGHLY RECOMMENDED ADDITIONAL TREATMENT THERAPY 263

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING (NON-PHARMACOLOGIC INTERVENTIONS) 267

EMERGENCY GUIDELINES, POLICIES, PROCEDURES AND PROTOCOLS 281

GUIDELINES FOR EMERGENCY KITS/CARTS IN PUBLIC HEALTH CLINIC SITES 283

GUIDELINES FOR ALLERGIC REACTIONS, INCLUDING ACUTE ANAPHYLAXIS IN ADULTS, INFANTS AND CHILDREN 287

POLICY FOR REVIEWING EMERGENCY PROTOCOLS/PROCEDURES IN PUBLIC HEALTH CLINIC SITES 297

EMERGENCY CHECKLIST FOR PUBLIC HEALTH CLINIC SITES 298

EVALUATION TOOL FOR PRACTICE DRILL 299

GUIDELINES FOR SUSPECTED OPIOID OVERDOSE 300

NURSE PROTOCOL FOR ADMINISTERING VACCINES DURING EMERGENCIES 307

NURSE PROTOCOL AGREEMENT FOR ADMINSTERING VACCINES DURING EMERGENCIES 308

HIV 310

RECOMMENDATIONS FOR USE OF THE HIV/AIDS-RELATED STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOLS 312

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SHORT TERM CONTINUATION OF ANTIRETROVIRAL THERAPY IN ADULTS LIVING WITH HIV 314

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR DISSEMINATED MYCOBACTERIUM AVIUM COMPLEX PROPHYLAXIS IN ADULTS LIVING WITH HIV 323

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR HERPES ZOSTER (SHINGLES) IN ADULTS LIVING WITH HIV 332

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR NEW ONSET (ACUTE) DIARRHEA IN ADULTS LIVING WITH HIV 341

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PERSISTENT (CHRONIC) DIARRHEA IN ADULTS WITH HIV 350

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR OROLABIAL HERPES SIMPLEX IN ADULTS LIVING WITH HIV 361

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PCP PROPHYLAXIS IN ADULTS LIVING WITH HIV 368

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR TOXOPLASMOSIS PROPHYLAXIS IN ADULT LIVING WITH HIV 376

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SEBORRHEIC DERMATITIS IN ADULT LIVING WITH HIV 385

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR ORAL CANDIDIASIS IN ADULTS LIVING WITH HIV 392

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PRE-EXPOSURE PROPHYLAXIS (PrEP) USE IN PREVENTION OF HIV 400

Appendix 1: Same Day PrEP 417

Appendix 2: PrEP on Demand 419

Appendix 3: PrEP Management Checklist 420

Appendix A: Clinician Determination of HIV Status for PrEP Provision 4222

APPENDIX B: Risk Behavior Assessment Tables 423

Appendix C: Paying for PrEP Patient Insurance 4255

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR NON-OCCUPATIONAL POST-EXPOSURE PROPHYLAXIS (nPEP) USE IN THE PREVENTION OF SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED DISEASES (HIV, SYPHILIS, GONORRHEA, CHLAMYDIA, TRICHOMONAS) AND BLOODBORNE PATHOGENS 428

Appendix 1 445

Appendix 2 446

Appendix 3 448

Appendix 4 449

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOLS FOR PRIMARY HYPERTENSION IN ADULTS 45050

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PRIMARY HYPERTENSION IN ADULTS 453

CHOLESTEROL MANAGEMENT-HIGHLY RECOMMENDED ADDITIONAL TREATMENT THERAPY 4655

PATIENTS ALREADY RECEIVING HYPERTENSIVE THERAPY 4677

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING (NONPHARMACOLOGICAL INTERVENTIONS) 4699

IMMUNIZATION 4788

CHILDHOOD AND ADULT IMMUNIZATION PROGRAM 48080

OTHER INFECTIOUS DISEASES 4822

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR AMEBIASIS, UNCOMPLICATED 4855

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR CHEMOPROPHYLAXIS OF HAEMOPHILUS INFLUENZAE TYPE b (Hib) DISEASE CONTACTS 4922

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR CHEMOPROPHYLAXIS OF INVASIVE MENINGOCOCCAL DISEASE CONTACTS, INCLUDING MENINGITIS 4999

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PREVENTATIVE TREATMENT OF PERTUSSIS CONTACTS 507

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR IDENTIFICATION AND CHEMOPHYLAXIS OF PROBABLE PERTUSSIS CASES 513

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR CHEMOPROPHYLAXIS OF RHEUMATIC FEVER 520

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PREVENTION OF MOSQUITO RELATED ZIKA INFECTION 5277

APPENDIX A RIFAMPIN PEDIATRIC DRUG CHART 5333

PERINATAL HEPATITIS B PREVENTION 5366

PERINATAL HEPATITIS B PREVENTION 5388

SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED DISEASES 54040

GENERAL INFORMATION REGARDING STD EVALUATION & SCREENING 5422

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR GONORRHEA Uncomplicated Urethral, Endocervical, Rectal or Pharyngeal **Error! Bookmark not defined.**4

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR CHLAMYDIA 5556

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR EXPEDITED PARTNER THERAPY (EPT) FOR CHLAMYDIA 5656

APPENDIX A 5712

APPENDIX B 574

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOLS FOR BACTERIAL VAGINOSIS (BV) 5767

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR TRICHOMONIASIS 5834

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR UNCOMPLICATED VULVOVAGINAL CANDIDIASIS (VVC) 5912

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PELVIC INFLAMMATORY DISEASE (PID) 5989

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR EPIDIDMYTIS 608

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR CERVICITIS 615

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR URETHRITIS/NONGONOCOCCAL URETHRITIS (NGU) 620

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR LYMPHOGRANULOMA VENEREUM (LGV) 628

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR GENITAL/PERIANAL WARTS 636

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR GENITAL HERPES 645

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SYPHILIS, EARLY SYMPTOMATIC (PRIMARY and SECONDARY) 658

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR LATENT SYPHILIS (EARLY AND LATE) 672

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PEDICULOSIS PUBIS (crabs/pubic lice) 6756

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SCABIES RELATED TO SEXUAL TRANSMISSION 6812

GA Department of Public Health Penicillin Allergy Testing (PRE-PEN) Protocol 68990

Appendix Penicillin Allergy Assessment 693

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOLS FOR TUBERCULOSIS 7000

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR ACTIVE TUBERCULOSIS (TB) DISEASE AGE 15 AND OVER 703

Table 1: Regimen Options - Treatment of Patients with Drug-Susceptible TB 711

Table 2: First-Line TB Drugs Dosages 712

Table 3: TREATMENT OF TB - DRUG INTERACTIONS 718

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR LATENT TUBERCULOSIS INFECTION (LTBI) AND PRESUMPTIVE LTBI 723

Table A: LTBI MEDICATIONS IN PREFERRED PRIORITY RANKINGS 734

Table B: Treatment of LTBI – Recommended Drug Regimens [and Dosages for Adults and Children] (Select ONE Option) 735

Table C: Treatment of LTBI – Drug Adverse Reactions and Monitoring 738

Table D: Treatment of LTBI – Drug Interactions 739

WOMEN'S HEALTH 745

CENTERS FOR DISEASE CONTROL AND PREVENTION (CDC) US MEDICAL ELIGIBILITY CRITERIA (MEC), SELECTED PRACTICE RECOMMENDATIONS (SPR) FOR CONTRACEPTIVE USE AND QUALITY FAMILY PLANNING (QFP) 747

TABLE 1: Percentages of women experiencing an unintended pregnancy during the first year of typical use and the first year of perfect use of contraception and the percentage continuing use at the end of the first year-United States 751

BOX 2: Conditions associated with the increased risk for adverse health events as a result pregnancy 753

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PREVENTIVE CARE AND HEALTH SCREENING 763

TABLE 1: Exam components 765

TABLE 2: Screening and Diagnostic Studies 766

TABLE 3: STD Screening 767

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR EMERGENCY CONTRACEPTIVE PILLS (ECPs) 773

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR INITIATION OF CONTRACEPTIVES 779

TABLE D1: Routine follow-up after contraceptive initiation 782

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR COMBINED HORMONAL CONTRACEPTIVES 785

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PROGESTIN-ONLY PILL (MINIPILL) 800

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR MEDROXYPROGESTERONE ACETATE (DMPA) (Injectable Contraceptive) 808

Table 1 Management of Bleeding Irregularities, from CDC's US Selected Practice Recommendations 816

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR VAGINAL CONTRACEPTIVE DIAPHRAGM 820

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SPOTTING OR BREAKTHROUGH BLEEDING WHILE USING HORMONAL CONTRACEPTIVES 824

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR IUD-RELATED DYSMENORRHEA 831

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR COPPER IUD-RELATED MENORRHAGIA 835

Table 1. Management of Women with Bleeding Irregularities, from the CDC's US Selected Practice Recommendations 837

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR BACTERIAL CYSTITIS 841

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR DYSMENORRHEA (PRIMARY) 846

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR IRON-DEFICIENCY ANEMIA IN NON-PREGNANT WOMEN 850

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SCREENING MAMMOGRAPHY 856

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR ORDERING DIAGNOSTIC MAMMOGRAMS AND BREAST ULTRASOUNDS 859

Table 1: BCCP New Palpable Breast Mass Algorithm 862

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SPONTANEOUS UNILATERAL NIPPLE DISCHARGE (NON-LACTATING) 864

Table 1: Spontaneous Unilateral Nipple Discharge (Non-lactating) Algorithm 866

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR LACTATIONAL MASTITIS 870

STANDARD WOMEN'S HEALTH APRN PROTOCOLS 875

STANDARD APRN PROTOCOL FOR AMENORRHEA 847

STANDARD APRN PROTOCOL FOR CONTRACEPTIVE IMPLANT INSERTION 853

Table 1. Summary from the CDCs Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use 859

STANDARD APRN PROTOCOL FOR CONTRACEPTIVE IMPLANT REMOVAL 864

STANDARD APRN PROTOCOL FOR IUD INSERTION: COPPER T380A 868

STANDARD APRN PROTOCOL FOR IUD INSERTION: Levonorgestrel (LNG) Releasing Intrauterine System® 877

STANDARD APRN PROTOCOL FOR LOST IUD STRINGS 887

STANDARD APRN PROTOCOL FOR IUD REMOVAL and IUD COMPLICATIONS AND ACTIONS 890

TABLE OF IUD COMPLICATIONS AND ACTIONS 893

APPENDIX A: CONTRACEPTIVES 895

LEGAL REFERENCES 904

LEGAL REFERENCES 905

UPDATES TO 2020 NURSE PROTOCOLS

7/8/2020	Revision: LTBI protocol table B page 735
7/15/2020	Addition: PCN Allergy Assessment appendix page 692
7/15/2020	Addition: PrEP section (protocol revised) page 398
7/15/2020	Addition: same day PrEP appendix page 414
7/15/2020	Addition: PrEP on demand appendix page 416
7/15/2020	Moved PrEP appendices from HIV section to PrEP section page 417
7/28/2020	Revision: emergency guidelines page 281
8/10/2020	Addition: nPEP protocol page 423
9/8/2020	Addition: PrEP management checklist page 417
10/1/2020	Correction: page 422 Appendix C
10/7/2020	Addition: vaccines administration during emergencies protocol page 307
10/7/2020	Addition: agreement for vaccine administration during emergencies page 308
12/30/2020	Updated PrEP protocols and appendices to include generic version of medication page 400
01/08/2021	Updated GC protocol to reflect new CDC guidelines page 544

NURSE PROTOCOLS INTRODUCTION

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

The nurse protocol legislation (O. C. G. A. § 43-34-23) enacted in 1989, authorizes Registered Professional Nurses (RNs) and Advanced Practice Registered Nurses (APRNs) who are agents or employees of a county board of health or the Georgia Department of Public Health (DPH) and who are adequately prepared, to perform certain delegated medical acts under the authority of nurse protocol. Since the passage of this important legislation, DPH has provided direction and guidance relative to public health nursing practice under nurse protocol.

The purpose of this nurse protocol manual is to provide guidelines and standards for public health nursing practice under nurse protocol. Every two years, DPH Office of Nursing coordinates the ongoing process of reviewing, revising and updating the nurse protocols to be consistent with best practice, current technology and research; throughout that two-year cycle, revisions and updates to the nurse protocols and nurse protocol manual are made and distributed as needed. Although DPH reviews, revises and updates the nurse protocols and nurse protocol manual every two years, the districts must review, revise and update the nurse protocols used by RNs and APRNs at least once annually and make certain that the nurse protocols are signed and dated at least once annually by the RNs, APRNs and delegating physicians. The term “annually” is at least once within a twelve-month period. Thus, protocols used by RNs and APRNs can be dated and signed within twelve (12) months from the previous date but must not exceed twelve (12) months.

Nurse protocols become effective in districts when signed each year by the delegating physician(s). Each district must maintain a copy of the nurse protocol manual and all signed nurse protocols for five (5) years.

The updated and re-dated nurse protocol manual is posted on the Office of Nursing website http://dph.georgia.gov/nurse-protocols

Abbreviations used in this manual are consistent with the Georgia DPH policy, *Use of Abbreviations, Acronyms, Symbols and Dose Designations*.

New material and wording changes are highlighted in bold print. Names of nurse protocols that contain modifications in content are highlighted in bold print in the table of contents; if the only change in a nurse protocol is that a reference has been updated, it will not appear in bold print in the table of contents.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

THE NURSE PROTOCOL PROCESS

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

The purpose of the process at the state level is to assure that nurse protocols are standardized and consistent across programs, consistent with current statutes, rules and regulations and based on the latest technology, current practice standards and cost-effective measures. The process continues at the district level where the nurse protocols are adopted for local use and signed and dated at least once annually. Although minor changes may need to be made at the district level (e.g., due to district medication availability), it is recommended that the nurse protocols be adopted without modification. When modifications are made to the nurse protocols, it is recommended that a legal and medical review be conducted at the district level to assure compliance with current statutes, rules, regulations and practice standards, and that the justification for the change be documented and on file in the District.

A. MECHANISM FOR NURSE PROTOCOL DEVELOPMENT, REVIEW AND REVISION

1. The Office of Nursing:
   a. Convenes meetings of the Nurse Protocol Committee, at least biannually (every two years).
   b. Oversees the biannual process of reviewing, revising and updating all nurse protocols and the nurse protocol manual.
   c. Manages revisions to nurse protocols in collaboration with the appropriate state office program nurses, state office of pharmacy, office of legal services, physicians and other staff as needed.
   d. Assures that the Department of Public Health Legal Services Office reviews and approves the final draft of each nurse protocol manual and nurse protocol that is reviewed, revised and updated.
   e. Assures that final signatures are obtained from the State Health Officer and Medical Director of the Nurse Protocol Committee and each physician who serves as the **Medical Consultant** for each respective nurse protocol before distributing the revised nurse protocol or the updated nurse protocol manual.
   f. Conducts Nurse Protocol Orientation and Credentialing Program for State Office Nurses at least bi-annually.

2. The Nurse Protocol Committee:
   a. Includes at least one public health physician in clinical practice, selected nurses from districts or counties, state office nurses and representatives from the state pharmacy, laboratory, and nutrition offices. A current list of the Nurse Protocol Committee members can be found in section G*, Acknowledgments.*
   b. Reviews all proposed new nurse protocols to assure that they meet established criteria for format and content.
   c. Reviews any significant/extensive revisions to existing nurse protocols to assure that they continue to meet established criteria for format and content.
   d. Reviews and approves recommended nurse protocols for inclusion in the nurse protocol manual during the biannual process of reviewing, revising and updating of the manual.

3. State Office Nurses (SONs):
   a. Attend Nurse Protocol Orientation and Credentialing Program offered by the Office

of Nursing at least bi-annually. This credentialing program for SONs provides a formal orientation to cover the nurse protocol statute, frequently asked questions, the role of the nurse consultant and the interface between Quality Assurance/Quality Improvement and nurse protocol practice. The goal is to assure the integrity of the nurse protocol process and the quality of technical assistance and consultation provided regarding statutory requirements related to public health nursing practice.

This is required for designated SONs who have responsibility for the lead role in nurse protocol development, review, revision and updating, who provide consultation and technical assistance to districts and who chair the clinical teams for their program areas, as well as any designated back-up SONs who work in those program areas and are expected to provide consultation and technical assistance. It is recommended that all other SONs and others who provide critical input into nurse protocols (e.g., members of the Nurse Protocol Committee representing Pharmacy, Nutrition, Immunizations, Epidemiology and Laboratory) also complete the program.

b. Assure that each program for which there is a nurse protocol has a designated and qualified Medical Consultant to provide and/or assist with clinical consultation and development, revision, updating and utilization of nurse protocols.
c. Assure that the clinical team reviews the nurse protocols for their respective program and assists in drafting revisions and/or new nurse protocols at least biannually. (Each clinical team comprises, at a minimum, the state office nurse, state pharmacy director/designee, physician/medical specialist and nurses in clinical practice. Nutrition, immunizations, laboratory and epidemiology representatives are included as needed.)
d. Assure that nurse protocols are developed or revised according to the timeline using the outline and format described in section B, *General timeline for Bi-annual Review and Update of Nurse Protocols (Odd Numbered Years).*
e. Assure that nurse protocols adhere to the DPH policy, *Use of Abbreviations, Acronyms, Symbols and Dose Designations.* https://dph.georgia.gov/resourcesformsmanuals
f. Assure that new nurse protocols and extensive revisions are reviewed according to the tool in section C, *Tool for reviewing New Nurse Protocols.* A copy of the completed tool should accompany each new and extensively revised nurse protocol that is presented to the Nurse Protocol Committee.
g. Finalize revisions and new nurse protocols after considering all comments, questions and recommendations from the clinical team and Nurse Protocol Committee reviewers.
h. Obtain signed approval form from the clinical team Medical Consultant to accompany the updated program section or any revisions.

4. Steps for Adoption of Nurse Protocols for District Use:
   a. Use the latest nurse protocols as the basis for the yearly review and update of all nurse protocols issued.
   b. Change the information and revision date in the nurse protocol header to the appropriate district information and review/revision date before issuing them to

local nurses.

c. Add additional sources used to the reference list at the end of any nurse protocol that is changed significantly from the nurse protocol (e.g., different diagnostic criteria and/or treatment choices) to assure compliance with current statutes, rules, regulations and practice standards.

B. GENERAL TIMELINE FOR BI-ANNUAL REVIEW AND UPDATE OF NURSE PROTOCOLS (ODD-NUMBERED YEARS)

Activity	Person(s) Responsible	Month
1. Convene the Nurse Protocol Committee mid-year meeting via conference call. Confirm specific dates for timeline.	Office of Nursing	January
2. Review/update Nurse Protocol Manual:		January – April
a. Review/update programmatic nurse protocols with clinical teams. Submit new nurse protocols to Protocol Committee members, with completed Review Tool *(Tool for reviewing New Nurse Protocols).*	State Office Nurses	
b. Participate on clinical teams for all nurse protocols as needed.	Office of Pharmacy**,** District Pharmacy, Immunization, Nutrition, Lab	
c. Review/update non-programmatic portions of the manual.	Office of Nursing	
3. Submit final drafts of nurse protocols for Office of Nursing review. Obtain Medical Consultant signatures on protocol review forms *(Certified Nurse Protocol Review Form).*	State Office Nurses	April - May
4. Nurse Protocol Committee Meeting:		May
a. Convene and lead meeting.	Office of Nursing	
b. Describe revisions/changes to each program's nurse protocols.	State Office Nurses	
c. Approve the nurse protocols.	Nurse Protocol Committee	
5. Assure that editing is complete and submit final draft for legal review. Make additional editing changes as advised.	Office of Nursing	June - July
6. Obtain final approval of manual from Medical Director for the Nurse Protocol Committee and DPH Commissioner and	Office of Nursing	August

obtain signatures on cover page.		
7. Distribute revised manuals electronically to health districts. Provide hardcopies of the revised manual to OON staff, State Office Nurse Consultants, and DPH Legal Office.	Office of Nursing	September
8. Update website.	Office of Nursing	September – December
9. Review and update district nurse protocols.	District Nursing & Clinical Directors	September – December
10. Adopt updated nurse protocols and train nurses.	District Nursing & Clinical Directors	December – January

C. TOOL FOR REVIEWING NEW NURSE PROTOCOLS

Purpose of the tool: An instrument for use by clinical teams when developing a new nurse protocol (or extensively revising an existing nurse protocol). Submit a copy of the completed form with the proposed new/revised nurse protocol to all members of the Nurse Protocol Committee, as a guide for their review.

Title of Nurse Protocol: _____

Program: _____ Date: _____

Criteria	Yes	No	Incomplete	Comments
1. Content includes practice which is consistent with the definition of a Nurse Protocol, i.e., ordering drugs, medical treatments, and/or diagnostic studies; dispensing drugs.				
2. Content complies with pertinent Laws, Rules, & Regulations and Policies/Guidelines.				
3. Content reflects consistency with current practice standards, research, and literature.				
4. Interventions are considered reasonable from a cost standpoint.				
5. Content consistent across all programs and populations served*.				
6. Reviewed by: a. Physician b. Nursing c. Pharmacy d. Nutrition e. Lab f. Other:				

*Specify, in the Comments column, the programs that have reviewed this nurse protocol.

Completed by: _____

D. STANDARD FORMAT FOR NURSE PROTOCOLS

TITLE

DEFINITION Define the condition

ETIOLOGY Describe the cause and/or contributing factors

SUBJECTIVE History, Symptoms

OBJECTIVE Signs, Physical examination findings, Laboratory findings

ASSESSMENT Nursing Diagnosis/Clinical Judgment

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES** (If applicable)

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

a. Generic drug name (or correct brand name) and strength
b. Dose/dosage form
c. Route of administration
d. Frequency
e. Duration

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES (If applicable)

a. Examples: nutrition, application of heat

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Informational packets
   a. Symptoms
      NOTE: Refers to a.
   b. Treatments

NOTE: Refers to 1.

FOLLOW-UP

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

REFERENCES

List the sources used to write the nurse protocol, in the format found in Section 15 of *The Gregg Reference Manual, Eleventh Edition*. Use at least one reference that is dated within the past 2-3 years or note as (Current) any older reference.

E. WORD PROCESSING FOR NURSE PROTOCOLS

PROGRAM Microsoft Word

FONT Arial Regular 12; header/footer is to be in Arial Regular 9
New material and wording changes are to be in bold font. In tables of contents, nurse protocols containing changes in content are to be in bold font (if the only change is that a reference has been updated, it is not to be in bold font).

MARGINS Top and Bottom – 0.8
Left and Right – 0.8
Footer and Header – 0.5

TABS Every 5 spaces (0.5 inches) from left margin

TITLE FORMAT The all-capitalized title of the nurse protocol is centered on two lines, with two spaces after the title.

EXAMPLE

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR
(DISEASE OR CONDITION)

SPACING Two spaces between major headings and numbered subheading. Exception: between references, which begin at the left margin and are single-spaced.

PUNCTUATION One space after each period and colon. Exception: 0.5-inch tab following periods in outline numbers or letters.

TEXT ALIGNMENT The text will be left justified but will not be right justified or centered with exception of the TITLE and the Header/Footer. The text will have a smooth left edge and a jagged right edge.

CAPS/BOLDING **TITLE**
Each major section, and sub-sections under **PLAN.**
Under **PHARMACOLOGIC** the words **AND, OR, PLUS,** and **FOLLOWED BY.** Place these words one tab over from the text.
NOTE is used to call attention to important information and the word **NOTE** should be bolded. However, the text after **NOTE** is written normally (non-bolded).

OUTLINING The outline format starts with numbers, (1., 2., etc.)

EXAMPLE

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

(May or may not have text here first)

1. Text

    a. Text

    b. Text
        1) Text
        2) Text
            a) Text
            b) Text

2. Text

NOTE: There must be more than one item in a subsection to use numbers, letters, or bullets.

ITALICS Italics are used in the **ETIOLOGY** section and occasionally in other sections, for the names of microorganisms.

HEADERS Before issuing protocol(s) to nurses, change the header to the issuing District's information and the date of issuance. Header is to be in Arial Regular 9 bold font. It is to be right justified.

EXAMPLE

Health District
Standard Nurse Protocols for Registered Professional Nurses
2020

Headers should be on all pages of the manual except for the title page. Under File, Page Set-up, set header margin at 0.5 inches. Then use the Header/Footer feature under "View" at the top of the screen. Editing a header will change it for the entire following section.

FOOTERS Under File, Page Set-up, set footer margin at 0.5 inches. Then use the Header/Footer feature under "View" at the top of the screen. Editing a footer will change it for the entire following section.

The section name of the manual should be centered. The page number should be at the right margin. Use Arial Regular 9 font.

F. CERTIFIED NURSE PROTOCOL REVIEW FORM

This certifies that I have reviewed the nurse protocols defined below for use by Public Health Nurses in the expanded role and Advanced Practice Registered Nurses in Public Health:

Clinical Team Physician_____ Phone_____

Signature_____

Date Reviewed_____

Specialty _____

Affiliations_____

_____

Title(s) of Nurse Protocol(s):

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

G. ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

NURSE PROTOCOL COMMITTEE

Kortney Floyd, CPNP Deputy Chief Nurse for Nurse Protocols Department of Public Health	**William Grow, FACP** District Health Director, District 8-1 Medical Director, Nurse Protocol Committee
Meshell McCloud, RN, MS, APRN, WHNP-BC Chief Nurse, DPH Georgia Department of Public Health	**Melissa Tobin D'Angelo, MD** Physician Consultant Acute Disease Epidemiology Section Georgia Department of Public Health
Janet McGruder, BSN, RN, MBA PHSO Nurse Consultant Immunization Unit Department of Public Health	**Sandra Metcalf MPH, BSN, RN** QM Nurse Consultant HIV Office Department of Public Health
Takiyah Turks, MPH, BSN, RN Quality Management Nurse Consultant HIV Office Georgia Department of Public Health	**Allen Rowland, APRN** Office of Women's Health Southeast Health District
Tonia Parrott, Ph.D, MT (ASCP) Clinical Microbiology Services Director Georgia Public Health Laboratory Georgia Department of Public Health	**Takieya Jones BSN, RN, CLC** Child Health Clinical Coordinator, Maternal and Child Health Section Georgia Department of Public Health
Kimberley Hazelwood, PharmD Pharmacy Director Department of Public Health	**Donelle Humphrey-Franklin, RPh, MBA** Assistant Pharmacy Director Department of Public Health
Kimberly Brown STD Nurse Consultant Department of Public Health	**Latronda Davis MPH, RN, BSN** Hypertension and Diabetes Nurse Program Manager Chronic Disease Prevention Section Georgia Department of Public Health Chronic
Jennifer Burkholder RN, MSN Deputy Chief Nurse- Emergency Preparedness Georgia Department of Public Health	**Rachel D. Agnew RD, LD** Program Specialist/Nutrition Education Georgia WIC Program, Program Operations and Nutrition Office Georgia Department of Public Health
Laura Layne Deputy Chief Nurse – QA/QI Georgia Department of Public Health	**Tammy Burdeaux, RN, BSN, CRNI** Director of Nursing & Clinical Services East Central Health District (Augusta)

Cheryl Bandy, RN, BSN Director of Nursing & Clinical Services Northwest GA Health District	**Judy McChargue, RN** Assistant District Nursing & Clinical Coordinator North Central Health District
Marie Smith, RN, BSN Director of Nursing & Clinical Services North Georgia Health District (Dalton)	**Tori Endres, RN, MSN** Director of Nursing & Clinical Services West Central Health District (Columbus)
Alan Satterfield, BSN, BS County Nurse Manager North Health District (Gainesville)	**Lisa Thomas, RN, BSN, MSN** Director of Nursing & Clinical Services South Health District (Valdosta)
Catharine Smythe, RN, MSN Director of Nursing & Clinical Services Cobb/Douglas Health District	**Kitty Bishop, RN, MSN** Director of Nursing & Clinical Services Southwest Health District (Albany)
Gloria Beecher, DNP, RN, CPHQ Director of Nursing & Clinical Services Fulton County Department of Health	**Betty Dixon, BSN, MHSA, DrPH** Director of Nursing & Clinical Services Coastal Health District (Savannah)
Janna McWilson, MSN, RN Child Health and Immunization Coordinator Clayton County Health District (Jonesboro)	**Cindi Hart, RN, MSN** Director of Nursing & Clinical Services Southeast Health District (Waycross)
Keisha Lewis-Brown, RN, BSN, MSN Director of Nursing East Metro Health District (Lawrenceville)	**Pam Smith MSN, WHNP-BC, IBCLC** Director of Nursing & Clinical Services Northeast Health District (Athens)
Sabrina Thomas, RN, BSN, MPH, CIC Manager of Clinical Nursing Services DeKalb County Board of Health	**Angie Callaway, RN, BSN** Asst. Director of Public Health Nursing North Georgia Health District District 1-2, Dalton
Wendy LeVan, RN, BSN Director of Nursing & Clinical Services District 4 Public Health	**Christi Florence, RN** Deputy Director for Clinical Services Cobb-Douglas Health District
Kelly Knight, RN, BSN, APRN Director of Nursing & Clinical Services South Central Health District (Dublin)	**Dawn Krahwinkel, MSN, RN** Deputy Director for Clinical Services Women's Health Coordinator Cobb-Douglas Health District
Anita Barkin, RN, FNP, DrPH Director of Nursing & Clinical Services North Central Health District (Macon)	**Kathryn Wright, RN, BSN, MBA** Assistant Director of Nursing Gwinnett, Newton, Rockdale Health District

Althea Otuata, RN, MSN Clinic Nurse Coordinator DeKalb County Board of Health	**Jennifer Sapp, MS, APRN, WHNP-BC** Women's Health Coordinator East Central Health District
Amy Fenn, RN, BSN Assistant Director of Nursing Child Health Coordinator LaGrange Health District	**Kay Davis, RN, MSN** Assistant Director Nursing and Clinical Services Southeast Health District
Roxanne Barnes, LPN Administrative Asst. Supervisor Nursing Administration BCCP Administrative Coordinator LaGrange Health District	**Stacey Upshaw, RN, MSN** Assistant District Nursing Director South Central Health District

MEDICAL CONSULTANTS

NAME	TITLE	ADDRESS
William Grow MD FACP Medical Director of Nurse Protocol Committee	District Health Director District 8-1	P.O. Box 5417 Valdosta, GA 3601
Melissa Kottke MD MPH MBA Women's Health Nurse Protocols	Assistant Professor, GYN/OB Emory University Medical Director, Jane Fonda Center for Adolescent Health	Emory University 1256 Briarcliff Road Atlanta, GA 30306
Gregory S. Felzien MD AAHIVS HIV/AIDS, STD and Other Infectious Diseases Nurse Protocols	Medical Advisor Division of Health Protection, IDI-HIV Georgia Department of Public Health	15th Floor 2 Peachtree Street, NW Atlanta, GA 30303
Susan Ray MD Tuberculosis Nurse Protocols	Associate Professor, Infectious Disease, Emory University School of Medicine	Emory University School of Medicine Woodruff Extension Building: Room 206 46 Armstrong St., S.E. Atlanta GA 30303
David Holland MD Emergency Procedures Nurse Protocols	**Chief Clinical Officer Fulton County Board of Health** **Associate Professor, Infectious Disease** **Emory University School of Medicine**	**10 Park Place South, S.E.** **Atlanta, GA 30303**
Nicola C. Chin MD FAAP Children's Health Nurse Protocols	**Assistant Professor** **Morehouse School of Medicine** **Lead Pediatrician, Morehouse Healthcare** **Chair – Bright Futures Committee, GA Chapter American Academy of Pediatrics**	**Your Children Our Future, LLC** **Atlanta, GA**
Stephen Goggans MD MPH Diabetes and Hypertension Nurse Protocols	**District Health Director** **East Central District**	**1916 N Leg Rd # A,** **Augusta, GA 30909**

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

GUIDELINES FOR NURSE PROTOCOLS

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

GUIDELINES FOR NURSE PROTOCOLS

A. PURPOSE

The purpose of these guidelines is to provide direction, promote consistency and support practice under nurse protocol by registered professional nurses in public health, in accordance with all applicable statutes, rules and regulations.

B. DEFINITIONS

1. Nurse Protocol

   Nurse Protocol means a written document mutually agreed upon and signed by a nurse and a licensed physician, by which the physician delegates to that nurse the authority to perform certain medical acts pursuant to subsection (b) of O.C.G.A. § 43-34-23. These acts shall include, without being limited to, the administering and ordering of any drug. O.C.G.A. § 43-34-23(a)(7).

   Each registered professional nurse (RN) must have access to the current standard nurse protocol(s), under which the RN is practicing at the practice site. Each RN may have his/her individual set of standard nurse protocols which are signed by the nurse and the delegating physician(s) or there may be one set of standard nurse protocols which each RN and the delegating physician(s) sign.

2. Order

   Order means to select a drug, medical treatment or diagnostic study through physician delegation in accordance with a nurse protocol or a physician assistant's job description. Ordering under such delegation shall not be construed to be prescribing, which act can only be performed by the physician, nor shall ordering of a drug be construed to authorize the issuance of a written prescription. O.C.G.A. § 43-34-23(a)(8).

   The RN shall write the drug order in accordance with the nurse protocol and based on a patient assessment each time the drug is ordered. If the patient continues the drug on subsequent visits, the nurse must reorder the drug based on the nurse protocol. Documentation of the written drug order by the RN shall include the following components:

   a. Date ordered
   b. Generic name or actual brand name of drug
   c. Strength of drug
   d. Dose
   e. Dosage form
   f. Route of administration
   g. Frequency
   h. Duration of therapy
   i. Quantity dispensed/provided

j. Signature of RN or APRN who ordered the drug

3. Delegating Physician

   Delegating Physician means the physician(s) who has/have mutually agreed to and signed the nurse protocol. The District Health Director may be the delegating physician or one of the delegating physicians. The Department of Public Health recommends that each delegating physician be engaged in current clinical practice on a full-time or part-time basis.

4. Dispensing Physician

   Dispensing Physician is a physician that dispenses[1] medications **from their own prescription. They cannot act as a pharmacist and fill other provider's prescriptions.** State law allows physicians to dispense pharmaceuticals from their office once processes are completed to become compliant with state law regulations regarding dispensing pharmaceuticals. More information can be found at https://medicalboard.georgia.gov/become-dispensing-physician

5. Legal Signature

   Entries into the patient's medical record must be dated and signed by the person responsible, using full name and letters that denote professional title (e.g., Suzie A. Jones, R.N. or Suzie A. Jones, A.P.R.N.).

6. Dispensing Procedure

   Dispensing procedure means a written document signed by a licensed pharmacist and a licensed physician, which establishes the appropriate manner under which drugs may be dispensed pursuant to this Code Section.[2] **A nurse operating in accordance with O.C.G.A. § 43-34-23 may not dispense without a signed dispensing procedure.**

7. Record Review

   Specify that record reviews of nursing practice under nurse protocol (of RNs and APRNs) by the delegating physician will be completed at least once annually. Ideally, it is preferred that record reviews be completed on a quarterly basis throughout each year to identify strengths and opportunities for improvement in a timely manner.

1 Dispense means to issue one or more doses of any drug in a suitable container with appropriate labeling for subsequent administration to, or use by, a patient. O. C.G.A. § 43-34-23 (a) (3.1)
2 O. C.G.A. § 43-34-23

C. DRUGS TO BE COVERED BY NURSE PROTOCOL

Any drugs which the RN orders and dispenses must be covered by nurse protocol. The following drugs are to be covered by nurse protocols:

Dangerous Drugs means any dangerous drug as defined in O.C.G.A. § 16-13-71 but does not include any controlled substance or Schedule I controlled substance.

Dangerous drugs are required to bear upon the package the words "Caution Federal Law Prohibits Dispensing Without Prescription," "Rx Only" or words of like import. These drugs may also be referred to as "Legend" drugs.

Dangerous drugs are not to be stored in the nurse's home, car, or other prohibited location.

D. DRUGS COVERED BY NURSE PROTOCOL OR OTHER POLICY OR PROCEDURE

1. Immunizations/Vaccines: All public health locations that provide vaccine services will utilize the current edition of the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program (GIP) Manual, which is developed based on the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices Recommendations and the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention's (CDC) Epidemiology and Prevention of Vaccine Preventable Diseases' (Pink Book) for administering vaccines to children and adults located at: https://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-publications
   a. RNs and APRNs administer vaccines under a nurse protocol based on Code Sections 43-34-23 and 43-34-25 in accordance with the Immunization Program Manual.
   b. LPNs do not practice under nurse protocol. LPNs administer vaccines (they do not order or dispense drugs) under the supervision of an RN, APRN or Physician in accordance with the Georgia Licensed Practical Nurse Practice Act [O.C.G.A. § 43-26-32(7)].
   c. For Off-site Settings, vaccine services will be provided under the same immunization nurse protocol in off-site settings (e.g., school flu clinics) as described above. A copy of the immunization nurse protocol document should be taken to each offsite clinic location. The GIP Manual can be accessed off-site via the web link above.

2. Over the Counter (OTC)/Nonprescription Drugs are given to patients or called in to a pharmacy. These drugs include vitamins, oral iron preparations, acetaminophen, etc., which do not bear upon the package the words "Caution Federal Law Prohibits Dispensing Without Prescription," or "Rx Only."
   a. Nurse Protocol must be in place for the following situations:
      1) If the OTC drug is repackaged (i.e., taken out of the manufacturer's original container, such as a bottle of 100 tablets) and/or labeled in any manner or with any information different from the manufacturer's label, the drug must be provided in accordance with nurse protocol.
      2) If the OTC drug is called in to a licensed pharmacist who will provide the

drug to the patient (e.g., NIX Creme Rinse for a Medicaid eligible patient), the drug must be provided in accordance with nurse protocol.

b. District/County Policy & Procedure or Nurse Protocol. If the OTC drugs are in the original manufacturer's container and no changes are made in the directions on the manufacturer's label (i.e., given to the patient just as it comes from the manufacturer), this may be covered by either district/county policy and procedure or nurse protocol.
c. No Policy and Procedure or Nurse Protocol Needed. If an OTC drug is recommended to the patient by the RN but not given to the patient nor called in to the pharmacy, it does not need to be covered by a policy, procedure, or nurse protocol. Such recommendations should be documented in the patient's medical record.

3. **Professional Medical Device and Drug Samples: The use of professional Medical Device and Drug Samples must adhere to the Department's policy "Professional Medical Device and Drug Sample Policy for Public Health Clinics" and complete the mandatory Medication and Device Sample Quarterly Report and provide it to the Office of Pharmacy.**

4. Dangerous drugs: Drugs whose packaging includes the words "Caution Federal Law Prohibits Dispensing Without Prescription," or "Rx Only." RNs must follow nursing protocol to dispense or call in to pharmacy). Refer to section I, Dispensing Dangerous Drugs, and the Drug Dispensing Procedure.

5. During times of emergency, an emergency nurse protocol agreement should be developed to establish an agreement between a delegating physician and RNs and/or APRNs to authorize them to administer, order and dispense specific dangerous drugs. See the Emergency Nurse Protocol Agreement sample that follows.

E. REQUIREMENTS FOR A REGISTERED PROFESSIONAL NURSE WHO USES A NURSE PROTOCOL

A Registered Professional Nurse who uses a nurse protocol must:

1. Hold a current license to practice as a registered professional nurse (RN) in Georgia,

2. Document preparation and performance specific to each medical act authorized by a nurse protocol, including ordering dangerous drugs, medical treatments or diagnostic studies. Prior to the RN functioning under a nurse protocol, there should be written documentation that the RN has training, preparation and/or orientation relative to each medical act authorized by the specific nurse protocol and can perform such acts. Documentation may include supervisory notes, orientation plans, direct observation of clinical performance, skills checklist(s) and/or performance appraisal(s), and

3. Adhere to the written nurse protocol.

F. LICENSED PRACTICAL NURSES

LPNs in public health administer drugs as assigned under the supervision of either an RN, APRN or physician and in accordance with the Georgia Licensed Practical Nurse Practice Act [O.C.G.A. § 43-26-32(7)].

G. REQUIREMENTS FOR NURSE PROTOCOLS

A nurse protocol must meet all the following requirements:

1. Be reviewed, revised or updated annually. Per DPH legal services, the term "annually" is interpreted to mean twelve (12) months. However, nurse protocols can be dated and signed within twelve (12) months of the previous date but must not exceed twelve (12) months. This means that if a nurse protocol was signed on **November** 15, 201**9**, that same nurse protocol must be signed on or by **November** 15, 20**20** to continue to practice under the respective nurse protocol. The nurse protocol must bear the review date and signatures of the delegating physician(s) and RN(s). There is no authority to perform acts using a nurse protocol which has expired without annual review, revisions and updates.

2. Specify that record reviews of nursing practice under nurse protocol (of RNs and APRNs) by the delegating physician will be completed at least once annually. Ideally, it is preferred that record reviews be completed on a quarterly basis throughout each year to identify strengths and opportunities for improvement in a timely manner.

3. Be available and accessible in each of the specific settings where RNs function under nurse protocols and be available upon request.

4. Include the specific terms/conditions under which delegated medical acts may be performed.

5. Include the condition(s) for immediate consultation with a delegating physician or a physician designated in his or her absence.

6. Include a statement that the RN has read and understands all statutes, rules and regulations pertaining to nursing practice under nurse protocol and has read and understands the drug dispensing procedure.

H. DELEGATED AUTHORITY FOR ORDERING DANGEROUS DRUGS

RNs who are delegated the authority to order dangerous drugs must do so in accordance with written nurse protocols. The nurse protocol must outline the parameters that must be followed pursuant to ordering the drug and must also specify the drug and the specific conditions under which it may be ordered.

I. DISPENSING DANGEROUS DRUGS

RNs are authorized to dispense dangerous drugs only under the following conditions:

1. The dispensing is in accordance with a written drug dispensing procedure[3] **signed by a licensed physician and a licensed pharmacist that has been reviewed by the Georgia Board of Pharmacy** and under the authority of an order issued in conformity with a nurse protocol.

2. There must be documented preparation and performance (i.e., ability to perform) specific to dispensing dangerous drugs based on a written dispensing procedure. Documentation should include that each RN has read and understands the drug dispensing procedure.

3. A copy of the drug dispensing procedure must be accessible in each of the specific sites where the RN is practicing under nurse protocols and be available upon request. The procedure must be signed by the pharmacist and physician who have established it.

4. The RN shall exercise diligence in protecting drugs and records from loss or theft, in accordance with the rules of the Georgia Board of Pharmacy.

5. The RN is not authorized to dispense a drug:

    a. Based on a prescription written by either a public health or private physician;
    b. Pursuant to an order written on a patient's chart by a physician, an advanced practice registered nurse, physician's assistant or another RN;
    c. Based on a written or verbal recommendation from a communicable disease specialist (CDS); or
    d. Based on a drug order received over the phone.
    e. When any of the above situations occur, the RN functioning under nurse protocols:
        1) Adds the written information or documents the oral information received (e.g., medical diagnosis, physician's prescription) to the patient's chart;
        2) Reviews any written information in the chart; and
        3) Based on his/her review of the information and clinical assessment of the patient, decides whether to order any of the drugs listed in the appropriate nurse protocol, to seek medical consultation or to refer the patient.

3 Georgia Board of Pharmacy Rules 480-30-.02- General Requirements, “Any person who dispenses drugs in accordance with a dispensing procedure and under the authority of a job description or standard nurse protocol shall comply with all record keeping, labeling, packaging and storage requirements imposed upon pharmacists and pharmacies with regard to such drugs pursuant to O.C.C.A. § 26-4 and 16-13, and those regulations contained in this chapter.”

f. If the nurse decides to order a drug listed in the nurse protocol, he/she assumes responsibility for ordering the drug in accordance with the nurse protocol and dispensing the drug per a written drug dispensing procedure. An example of how this may be documented in the patient's chart is as follows:

ASSESSMENT
History and clinical data do not contraindicate OCs.

PLAN
Ortho Tri-Cyclen one tablet PO daily for 12 months. Dispensed 12 cycles. Provided instruction about the drug, how to take drug, and symptoms/side effects to report.

Next visit September 1, (current year).

NOTE: The nurse can dispense drugs only on his/her own order and in accordance with a nurse protocol agreement and a drug dispensing procedure.

g. If the nurse seeks medical consultation, the results of the consultation are documented in the patient's chart. Based on the medical consultation and clinical assessment of the patient, the nurse decides whether to order any of the drugs in the nurse protocol, to seek further medical consultation or to refer the patient. This includes when the medical consultation results in a dosage, drug or any medical act which is not covered by the current nurse protocol.
h. If the nurse decides to refer the patient, the referral must be documented in the patient's chart. The documentation should include where/to whom the patient was referred, what medical information was sent with the patient or authorized to be released and any assistance and/or instructions provided to the patient. Results of the referral and any changes in the patient's plan of care should subsequently be documented.

J. ACCOUNTABILITY

The District Health Director is accountable for ensuring that the appropriate nurse protocols are in place in his/her district. The District Health Director and the District Public Health Nursing and Clinical Director should collaborate in the development, monitoring and updating of nurse protocols, assuring compliance with all statutes, rules and regulations pertaining to practice under nurse protocol. Each district should also form and sustain a District Nurse Protocol Committee to assist in managing the ongoing review of the nurse protocols.

K. SIGNING NURSE PROTOCOL AGREEMENTS

1. Signature Requirements

    a. Items to include on the signature page to document compliance with specific rules and regulations of the Georgia Board of Nursing (GBON) and the Board of Pharmacy:
        1) That each RN is adequately trained and prepared to perform the delegated medical acts (document the specific training in the nurse's personnel or supervisory file).
        2) That the RN has read and understands all statutes, rules, and regulations pertaining to nursing and nursing practice under nurse protocol and have read and understand the drug dispensing procedure.
        3) That record reviews of nursing practice under nurse protocol (of RNs and APRNs) by the delegating physician will be completed at least annually. Ideally, it is preferred that the record reviews be completed on a quarterly basis throughout each year to identify strengths and opportunities for improvement in a timely manner.

    b. The signature page should represent an agreement between the delegating physician(s) and the RN(s).
    c. Each person should use his/her legal signature as it appears in patient records (i.e., full name/letters denoting the professional title - MD, DO, RN).
    d. A nurse protocol must be reviewed, revised or updated annually. The nurse protocol signature page must be dated within 12 months of the previous date signed. This means that if a nurse protocol was signed on **November** 15, 201**9**, that same nurse protocol must be signed on or by **November** 15, 20**20** to continue to practice under the respective nurse protocol. Rationale for this includes the following:
        a. The nurse protocol agreement is a legal document used by the Registered Professional Nurse (RN) and each RN and delegating physician(s) should assure the nurse protocol signature page is signed within 12 months of the previous date.
        b. Per DPH legal services, the term "annual" is interpreted to mean 12 months**.**
        c. Per the Inspector General's Office, from an auditor's perspective, "annual" means 12 months without fail.

    e. A single signature page may cover a single nurse protocol, a set of nurse protocols or multiple nurse protocols if revisions are signed and dated by all parties (refer to the example on the following page).

2. Review/Revision Requirements

   All nurse protocols must be reviewed at least annually. Changes in drug treatment and health care technology should be incorporated into revised nurse protocols in a timely manner. Annual reviews and revisions which involve ordering drugs, diagnostic studies and/ or treatments should be signed and dated by the delegating physician(s) and the nurse(s). Supervisors should assure that nurses have been taught about each nurse protocol and any revisions before they sign the nurse protocol agreement.

L. EXAMPLE NURSE PROTOCOL SIGNATURE PAGE

NURSE PROTOCOL SIGNATURE PAGE

The signatures below indicate an agreement between the delegating physician(s) and the registered professional nurse(s) (RNs) who are authorized to perform the delegated medical acts contained in the nurse protocols for [insert name of designated nurse protocols (e.g., Family Planning) and date on nurse protocols (e.g., 1/10)].

All RNs and APRNs whose signatures appear on this page:

1. Have been adequately trained and are prepared to perform the delegated medical acts contained in the designated nurse protocols; such training is documented in the nurses' personnel/supervisory files.

2. Have read and understand all statutes, rules and regulations pertaining to nursing practice under nurse protocol and have read and understand the drug dispensing procedure.

3. Have been given an opportunity to have questions answered.

Record reviews by the delegating physician(s) will be completed at least once annually. Ideally, it is preferred that record reviews be completed on a quarterly basis throughout each year **to** identify strengths and opportunities for improvement in a timely manner.

_____ _____
Signature of Delegating Physician Date

_____ _____
Signature of RN Date

M. EXAMPLE NURSE PROTOCOL FOR ADMINISTERING VACCINES

NURSE PROTOCOL FOR ADMINISTERING VACCINES
SIGNATURE PAGE

NOTE: This type of signature page would be used by RN or APRNs when the vaccine must be transported to non-county Health Department sites such as school-based clinics.

The signatures below indicate an agreement between the delegating physician(s) and the registered professional nurse(s) RN(s) who are authorized to administer the following vaccines:

- Seasonal Influenza Vaccine
- Meningococcal Vaccine
- Pneumococcal Vaccine
- Tetanus-containing Vaccine

All RNs and APRNs whose signatures appear on this signature page:

1. Have been adequately trained and are prepared to perform the delegated medical acts contained in the designated nurse protocols; such training is documented in the nurses' personnel/supervisory files.

2. Have read and understand all statutes, rules and regulations pertaining to nursing practice under nurse protocol and have read and understand the drug dispensing procedure.

3. Have been given an opportunity to have questions answered.

Record reviews by the delegating physician(s) will be completed at least once annually. Ideally, it is preferred that record reviews be completed on a quarterly basis throughout each year **to** identify strengths and opportunities for improvement in a timely manner.

_____ _____
Signature of Delegating Physician Date

_____ _____
Signature of RN Date

N. EXAMPLE EMERGENCY NURSE PROTOCOL AGREEMENT

EMERGENCY NURSE PROTOCOL AGREEMENT
FOR ADMINISTERING, ORDERING, AND DISPENSING SPECIFIC DANGEROUS DRUGS
DURING TIMES OF EMERGENCY

NOTE: This type of signature page would be used during times of emergency (e.g., anthrax attack, pandemic). The Public Health District may use this to develop a nurse protocol to expedite the process of treating individuals impacted by the emergency.

The signatures below indicate an agreement and understanding between the delegating physician(s) and the registered professional nurse(s) (RNs) and/or advanced practice registered nurses (APRNs) that the undersigned individuals are authorized to administer, order and dispense the specific dangerous drugs listed below in accordance with the manufacturer's information attached to this signature page for each of the drugs listed:

DANGEROUS DRUGS TO BE ADMINISTERED:

For the following populations (i.e., adult, children older than 5 years of age, pregnant women):

1._____ 2._____

For the following indications listed:

1._____ 2._____

List the specific drugs to be administered, attach the Drug Manufacturer's insert for each):

1._____ 2._____

DANGEROUS DRUGS TO BE ORDERED AND DISPENSED:

For the following populations (i.e., adult, children older than 5 years of age, pregnant women):

1._____ 2._____

For the following indications listed:

1._____ 2._____

List specific Drugs to be ordered and dispensed, attach the Drug Manufacturer's insert for each):

1._____ 2._____

The delegating physician, RNs and APRNs whose signatures appear on this signature page agree that the RNs and APRNs:

1. Have been adequately trained and are prepared to perform the delegated medical acts contained in the designated nurse protocols; such training is documented in the nurses' personnel/supervisory files.

2. Have read and understand all statutes, rules and regulations pertaining to nursing practice under nurse protocol and have read and understand the drug dispensing procedure.

3. Have been given an opportunity to have questions answered.

4. Record reviews by the delegating physician(s) will be completed at least once annually. Ideally, it is preferred that record reviews be completed on a quarterly basis throughout each year **to** identify strengths and opportunities for improvement in a timely manner.

5. This authorization/agreement shall terminate after the emergency or when my services are no longer required.

Signature of Delegating Physician	Date
Signature of RN or APRN	Date
Signature of RN or APRN	Date
Signature of RN or APRN	Date
Signature of RN or APRN	Date

O. RETENTION OF NURSE PROTOCOLS

1. The district shall retain one copy of each nurse protocol for at least five years, so that it can be retrieved in case of an audit or legal issue.
2. The Department of Public Health shall maintain copies of the Nurse Protocol Manual produced by the Department for at least five years.

P. NURSE PROTOCOL AGREEMENT FORMATS FOR APRNS

Advanced Practice Registered Nurses (APRNs) in public health may use the same format for nurse protocols as that used by RNs and/or they may use the following APRN format. The following format provides the essential components of what should be included in the nurse protocol for APRNs.

1. Area of Specialty. Specify the area(s) of specialty in which the APRN holds current certification, as authorized by the Georgia Board of Nursing.

2. Dangerous Drugs. A nurse protocol must specify parameters under which delegated medical acts may be performed; therefore, the written nurse protocol agreement for APRNs must specify the drugs that may be ordered. The nurse protocol agreement must either include a list of drugs to be ordered or a drug formulary must be attached to the nurse protocol agreement.

   Drugs selected should follow drug formulary guidelines that base drug selection on the most clinically appropriate and cost-effective drugs. A number of published drug formulary guidelines may be used in making these determinations**.** An example of a drug formulary may be found in section T, *Example Drug Formulary for Advanced Practice Registered Nurses.*

   In addition to the written nurse protocol document, the APRN who dispenses drugs, under the authority of an order issued in conformity with the nurse protocol, must adhere to a drug dispensing procedure. This written document, signed by a licensed pharmacist and physician, must be readily accessible at the site where the APRN is practicing under nurse protocols and be available upon request. Per the drug dispensing procedure used in Public Health, the APRN must also document the drug(s) dispensed on a drug dispensing sign-out sheet or a document with comparable requirements.

3. Medical Treatments. Specify the medical treatments, if any that may be ordered by the APRN.

4. Diagnostic Studies. Specify the diagnostic studies, if any that may be ordered by the APRN.

5. Reference Guidelines for Practice. Specify the text(s), written guidelines, and/or other reference documents**,** which will be used by the individual APRN relative to the area of specialty. For example**: "*Current Practice Guidelines in Primary***

***Care 2019*, by Joseph S. Escherick, Daniel S. Clark, and Evan D Slater**, shall serve as a reference guide." These texts and documents should be current and readily available. The use of such texts and documents must clearly exclude any controlled substances or Schedule I controlled substances.

6. Consultation. Specify the conditions for immediate consultation with the delegating physician.

7. Patient Evaluation/Follow-Up. Specify that the frequency and guidelines for patient evaluation/follow-up by the delegating physician will be determined collaboratively between the APRN and the delegating physician.

8. Documentation. Specify how services will be documented.

9. Signatures. Each APRN who practices under these nurse protocols and each delegating physician must sign and date the written agreement.

10. Annual Review. The nurse protocols must be reviewed, signed and dated at least annually.

Q. GENERAL TEMPLATE FOR APRN NURSE PROTOCOL AGREEMENT

NURSE PROTOCOL AGREEMENT FOR
ADVANCED PRACTICE REGISTERED NURSES IN PUBLIC HEALTH

Area of Specialty: _____

Dangerous Drugs (list or attach a list of the general categories or types of drugs to be ordered; a formulary is optional; list or formulary shall not include controlled substances Schedule III, IV or V). An example of a drug formulary may be found in section T, *Example Drug Formulary for Advanced Practice Registered Nurses.*

Diagnostic Studies (check all that apply):

- __Laboratory tests as appropriate
- __X-ray
- __Ultrasound
- __Other (specify): _____

Medical Treatments: May be ordered as appropriate for the area of specialty.

Reference Guidelines for Practice: The following references shall be utilized as guidelines for practice, excluding all controlled substances listed in these documents. List specific text, such as:

1. **Joseph S. Esherick, Daniel S. Clark and Evan D. Slater, *Current Practice Guidelines in Primary Care 2019*, 17th ed., McGraw-Hill Professional Publishing, 2019.**

2. **Nurse Protocols for _____sections from *Nurse Protocols for Registered Professional Nurses,* Georgia Department of Public Health, 2020.**

3. Other reference(s) (specify): _____

Consultation: The delegating physician will be available for immediate consultation by phone, facsimile, pager, and/or e-mail. If the delegating physician is not available, the delegating physician shall designate another physician who concurs with the terms of this agreement.

Patient Evaluation/Follow-up: Specify that the frequency and guidelines for patient evaluation/follow-up by the delegating physician will be determined collaboratively between the APRN and the delegating physician.

Documentation: The APRN shall document services provided in accordance with the nurse protocol agreement. The APRN shall document all drugs ordered, dispensed and handled in accordance with the Georgia Nurse Practice Act, the Rules of the Georgia Board of Nursing, Rules and Regulations of the Georgia Board of Pharmacy and Department of Public Health requirements.

Record Reviews: A sampling of records shall be reviewed at least annually. Ideally, it is preferred that record reviews be completed on a quarterly basis throughout each year to identify strengths and opportunities for improvement in a timely manner.

This document indicates an agreement between the delegating physician and the APRN who is authorized to practice under a nurse protocol agreement. The APRN, whose signature appears below, has:

1. Been adequately trained and is prepared to perform the delegated medical acts specified in this nurse protocol agreement,

2. Read and understands all statutory rules and regulations pertaining to nursing and practice under nurse protocol and has read and understands the drug dispensing procedure, and

3. Been given an opportunity to have questions answered.

_____ _____
Advanced Practice Registered Nurse Signature Printed Name of APRN

_____
Date

_____ _____
Delegating Physician Signature Printed Name of Delegating Physician

_____
Date

R. TEMPLATE FOR WOMEN'S HEALTH NURSE PROTOCOL AGREEMENT

NURSE PROTOCOL AGREEMENT FOR
ADVANCED PRACTICE REGISTERED NURSES IN PUBLIC HEALTH

Area of Specialty: Women's Health

Dangerous Drugs (list or attach a list of the general categories or types of drugs to be ordered; a formulary is optional; list or formulary shall not include controlled substances Schedule III, IV or V).

List may include:

- Contraceptives
- Drugs for the treatment of bacterial cystitis, sexually transmitted infections and vaginal infections
- Drugs for the treatment of minor gynecological problems (e.g., amenorrhea, dysmenorrhea)
- Hormone therapy for the treatment of symptoms of menopause
- Diaphragm
- Intrauterine device or system
- Hormonal implant
- Hormonal ring

Medical Treatments: May order as appropriate for Women's Health.

Diagnostic Studies (check all that apply):

- ✓ Laboratory tests as appropriate
- ✓ X-ray
- ✓ Ultrasound
- ____ Other (specify): _____

Reference Guidelines for Practice: The following references shall be utilized as guidelines for practice, excluding all controlled substances listed in these documents:

1. Nurse Protocols for Women's Health, *Nurse Protocols for Registered Professional Nurses in Public Health,* Georgia Department of Public Health, 20**20.**

2. Nurse Protocols for Sexually Transmitted Diseases (STD), *Nurse Protocols for Registered Professional Nurses in Public Health*, Georgia Department of Public Health, **2020.**

3. R. A. Hatcher, et al., *Contraceptive Technology*, **21st** revised ed., Ardent Media, Inc., New York, 201**9**. (Current Edition).

Consultation: The delegating physician will be available for immediate consultation by phone, facsimile, pager, and/or e-mail. If the delegating physician is not available, the delegating

physician shall designate another physician who concurs with the terms of this agreement.

Patient Evaluation/Follow-up: The frequency and guidelines for patient evaluation/follow-up by the delegating physician will be determined collaboratively between the APRN and the delegating physician. Patients will be evaluated through sampling of record reviews at least quarterly and case conferences as needed.

Documentation: The APRN shall document services provided in accordance with the nurse protocol agreement. The APRN shall document all drugs ordered, dispensed and handled in accordance with the Georgia Nurse Practice Act, the Rules of the Georgia Board of Nursing, Rules and Regulations of the Georgia Board of Pharmacy and DPH requirements.

Record Reviews: A sampling of records shall be reviewed at least once annually. Ideally, it is preferred that record reviews be completed on a quarterly basis throughout each year to identify strengths and opportunities for improvement in a timely manner.

This document indicates an agreement between the delegating physician and the APRN who is authorized to practice under a nurse protocol agreement. The APRN, whose signature appears below, has:

1. Been adequately trained and is prepared to perform the delegated medical acts specified in this nurse protocol agreement; and

2. Read and understands all statutory rules and regulations pertaining to nursing practice under nurse protocol and has read and understands the drug dispensing procedure.

3. Been given an opportunity to have questions answered.

_____ _____
Advanced Practice Registered Nurse Signature Printed Name of APRN

Date: _____

_____ _____
Delegating Physician Signature Printed Name of Delegating Physician

Date: _____

S. TEMPLATE FOR HIV NURSE PROTOCOL AGREEMENT

NURSE PROTOCOL AGREEMENT FOR ADVANCED PRACTICE REGISTERED NURSES IN PUBLIC HEALTH

Area of Specialty: Care of HIV-infected adults and adolescents.

Dangerous Drugs (list or attach a list of the general categories or types of drugs to be ordered; a formulary is optional; list or formulary shall not include controlled substances Schedule III, IV or V). May order dangerous drugs for the outpatient treatment of HIV infection and primary care conditions as defined in the reference guidelines listed below.

List may include:

- Antiretroviral Agents
- Drugs for the outpatient management of HIV disease including prophylaxis and/or treatment for opportunistic infections
- Drugs for the treatment of sexually transmitted diseases, tuberculosis, hepatitis, and other infectious diseases
- Drugs for the management of primary care conditions including hypertension, diabetes, asthma, and hyperlipidemia
- Contraceptives
- Hormone therapy for the treatment of symptoms of menopause

Diagnostic Studies (check all that apply):

- ✓ Laboratory tests as appropriate
- ✓ X-ray
- ✓ Ultrasound
- ____ Other(specify): _____

Medical Treatments: May order as appropriate for the area of specialty.

Reference Guidelines for Practice: The following references shall be utilized as guidelines for practice, excluding all controlled substances listed in these documents:

1. Department of Health and Human Services Panel on Antiretroviral Guidelines for Adults and Adolescents, "Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in Adults and Adolescents Living with HIV," **October 25, 2018.**

2. GA DPH, Nurse Protocols for HIV/AIDS-Related, Sexually Transmitted Diseases, and Women's Health, *Nurse Protocols for Registered Professional Nurses in Public Health*, 20**20.**

3. The North American Menopause Society, *Menopause Practice: A Clinician's Guide*, 5th ed., 2014**.**

4. Panel on Opportunistic Infections in HIV-Infected Adults and Adolescents. "Guidelines for

the prevention and treatment of opportunistic infections in HIV-infected adults and adolescents: recommendations from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, the National Institutes of Health, and the HIV Medicine Association of the Infectious Diseases Society of America," **March 28, 2019.**

5. Panel on Treatment of HIV-Infected Pregnant Women and Prevention of Perinatal Transmission, "Recommendations for Use of Antiretroviral Drugs in Pregnant HIV-1-Infected Women for Maternal Health and Interventions to Reduce Perinatal HIV Transmission in the United States," **March 27, 2018.**

6. TARGET Center, "Library," **2019, https://careacttarget.org/topics (May 1, 2019).**

7. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Health Resources and Services Administration, HIV/AIDS Bureau, "Guide for HIV/AIDS Clinical Care-**2014 Edition," April 2014, https://hab.hrsa.gov/sites/default/files/hab/clinical-quality-management/2014guide.pdf (May 1, 2019).**

8. **U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Health Resources and Services "A Guide to the Clinical Care of Women with HIV – 2013 Edition", 2013, https://hab.hrsa.gov/sites/default/files/hab/clinical-quality-management/womenwithaids.pdf (May 1, 2019).**

Consultation: The delegating physician will be available for immediate consultation by phone, facsimile, pager, and/or e-mail. If the delegating physician is not available, the delegating physician shall designate another physician who concurs with the terms of this agreement.

Patient Evaluation/follow-up: The frequency and guidelines for patient evaluation/follow-up by the delegating physician will be determined collaboratively between the APRN and the delegating physician.

Patient evaluation by the delegating physician may include:

1. All new patients should be evaluated or examined by the delegating physician at least once: patients with CD4 counts less than 200/mm^3 examine/evaluate within 3 months; patients with CD4 counts 200-500/mm^3 examine/evaluate within 6 months; and patient with CD4 counts greater than 500/mm^3 examine/evaluate within 12 months.

2. Patients not responding to routine therapy should be evaluated or examined by the delegating physician within 7 days of when the APRN identifies that the patient is not responding to routine therapy.

Documentation: The APRN shall document services provided in accordance with the nurse protocol agreement. The APRN shall document all drugs ordered, dispensed and handled in accordance with the Georgia Nurse Practice Act, the Rules of the Georgia Board of Nursing, Georgia Board of Pharmacy Rules and Regulations and DPH requirements.

Record Reviews: A sampling of records shall be reviewed at least once annually. Ideally, it is

preferred that record reviews be completed on a quarterly basis throughout each year to identify strengths and opportunities for improvement in a timely manner.

This document indicates an agreement between the delegating physician and the APRN who is authorized to practice under a nurse protocol agreement. The APRN whose signature appears below has:

1. Been adequately trained and is prepared to perform the delegated medical acts specified in this nurse protocol agreement,

2. Read and understands all statutory rules and regulations pertaining to nursing practice under nurse protocol and has read and understands the drug dispensing procedure, and

3. Been given an opportunity to have questions answered.

_____ _____
Advanced Practice Registered Nurse Signature Printed Name of APRN

_____
Date

_____ _____
Delegating Physician Signature Printed Name of Delegating Physician

_____
Date

T. EXAMPLE DRUG FORMULARY FOR ADVANCED PRACTICE REGISTERED NURSES

(Listing of Generic Drugs by Specific Classes)

Antihistamine Agents

Chlorpheniramine maleate
Diphenhydramine HCl
Zyrtec

Antimicrobial Agents

Antifungals
Fluconazole
Griseofulvin
Itraconazole
Ketoconazole
Nystatin
Terbinafine

Cephalosporins
Cefotaxime
Ceftriaxone
Cefuroxime
Cephalexin

Penicillins
Amoxicillin
Ampicillin
Augmentin
Benzathine penicillin G
Penicillin VK

Macrolides
Erythromycin
Azithromycin

Tetracyclines
Doxycycline
Tetracycline

Miscellaneous
Metronidazole
Trimethoprim /Sulfamethoxazole

Antivirals
Acyclovir
Amantadine
Famcyclovir
Ribavirin
Rimantadine
Valacyclovir

Fluoroquinolones
Ciprofloxacin
Levofloxacin
Moxifloxacin
Ofloxacin

Antituberculosis
Aminosalicylic acid
Capreomycin
Cycloserine
Ethambutol
Ethionamide
Isoniazid
Pyrazinamide
Rifabutin
Rifampin
Rifapentine
Streptomycin

Blood Formation Agents -- Iron Preparations

Ferrous fumarate
Ferrous sulfate

Cardiovascular Drugs -- Cardiac Glycoside

Digoxin

Cardiovascular Drugs -- Anti-hypertensive Agents

Angiotensin-Converting Enzyme Inhibitors
Benazepril
Captopril
Enalapril
Fosinopril

Beta-Adrenergic Blockers
Atenolol
Propranolol
Toprol XL

Calcium Channel Blockers
Norvasc
Verapamil

Centrally-Acting
Clonidine
Reserpine

Peripherally-Acting
Prazosin
Reserpine

Vasodilator
Hydralazine

Central Nervous System Agents

Anticonvulsants
Carbamazepine
Gabapentin
Lamotrigine
Phenytoin
Tegretol XR
Valproic Acid

Analgesics/Antipyretics (Non-narcotic)
Acetaminophen
Aspirin

Nonsteroidal Anti-inflammatory
Ibuprofen
Naproxen

Electrolyte, Caloric, and Water Balance

Diuretics
Furosemide
Hydrochlorothiazide
Spironolactone

Replacement Preparations
Ensure
Potassium Chloride

Eye, Ear, Nose and Throat (EENT) Preparations

Antibiotics
Bacitracin
Ciloxan
Erythromycin
Floxin Otic
Gentamycin

Anti-inflammatory
Dexamethasone
Loteprednol
Prednisolone

Mydriatics
Atropine
Homatropine
Tropicamide

Vasoconstrictors
Naphazoline
Oxymetazoline
Phenylephrine
Tetrahydrozoline

Gastrointestinal (GI) Drugs

Antiemetics
Promethazine

Antiflatulents
Simethicone

Laxatives
Castor Oil
Mineral Oil
Psyllium (Metamucil)
Stool Softener

Antidiarrheals
Bismuth subsalicylate
Loperamide

Miscellaneous GI Drugs

Cimetidine	Nizatidine
Famotidine	Ranitidine
Lansoprazole	Sulcrafate
Metoclopramide	

Hormones and Synthetic Substitutes

Adrenals	Antidiabetic Agents		Thyroid Agents
Prednisone	Glipizide	Insulin	Levothyroxine
Triamcinolone	Glucophage	Metformin	
	Glucovance		
	Glyburide		

Respiratory Agents

Bronchodilators
Albuterol
Bitolterol Mesylate
Pirbuterol Acetate

Anticholinergics
Ipratropium bromide

Xanthine Derivatives
Aminophylline
Theophylline

Membrane Stabilizer
Cromolyn sodium
Nedocromil

Corticosteroids
Beclomethasone dipropionate
Budesonide turbuhalar
Fluinsolide
Fluticasone propionate
Methylprednisolone
Prednisolone
Prednisone
Triamcinolone acetonide

Skin and Mucous Membrane Agents

Antibiotics

Bacitracin	Mucopirocin
Benzoyl Peroxide	Tetracycline
Clindamycin	
Erythromycin	

Antivirals
Acyclovir
Penciclovir

Antifungals

Ciclopirox	Nystatin
Clotrimazole	Terbinafine
Ketoconazole	Tolnafate
Miconazole	

Anti-inflammatory Agents

Low Potency
Aclometasone dipropionate
Hydrocortisone

High Potency
Betamethasone dipropionate
Halcinomide
Triamcinolone acetonide 0.5%

Intermediate Potency
Flurandrenulide
Triamcinolone acetonide 0.1%

Highest Potency
Augmented Betamethasone dipropionate (Diprolene)
Halobetasol

H. TEXTS/REFERENCES USED/RECOMMENDED FOR APRNS

1. AIDS Education and Training Center (AETC), "Guidelines for Prevention and Treatment of Opportunistic Infections in HIV-infected Adults and Adolescents", a living document at **https://aidsetc.org/resource/guidelines-prevention-and-treatment-opportunistic-infections-hiv-infected-adults-and**

2. American Academy of Pediatrics, *Pediatric Clinical Practice Guidelines & Policies: A Compendium of Evidence-Based Research for Pediatric Practice*, **19th** edition, American Academy of Pediatrics, 201**8**. (Current **Edition**).

3. John G. Bartlett and Joel E. Gallant, *Medical Management of HIV Infection 201**7***, Johns Hopkins University, Division of Infectious Diseases, (Current Edition).

4. Richard E. Behrman, et al., *Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics*, **21**th ed. W. B. Saunders Company, Philadelphia, 201**9**. (Current Edition).

5. Louis M Bell, Peter M Bingham, MD and Esther K Chung, *The 5-Minute Pediatric Consult*, **8**th ed., Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 201**8**. (Current Edition).

6. Rose W. Boynton, *Manual of Ambulatory Pediatrics*, 6th ed*.,* Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia, 2009. (Current Edition).

7. Burns, C., Dunn, A., Brady, M., Starr, N., & Blosser, C., **7**th ed., *Pediatric primary care* (20**19**). Saunders: St. Louis, MO.

8. Frank J Domino, *The 5-Minute Clinical Consult **2020***, 2**8**th ed., Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, **2020**.

9. Paul Chan, MD and Margaret T Johnson, MD, *Treatment Guidelines for Medicine and Primary Care 11th ed., 2009*, (Current Edition).

10. Marilyn W. Edmunds and Maren S. Mayhew, *Procedures for Primary Care Practitioners, 3rd* ed., Mosby-Year Book, St. Louis, 2009. **(Current Edition)**.

11. Fitzpatrick, T.B., et al. (**2017**). *Color atlas and synopsis of clinical dermatology (**8**th ed.)* New York: McGraw-Hill. **(Current Edition)**

12. Ralph Gonzales and Jean S Kutner, *Current Practice Guidelines in Primary Care 2011*, 1**7**th ed., McGraw-Hill Professional Publishing, **2019**. (Current Edition).

13. Joseph F Hagan, Jr, MD, Judith S Shaw, RN, Paula M Duncan, MD, *Bright Futures: Guidelines for Health Supervision of Infants, Children and Adolescents*, 4**th** ed., American Academy of Pediatrics, 20**17**. (Current Edition).

14. Thomas W. Hale, *Medications and Mother's Milk: **2019***, **Springer-Publishing Company**, 201**7**. (**Current Edition**).

15. R. A. Hatcher, et al., *Contraceptive Technology*, 2**1**th ed., **Managing Contraception, LLC**, 201**8**. (Current Edition).

16. McCance, K.L., & Heuther, S.E., *Pathophysiology; The biologic basis for disease in adults & children*. (**8**th Ed). Maryland Heights, MO: Elservier Mosby. 201**8**. **(Current Edition).**

17. Stephen J. McPhee and Maxine A. Papadakis, (eds.), *Current Medical Diagnosis and Treatment 20**20***, 5**9**th ed., McGraw-Hill **Education**, 201**9**.

18. Jay P Sanford, Robert Moellering, George Eliopoulos, et al, editors, *The Sanford Guide To HIV/AIDS Therapy 201**6-2017**,* 2**4**th ed., Antimicrobial Therapy, 201**6**. **(Current Edition)**.

19. Seidel, H.M., et al. *Mosby's Guide to Physical Examination, 8th Edition.* Mosby, 2014. **(Current Edition)**.

20. US Preventive Services Task Force, *The Guide to Clinical Preventive Services 2014*. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality, http://www.ahrq.gov/professionals/clinicians-providers/index.html **(Current Edition)**.

21. Wright, L. M., & Leahey, M., *Nurses and families: A guide to family assessment and intervention*, **7**th ed., Philadelphia: F. A. Davis, 2019. **(Current Edition)**.

Pharmacology and Lab:

22. Allen J. Ellsworth, et al., **6th** ed., *Mosby's Drug Reference for Health Professions,* Mosby, St. Louis, 2017. **(Current Edition)**.

23. Marilyn W. Edmunds and Maren S. Mayhew, *Pharmacology for the Primary Care Provider*, **5**th ed., Mosby Inc, 201**4**. (Current Edition).

24. Richard J. Hamilton, *Tarascon Pocket Pharmacopoeia: 201**9** Deluxe Lab Coat Edition,* Jones and Bartlett Publishers, 2019.

25. Kathleen Deska Pagana and Timothy J. Pagana, *Mosby's Diagnostic and Laboratory Test Reference*, 1**4**th ed., Mosby Inc., 201**9**.

26. Carol K. Taketomo, Jane H. Hodding and Donna M. Kraus, *Lexi-Comp's Pediatric & Neonatal Dosage Handbook*, 2**5**th Edition, Lexi-Comp Inc, 201**8**.

27. Beatrice B. Turkoski, et al., *Lexi-Comp Drug Information Handbook for Advanced Practice Nursing,* 1**7**th ed., Lexi-Comp Inc, 201**8**.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

DRUG DISPENSING PROCEDURE

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

The following procedure is for the proper procurement, storage, record keeping, labeling, and handling of drugs and/or devices by authorized agents or employees of the Georgia Department of Public Health and the County Boards of Health.

Licensed Pharmacist:

Print name _____

Signature _____ _____
Date

Licensed Physician:

Print name _____

Signature_____ _____
Date

All registered professional nurses or physician's assistants who dispense dangerous drugs and/or devices under the authority of an order issued in conformity with a nurse protocol or job description and as an agent or employee of the Department of Public Health or any county board of health, shall meet the same standards and comply with all record-keeping, labeling, packaging, storage and all other requirements for the dispensing of drugs imposed upon pharmacists and pharmacies with regard to such drugs and/or devices, as outlined by the following dispensing procedure. This procedure applies to all drugs and devices within the district, whether purchased through state or local funds. The Pharmacy Director for the Department of Public Health, or a qualified designee, may make periodic on-site visits to health districts and/or local health departments to provide technical assistance and review drug use, storage and handling.

A. DEFINITIONS

For the purpose of this dispensing procedure, the following definitions apply:

1. Administer or Administration means to give a unit dose of any drug or to perform any medical treatment or diagnostic study. O.C.G.A. § 43-34-23(a) (1).

2. Dangerous Drug means any dangerous drug as defined in O.C.G.A. § 16-13-71 but does not include any controlled substance or Schedule I controlled substance. See also O.C.G.A. § 43-34-23(a) (3). Dangerous drugs are required to bear upon the package, the words "Caution Federal Law Prohibits Dispensing Without Prescription", "Rx only," or words of like import. These drugs may also be referred to as "Legend" drugs.

3. Device means an instrument, apparatus, contrivance or other similar or related article, including any component part or accessory, which is required under federal law to bear the label, "Caution: federal or state law requires dispensing by or on the order of a physician". O.C.G.A. § 26-4-5(9).

4. Dispense means to issue one or more doses of any drug in a suitable container with appropriate labeling for subsequent administration to, or use by, a patient. O.C.G.A. § 43-34-23 (a) (3.1)

5. Dispensing Procedure means a written document signed by a licensed pharmacist and a licensed physician that establishes the appropriate manner under which drugs may be dispensed pursuant to O.C.G.A. § 43-34-23(a) (4).

6. Distribute means the delivery of a drug or device other than by administering or dispensing. O.C.G.A. § 26-4-5(11).

7. Job description means a document, signed by the primary supervising physician and the physician assistant, in which the primary supervising physician delegates to that physician assistant authority to perform certain medical acts and which describes the professional background and specialty of the primary supervising physician and the qualifications including related experience of the physician

assistant; and includes a general description of how the physician assistant will be utilized in the practice. A job description shall not be required to contain every activity the physician deems the physician assistant qualified to perform but shall confine the activities of the physician assistant to those in the scope of practice of the primary supervising physician. O.C.G.A. § 43-34-102(4).

8. Nurse means a person who is a registered professional nurse licensed as such under Article 1 of Chapter 26 of Title 43. O.C.G.A. § 43-34-23(a) (6).

9. Nurse Protocol means a written document mutually agreed upon and signed by a nurse and a licensed physician, by which document, the physician delegates to that nurse the authority to perform certain medical acts pursuant to subsection (b) of O.C.G.A. § 43-34-23. These acts shall include, without being limited to, the administering and ordering of any drug. O.C.G.A. § 43-34-23(a) (7).

10. Order means to select a drug, medical treatment or diagnostic study through physician delegation in accordance with a nurse protocol or a physician's assistant's job description. Ordering under such delegation shall not be construed to be prescribing nor shall ordering of a drug be construed to authorize the issuance of a written prescription. O.C.G.A. § 43-34-23(a) (8).

11. Practitioner or Practitioner of the Healing Arts means a physician, dentist, podiatrist or veterinarian, and shall include any other person licensed under the laws of Georgia to use, mix, prepare, dispense, prescribe and administer drugs in connection with medical treatment to the extent provided by the laws of Georgia. O.C.G.A. § 26-4-5(33).

12. Prescription Drug Order means a lawful order of a practitioner for a drug or device for a specific patient; such order includes an electronic visual image prescription drug order and an electronic data prescription drug order. O.C.G.A. § 26-4-5(36).

B. GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

1. Although the Department of Public Health and the county boards of health may stock drugs and related supplies which are not considered dangerous drugs (e.g., ferrous sulfate tablets, reagent strips), the storage, record keeping and inventory control requirements shall apply to all drugs, biologicals (vaccines and diluents), and related items. Furthermore, all biologicals (vaccines and diluents) must be handled and stored according to any specifics related to the individual vaccine listed in the storage and handling guidelines located in the Georgia Immunization Program Manual. The manual may be accessed on line at https://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-publications.

2. The District Health Director or licensed physician signing this agreement shall designate a secure lockable area, room(s), which shall be known as the medication room(s) which is devoted to business related to pharmaceuticals and medical devices. Also, they shall designate a person in charge of the medication room(s). The District Health Director shall keep this information current and on file, available upon request.

All drugs should be kept out of reach of unauthorized staff and patients.

3. A hard copy and/or computer or electronic access to current medication reference materials must be available in all health departments and/or health centers (at a minimum, a hard copy or electronic version of Drug Facts and Comparisons [eFacts and Comparisons], American Hospital Formulary Service or Lexi-Comp Drug Information Handbook [Lexi-Comp Online].)

4. All drugs or devices which bear, or are required to bear, upon the package, the words "Caution, Federal Law Prohibits Dispensing Without Prescription", “Rx only” or words of like import, shall be issued pursuant to one of the following:

   a. A prescription from a licensed practitioner authorized to prescribe.
   b. An order issued in conformity with a nurse protocol or job description.

5. A registered professional nurse or physician's assistant is only authorized to dispense pursuant to an order issued in conformity with a nurse protocol or job description, not a prescription or an order written on a chart or phoned in by a physician.

6. The telephone number of a poison center shall be conspicuously posted in the medication room and pharmacy areas (e.g., Georgia Poison Center 1-800-222-1222).

C. DRUG STORAGE AND RECORD KEEPING

1. All drugs shall be stored in designated areas known as the medication room, within the facility that are sufficient to insure the proper sanitation, temperature, light, ventilation, moisture control, segregation and security. These conditions must also be considered when drugs are being distributed/transported from one area/facility to another area/facility.

   a. All drugs requiring refrigeration must be stored in a refrigerator designated for drug use. The refrigerator and/or freezer must have either a thermometer or an electronic temperature monitoring device that monitors the unit's internal temperature. The temperature must be recorded by a clinic employee. Documentation shall be made twice daily by initialing a temperature log during clinic hours to insure the proper temperature range specified for those particular drugs. The document must provide the printed employee name and identifying initials. Temperature logs must be kept on file for three years.

   NOTE: Refrigerators/freezers can be monitored with an external electronic temperature monitoring device which electronically monitors internal temperatures with a temperature probe (e.g., Sensaphone).

   b. All pharmaceuticals are to be stored and maintained at the correct temperature according to the individual product package insert for 24 hours a day, seven days a week**. Pharmaceuticals stored at room temperature must be monitored by either a thermometer or an electronic temperature monitoring device that**

monitors the storage area. The temperature must be recorded by a clinic employee. Documentation shall be made twice daily by initialing a temperature log during clinic hours to insure the proper temperature range. Extreme changes in temperature have the potential to change the effectiveness and/or stability of the drug. All pharmaceuticals that are improperly stored must be immediately segregated from stock and labeled unusable. See Section D. OUTDATED, DETERIORATED, RETURNED AND RECALLED DRUGS.

c. Store drugs for external use apart from drugs for internal use or injection (segregate at least by using different shelving or bins).

2. All drugs shall be stored in a secured area (under lock and key when not in actual use). All access entries to the medication room(s) must be locked at all times prohibiting outside entry. Security of the medication room(s) must be maintained 24 hours a day. Authorization to the medication room(s) must be reserved to those employees performing functions requiring access such as dispensing and inventory management and control.

   Whenever more than one authorized person has access to drugs from a common inventory, one person shall be designated "in charge" of said inventory. The person designated "in charge" of said inventory shall ensure that a complete and accurate record of all drugs on hand, received, dispensed, issued, removed or otherwise disposed of, has been kept in accordance with the record-keeping requirements of the Board of Pharmacy.

   The district must keep a current list of those employees authorized to have access to the medication room(s). This list must be kept on file and signed annually by the District Health Director and the person “in charge” of said inventory.

   The medication room(s) should be sufficiently secure to deny access to unauthorized persons. When the security of the medication room is breached, a police report should be filed, and an actual count of the inventory should be conducted and documented.

3. Upon receipt of pharmaceuticals and/or medical devices, invoices must be signed and dated. Any discrepancies must be clearly noted on the invoice and reported within one business day to the distributor. Resolution must be noted on the invoice. All invoices must be maintained on file for five years. For purchases made by the State Office of Pharmacy, signed and dated invoices must be submitted to the State Office of Pharmacy within 72 hours of receiving the product.

4. Records of dispensing are to be made and kept by the dispensing facility for two (2) years in a secure location and retrievable upon request. Dispensing records may be manual hard copy on a *Drug Dispensing Sign-out Sheet* or electronic print version.

   Required documentation for dispensing records when a drug or device is dispensed pursuant to an order issued in conformity with a nurse protocol includes:

   a. Patient’s name and address,

b. Name, strength, and dosage form of drug dispensed with the National Drug Code (NDC) number,
c. Quantity dispensed,
d. Date dispensed,
e. Name of the nurse ordering and dispensing,
f. Name of practitioner (delegating physician),
g. Lot number and expiration date, per legal requirements, and
h. Identifying serial number (prescription number).

If using an electronic dispensing record in place of the manual *Drug Dispensing Sign-out Sheet*, the electronic dispensing record should clearly identify who is ordering the pharmaceutical or medical device and ideally the computer entry person, if other than the person ordering. The electronic dispensing records must be printed in hard copy every twenty-four (24) hours and filed in a secure location. The electronic dispensing print-out record must be readable without the aid of a special device. The dispenser(s) is/are responsible for verifying completeness and accuracy of the entries to the system**,** including any voided transactions, and must provide documentation that medication order information entered into the computer is correct, by dating and signing the print-out in the same manner as signing a check or legal document (e.g., Mary A. Smith or M. A. Smith).

5. A running inventory of drugs received, dispensed, and removed from designated storage areas must be verified by actual count at least monthly. Discrepancies in inventory should be researched and findings should be clearly noted. Reconciliation should occur immediately if variances are found. If a manual and an electronic inventory are kept simultaneously, then both inventories must be the same.

6. Districts that contract for local retail or hospital pharmacy services must ensure that a list of state supplied drugs dispensed from the pharmacy location to public health patients is forwarded to appropriate district staff or state program on a monthly basis. Districts that contract for local retail or hospital pharmacy services must keep contracts on file with a copy of a current pharmacy license. The District/County must ensure no drug diversion and no violations of federal or state laws or regulations.

7. All records pertaining to drug accountability (from ordering and receipt of drug to actual patient administration) must be kept on file. The Georgia Drugs and Narcotics Agency and the Department of Public Health and its inspectors shall have the authority to conduct inspections or audits on all drugs received and/or disposed of by an agent or employee of the Department of Public Health or any County Board of Health. Prescriptions and/or orders shall be kept on file for a minimum period of two (2) years from the date they are filled. Refer to the Public Health Record Retention Policy for specific program requirements that may be more stringent.

8. No health center in which drugs are handled shall operate in any manner or dispense any drugs under unclean, unsanitary, overcrowded, unhealthy conditions or under any condition that endangers the health, safety or welfare of the public. All drugs shall be kept beyond the normal reach of small children.

9. **The use of professional Medical Device and Drug Samples must adhere to the Department's policy "Professional Medical Device and Drug Sample Policy for Public Health Clinics" and complete the mandatory Medication and Device Sample Quarterly Report and provide it to the Office of Pharmacy.**

D. OUTDATED, DETERIORATED, RETURNED AND RECALLED DRUGS

1. Examine drug stock at least monthly and remove from stock all outdated, improperly stored, and deteriorated drugs. Stock must be rotated so the shortest dated stock will be used first. No outdated or deteriorated drug may be kept in stock for patient use. Under no circumstance shall any drug be dispensed or administered that bears a date of expiration that has been reached or that is in a deteriorated condition.

2. Remove all outdated, improperly stored, deteriorated, unused or overstocked drugs from inventory and label unusable. For vaccines, contact the Immunization Program for guidance. The District Pharmacist or District/County Drug Coordinator will be responsible for compiling and sending the required documentation to the drug manufacturer, drug wholesaler or the reverse drug distributor (i.e. INMAR) for handling the drugs appropriately. For any drug purchased through the State Office of Pharmacy, prior notification and a copy of the prepared documentation is required to be sent to the State Office of Pharmacy to ensure that credit is applied to the appropriate state account. For any drugs purchased by the county or district, documentation must be retrievable and available upon request. The proper documentation should be kept on file for a minimum of two (2) years. Information on drugs purchased or supplied with state or federal funds must be submitted upon request. Documentation should include the following:

    a. Name and strength of the drug, expiration date, lot number, unit or size and quantity of drug returned.
    b. The name and street address of the clinic/county/district returning drugs.
    c. The date of the return.
    d. The reason the drug is being returned (e.g., out-of-date, improperly stored, deteriorated, discontinued, unused, overstocked).

    Depending on the drug and/or the contract, an exchange for fresh stock, a return for credit or a return for "destruction only" may occur.

3. Drug Recalls. If a drug recall for pharmaceutical supplies purchased by the Office of Pharmacy is issued by a manufacturer or other authorized agency, the District Pharmacist or Drug Coordinator will be notified of the procedure to follow to insure that all recalled public health issued drugs are removed from stock at the state, district and county level.

    For pharmaceutical supplies purchased by the district or county, the district pharmacist or drug coordinator would work with the drug manufacturer or wholesaler and pull any

recalled drugs. Documentation must be submitted to the State Office of Pharmacy upon request.

4. See the Georgia Immunization Program Manual, Storage and Handling Guidelines regarding the disposition of outdated, expired or wasted vaccines. The manual is located at https://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-publications

E. INVENTORY

1. Annual Inventory is an inventory of all drugs and/or devices in each health district, including all clinics/medication rooms, must be conducted, documented, and signed at the end of each fiscal year. See Appendix A for template. This inventory must include all drugs for use in public health whether these drugs are located in the district, the county health department or a local retail or hospital pharmacy. The completed annual inventory must be maintained on file at the district level for a period of two (2) years and a copy must be submitted by the second week of July to the State Office of Pharmacy on an annual basis. Inventory information on drugs purchased or supplied with state or federal funds must be submitted upon request.
2. Each health district should maintain a supply of drugs on hand within the district, adequate to supply the needs of the district, but not to exceed a three (3) month supply. Inventory levels for each drug should be established, and then reviewed and adjusted on a routine basis to maintain proper inventory control.
3. Vaccine inventory must be documented and managed in the Georgia Registry of Immunization Transactions and Services (GRITS). O.C.G.A. § 31-12-3.1

F. LABELING AND APPROPRIATE CONTAINERS

1. All drugs and/or devices for use in the health department shall be in appropriate containers (manufacturer's original package or prescription vial), including the use of:

    a. Child-proof containers.
    b. Light-resistant and moisture-proof containers.
    c. Adequately-labeled containers to identify, at a minimum, the brand name or generic name, strength, lot number and expiration date.

2. Any drug and/or device issued or dispensed to the patient for self-administration shall be in appropriate containers (manufacturer's original package or light resistant prescription vial, both with child-proof caps, unless a waiver is on file for non-safety caps) and labeled with the following information:

        a. Name, address and telephone number of the health district, health department or health center.
        b. Date and identifying serial number (at minimum, the three (3) digit county code and any other necessary identifying numbers).
        c. Full name of the patient.

d. Name of the drug and strength.
e. Name of drug manufacturer (optional).
f. Directions for use to the patient.
g. Name of delegating physician.
h. The expiration date of the drug.
i. Such other accessory cautionary information as may be required or desirable for proper use and safety to the patient.
j. FDA labeling requirement. For drug products dispensed in health departments, it is a requirement to provide the FDA Side Effect Statement, "Call your doctor for medical advice about side effects. You may report side effects to FDA at 1-800-FDA-1088." Each authorized dispenser or pharmacy must distribute the side effects statement with each prescription drug product dispensed. One or more of the following options to distribute the side effects statement must be selected:
    1) Distribute the side effects statement on a sticker attached to the unit package, vial, or container of the drug product,
    2) Distribute the side effects statement on a preprinted pharmacy prescription vial cap,
    3) Distribute the side effects statement on a separate sheet of paper,
    4) Distribute the side effects statement in consumer medication information, or
    5) Distribute the appropriate FDA-approved Medication Guide that contains the side effects statement.

3. All drugs must be identified up to the point of administration to, or use by, the patient. Therefore, the nurse should *READ LABELS THREE TIMES*.

    a. When the drug is selected from the storage area.
    b. When preparing, labeling, dispensing or administering the product.
    c. When returning the original container or package to the storage area or discarding it.

4. The contents and the label of every drug must be verified by the licensed individual authorized to dispense, issue or administer drugs before each drug is given to the patient.

5. When a dispensing nurse uses any person to assist in the measuring of quantities of medication and the typing of labels, excluding the dispensing of drugs, the dispensing nurse must be physically present in the dispensing area and actually observing the actions of such person in doing such measuring and typing, and the dispensing nurse must be the verifier of the contents and the label.

G. PATIENT COUNSELING COMPONENTS

The following patient counseling components are a requirement of the Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1990, and the Georgia State Board of Pharmacy Rules and Regulations. The purpose, in part, is to enhance the public health and welfare by requiring that consultation be offered to patients regarding their medications and various conditions that could affect or be affected by the use of those medications.

1. Patient Records

   a. A patient record system shall be maintained for patients for whom Prescription Drug Orders are dispensed or for whom drugs are dispensed under the authority of a nurse protocol or job description. The patient record system shall provide for the immediate retrieval of information necessary for the nurse or physician's assistant to identify previously dispensed drugs. Such patient's record shall contain, at a minimum:
      1) Full name of the patient for whom the drug is intended,
      2) Date of birth,
      3) Patient's gender, and
      4) Address of the patient (and telephone number if available).

   b. Unless the patient or the patient's agent refuses such information, the nurse or physician's assistant dispensing under the authority of a nurse protocol or job description shall make a reasonable effort to obtain from the patient or patient's agent and record:
      1) Any known allergies, drug reactions or idiosyncrasies,
      2) Chronic conditions or disease states of the patient, and
      3) The identity of any other drugs, including over-the-counter drugs, or medical devices currently used by the patient.

      If the patient or the patient's agent refuses to provide such information as listed above, it should be documented with the patient’s or patient’s agent’s signature.

   c. The nurse or physician's assistant dispensing under the authority of the nurse protocol or job description shall make a reasonable effort to obtain, record and maintain a list or record of all drug orders obtained by the patient at the site where the drug was dispensed within the preceding two (2) years, showing the following information:
      1) Name and strength of the drug,
      2) Quantity and date dispensed,
      3) Name of the nurse or physician's assistant ordering and dispensing the drug, and
      4) Comments from the nurse or physician's assistant relevant to the individual's drug therapy, including any other information peculiar to the specific patient or drug.

   d. A patient’s record shall be maintained for a period of not less than two (2) years

from the date of the last entry in the profile record.

2. Prospective Drug Review

   For the purpose of promoting therapeutic appropriateness, before ordering a drug(s) from a nurse protocol or job description and before dispensing any such drug(s), the nurse or physician's assistant shall, at a minimum, review the patient's records and each drug(s) ordered to identify:

   a. Drug over-utilization or under-utilization.
   b. Therapeutic duplications.
   c. Drug-disease contraindications.
   d. Drug-drug interactions.
   e. Incorrect dosage, dosage form or duration of therapy.
   f. Drug-allergy interaction(s).
   g. Clinical abuse or misuse.

   Upon recognizing any of the above, the nurse or physician's assistant ordering the drug shall take appropriate steps to avoid or resolve the problem including, if necessary, consultation with the delegating physician.

3. Patient Counseling

   a. Before dispensing a drug and/or device which has been ordered under the authority of a nurse protocol or job description, and following a review of the patient's record, the nurse or physician's assistant shall personally offer to discuss matters which will enhance or optimize drug therapy with each patient, or caregiver of such patient. Such discussion shall include appropriate elements of patient counseling, based on the professional judgment of the nurse or physician's assistant. Such elements may include but are not limited to the following:

      1) The name, strength and description of the drug.
      2) The dosage form, dose, route of administration and duration of drug therapy.
      3) Intended use of the drug and expected action or result.
      4) Any special directions and precautions for preparation, administration and use by the patient.
      5) Common, severe side effects, adverse effects or interactions, and therapeutic contraindications that may be encountered, including their avoidance, and the action required if they occur.
      6) Techniques for self-monitoring drug therapy.
      7) The proper storage of the drug.
      8) Follow-up information regarding the need for continued drug therapy, if applicable.
      9) Action to be taken in the event of a missed dose.
      10) Comments relevant to the individual's drug therapy, including any other information peculiar to the specific patient or drug.

b. Additional forms of patient information may be used to supplement verbal patient counseling when appropriate or available.
c. Documentation of drug and/or device counseling must be clearly noted in the patient's chart.

H. DRUG PROGRAMS/CONTRACTS

1. 340B Drug Pricing Program

   The 340B Drug Pricing Program resulted from enactment of Public Law 102-585, the Veterans Health Care Act of 1992, which is codified as Section 340B of the Public Health Service Act. Section 340B limits the cost of covered outpatient drugs to certain federal grantees, federally-qualified health center look-alikes and qualified disproportionate share hospitals.

   Source: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Health Resources and Service Administration, Office of Pharmacy Affairs.

   Eligible programs (covered entity) within Georgia Public Health:

   a. An entity receiving a grant under subpart II of part C of Title XXVI of the Ryan White Care Act (RWCA) (relating to categorical grants for outpatient early intervention services for HIV disease) - Early HIV Intervention Services Categorical Grants (Title III of the RWCA).
   b. A State-operated AIDS Drug Assistance Program (ADAP) receiving financial assistance under the RWCA.
   c. An entity receiving funds under section 318 (42 USCS §247c) (relating to treatment of sexually transmitted diseases) or section 317(j) (2) (42 USCS§247b (j) (2)) (relating to treatment of tuberculosis) through a State or unit of local government, but only if the entity is certified by the Secretary.

2. 340B Prime Vendor Program (PVP)

   The program is free and voluntary to facilities that are already 340B eligible. The 340B PVP provides additional savings to 340B participants registered with the Prime Vendor. The program provides access to 340B sub-ceiling prices for drug products, favorable rates to access multiple wholesale distributors, and access to other related value-added products. The PVP is free to all 340B covered entities, but the covered entity must enroll in the PVP. More information is located at https://www.340bpvp.com/

3. Minnesota Multistate Contracting Alliance for Pharmacy (MMCAP)

   MMCAP is a voluntary group purchasing organization operated and managed by the State of Minnesota serving government-authorized healthcare facilities. The state of Georgia is a MMCAP participant. The Department of Administrative Service (DOAS) is the administrator for Georgia. The goal of MMCAP is to provide member organizations

the combined purchasing power to receive the best prices available for pharmaceuticals, hospital supplies, and related products.

I. DISPENSING/ADMINISTERING OF 340B AND 340B PVP PRODUCTS

1. 340B and 340B PVP purchased products may only be administered/dispensed to a patient of the covered entity. The Office of Pharmacy Affairs has published final notice of guidelines on definition of a patient to allow a clearer understanding of which individuals may receive prescribed medications purchased at the legislatively mandated discount of Section 602of the Veterans Healthcare Act of 1992.

   In summary, an individual is a “patient” of a covered entity (with the exception of State-operated or funded AIDS drug purchasing assistance programs) only if:

   a. The covered entity has established a relationship with the individual, such that the covered entity maintains records of the individual's health care, and
   b. The individual receives health care services from a health care professional who is either employed by the covered entity or provides health care under contractual or other arrangements (e.g. referral for consultation) such that responsibility for the care provided remains with the covered entity; and
   c. The individual receives a health care service or range of services from the covered entity which is consistent with the service or range of services for which grant funding or Federally-qualified health center look-alike status has been provided to the entity. Disproportionate share hospitals are exempt from this requirement.

   An individual will not be considered a "patient" of the entity for purposes of 340B if the only health care service received by the individual from the covered entity is the dispensing of a drug or drugs for subsequent self-administration or administration in the home setting.

   An individual registered in a State operated AIDS drug purchasing assistance program receiving financial assistance under title XXVI of the PHS Act will be considered a "patient" of the covered entity for purposes of this definition if so registered as eligible by the State program.

   For more information, please refer to the October 1996 Final Notice Regarding Section 602 of the Veterans Health Care Act of 1992 Patient and Entity Eligibility.

2. 340B PVP may contract to allow use of pharmaceutical products to patients that do not meet the patient definition. The 340B PVP will provide notification on each product in this category to the participating 340B PVP entities.

J. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

1. The Prescription Drug Marketing Act (PDMA) of 1987 establishes legal safeguards for prescription drug distribution to ensure safe and effective pharmaceuticals. It was passed in response to the development of a wholesale sub-market (known as the

"diversion market") for prescription drugs. The Robinson-Patman Act (15 U.S.C. 13 (a)-(f)) specifically makes it unlawful for “one engaged in commerce to discriminate in price between different purchasers of commodities of like quality and grade where the effect may be substantially to lessen competition.”

2. The Food and Drug Administration

   The Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) is a codification of the general and permanent rules published in the Federal Register by the Executive departments and agencies of the Federal Government. Title 21 of the CFR is reserved for rules of the Food and Drug Administration. Each title (or volume) of the CFR is revised once each calendar year. A revised Title 21 is issued on approximately April 1st of each year.

   CFR 21 is downloaded from the files of the Government Printing Office (GPO) and contains the most recent revision. The CFR at GPO, both current and historical, can also be searched directly at https://www.accessdata.fda.gov/scripts/cdrh/cfdocs/cfcfr/cfrsearch.cfm.

   a. To report non-emergencies about medical products: medicines, medical devices, blood products, biologics, and special nutritionals:

      The FDA’s MedWatch program allows healthcare professionals and consumers to voluntarily report a serious adverse event, product quality problem or product use error, that they suspect are associated with the drugs, biologicals, medical devices, and dietary supplements they prescribe, dispense or use.

      These problems include serious adverse reactions and events, product quality problems and product use errors. Reporting can be done online, by phone, or by submitting the MedWatch 3500 form by mail or fax. Visit the MedWatch site, https://www.fda.gov/Safety/MedWatch/default.htm, for more details.

   b. To report non-emergencies about vaccines:

      Adverse reactions and other problems related to vaccines should be reported to the Vaccine Adverse Event Reporting System, which is maintained by FDA and the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. The vaccine reporting form may be found at http://vaers.hhs.gov. A copy of the form may also be obtained by calling 1-800-822-7967 or at the FDA website, http://www.fda.gov/.

3. Report accidental poisonings to Georgia Poison Center. 80 Jesse Hill Drive, SE P.O. Box 26066. Atlanta, GA. 30335-3801

   Emergency Phone: 1-800-222-1222
   TTY/TDD: (404) 616-9287
   Administrative Phone: (404) 616-9237

   Website: www.georgiapoisoncenter.org

THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY

TRANSPORTING DANGEROUS DRUGS

A. PURPOSE

The purpose of this protocol is to define the parameters, accountability standards and training required for the transport of dangerous drugs (i.e., drugs that are prescribed or ordered, which includes vaccines, but excludes controlled substances) between/among clinic sites by public health personnel.

The Protocol for Transporting Dangerous Drugs is consistent with the Attorney General Opinion 86-28 of 1986, which exempts state agencies from the Dangerous Drug Act. A letter from the Office of the Attorney General to the State Public Health Pharmacy Director in 1995 reaffirms that the state public health agencies would still not be subject to the requirements of the Dangerous Drug Act. The protocol does not conflict with Drug Enforcement Agency (DEA) requirements, as the protocol is only for dangerous drugs and does not include controlled substances. The protocol does not conflict with any Food and Drug Administration (FDA) requirements of federal laws.

Public Health employees, such as Immunization Program field staff and District Drug Coordinators, assigned job responsibilities for transporting dangerous drugs to meet specific program requirements, must comply with the training and accountability standards defined within this protocol. Public Health employees assigned job responsibilities for transporting dangerous drugs must meet the following criteria:

1. Have a signed job description which documents specific job responsibilities for transporting dangerous drugs to meet specific program requirements and which require compliance with the following performance standards:

    a. O.C.G.A. §16-13-72 (Sale, distribution or possession of dangerous drugs),
    b. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention Vaccine Storage and Handling Toolkit at https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/hcp/admin/storage/toolkit/, and
    c. Sections B, C, D, and E of the Drug Dispensing Procedure, in the manual, Nurse Protocols for Registered Professional Nurses in Public Health at http://dph.georgia.gov/nurse-protocols

2. Have completed a Transporting Dangerous Drugs Training Program, as approved by the Department of Public Health, at least once annually.

3. Received approval from the District Health Director or Program Director to transport vaccines and dangerous drugs.

4. Have complied with the job responsibilities for transporting dangerous drugs as documented in the specific job description and in accordance with a performance review completed at least once annually.

5. Have signed an acknowledgement statement prohibiting the transport of dangerous drugs to their home or any site other than a public health clinic site or site receiving state supplied vaccine.

B. ACCOUNTABILITY STANDARDS

Public Health personnel who transport dangerous drugs must comply with all standard operating procedures related to the storage and handling of dangerous drugs, including the following:

1. Overseeing proper receipt and storage of vaccine and drug shipments.

2. Preparing vaccine and drugs for transport.

3. Assuring appropriate storage of drugs and vaccine per manufacturer's recommendations.

4. Monitoring temperature and the environment of drug and vaccine storage areas and containers.

5. Using appropriate refrigerator/freezer or other storage environment.

6. Monitoring expiration dates of vaccines and drug stock.

7. Disposing of any spoiled or expired vaccine or drug.

8. Using proper containers for transport of drugs and vaccines.

9. Documenting transport and receipt of drugs and vaccines.

The approving District Health Director or Program Director must:

1. Be available during the time drugs are transported

2. Be accessible by phone for reporting any theft, damage, temperature excursions, and interruptions to the cold chain and/or violations in the storage requirements per product package inserts.

3. Comply with the guidelines, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention Vaccine Toolkit, at https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/hcp/admin/storage/toolkit/.

C. TRANSPORTING DANGEROUS DRUGS TRAINING COMPONENTS

The public health employee must minimally complete the following components at least once annually in order to be approved by the District Health Director or Program Director to transport dangerous drugs:

1. Read and understand the provision of the statute, pertaining to the sale distribution or possession of dangerous drugs, (O.C.G.A. § 16-13-72).

2. Read and understand the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention Vaccine

Storage and Handling Toolkit at https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/hcp/admin/storage/toolkit/.

3. Read and understand Sections B, C, D and E of the Drug Dispensing Procedure, in the manual, Nurse Protocols for Registered Professional Nurses in Public Health at http://dph.georgia.gov/nurse-protocols.

4. Review the requirements for transporting dangerous drugs with supervisor including any additional directives.

5. Observe at least two (2) onsite inspections of how dangerous drugs are stored, handled and transported from one public health clinic site to another with an employee who is approved to transport dangerous drugs.

6. Complete at least one (1) onsite inspection of a public health clinic site under supervision of an employee who is approved to transport dangerous drugs.

7. Execute an acknowledgment indicating that you have read and understood all requirements of the Transporting Drugs Training Components and agree to adhere all provisions.

Example of acknowledgement of completion of transporting dangerous drugs training components

I, _____, acknowledge that I have read and understood the following training components required by public health employees transporting drugs:

- (O.C.G.A. § 16-13-72) – pertaining to the sale, distribution or possession of dangerous drugs,
- The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention Vaccine Storage and Handling Toolkit at https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/hcp/admin/storage/toolkit/, and
- Sections B, C, D, and E of the Drug Dispensing Procedure in the Standard Nurse Protocols for Registered Professional Nurses manual at http://dph.georgia.gov/nurse-protocols.

I further acknowledge that I have discussed the requirements for transporting dangerous drugs with my supervisor and had the opportunity to ask questions to clarify any component of the requirements.

I further acknowledge that I am prohibited from transporting dangerous drugs to my home or any other site other than a public health clinic site or site that receives state-supplied vaccine.

Having read and understood the requirements associated with transporting dangerous drugs, I agree to be bound by the terms as set forth in the training components', applicable documents and directives of my supervisor and approving authority.

_____
Signature of Employee

_____
Signature of Supervisor

_____
Transport approved by: Signature of District Health Director or Program Director

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

ORIENTATION, TRAINING, AND QUALITY ASSURANCE FOR NURSE PROTOCOLS

A. INITIAL ORIENTATION AND TRAINING

A comprehensive orientation and training program ensure that registered professional nurses are effectively integrated into the Public Health system, are prepared to practice under the authority of nurse protocols, are introduced to the concepts of population health-based nursing practice and contribute to quality assurance and quality improvement (QA/QI) for public health nursing practice.

Orientation and training of Public Health Nurses includes both the general orientation given to all new public health employees and more specific clinical orientation and training necessary to function under standards and nurse protocols for one or more specific programs. **The Office of Nursing, in collaboration with State Office Nurses, has the responsibility to set training and practice standards in accordance with the most current research and evidence-based practice. The way the standards are implemented is determined by those who govern the day-to-day activities of public health programs and services at the local level. The Quality Assurance/Quality Improvement for Public Health Nursing Practice Manual provides specific standards, training, and measurement tools for improving the quality of public health nursing practice in Georgia. Initial and annual training requirements are delineated in Section IV of the QA/QI Manual. This provides a standard for nurses to assure their preparation and competency in practicing under nurse protocol.** Although, orientation and training should be individualized as much as possible per the expertise the nurse brings to the job, and to meet the needs of the particular public health setting, individual RNs practicing under nurse protocol must complete all listed initial required trainings prior to practicing under a specific nurse protocol.

The clinical orientation may be concurrent with the general orientation. By observing other nurses and beginning to perform some tasks under supervision, the nurse should gain understanding of the role of the Public Health Nurse and the use of nurse protocols in the delivery of **health** services.

District/county orientation, training, and QA/QI plans should be consistent with nursing practice standards and Department of Public Health guidelines such as the latest Quality Assurance/Quality Improvement for Public Health Nursing Practice manual, programmatic manuals, and nurse protocols which may be viewed at http://dph.georgia.gov/resourcesformsmanuals.

The tools and guidelines found in Orientation to Public Health Nursing Practice Under Nurse Protocol may be used in orientation, training, and for manual updates. **https://dph.georgia.gov/trainDPH.**

B. TRAINING

Every Public Health Nurse should have the opportunity for continuing education and training in accordance with changes in technology**,** job responsibilities, **and professional growth**. Training programs are an appropriate way to educate nurses about any changes to nurse protocols after the annual review.

C. DOCUMENTATION OF TRAINING

Each RN and APRN is responsible for documenting examples of their professional growth and development at least once annually (e.g., workshops, seminars, community/professional meetings).

RNs and APRNs **must document all required training to demonstrate that they** are prepared **and competent** to practice under standards and nurse protocols for one or more specific programs. **These records must** be maintained on file for five years at the district office and by the individual nurse.

Training files must be made available for review by RNs and APRNs during QA/QI reviews.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHILD HEALTH NURSE PROTOCOLS

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHILD HEALTH NURSE PROTOCOLS
CLINICAL REVIEW TEAM

Nicola C. Chin, M.D., F.A.A.P. **Your Children Our Future, LLC** **Atlanta, GA**	Takieya Jones, BSN, RN, CLC Child Health Clinical Coordinator Georgia Department of Public Health
Thomas Craft, Jr., M.D. **District Health Director** **South Central Health District**	Stacey Upshaw, RN, MSN Assistant Nursing Director South Central Health District
Kay Davis, RN, MSN Assistant Clinical Coordinator Immunization Coordinator Southeast Health District	**Jennifer F. Harrison, FNP-C** **Family Nurse Practitioner** **County Nurse Manager** **Emanuel County Health Department** **East Central Health District**
C. Paige Lightsey, RN **Immunization Program Coordinator** **Child Health Program Coordinator** **Perinatal Hepatitis B Program Coordinator** **Coastal Health District**	**Jodi Waters, RN, BSN** **Children First** **Children's Medical Services** **Coastal Health District**
Selina G. Moon, RPh **Pharmacy** **Cobb-Douglas Health District**	**Rachel D. Agnew, RD, LD** **WIC Regional Advisor** **Georgia Department of Public Health**

BRIGHT FUTURES, NEWBORN SCREENING, LEAD SCREENING

Public Health nurses will utilize the current edition of the American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP) Bright Futures Guidelines and periodicity schedule as their policy for providing well-child assessments in the public health setting.

Information about the current Bright Futures Guidelines is available on AAP's website: https://brightfutures.aap.org/materials-and-tools/guidelines-and-pocket-guide/Pages/default.aspx

The current Bright Futures Guidelines periodicity schedule is available online: https://www.aap.org/en-us/Documents/periodicity_schedule.pdf

Additional guidance for routine screening and follow-up of certain conditions will be provided through the Georgia Department of Public Health programs listed below:

1. **Newborn Screening Program:**

   Most babies appear healthy and show no signs of illness right after birth. However, some infants may be born with certain heritable diseases that can lead to disability or death. When detected early, many of these disorders can be managed and can prevent the occurrence of adverse health outcomes.

   The Newborn Screening (NBS) Program coordinates a multi-partner system for the early detection and intervention of congenital and heritable conditions. The Georgia Newborn Screening Policy and Procedure Manual will provide guidance on the implementation of newborn screening for genetic/metabolic, hearing, and critical congenital heart disease (CCHD) screening. This manual is also intended to be used as a resource guide for newborn screening in Georgia.

   The GA Newborn Screening Policy and Procedure Manual can be found on the DPH website: https://dph.georgia.gov/sites/dph.georgia.gov/files/MCH/NBS/Georgia_Newborn_Screening_Manual_b_0.pdf

2. **Lead Screening/Healthy Homes Program:**

   Screening for lead poisoning helps identify children who need interventions to reduce their blood lead levels. Many children who may have been exposed to lead or who are at risk for lead poisoning go without being screened. This makes their chances of being harmed by lead greater. A blood test is the preferred method for lead screening. There are two tests used to obtain blood lead specimens, capillary blood test or venous blood test.

   Lead Screening, Case Management, Lab Submissions, and Reporting Guidelines can be found on the GA DPH website: https://dph.georgia.gov/lead-screening-case-management-lab-submissions-reporting-guidelines

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR MILD ACNE

DEFINITION

Comedones (blackheads, whiteheads), pimples and tender red bumps on the face, chest or back, or any combination. Usually occurs during puberty and can last until age 20-30.

Whiteheads are closed comedones. They are small white raised bumps blocked by a thin layer of epithelium.

Blackheads are open comedones. They are small plugs of darkened sebum and dead skin cells that fill a skin pore.

ETIOLOGY

Due to increasingly active androgenic hormones, there is increased activity of sebaceous glands. **Obstruction of some sebaceous glands** leads to rupture of the gland and release of sebum **(**a fatty acid**)** into the surrounding tissue resulting in an inflammatory reaction producing an acne nodule. Bacterial colonization of the trapped sebum **with Cutibacterium acnes** may produce **further** inflammation **and/or superficial infection**.

SUBJECTIVE

Patient may complain of blackheads, whiteheads, pimples to face, chest, and/or back.

Patient may report:

a. Use of acne-causing medications (e.g., corticosteroids, phenytoin, greasy cleansing creams, cosmetics, oils).
b. Underlying endocrinopathy (e.g., polycystic ovary syndrome, congenital adrenal hyperplasia**/androgens**).
c. Condition often worsens during periods of stress or cyclic menstrual flares.
d. Psychological distress caused by presence of facial lesions.
e. Family history of acne.

OBJECTIVE

Physical examination may reveal the following criteria that are useful in classifying acne **(Noninflammatory versus Inflammatory):**

Noninflammatory, or Comedonal Acne, are closed and/or open comedones without tenderness or erythema.

Inflammatory acne has inflammatory components consisting of erythematous papules, pimples, small pustules or nodules.

a. Mild inflammatory **acne**: scattered small whiteheads, with minimum blackheads, and tender red bumps on face; most common in early teens and adult women in their 20s. **Consists of less than 20 comedones and less than 15 inflammatory lesions**.
b. Generalized inflammatory **acne**: generalized eruption of pimples and

whiteheads on the face and trunk;

c. Severe inflammatory **acne**: large, deep inflammatory nodules associated with pimples and whiteheads. May also leave scarring.

Data Review: It is also necessary to assess female's pregnancy status by either asking last menstrual period or performing pregnancy test.

ASSESSMENT Acne, **(**Mild**, generalized or severe** Inflammatory**)**

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Non-prescription products

    a. If 12 years of age or older, for mild acne (fewer than 20 papules and non-pustular pimples):
        1) Benzoyl peroxide gel or cream, 5-10%, topically (available over-the-counter **(e.g., Benziq, BP Gel, Acne Medication 5, Acne Medication 10, Neutrogena On-The-Spot etc.)**. Use gel for oily skin, cream for dry skin.
        2) Begin with 5% gel or cream daily.
        3) Leave initial application on for 15 minutes. Increase exposure time in 15-minute increments as tolerance allows.
        4) Once tolerated for 2 hours, it can be left on the skin overnight.
        5) If necessary, advance to 2 times a day.
        6) Increase or decrease the strength and/or frequency of application depending on tolerance and response **(such as excessive drying or peeling).**
        7) Advise to use skin protection (e.g., sunscreen and minimize prolonged exposure to sun or tanning beds).

    NOTE: For patients with predominantly whiteheads and blackheads **(Noninflammatory or** Comedonal Acne) with very few inflammatory components (erythematous papules, pimples or small pustules), this therapy will not be effective. Topical retinoids **give the best results for comedonal acne**, and referral is indicated if treatment is desired.

2. Prescription products

If non-prescription products listed above yields an insufficient response after a trial of at least 4-6 weeks, **topical benzoyl peroxide and topical antimicrobial regimen are added to optimize efficacy:**

a. If 12 years of age or older, for mild acne (fewer than 20 papules and non-pustular pimples):
    1) Each morning wash with Benzoyl peroxide, gel or cream, 5-10%, topically pat dry.
    2) Apply a thin layer of either Clindamycin Topical Gel 1% or Erythromycin Topical Gel 2%.
    3) Each evening apply Benzoyl peroxide gel or cream5-10%, topically as described above.
    4) May apply Clindaymcin Topical Gel 1% or Erythromycin Topical Gel 2% either once daily or twice daily depending on irritation and effectiveness.

OR

b. Benzoyl peroxide plus erythromycin (Benzamycin®), contains 3% erythromycin and 5% benzoyl peroxide in gel form (alcohol base), generic available. Apply 1-2 times a day to clean, dry skin.

OR

c. 5% benzoyl peroxide plus 1% clindamycin gel (BenzaClin®), **generic available**. Apply 1-2 times a day to clean, dry skin**.**

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Shampoo hair regularly.

2. Gently wash face with water and mild soap or cleanser (e.g. Dove, Basis, Purpose, Cetaphil lotion) no more than **1-2** times a day**,** and shower or bathe daily. **Explain that cleansers result in less skin peeling, dryness and irritation than soap.**

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Keep hands off face. Avoid picking lesions which may lead to scar formation **and/or secondary infection**.

2. Avoid greasy cleansing oils, mousse and cosmetics because they

block oil glands. Use non **comedogenic** cosmetics, moisturizers **and hair products** if needed. Cover face when using hair spray.

3. Avoid scrubbing skin, because it **can increase aggravation of inflammatory acne and promote development of new acne lesions**.

4. Do not expect to completely prevent any new lesions.

5. Eat a well-balanced diet for general health and well-being. There is limited evidence that **suggests** using specific dietary strategies **as adjuvant therapy** to decrease acne symptoms or prevent acne. **Specific strategies include having diets with low glycemic load index and decreasing ingredients such as whey protein content in milk.**

6. Educate patient about increased photosensitivity with use of products listed above.

7. When applying medications listed above, avoid contact with eyes, inside of nose, mouth and all mucous membranes.

8. When applying medications listed above, avoid contact with **bedding**, clothing or hair. Some bleaching/staining may occur.

9. Contact clinic if any problems obtaining medications.

FOLLOW-UP

Return to clinic in 2 to 4 weeks after initiating therapy, then every 1 to 2 months to assess improvement of acne.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present. When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol.

1. Patient is less than 12 years of age.

2. No improvement in mild acne in 8-12 weeks.

3. Secondary bacterial infection.

4. Acne is moderate, severe or cystic, refer to MD or APRN.

5. An underlying condition suspected, refer to MD or APRN.

6. Blackheads and whiteheads are the predominant lesions **(non-inflammatory acne).**

7. Pregnant or breastfeeding patient.

8. Any female with acne, menstrual irregularities (primarily oligomenorrhea) or hirsutism (unusual body hair**), which** may be suggestive of polycystic ovary syndrome.

9. Refer to **Women's Health Program** if indicated. Adolescent girls may benefit from oral contraceptives (RN may still provide care under this protocol).

10. Refer for counseling if acne is due to psychological stress (RN may still provide care under this protocol).

REFERENCES

1. **Thomas K. McInery, et al., *American Academy of Pediatrics Textbook of Pediatric Care,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2017, Part 7, Chapter 209.**

2. Carol K. Taketomo, et al., "Pediatric and Neonatal Dosage Handbook, 19th ed., Lexi-Comp, Hudson, Ohio, 2012, pp. 401-402.

3. U.S. National Library of Medicine, "Polycystic Ovary Syndrome," *MedLine Plus Polycystic Ovary Syndrome*, February 2013, http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/000369.htm (March 23, 2013).

4. Graber, Amy. Treatment of Acne Vulgaris, UpToDate, **(last updated October 11, 2018).**

5. **Kahl & Hughes. "The Harriet Lane Handbook." 21st ed., Elsevier. Chapter 8, pp 203-228.**

6. American Academy of Dermatology. "Growing Evidence Suggests Possible Link Between Diet and Acne." https://www.aad.org/media/news-releases/growing-evidence-suggests-possible-link-between-diet-and-acne. (February 5, 2013).

7. Burris, Rietkurk, Shikany, & Woolf. "A Low Glycemic Load Diet Improves the Hormonal Response Associated with Acne in a Cohort of Adults with Moderate and Severe Acne." September 2016. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jand.2016.06.132

8. Marcason, W. Milk Consumption and Acne. Journal of the American Dietetic Association. 2010.

9. **Barbieri, Spaccarelli, et al., "Approaches to limit systemic antibiotic use in acne: Systemic alternatives, emerging topical therapies, dietary modification, and laser and light-based treatments" Journal of the American Academy of Dermatology, 2019-02-01, Volume 80, Issue 2, pp 538-549.**

10. **Lexicomp, "Lexicomp Online," Wolter Kluwer Health, Inc. 2019.** <https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/6844?cesid=5H51zipXuWE&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dbenzoyl%2520peroxide%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dbenzo yl%2520pero#monograph-tab-content> accessed **September 19, 2019.**

11. **Lexicomp, "Lexicomp Online," Wolter Kluwer Health, Inc. 2019. <** https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/6633?cesid=a0jDdnFPvYd&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dbenzoyl%2520peroxide%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dbenzoyl%2520pero> **Accessed September 19, 2019**.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PEDIATRIC ALLERGIC RHINITIS

DEFINITION An allergic disease affecting the nasal mucosa and often the conjunctiva. It may be seasonal **(**due to pollens that depend on wind for cross-pollination**)**, or **it may be** perennial (non-seasonal).

ETIOLOGY Seasonal **Allergic Rhinitis**

In the eastern United States, the following are the most common causes, with pollination time varying by several months depending on location:

a. Ragweed, August – October
b. Grasses, May - July
c. Trees, March – July
d. Combinations of a, b and c

Perennial **Allergic Rhinitis**

a. House dust/house-dust mites
b. Feathers
c. Mold spores
d. Animal dander
e. Foods **-** Most authorities believe that if foods are causative, other signs of hypersensitivity occur with allergic rhinitis (e.g., urticaria, asthma, gastro-intestinal symptoms).

Aggravating factors:

a. Tobacco smoke
b. Air pollutants
c. Sudden temperature changes.
d. Wood heaters, fireplaces, carpets, etc.
e. **Strong smells (perfumes, bleach**)

SUBJECTIVE Patient may report:

a. Seasonal symptoms that tend to occur the same time each year:

    1. Nasal itching, congestion and watery drainage.
    2. Itchy eyes with excessive tearing.
    3. Postnasal drip with sore throat, cough and itchiness.

b. Coexisting atopic diseases such as eczema, food allergies or asthma.
c. Significant impact on school performance and sleep patterns.

OBJECTIVE Physical examination may reveal:

a. Clear, thin nasal discharge.
b. Nasal mucosa may be normal to pink to pale gray and edematous.
c. Enlarged nasal turbinates.
d. “Allergic salute" - rubbing of the nose upward and outward (seen especially in children) and "wrinkling" of the nose
e. “**Allergic crease” – transverse line across the nose causing a nasal crease.**
f. Conjunctival injection with or without clear drainage and dark semi-circles (“allergic shiners") under the eyes.
g. Mouth breathing

ASSESSMENT Allergic Rhinitis

Seasonal – rule out:

a. Upper respiratory tract infection
b. Infectious conjunctivitis
c. Any food allergies.

Perennial – rule out:

a. Recurrent upper respiratory tract infection
b. Vasomotor rhinitis (of unknown cause, non-infectious, non-seasonal, and non-allergenic).
c. Deviated nasal septum.
d. Side effects of medications, such as overuse of vasoconstricting nose drops/sprays.
e. Chronic sinusitis.
f. Chronic contact with tobacco smoke (smoke is a primary irritant, allergy not required).

PLAN **DATA REVIEW: Consider obtaining allergy panel specific for northern or southern Georgia dependent on patient’s residential region.**

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Nasal Corticosteroids:

For age 2 and over with seasonal allergic rhinitis, a nasal corticosteroid is regarded as first-line therapy (before using oral antihistamines).

a. Mometasone furoate nasal spray, (Nasonex®)
1) Children 2-11 years of age**,** 50mcg (1 spray) in each

nostril once daily (total daily dose 100mcg).

2) Children 12 years of age and older, 100mcg (2 sprays) in each nostril daily (total daily dose 200 mcg).

NOTE: Priming **the pump** - Prior to initial use, the pump must be primed by actuating **up to** 10 times or until a fine spray appears. The pump may be stored unused for up to 1 week without re-priming. If unused for more than 1 week, re-prime by actuating 2 times, or until a fine spray appears.

OR

b. Fluticasone propionate nasal spray, (50mcg/actuation) or available as OTC products (Flonase® Allergy Relief, GoodSense Nasoflow)

1) Adolescents and Children (aged 4 years to 11 years): 1 to 2 sprays per nostril once daily (total dose 100 to 200 mcg/day); maximum daily dose: 2 sprays per nostril once daily (total daily dose: 200 mcg/day). Once symptoms are controlled, reduce dose to 1 spray per nostril once daily (total daily dose: 100mcg/day).

Children > 12 years and Adolescents: 2 sprays per nostril once daily (total daily dose:200 mcg/day).

OR

c. Fluticasone furoate, Flonase Sensimist 27.5mcg/spray available as OTC product

1) Children 2-11 years: initial 1 spray (27.5mcg/spray) per nostril once daily (55 mcg/day). Patients not adequately responding may use 2 sprays per nostril once daily (110 mcg/day). Once symptoms are controlled, dosage may be reduced to 55 mcg once daily. Total daily dosage should not exceed 2 sprays in each nostril (110 mcg)/day.
2) Children 12 years of age and older: Initial: 2 sprays (27.5 mcg/spray) per nostril once daily (110 mcg/day). Once symptoms are controlled, dosage may be reduced to 1 spray per nostril once daily (55 mcg/day). Total daily dosage should not exceed 2 sprays in each nostril (110 mcg)/day.

Prime before using for the first time by shaking the contents well and releasing 6 test sprays into the air away from the

face. When fluticasone has not been used for more than 30 days or if the cap has been left off the bottle for 5 days or longer, prime the pump again until a fine mist appears. Shake well before each use.

OR

d. Triamcinolone acetonide aqueous suspension nasal spray**,** (55mcg/actuation), available as OTC products GoodSense Nasal Allergy Spray, Nasacort Allergy 24HR, Nasacort Allergy 24HR Children)
   1) Children 2-5 years: 55 mcg (1 spray) each nostril once daily (total daily dose 110 mcg).
   2) Children 6-11 years: Initial: 110 mcg/day as 1 spray in each nostril once daily; may increase to 220 mcg/day as 2 sprays in each nostril if response not adequate; once symptoms controlled may reduce to 110 mcg/day.
   3) Children 12 years and older: initial 220mcg/day as 2 sprays in each nostril once daily; titrate to lowest effective dose once symptoms are controlled; usual maintenance dose: 110mcg/day as 1 spray in each nostril once daily.
   4) **Discontinue use if symptoms after 3 weeks are not adequately controlled.**

   Prime before using for the first time by shaking the contents well and releasing 5 sprays into the air, away from the face. It will remain adequately primed for 2 weeks. If the product is not used for more than 2 weeks, then it can be adequately re-primed with 1 spray.

NOTE: For the above list of inhaled **nasal** corticosteroids, it is recommended that once optimal symptomatic relief is achieved, dosage of the drug should be gradually reduced to the lowest effective dose.

The preparations listed above are preferred because of low systemic bioavailability and therefore less risk of systemic complications with chronic use**. For best control of symptoms through the active allergen season, up to 4 to 8 weeks may be needed before trial off medication.**

2. Antihistamines:

   a. Cetirizine/Zyrtec® Liquid 5mg/5mL, chewable 5mg tablet, tablet 5mg or 10 mg (available OTC).
      1) 2 years- 5 years: ½ - 1 teaspoon (2.5 to 5mg) PO every day or ½ teaspoon every 12 hours.

2) 6 years-11 years: 5mg to 10mg PO every day.
3) 12 years or older: 1tab (10mg) PO every day.

OR

b. Loratadine/Claritin® Liquid 5mg/5mL, chewable 5mg tablet, orally disintegrating 5mg tablet, tablet 10mg (available OTC):
   1) 2 years-5 years: 1 teaspoon (5mg) PO every day
   2) 6 years-11 years: 10mg PO every day.
   3) 12 years or older: 10mg PO every day.

NOTE: Manipulation of dosage within the prescribed ranges may be necessary to achieve symptomatic relief with a minimum of side effects (e.g., drowsiness, dry mouth, nervousness). Medication should be taken for several days/weeks at a time during symptomatic periods. Intermittent single dose usage will not be as effective in controlling symptoms as regular dosing. Use loratadine and cetirizine with caution in patients with hepatic and renal impairment.

Some loratadine tablets may contain phenylalanine; use with caution in patients with phenylketonuria.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Infants and toddlers less than 2 years of age**:** If needed for nasal congestion use saline nose drops; 1 to 2 drops in each nostril, followed by gentle aspiration of nasal secretions with rubber suction bulb **or NoseFrida**, particularly before feeding. Caution: may aggravate nasal congestion if nasal mucosa is injured (Available products: Ayr Baby Saline; Ayr Saline Drops; NaSal Saline Drops; Simply Saline Baby).

2. Children 2 years and above: If needed for nasal congestion, use saline nose drops; 2 to 6 drops in each nostril every 2 hours. (Available products: Ayr Baby Saline, Ayr Saline, Little Noses, Simply Saline Baby, Ocean for Kids.

3. **Children 4 years and above: Consider nasal irrigation as an adjunctive therapy one or two times a day: Isotonic saline or mild hypertonic saline packets mixed with distilled water (no tap water) for positive pressure irrigation. Safe and effective when used and cleaned properly and replaced every few months. (Neil's Sinus Rinse Kit).**

PATIENT COUNSELING/EDUCATION

1. Identification and avoidance of the offending antigen.

2. Most antihistamines cause drowsiness. Cetrizine and loratadine are known to be the least sedating. Counsel against driving or other activities that would present a risk if drowsy.

3. Cetirizine may cause photosensitivity reactions. Avoid sun exposure. Wear protective clothing and sunscreen while taking this medication.

4. For nasal corticosteroids, educate on the importance of priming and shaking the containers before administering medication; Optimal technique:

    a. Gently blow nose prior to use,
    b. Direct away from the septum, and
    c. Tilt head slightly forward to prevent swallowing the spray. **("Look toward your toes to spray your nose" and "If you taste it, you waste it.")**

5. The patient should be instructed to consult their primary care provider of any recurrent epistaxis, nasal septum discomfort, irritation burning and/or stinging.

6. Females of child-bearing potential should inform clinician if they are or plan to become pregnant or plan to breastfeed.

7. Remind patient to drink a few sips of water or liquid after using nasal spray to help reduce throat irritation.

8. Some loratadine tablets may contain phenylalanine. Use with caution in patients with phenylketonuria **(PKU) and patients with renal and hepatic impairment.**

9. Take the following measures as appropriate:

    a. Seasonal
        1) Avoid areas with heavy concentration of ragweed, trees or grass during pollinating season. **Can check allergy count through Atlanta Allergy & Asthma Pollen Counting Station (website).**
        2) Strategize time outdoors: pollen counts can be higher in early morning between 5 am and 10 am and late evening.
        3) Sleep with bedroom windows closed during the

appropriate pollinating seasons.
4) Use an air conditioner with an electrostatic precipitating filter to avoid pollen. Clean filter often.
5) Change clothes and bathe after long periods outside.
6) Do not hang clothes or bedding outside.

b. Perennial
1) Create a dust-free bedroom. Use a mouth-and-nose mask when cleaning.
2) Remove everything from the room, including floor coverings, curtains, drapes, and closet contents. Keep door closed always.
3) Clean the room thoroughly - walls, woodwork, ceiling, floor and closet. Wash the floor.
4) Cover the mattress, box spring, and pillows with plastic dust-proof covers.
5) Make sure the room contains a minimum of furniture, washable rugs and curtains. Avoid bed pads, heavy rugs, drapes, upholstered furniture, **stuffed** toys and knick-knacks. **No carpet floors are preferred**
6) Clean the room daily using a vacuum cleaner, damp cloth or damp mop. Do not use a broom or duster.
7) Keep bedroom windows and doors closed. If hot-air heating is used, cover vents with coarse muslin which is changed frequently.
8) Change furnace air filter frequently.
9) Vacuum stuffed furniture and rugs frequently.
10) Keep pets (dogs and cats) outside, if possible.
11) Avoid damp and dusty places (e.g., attics, basements, closets, storerooms).
12) No stuffed toys if patient is dust-sensitive.
13) Use an air conditioner with an electrostatic precipitating filter to avoid dust.
14) No smoking inside the house, especially in child's bedroom.

9. Contact clinic if any problems obtaining medications.

FOLLOW-UP

Return visit in one week, and periodically as needed to assess resolution and/or improvement of symptoms.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are

present (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. Failure to respond to treatment, or severe/prolonged periods of symptoms not controlled by the above treatment measures (especially persistent interference with sleep or school performance), consult with physician.

2. Consideration for immunotherapy (hyposensitization), or leukotriene receptor antagonist.

3. Inability to tolerate antihistamines.

4. Patient requiring almost daily medication for perennial symptoms.

5. Patient requiring more than **three** orders for nasal corticosteroids **per season**.

6. Patients who are pregnant or breastfeeding.

7. Complications:

    a. Otitis media.
    b. Sinusitis.
    c. Nasal or sinus polyps from longstanding perennial allergic rhinitis.
    d. Asthma.
    e. History of anaphylaxis.
    f. Hepatic or renal impairment.

8. Consult registered dietitian nutritionist (RD/RDN) if food allergy related. Children ages 0-5 years of age may be eligible for nutrition assessment, education, and counseling through the WIC Program.

REFERENCES

1. L. Lai, T. Casale, J. Stokes, "Pediatric Allergic Rhinitis: Treatment," Immunology and Allergy Clinics of North America, 2005, 25:283-299. (Current)

2. **Thomas K. McInery, et al, *American Academy of Pediatrics Textbook of Pediatric Care,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2017, Part 7, Chapter 212.**

3. **American Academy of Allergy Asthma and Immunology, "Outdoor allergens: Tips to remember."** (February 11, 2013). https://aaaai.execinc.com/store/product.asp?productid=90

4. D. V. Wallace, M. S. Dykewicz, D. I. Bernstein, J. Blessing-Moore, L. Cox, D. A. Khan, et al., "The Diagnosis and Management of Rhinitis: An Updated Practice Parameter," *Journal of Allergy and Clinical Immunology,* 122(2), August 2008. (Current)

5. **Merck Sharp and Dohme Corp, "Nasonex"** https://www.merck.com/product/usa/pi_circulars/n/nasonex/nasonex_pi.pdf (Copyright © 1997-2018)

6. **M.A. Papadakis, S. J. McPhee, *Current Medical Diagnosis and Treatment,* McGraw-Hill, New York, 2013, (current edition)**

7. **American Academy of Allergy Asthma and Immunology, "Rhinitis (Hay Fever)"** https://www.aaaai.org/conditions-and-treatments/library/allergy-library/rhinitis (Article 2019).

8. Carol Berkowitz, *Berkowtiz's Pediatrics: A Primary Care Approach,* 3rd ed., USA, 2008, pp. 413-414. (Current)

9. *Nasacort®AQ, sanofi-aventis U.S. LLC, Bridgewater, NJ, 2010.*

10. Carol K. Taketomo, et al., *Pediatric and Neonatal Dosage Handbook,* 19th ed., Lexicomp, Hudson, Ohio, 2012, pp. 346, 347, 746, 747, 1041, 1042.

11. Facts and Comparison, "Facts and Comparisons," *Wolters Kluwer*. https://fco.factsandcomparisons.com/lco/action/search?q=xyzal&t=name&va=#f_warnings-precautions>accessed **September 19, 2019.**

12. Facts and Comparison, "Facts and Comparisons," *Wolters Kluwer* https://fco.factsandcomparisons.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/fc_dfc/5549031 August 15, 2017.

13. Facts and Comparison, "Facts and Comparisons," *Wolters Kluwer* *https://fco.factsandcomparisons.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/fc_dfc/5549029 August 15,2017.*

14. **Kahl & Hughes. "The Harriet Lane Handbook." 21st ed., Elsevier, Chapter 8, pp. 203-228.**

15. **Principi, Nicola, Esposito, Susanna, et al. "Nasal Irrigation: An imprecisely Defined Medical Procedure" Int J Environ Res Public Health. 2017 May: 14 (5):516.**

16. **Fluticasone (nasal): Pediatric drug information Lexicomp Copyright 1978-2019 Lexicomp, Inc.**

17. **Lexicomp Online. Wolters Kluwer, 2019. <** https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/1802823?cesid=5NSVc5NWYvA&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dtriamcinoilone%2520acetonide%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dtriamcinoilone%2520acetonide#ainl> **accessed September 19, 2019**

18. **Lexicomp Online. Wolters Kluwer, 2019. <** https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/340?cesid=a3PlhJKfVlk&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dfluticasone%2520propionate%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dfluticasone> **accessed September 19, 2019**

19. **Lexicomp Online. Wolters Kluwer, 2019. <** https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/pdh_f/6496808?cesid=3BSYkgCVGaw&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dzyrtec%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dzyrtec#admp> **accessed September 19, 2019**

20. **Lexicomp Online. Wolters Kluwer, 2019. <** https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/pdh_f/1062164?cesid=0Ey01ab8ybG&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dxyzal%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dxyzal> **accessed September 19, 2019**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR IMPACTED CERUMEN/EARWAX

DEFINITION Ear wax is a protective waxy secretion produced in the ear canal. It is a lubricant that in most cases eliminates naturally. Because it is a hydrophobic agent (repels water) it serves to protect the delicate skin of the ear canal from maceration secondary to over-hydration. Cerumen impaction is an accumulation of cerumen in the ear canal that causes symptoms (e.g., ear pain, tinnitus, fullness in the ear, hearing loss or vertigo) or prevents assessment of the ear, or both. By this definition, cerumen impaction can occur when cerumen in the ear canal prevents needed assessment even if the canal is only partially occluded. When visualization of ear canal anatomy or the tympanic membrane is not essential to good care**,** and **the presence of excessive wax** is not associated with symptoms, cerumen in the ear canal is **NOT** considered "impacted". Excessive or impacted cerumen occurs in 1 in 10 children

ETIOLOGY An excessive production of sebum by the sebaceous glands and apocrine sweat glands may cause occlusion in the external auditory canal. Impaction often occurs after objects are inserted into the ear canal in attempts to clean the ear.

SUBJECTIVE Patient/care-giver may have:

a. Observed soft, yellow wax or a drier, black and brown wax on the outer surface of the external auditory canal.
b. Noticed hearing impairment, ear pain, tinnitus, vertigo, **itching, odor or discharge from the ear,** or ear fullness.

OBJECTIVE Physical examination may reveal:

a. Yellow wax or a drier black and brown wax on the outer surface of the ear, or **in** the auditory canal.
b. May or may not detect hearing impairment.

ASSESSMENT Excess Cerumen or Impacted Cerumen

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Carbamide peroxide product

   For child **3 to less than** 12 years: Tilt head sideways and instill into the affected ear(s) 1 to 5 drops (individualize based on child's size) of carbamide peroxide product, e.g., Debrox or Auro, twice daily for up to 4 days. Allow the drops to remain in the ear for several minutes by

keeping the head tilted. **Then** tilt head in opposite direction to allow fluid to drain from ear**.**

For child 12 years and older: Tilt head sideways and instill 5 to 10 drops of carbamide peroxide product, e.g., Debrox or Auro, into affected ear(s) twice daily for up to 4 days. Allow the drops to remain in the ear for several minutes by keeping the head tilted. **Then** tilt head in opposite direction to allow fluid to drain from ear.

NOTE: These agents should be avoided if there is a reason to believe that the tympanic membrane is not intact (such as H/O ventilation tube placement, **ear perforation** or recent ear discharge). Do not use if there is ear pain, irritation, rash in the ear, or any suspicion of ear drum perforation.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC

Home remedy (For children 3 years and older who are cooperative): Can soften the wax using a few drops of baby oil, mineral oil, glycerin, or diluted hydrogen peroxide. After a day or two of softening, tilt head, straighten ear canal by pulling outer ear up, and using a rubber bulb syringe, can irrigate by squirting warm water into the ear. Tip head to side to let water drain out and gently dry outer ear If symptoms do not improve after one to two trials, return for evaluation.

NOTE: Do Not Perform if there is a presence of ear tube or ear perforation.

PATIENT COUNSELING/EDUCATION

1. Instruct to clean the ears properly, preferably with a washcloth.

2. Instruct not to insert Q-tips or other objects in ears **(hair pin, paper clip)**; explain that this can cause **further** impaction or injury **to the lining of the ear canal or eardrum.**

3. Offer reassurance that cerumen production is a normal process.

4. Excessive cerumen production does not equal impaction. <u>If visualization of ear canal anatomy or the tympanic membrane is not essential to good care and is not associated with symptoms, there is no need to be aggressive about cerumen removal.</u>

5. Instruct not to use ear candling because there is no evidence of positive effects and ear candling may be associated with considerable risks, e.g., burns, occlusion, perforated tympanic

membranes.

6. Contact clinic if any problems obtaining medications.

FOLLOW UP

As needed.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. If ear remains impacted and symptomatic, refer to MD/NP for cerumen removal and further evaluation.

2. If tympanic membrane is not intact, ear tube is in place, ear pain, irritation, rash in the ear, or any suspicion of ear drum perforation.

3. Diabetic or immunocompromised patient.

4. History of injury from syringing.

5. Foreign bodies.

6. History of ear surgery.

7. History of chronic otitis media or other middle ear diseases.

8. Uncooperative patient.

9. Pregnant patient.

REFERENCES

1. **William W. Hay et al., *Current Diagnosis & Treatment: Pediatrics*, 24th ed., McGraw-Hill, United States of America, Copyright @ 2018, Chapter 18: Ear, Nose and Throat.**

2. Thomas K. McInery, et al., *American Academy of Pediatrics Textbook of Pediatric Care,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2009, p. 121. (Current)

3. Maxine A. Papadakis, Stephen McPhee, et al., *Current Medical Diagnosis & Treatment* 2019, McGraw-Hill, United States of America, Copyright @ 2019, Chapter 8: Ear, Nose and Throat Disorders.

4. J. E. Tintinalli et al: *Tintinalli's Emergency Medicine: A Comprehensive Study Guide, 7th ed.,* McGraw-Hill, New York, 2011, http://www.accessmedicine.com.medlib-proxy.mercer.edu/content.aspx?aID=6387747, accessed February 12, 2013.

5. **Robert M. Kliegman, et al., *Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics,* 20th ed., Elsevier, Saunders, Philadelphia, PA, Copyright @ 2016, Chapter 640 pp. 3085-3100. e2.**

6. Peter S. Roland, et al., "Clinical practice guideline: Cerumen impaction," *Otolaryngology Head and Neck Surgery*, Vol. 139, No. 3S2, September 2008, pp. S1–21. (Current)

7. Daniel F. McCarter, et al., Cerumen Impaction, *American Family Physician,* Vol. 75, No. 10, May 2007, pp. 1523-1528. (Current)

8. **Ear Wax Blockage, Mayoclinic.org, July 22, 2017.**

9. **Seth Schwartz, Anthony Magit, Richard Rosenfeld, "Clinical Practice Guideline (Update): Earwax (Cerumen Impaction), American Academy of Otolaryngology-Head and Neck Surgery, January 3, 2017.**

10. **Lexicomp Online. Wolters Kluwer Clinical Drug Information, Inc. 2019. <**https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/6527?cesid=2icRM2l90rT&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dcarbamide%2520peroxide%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dcarbamide%2520peroxide> **accessed September 26, 2019**.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR CONJUNCTIVITIS

DEFINITION

Conjunctivitis is inflammation of the conjunctiva. The conjunctiva are the mucous membranes of the eyelids and the surface of the eye. The conjunctiva is normally transparent but when inflamed it appears pink or red. There are three common types of conjunctivitis: bacterial, viral and allergic.

1. Bacterial conjunctivitis: Patients with bacterial conjunctivitis typically present with redness and discharge from one eye that can spread to both eyes. The affected eye is often stuck shut in the morning with purulent or mucopurulent discharge. The purulent discharge continues throughout the day. The discharge may be white, yellow or green. The discharge appears at the lid margins and the corner of the eye. Discharge reappears soon after wiping the lids. Bacterial conjunctivitis is very contagious and spread by contact with secretions. Bacterial conjunctivitis is commonly caused by:

a. *Streptococcoccus pneumonia*
b. *Hemophilus influenza*
c. *Staphylococcus aureus*
d. *Moraxella catarrhalis*

The following agents are of concern during the newborn period and require immediate referral:

a. *Neisseria gonorrhea*
b. *Chlamydia trachomatis*

NOTE: If purulent discharge started between 2 and 5 days of age, emergent referral is necessary. This could represent gonorrhea and may require systemic antibiotics without delay.

If the discharge started in the first 24 hours and clears within 48 hours, this is typical of chemical conjunctivitis secondary to the instillation of drops at birth to prevent gonorrhea infection and does not require referral of treatment.

2. Viral conjunctivitis is often accompanied by symptoms of an upper respiratory infection. Patients with viral conjunctivitis present with red eyes and watery or mucoserous discharge. They can describe a burning, sandy or gritty feeling in one or both eyes. They may report waking with crusty eyes from the dried discharge and then watery eyes throughout the day. It is very contagious and spreads by contact with secretions. Viral conjunctivitis has a self-limiting course much like the common cold. It can last from a few days to several weeks.

3. Allergic conjunctivitis is caused by airborne allergens that cause an inflammatory reaction in both eyes. It presents with bilateral redness, watery discharge and itching. Itching is the primary complaint. Patients with allergic conjunctivitis often have history of atopic dermatitis, seasonal allergies or other allergies. This form of conjunctivitis is NOT contagious.

ETIOLOGY

1. Bacterial infection:

a. Streptococcus pneumonia.
b. *Hemophilus influenza.*
c. Staphylococcus aureus.
d. Moraxella catarrhalis
e. *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* (of particular concern during the newborn period)
f. *Chlamydia trachomatis*

2. Viral infection:

Adenovirus.

3. Allergic reaction:

Usually associated with such allergens as pollen, molds, animal dander and dust. **Other irritants include smoke, ingredients in cosmetics, chlorine in swimming pools and contact lenses.**

Foreign body or trauma.

SUBJECTIVE

Patient may report:

a. Eye irritation; sandy or gritty feeling in eyes
b. Eye discharge
    1) Watery: suggestive of viral or allergic.
    2) Purulent (yellow, white, or green): suggestive of bacterial
c. Itching of eyes (more suggestive of allergic conjunctivitis)
d. Mild photophobia.
e. Eyelid(s) stuck shut in the morning.
f. No complaints of decreased vision.
g. May have history of contact lens use (caution: high risk).
h. History of seasonal allergies.

OBJECTIVE

Physical examination may reveal:

a. Redness of one or both eyes
b. Discharge:

1) Bacterial: Purulent discharge from one or both eyes that continues throughout the day
2) Viral: Mucoid or watery discharge from one or both eyes
3) Allergic: Stringy or watery discharge

c. Chemosis (edema of the bulbar conjunctiva that can, at times, be marked when allergy is the cause).

ASSESSMENT Conjunctivitis: Bacterial, viral or allergic

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

Bacterial Conjunctivitis Treatment Options [4]	
Erythromycin 5mg/gram ophthalmic ointment **(Ilotycin)**	Infants (birth to 12 months) and older: ½ inch (1.25 cm) 4 times daily for 5 to 7 days
OR	
Trimethoprim-polymyxin B 0.1% - 10,000 units/mL ophthalmic drops **(Polytrim)**	Pregnancy Risk Factor C 2 months of age and older: 1 to 2 drops 4 times daily for 5 to 7 days
OR	
Bacitracin-polymyxin B 500 units-10,000 units/gram ophthalmic ointment **(Polytracin**,**Polysporin**,**Polycin B**,**AK-Poly Bac)**	Pregnancy Risk Factor C Infants (birth to 12 months) and older: ½ inch (1.25 cm) 4 times daily, for 5 to 7 days
OR	
Bacitracin 500 units/gram ophthalmic ointment	½ inch (1.25 cm) 4 to 6 times daily, for 5 to 7 days
OR	
Ofloxacin 0.3% (preferred agent in contact lens wearers, but contact lenses should not be worn during treatment of infection	Pregnancy Risk Factor C 1 year of age and older: Instill 1 to 2 drops in affected eye(s) every 2 to 4 hours while awake for the first 2 days; then, instill 1 to 2 drops every 6 hours while awake for the next 5 days.
OR	
Ciprofloxacin 0.3% ophthalmic drops (preferred agent in contact lens wearer) Ciprofloxacin 0.3% ophthalmic ointment	Pregnancy Risk Factor C 1 year of age and older: (Solution) Instill 1 to 2 drops into the affected eye(s) every 2 hours while awake for 2 days; then, 1 to 2 drops every 4 hours while awake for 5 days. 2 years of age and older:(Ointment) Apply $^{1}/_{2}$-inch ribbon into the affected eye(s) 3 times per day for the first 2 days, followed by $^{1}/_{2}$-inch ribbon into affected eye(s) twice daily for 5 days.

4 As adapted from Up To Date by Takieya Jones RN, CLC GA Child Health Nurse Consultant

OR	
Azithromycin 1% ophthalmic drops	1 year of age and older: 1 drop in affected eye(s) twice a day (8 to 12 hours apart) for 2 days; then 1 drop in affected eye(s) daily for 5 days.
OR	
Moxifloxacin Hydrochloride	Pregnancy Risk Factor C 4 months of age and older: (Moxeza®) Instill 1 drop into affected eye(s) 2 times daily for 7 days. Birth to adult: Vigamox® Instill 1 drop into affected eye(s) 3 times daily for 7 days.
Viral Conjunctivitis Treatment Options	
Lubricating drops/ointment OTC Advanced Eye Relief™, HypoTears; LiquiTears, Murine Tears®, Natures Tears; OTCTears Again®; Tears Naturale® Free; other generics	Drops: 1 to 2 drops every 1 to 6 hours as needed Ointment: ½ inch (1.25 cm) at bedtime or four times daily as needed
Allergic Conjunctivitis Treatment Options	
For short-term treatment: Antihistamine/vasoconstrictor ophthalmic preparations can cause temporary increased redness once medication is discontinued.	
Lubricating drops/ointment OTC Advanced Eye Relief™, HypoTears; LiquiTears, Murine Tears®, Natures Tears [OTCTears Again®; Tears Naturale® Free; other generics	Drops: 1 to 2 drops every 1 to 6 hours as needed. Ointment: ½ inch (1.25 cm) at bedtime or four times daily as needed.
For frequent episodes (occurring more than 2 days per month): Mast cell stabilizer/antihistamine ophthalmic Solutions. Itching should decrease within 24- 72 hours; may cause dry eye sensation or burning. It may take up to 2 weeks to see full efficacy of these agents. CHOOSE ONE FROM BELOW:	
Olopatadine 0.1% (Patanol), 0.2% (Pataday), 0.7% (Pazeo)	Pregnancy Risk Factor C 2 years and older: 1 drop per affected eye(s) twice daily allowing 6 to 8 hours between doses (Patanol). **OR** 1 drop per affected eye(s) once daily (Pataday and Pazeo)
OR	
Alcaftadine 0.25% (Lastacaft) May require Prior approval for Medicaid	2 years and older: 1 drop per affected eye(s) once daily
OR	
Bepotastine 1.5% (Bepreve)	Pregnancy Risk Factor C 2 years and older: 1 drop per affected eye(s) twice daily
OR	
Epinastine 0.05% (Elestat)	Pregnancy Risk Factor C

May require Prior approval for Medicaid	2 years and older: 1 drop per affected eye(s) twice daily
OR	
OTC Ophthalmic Products: Ketotifen 0.025% (Zaditor, TheraTears, Alaway Children's Allergy, Claritin)	Pregnancy Risk Factor C 3 years and older: 1 drop per affected eye(s) every 8 to 12 hours
OR	
Emedastine 0.05% (Emadine) May require Prior approval for Medicaid	3 years and older: One drop per affected eye(s) up to four times daily
Cromolyn Sodium Ophthalmic Solution 4%	**Pregnancy Risk Factor Category B** **4 years and older: 1-2 drops in each eye 4 to 6 times daily at regular intervals**

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

Warm or cool compresses may provide additional symptomatic relief of discomfort, if mild non-purulent conjunctivitis associated with an upper respiratory infection, allergic **or viral** conjunctivitis is present.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Contact lenses should not be worn during times of infection of the eye or during treatment of infections of the eye.

2. Viral conjunctivitis may last up to 12-14 days.

3. Bacterial conjunctivitis should respond to treatment within 2-3 days. Refer to primary care provider if no improvement or worsening of symptoms.

4. Hands must be washed before and after application of ophthalmic ointment or solution. Instruct in hand washing technique and disposal of contaminated tissues.

5. Avoid contact of medication tube or bottle tip with skin or eye.

6. Do not share medication.

7. Dispose of medication when treatment is completed.

8. Do not share bath cloths/towels.

9. School or daycare attendance: Check with school.

NOTE: American Academy of Pediatrics' position is that children with infectious conjunctivitis under treatment may attend school provided reasonable precautions are taken to avoid close physical contact. Children with allergic conjunctivitis are not infectious and may attend school.

10. May use cold, wet compresses. To clean eyes, use clean towel moistened with water. Use a fresh side of the towel with each wipe. Also, always wipe eye from inner canthus toward outer canthus**.**

11. Do not use the child's eye medicine for anyone else.

12. Contact clinic if any problems obtaining medications.

FOLLOW-UP:

Follow-up in 2-3 days if no symptom improvement.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present. (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. Infants less than three months of age (see paragraph in Definition section regarding possible **infectious** agents of concern during newborn period requiring **immediate referral**).

2. No improvement in 2 to 3 days after initiation of treatment, or if symptoms worsen.

3. Foreign body, trauma or chemical injury.

4. Severe eye pain.

5. Vision changes (**double vision, blurry vision)**.

6. Severe sensitivity**/reaction** to light.

7. Any irregularities of pupil size or reaction to light.

8. All contact lens wearers (possible infected corneal abrasion).

9. Any redness of eyelids.

10. Ill appearing, other body systems symptomatic

11. Pregnant or breastfeeding patient.

REFER IMMEDIATELY for patients with complaints of:

1. Severe foreign body sensation **or severe eye pain**.

2. Ciliary flush (Keratitis, iritis, glaucoma): Severe injection [redness] in the transition zone between cornea and sclera.

3. Corneal Opacity (Keratitis): Whitish, cloudy film over the cornea.

4. Reduction in visual acuity (Keratitis, Iritis, Glaucoma) **or vision changes.**

5. **Foreign body, trauma or chemical injury.**

REFERENCES

1. Sarah Long, *Principles and Practice of Pediatric Infectious Disease*, 4th ed., Elsevier Saunders, China, 2012, http://www.mdconsult.com/books/linkTo?type=bookPage&isbn=978-1-4377-2702-9&eid=4-u1.0-B978-1-4377-2702-9..00301-9, accessed on March 24, 2013.

2. Lexicomp Online. Wolters Kluwer Clinical Drug Information, Inc. <https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/1799546?cesid=23RI3Ub7dLH&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dofloxacin%2520ophthalmic%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dofl> **accessed September *26, 2019*.**

3. Facts and Comparisons, "*Facts and Comparisons*," Wolters Kluwer Health, Inc, 2013, http://online.factsandcomparisons.com/index.as (April 4, 2013).

4. **Thomas K. McInery, et al., *American Academy of Pediatrics Textbook of Pediatric Care,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2017, Part 6, Chapter 188.**

5. Robert Kliegman, et al., *Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics,* 19th ed., Elsevier Saunders, Philadelphia, PA, 2011, **http://www.mdconsult.com/books/linkTo?type=bookPage&isbn=978-1-4377-0755-7&eid=4-u1.0-B978-1-4377-0755-7..00618-7** , accessed on March 24, 2013.

6. Rose W. Boynton, et al., *Manual of Ambulatory Pediatrics*, 6th ed., Wolters Kluwer Health, Philadelphia, 2009, pp. 264-269. (Current)

7. **Children's Healthcare of Atlanta, et al., "Georgia School Health Resource Manual," *Georgia School Health Resource Manual,* 2016 Edition, pp. 8.**

8. **Jacobs, Deborah. UpToDate. "Conjunctivitis." Last updated July 15, 2019.**

9. Lexicomp Online. Wolters Kluwer Clinical Drug Information, Inc. < https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/533572?cesid=1x97dWnJoeh&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dciprofloxacin%2520ophthalmic%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dciprofo> **accessed September 26, 2019**.

10. Lexicomp Online. Wolters Kluwer Clinical Drug Information, Inc. <https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/1768826?cesid=5TA1xpVevEq&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dazithromycin%2520ophthalmic%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dazithromycin**> accessed September 26, 2019**.

11. Lexicomp Online. Wolters Kluwer Clinical Drug Information, Inc. < https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/1799130?cesid=3YMQieXGXQX&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dmoxifoloxacin%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dmoxifoloxacin> **accessed September 26, 2019**.

12. Lexicomp Online. Wolters Kluwer Clinical Drug Information, Inc. < https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/1799560?cesid=aVMBt9YTiNS&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dolopatadine%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dolopatadine> **accessed September 26, 2019**.

13. Lexicomp Online. Wolters Kluwer Clinical Drug Information, Inc. < https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/1772082?cesid=50AuIj0hQMn&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dcromolyn%2520sodium%2520%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dcromolyn%2520sodium%2520> **accessed September 16, 2019.**

14. **Jacobs, Deborah. UpToDate. "Allergic Conjunctivitis: Management" Last updated December 1, 2017**
http://www.uptodate.com/contents/allergic-conjunctivitis-management?topicKey=ALLRG%2F90512&elapsedTimeMs=0&source=search_result&searchTerm=conjunctivitis+treatment&selectedTitle=2%7E150&view=print&displayedView=full# (January 5, 2017)

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR CONSTIPATION

DEFINITION

Bowel movements which are associated with the passage of hard, dry, often painful, stools. Stool frequency is not a primary consideration when diagnosing constipation. Infrequent passage of stools that are soft and easily passed does not constitute constipation. In fact, in exclusively breastfed infants after the first month of life, this is common and not a concern. **Constipation affects up to 30% of children**. **Acute constipation is defined by presence of symptoms eight weeks or less. Chronic constipation is defined by presence of symptoms over 3 months**.

ETIOLOGY

Acute Constipation may be caused by:

a. Insufficient amount of fiber and/or fluid in the diet.
b. Decreased physical activity.
c. Early introduction of solid foods in infants less than 4 months.
d. Emotional upset.
e. Uncomfortable circumstances for defecating.
f. Disruption of usual daily routine.
g. Aggressive toilet training techniques.

Chronic Constipation may be caused by:

a. Psychogenic stool-holding.
b. Chronic neuromuscular disorders.
c. Hirschsprung's disease.
d. Hypothyroidism.
e. Acute constipation that has not been adequately treated, resulting in an enlarged colon with decreased contractile strength (known as the 'vicious cycle' of constipation).
f. **GI disorders (celiac disease, cow's milk intolerance or sensitivity)**
g. **Bowel bladder dysfunction**
h. **Lead exposure and elevation**

SUBJECTIVE

Acute Constipation:

a. Pain on defecation.
b. Stools are hard, dry.
c. Straining on defecation.
d. History of blood-tinged stools.
e. Mild abdominal pain.
f. Decrease in frequency of defecation from usual pattern may be taken as a sign of constipation if it is associated with other symptoms such as hard, dry stools.

Chronic Constipation

a. Psychogenic stool-holding:

    1. Onset in late infancy or early childhood.
    2. Large bowel movements at long intervals.
    3. Fecal incontinence (encopresis).
    4. Behavior problems.

b. Chronic neuromuscular disease:

    1. Other developmental problems.
    2. Mild abdominal pain.

c. Hirschsprung's disease:

    1. Soiling and retentive behavior – rare.
    2. May present at any age but most become apparent at birth or in early infancy.
    3. Anorexia and **bilious** vomiting **and abdominal distension** in early infancy.
    4. **Failure to pass meconium first stool after 48 hours of life**
    5. **Family History**

d. Hypothyroidism:

    1. Poor feeding.
    2. Vomiting.

e. **GI disorders:**

    1. **Celiac disease**
    2. **Milk Protein allergy/cow's milk protein intolerance**

f. **Bowel/bladder Dysfunction:**

    1. **Managed through treating the bladder dysfunction**

OBJECTIVE

Acute Constipation

a. Physical exam may be normal. **Inspect for anorectal anomaly**
b. Anal fissure or perianal abscess.
c. Mild abdominal distention with a palpable, firm stool apparent on abdominal and rectal exam.

Chronic Constipation

a. Physical exam may be normal. **Inspect for anorectal anomaly**.
b. Abdominal distention with a palpable firm stool apparent on abdominal and rectal examination. With Hirshprung's disease there will be no stool in the rectum on rectal examination. The obstruction is above the rectum. **Abdominal distension is present and anal sphincter may be tight resulting in squirt sign on completion of rectal exam.**
c. Muscle weakness, sluggish reflexes (hypothyroidism), may have dimple on lower back.

ASSESSMENT Constipation (Acute or Chronic)

1. In most cases, physical exam will be within normal limits**. Inspect for anorectal anomaly.**

2. May present with an intestinal obstruction, but this is rare (usually associated with abdominal pain and vomiting).

PLAN **Data Review: Stool diary of 5 to 7-day history of symptom, diet, stool frequency, appearance and pain. Check for lead risk exposure and lead screen results for 12 month and 24-month well check if available. Hemoccult when considering milk protein allergy.**

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

For patient with acute constipation (with symptoms such as pain, irritability, malaise):

1. Stimulation of stool passage

   a. Infants and children, 1 month to 2 years: Glycerin Suppository **(not the liquid suppository)**: ½ to 1 infant suppository once per day until stool appears up to a maximum of 3 days.

   b. Children 2 through 5 years: 1 pediatric suppository (Fleet Pedialax or Colace Infant/Children) **once per day until stool appears up to a maximum of 3 days**

   OR

   Liquid glycerin suppositories e.g., Fleet Baby Lax: 2mL to 5 mL of rectal solution once per day until stool appears up to a maximum of 3 days.

c. Children 6 years or older: 1 adult suppository (Fleet Glycerin, Colace Adult/Children,)

OR

5mL-15 mL rectal solution as enema (Fleet Liquid Glycerin Suppositories) once per day until stool appears up to a maximum of 3 days.

2. For use after initial relief from above. A brief course of Polyethylene Glycol 3350 Powder**,** Sorbitol 70% solution or Docusate sodium (as below) may be helpful to restore regularity. Should not use for more than 5-7 days.

a. Polyethylene Glycol 3350 Powder (MiraLax, GlycoLax) **must be mixed in water or another non-carbonated beverage** Children younger than 18 months: ½ tsp-1 tsp daily **mixed in 2 to 8 ounces (60 to 240mL)**; 18 months-3 years: 2-3 tsp once daily **mixed in 4 to 8 ounces (120 to 240mL)**; older than 3 years: 2-4 tsp once daily **mixed in 8 oz (240mL)**; Greater than 3 years: 17 grams powder (1 heaping tbsp per day mixed in 8 oz water or another non-carbonated beverage)

b. Sorbitol 70% Solution
   1) Children 1-11 years: Oral: 1 mL/kg once or twice daily with max of 30 mL
   2) Children 12 years of age and older: Oral: 15-30 mL once or twice daily (60 ml max)

OR

c. Docusate sodium- 5 mg/kg/day.
   1) **Infants and children 5mg/kg/day.in one to 4 divided doses**

OR

6 months to 2 years: 12.5mg three times daily

1) **2 years to 11 years: 50 to 150mg/day in single or divided doses**
2) Greater than 12 years of age: 50 to 360 mg/day in single or divided doses.

NOTE: This softens and prevents excessive drying of the stool. It is effective unless there is voluntary stool retention. Effect should be apparent 1-3 days after first dose.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Encourage increased water intake for children older than 1 year of age.

2. For infants less than 4 months, can give 1 ounce a day of juice for every month of life up to about 4 months (a 3-month-old baby would get 3 ounces).

   For infants greater than 4 months, offer 100% juice containing sorbitol such as prune, pear, **plum** and/or apple juices. Due to a heavy concentration of sugar, add 1-2 oz. of water with 1-2 oz. of juice (apple, prune, **plum**, pear) per day until stool has softened. **Do not exceed 4 total ounces of juice per day.**

   Sorbitol containing juices (apple, prune, pear) may be offered at full strength to children greater than 1 year of age. Do not give more than 4-6 ounces of 100 % fruit juice per day to children between 1 and 6 years of age. Children 7 years and older may drink up to **two** 4 oz. servings per day.

3. If anal fissure, suggest warm Sitz baths, gentle cleansing, petroleum jelly to anus.

4. Increase the amount of fruits, vegetables and other high fiber foods such as, whole grains (age 6 months and above).

5. Recommend giving normal volume of milk for age**:**

   Formula fed: 2 months (21-32oz.), 4 months (26-32oz), 6 months and older whenever he/she displays signs of hunger (usually 5-6 times in 24 hours).

   Breastfed infants: feed ad lib as infant displays signs/symptoms of hunger. May have need to nurse more frequently during growth spurts.

   In children, greater than 1 year of age, limit milk intake to no more than **16-24** oz. daily. This includes cow's milk and any plant-based alternatives.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Infants (Infants and toddlers up to age 2):

   a. Explain the need for adequate fluid intake.
      1) Provide breastmilk and/or formula ad lib as the infant displays signs/symptoms of hunger. Infants less than 6 months should be able to receive adequate fluids through breast milk and/or formula alone. Infants less than 6 months should not be offered plain water without

consulting their primary care provider.

2) For infants, greater than 6 months and who are eating solid foods, plain **fluoridated** water may be given as recommended by a doctor.

b. Counsel on overall quality of diet and dietary needs appropriate for the age of the infant:
   1) If breastfeeding, continue to breastfeed
   2) If feeding formula, ensure proper mixing/concentration and that **24-hour** intake is appropriate for age **(On average, infants take in approximately 2.5 ounces of formula for every pound of body weight):**
      a) Formula fed 2 months (21-32oz.),
      b) 4 months (26-32oz),
      c) 6 months and older whenever he/she displays signs of hunger (usually 5-6 times in 24 hours).
   3) Encourage fruit juices with sorbitol such as prune, **pear,** plum and some apple juices. **See Non-Pharmacologic Measures section, #2, for appropriate amounts for age & recommended limits** and educate that routinely giving an infant (less than 1 year old) juice outside of the treatment of constipation is not recommended**.**
   4) Discontinue solids if introduced too early, prior to 4 months of age.

c. For infants, greater than 4 months who are tolerating complementary foods, puree fresh fruits and vegetables to make homemade baby foods that are high in fiber. **Commercially jarred baby foods have little to no fiber.**
d. Increased fiber intake without adequate fluids will only worsen constipation.
e. Do not use laxatives such as Castoria or Fleet Phosphate enemas; do not use mineral oil for infants (risk of aspiration pneumonia).
f. Honey or homegrown herbal teas should not be served to an infant less than 1 year of age since it may contain botulism spores that may cause infantile botulism.
g. Controlled trials with infant formula have not shown a relationship between iron in the formula and constipation.
h. Explain vicious cycle: constipation enlarges the colon; an enlarged colon is weaker leading to more constipation. If the cycle is not interrupted, the result can be debilitating for a child and family.

2. Children (greater than 2 years of age)

    a. Offer water during meals and snack times and provide additional water during physical activity.
    b. Offer apple or prune juice (limit to 4-6 oz./day).
    c. Limit milk intake to no more than **16-24** oz per day.
    d. Increase intake of whole grains/cereals, dried beans, fresh/dried fruits and vegetables, nuts/seeds (if age-appropriate). Add high fiber foods gradually. Encourage a wide variety of foods. Consume fruits and vegetables with peel or skin whenever possible.
    AAP recommends daily fiber intake that equals age of patient + 5 grams.
    e. Increase and encourage regular physical activity when appropriate.
    f. Continuous treatment and follow up may be required for several weeks. Acute constipation can evolve into a major problem if not treated properly. (Explain 'vicious cycle' as described above for infants.)
    g. Contact clinic if any problems obtaining medications.

FOLLOW UP

In 2 to 3 days if no improvement. Seek prompt medical attention if symptoms worsen.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. Refer to MD/APRN if no improvement in 2-3 days.

2. Pain or other symptoms, if secondary to constipation, should be entirely relieved with the passage of stool. If this is not the case, then the cause of the child's symptoms may not be constipation and needs prompt diagnosis. Acute constipation with symptoms should be referred to MD/APRN promptly (same day) if there is not relief of symptoms with the acute therapy described above or if symptoms worsen.

3. Chronic constipation **(greater than 3 months) with additional signs**

and symptoms.

4. Signs of emotional/family issues.

5. Infants with any of the following: recurrent constipation, history of first bowel movement after **48** hours of age, any systemic signs such as vomiting or failure to gain weight**, abdominal distension.**

6. Exclusively breastfed infants who exhibit signs of chronic constipation.

7. Substantial rectal bleeding – such as blood throughout the stool or blood clots equivalent to one teaspoon or more of blood.

8. Pregnant or breastfeeding.

9. Neonates.

10. Consult a Registered Dietitian Nutritionist if in depth dietary guidance is needed, or if there is low access to the recommended fiber rich foods. Children aged 0-5 years of age may be eligible for vouchers for fresh fruits/vegetables and whole grain foods, and nutrition education and counseling through the WIC Program.

REFERENCES

1. **William W. Hay, et al., *Current Pediatric Diagnosis and Treatment*, 21st ed. 24th ed., McGraw-Hill, United States of America, 2012 Copyright @ 2018, Chapter 21: GI Tract.**

2. **Thomas K. McInery, et al., *American Academy of Pediatrics Textbook of Pediatric Care,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2017, Part 6, Chapter 134**.

3. **Robert M. Kliegman, et al., *Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics,* 20th ed., Elsevier, Saunders, Philadelphia, PA, Copyright @ 2016, Chapter 306: Major Symptoms And Signs Of Digestive Tract Disorders.**

4. **Tabbers, M. M. et al., Journal of Pediatric Gastroenterology and Nutrition, Evaluation and Treatment of Functional Constipation in Infants and Children; Evidence Based Recommendations from ESPGHAN and NASPGHAN, Vol. 58(2), February 2014, pp. 258-274.**

5. **Deborah Consolini, MD, The Merck Manual Online, *"Constipation in Children,"* Merck Sharp & Dohme Corp., a subsidiary of Merck & Co., Inc., Whitehouse Station, N.J., U.S.A., Last full review/revision July 2018 <** https://www.merckmanuals.com/professional/pediatrics/symptoms-in-infants-and-children/constipation-in-children#v1082652> **accessed September 25, 2019**.

6. Culbert, Timothy P., Banez, Gerard A., "Integrative Approaches to Childhood Constipation and Encopresis", Pediatric Clinics of North America, Vol. 54, Issue 6, December 2007, Saunders Company, http://www.mdconsult.com/das/article/body/25707019-6/jorg=clinics&source=MI&sp=20186634&sid=1167715466/N/620167/1.html?issn=0031-3955, accessed April 27, 2013. (Current)

7. World Health Organization, "Up to what age can a baby stay well nourished by just being breastfed," 2013, http://www.who.int/features/qa/21/en/ (April 27, 2013).

8. Pediatric Nutrition Care Manual. "Constipation." www.nutritioncaremanual.org (May 22, 2017).

9. AAP News and Journals. "The Use and Misuses of Fruit Juices in Pediatrics." http://pediatrics.aappublications.org/content/107/5/1210 (May 22, 2017)

10. **Healthy Children.org. "Infant Constipation". https://www.healthychildren.org/English/ages-stages/baby/diapers-clothing/Pages/Infant-Constipation.aspx (May 18, 2017).**

11. Healthy Lifestyle. "Infant and Toddler Health." http://www.mayoclinic.org/healthy-lifestyle/infant-and-toddler-health/expert-answers/infant-constipation/faq-20058519

(**Last updated February 8, 2017).**

12. **Up to Date. "Constipation in Infants and Children: Beyond the Basics." https://www.uptodate.com/contents/constipation-in-infants-and-children-beyond-the-basics. (Last updated April 11, 2018)**

13. **Up to Date. "Constipation in infants and Children: Evaluation." https://www.uptodate.com/contents/constipation-in-infants-and-children-evaluation?search=constipation%20in%20infants%20and%20children%20evaluation&source=search_result&selectedTitle=1~150&usage_type=default&display_rank=1 (Last updated January 16, 2019)**

14. American Academy of Pediatrics' Bright Futures. "Nutrition Supervision." **https://brightfutures.aap.org/Bright%20Futures%20Documents/BFNutrition3rdEditionSupervision.pdf**

15. World Health Organization. "Why Can't We Give Water to a Breastfeeding Baby Before the 6 Months, Even When it is Hot?" **http://www.who.int/features/qa/breastfeeding/en/** (July 2014)

16. Pediatric Nutrition Care Manual "Constipation". www.nutritioncaremanual.org (May 22, 2017).

17. **Norton J. Greenberger MD, Merck Manual Professional Version. Whitehouse Station, NJ. Merck Sharp & Dohme Corp., A Subsidiary of Merck & Co., Inc. STAT! Ref Online Electronic Medical Library., Last full review/revision May 2018.**

18. **Lexicomp Online. Wolters Kluwer Clinical Drug Inforamtion, Inc. 2019. <** https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/6777?cesid=a0ZMApWIwMr&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Ddocusate%2520sodium%26t%3Dname%26va%3Ddocusate%2520sodium> **September 26, 2019.**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR CRADLE CAP

DEFINITION A form of seborrheic dermatitis that most babies show at some time during infancy. It is a result of excessive discharge from the sebaceous glands, but the cause is not understood. The lesions are usually multiple, discrete, circumscribed oval or nummular patches covered with fine, yellowish, slightly-oily scales on an erythematous base found on the scalp.

ETIOLOGY The actual cause is unknown. **The fungus, Malassezia Furfur, has been implicated as a causative agent**.

SUBJECTIVE As described by the parent/care-giver:

a. Rash on scalp.
b. Dry, scaly flakes that do not resolve with normal shampooing of the head.

OBJECTIVE Physical examination may reveal:

a. Dry, scaly, sometimes greasy flakes on the scalp.
b. Running the finger firmly across the scalp surface will loosen the flakes.
c. Thick, yellowish, crusted lesions on the scalp, with scaling.
d. Papules or fissuring behind the ears and on the face.
e. Examine other body areas, seborrheic dermatitis can be focal or spread. Other common sites include: forehead, eyebrows, nasolabial folds, neck, axillae, and diaper area.
f. **Mild to moderate underlying inflammation.**

ASSESSMENT Cradle Cap

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

Initial treatment should include applying emollient to loosen scales (white petrolatum, vegetable oil, **olive oil, jojoba oil,** mineral oil, baby oil) to the scalp (overnight if necessary), followed by removal of scales with a soft brush (e.g., a soft bristle hairbrush or soft unused toothbrush).

PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

If inflamed, low potency topical corticosteroid (Hydrocortisone 1%) applied once daily for 1 week

OR

If the use of topical corticosteroids is a concern topical antifungal (e.g., Ketoconazole 2% cream) applied twice per week for 2 weeks.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Review instructions for management.

2. Teach parents that gentle scrubbing over the fontanels is safe.

3. Teach parent to continue treatment for several days after condition clears.

FOLLOW-UP

In 1 to 2 weeks if no improvement.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. If no improvement after 10 to 14 days of proper management.

2. If presence of secondary infection as evidenced by weeping, fissuring or maceration of the skin.

REFERENCES

1. **Thomas K. McInery, et al., *American Academy of Pediatrics Textbook of Pediatric Care,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2017, Part 7, Chapter 326.**

2. **Robert M. Kliegman, et al., *Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics,* 20th ed., Elsevier, Saunders, Philadelphia, PA, Copyright @ 2016, Chapter 655: Eczematous Disorders pp. 3150-3155.**

3. Rose Boynton, et al., *Manual of Ambulatory Pediatrics,* 6th ed., Wolter Kluwer, Philadelphia, 2009, pp. 384-385. (Current)

4. **Thomas P. Habif, *Clinical Dermatology*. 6th ed. St. Louis, Mo: Mosby, 2016, chapter 8, pp. 263-328.**

5. **Kahl & Hughes. "The Harriet Lane Handbook." 21st ed., 2017, Elsevier. Chapter 8, pp.203-228.**

6. **Sasseville, Denis, MD, FRCPC "Cradle Cap and Seborrheic Dermatitis in Infants." (Updated May 1, 2019). UpToDate, Wolters Kluwer 2019.** <https://www.uptodate.com/contents/cradle-cap-and-seborrheic-dermatitis-in-infants?search=cradle%20cap%20treatment&sectionRank=2&usage_type=default&anchor=H29306861&source=machineLearning&selectedTitle=1~12&display_rank=1#references> **accessed September 27, 2019.**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR ATOPIC DERMATITIS (ECZEMA)

DEFINITION A chronic inflammatory disorder of the skin manifested by some or all of the following: pruritic, erythematous, papular, vesicular, weeping lesions with scaling or crusting. It tends to occur in patients with an inherited allergic predisposition.

ETIOLOGY In part, it is an atopic allergic response. The exact etiology is unknown. It is probably the most common problem in pediatric dermatology. It is not present at birth and usually does not occur before the age of three months. Dry skin resulting in a 'pruritus-scratching-inflammation-more pruritus' cycle clearly plays a role in the etiology of atopic dermatitis. Evidence suggests that food allergy is a very uncommon cause of atopic dermatitis. Manifestations are usually secondary to pruritus and scratching of the sensitive skin. The following may initiate and aggravate the itching and inflammation:

a. Dry skin/cold weather.
b. Perspiration/hot humid weather.
c. Irritating clothing (wool, silk).
d. Certain soaps, detergents or cosmetics.
e. Respiratory infections.
f. Frequent bathing.

SUBJECTIVE Patient/caregiver may complain of:

a. Pruritus, rash.
b. Often, family history of allergic diseases (asthma, allergic rhinitis, urticaria) or atopic dermatitis.
c. Onset after two months of age.
d. History of asthma or allergic rhinitis (about 50% of cases).
e. Rapid alternation between quiescent periods and exacerbations.

OBJECTIVE Physical examination may reveal:

Infancy (0–24 months)

a. Rough, erythematous, papular and occasionally vesicular or scaling eruption, which frequently progresses to weeping and crusting.
b. Location: commonly on cheeks, scalp, post-auricular area, neck, and extensor surface of forearms and legs; occasionally trunk and diaper area.
c. Frequent rubbing of involved areas by infant.

Childhood

a. Less weeping and crusting, drier, papular, scaling eruption with

hyperpigmentation.
b. Intensely pruritic and excoriated lesions with lichenification due to scratching.
c. Location: Commonly on flexor surfaces of wrist and neck and on antecubital and popliteal areas.

Adolescence and Adulthood

a. Dry, thickening skin, with accentuation of normal lines and folds; often hyperpigmentation.
b. Location: commonly on flexor areas of extremities, eyelids, back of neck and dorsum of hands and feet.

ASSESSMENT Atopic Dermatitis (eczema)

Consider for differential diagnosis:

1. Seborrheic dermatitis (sometimes impossible to differentiate in infancy).

2. Fungal infections of the skin.

3. Contact dermatitis (e.g., poison ivy).

4. Irritant dermatitis (e.g., diaper dermatitis).

5. Xerotic dermatitis (dry skin).

6. Rare systemic diseases of infancy associated with atopic dermatitis-type rash.

7. Scabies.

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Apply sparingly a low-potency steroid. Do not use on the face, underarms, or groin areas. **Use smallest amount for shortest period of time to avoid HPA axis suppression. Therapy should be discontinued when control is achieved. Dosage should be based on severity of disease and patient response**.

a. Hydrocortisone butyrate 0.1% (Locoid Lipocream, Locoid Lotion)

Apply a thin film to affected area twice daily, if no

improvement within 2 weeks, reassess. The patient should be counseled to contact the clinic for a referral so that treatment can be adjusted or prolonged. Do not use on the face, underarms, or groin areas.

b. Hydrocortisone cream or ointment

Infants: 0.5%-1% hydrocortisone cream or ointment, twice daily, preferably after bath (cream during hot humid weather, otherwise ointment is best **during the drier seasons of late fall and winter**)**.**

Children 1 year of age and older: 1%-2.5% hydrocortisone cream or ointment twice to three times daily, preferably after bath (cream during hot humid weather, otherwise ointment is best).

Apply until controlled. If treatment is required for more than 2-4 weeks for improvement of symptoms, the patient should be counseled to contact the clinic for a referral so that treatment can be adjusted or prolonged.

OR

c. Alclometasone dipropionate

Children 1 year of age and older: Alclometasone dipropionate - Apply a thin film of alclometasone cream or ointment to the affected skin areas two or three times daily; massage gently until the medication disappears. Do not use for longer than 3 weeks. If treatment is required for more than 2-3 weeks for improvement of symptoms, the patient should be counseled to contact the clinic for a referral so that treatment can be adjusted or prolonged. Do not use on the face, underarms, or groin areas.

OR

d. Fluocinolone acetonide 0.01%

3 months and older: Fluocinolone acetonide 0.01% ointment or cream to the affected skin areas two or three times daily; massage gently until the medication disappears. Do not use for longer than 3 weeks. If treatment is required for more than 2-3 weeks for improvement of symptoms, the patient should be counseled to contact the clinic for a referral so that treatment

can be adjusted or prolonged. Do not use on the face, underarms, or groin areas.

OR

e. Triamcinolone (Triderm, Kenalog, Oralene,and generics) Cream 0.025% or 0.1% Cream and Ointment

Children: Apply a thin film to affected areas two to three times daily. Do not use for longer than 3 weeks. If treatment is required for more than 2-3 weeks for improvement of symptoms, the patient should be counseled to contact the clinic for a referral so that treatment can be adjusted or prolonged. Do not use on the face, underarms, or groin areas.

2. To help control pruritus use an over-the-counter antihistamine such as diphenhydramine (e.g., Benadryl) orally. The non-sedating antihistamines **(i.e. Claritin, Zyrtec, or Allegra)** appear to have only a very modest influence on atopic dermatitis symptoms.

   a. Diphenhydramine hydrochloride elixir

      Children 2 through 5 years of age: Diphenhydramine hydrochloride elixir 12.5 mg/5 mL. May give 6.25 mg every 4 to 6 hours; do not exceed 37.5 mg/day.

      Children 6 through 11 years of age: Diphenhydramine hydrochloride elixir 12.5 mg/5 mL. May give 12.5 to 25 mg every 4 to 6 hours; do not exceed 150 mg/day.

      Adults and children 12 years of age and older: Diphenhydramine hydrochloride 25-50 mg orally 3 or 4 times a day (not to exceed 300 mg/day).

   NOTE: Dosing should be based on severity of symptoms. Do not use topical diphenhydramine. Contact delegating physician before administering diphenhydramine to a child under 2 years of age.

   OR

   b. Hydroxyzine (Atarax or Vistaril) 10mg/5ml or 10 or 25 mg tablet. Contraindicated in prolonged QT interval.

      Children 1 year to less than 6 years:
      2 mg/kg/day divided every 6 to 8 hours. Maximum

single dose 12.5 mg. Can be started and given once daily (at bedtime) or twice daily (in the morning and at night).

Children 6 years to 12 years: 2 mg/kg/day divided every 6 to 8 hours. Maximum single dose: 25 mg. Can be started and given as once daily (at bedtime) or twice daily (in the morning and at night).

Children 12 years and older and weight > 40 kg: 25 to 50 mg once daily at bedtime or twice daily.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. For infants, dietary restrictions are controversial in atopic dermatitis. If food allergy is a concern, patient should be referred to their primary care provider.

2. Bathe using mild **non-perfumed** soap (Dove or Cetaphil) and add 1/2 to 1 capful of bath oil (Alpha-Keri or Aquaphor) in water. Apply moisturizer to wet skin after bath. Apply additional moisturizer (see below) three times **or more** daily. Avoid excessive bathing.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Avoid factors that initiate pruritus and irritate skin; the key is to reduce or eliminate factors that promote dryness or increased scratching so a severe rash can be prevented.

    a. An environment that is slightly cool and well-humidified is best.
    b. Spend time indoors in warm weather. Humidify home in winter if heating system dries air.
    c. Use warm water for brief baths or showers; hot water causes itching.
    d. Use soft cotton clothing and bedding. Avoid wool, starched or rough clothing.
    e. Keep fingernails short.
    f. Recognize that emotional stress can worsen but not cause the disease.
    g. Use liquid detergent when washing clothes plus a second rinse cycle.

2. Instructions for topical care of atopic dermatitis:

    a. Wet the skin for 5-20 minutes twice a day.
    b. Avoid excessive exposure to soap. Use a mild soap (e.g.,

Dove or Cetaphil) for cleaning dirty areas.
c. Pat dry and quickly apply the steroid preparation to the wet skin. Apply the steroid only on the areas of dermatitis.
d. Apply lubricant (Eucerin Cream, Cetaphil Cream, Aquaphor Ointment, Vaseline Intensive Care Ointment) while the skin is still wet, twice a day.
e. Use cream and ointment lubricants to all areas prone to dermatitis, even those not currently inflamed. Avoid lotions (vs. creams and ointments) because their low oil content renders them poor moisturizers.
f. The lubricant may be applied over the steroid if the steroid is a cream.
g. Reapply the lubricant throughout the day **frequently.**
h. As the skin improves, continue the lubricant twice a day, or more frequently.
i. Decrease the topical steroid to once a day, or less frequently, as needed. It may also be possible to decrease the potency of the topical steroid, if a medium or high-potency steroid has been prescribed.
j. Wash hands after applying steroid and lubricant.

3. Emphasize to child and family that this is a chronic condition and exacerbating factors must be controlled for successful management. Also, emphasize that good skin care, **which includes very frequent moisturization,** will decrease flare-ups and the need for topical steroids.

FOLLOW-UP

Return in one week, or periodically as needed.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. Children and adolescents with severe skin eruptions. (A prescription for a medium or high-potency steroid may be necessary.)

2. Patient with dermatitis with crusting or weeping lesions. **Oral and topical** antibiotics may be necessary to treat secondary infection.

3. Ocular complications.

4. Patient with mild dermatitis that worsens or does not improve after two weeks of treatment.

5. Patient with suspected bacterial or viral infection should be referred immediately to MD.

6. Patient with suspected underlying condition.

7. Pregnant or breastfeeding patient.

8. Consult registered dietitian nutritionist for food allergy related education and counseling. Children 0-5 may be eligible to nutrition education and counseling through the WIC program.

REFERENCES

1. **Robert M. Kliegman, et al., Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics, 20th ed., Elsevier, Saunders, Philadelphia, PA, Copyright @ 2016, Chapter 145 pp. 1116-1121. e1**

2. **William Hay, et al., *Current Diagnosis & Treatment: Pediatrics*, 24th ed., McGraw Hill, United States of America, Copyright @ 2018, Chapter 15: Skin**

3. **Thomas P. Habif, *Clinical Dermatology,* 6th ed., Mosby, St. Louis, Mo., 2016, Chapter 5, pp.150-177.**

4. "*Lexi-Comp Online*," Wolters Kluwer Clinical Drug Information Inc, 2019 < < https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/pdh_f/2848040?cesid=2BzA83GOvsy&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dhydrocortisone%2520butyrate%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dhydrocortisone%2520b#pri> accessed September 27,2019.

5. **Healthy Children.org "Starting Solid Foods." Last updated January 16, 2018. www.healthychildren.org/English/ages-stages/baby/feeding-nutrition/Pages/Switching-To-Solid-Foods.aspx**

6. **Kahl & Hughes. "The Harriet Lane Handbook." 18th edition. 21st ed., 2017, Elsevier. Chapter 29.**

7. "Facts and Comparisons eAnswers", Wolters Kluwer Clinical Drug Information Inc, 2019 < https://fco.factsandcomparisons.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/fc_dfc/5550029> **accessed September 27, 2019**.

8. "Facts and Comparisons eAnswers", Wolters Kluwer Clinical Drug Information Inc, 2019< https://fco.factsandcomparisons.com/lco/action/search?q=Aclovate&t=name&va=aclo> **accessed September 27, 2019**.

9. LexiComp Online. Wolters Kluwer Clinical Drug Information Inc. 2019. < https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/7061?cesid=ar3tMuPcADz&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3DhydrOXYzine%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dhydro#coi**> accessed September 27, 2019**.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR MILD CONTACT DERMATITIS

DEFINITION Acute or chronic inflammatory reaction to substances that come in contact with the skin.

ETIOLOGY 1. Irritant contact dermatitis is caused by local absorption of an irritant through a break in the skin. The inflammatory response may result from a single exposure to a caustic agent or repeated minor damage to the skin, such as frequent handwashing. Common offending agents include soaps, detergents and oral solvents. Everyone is at risk for developing irritant contact dermatitis, but people vary in their response to the irritant. One form common in infants is irritant diaper dermatitis, caused by trapped moisture and friction at the site of contact with the diaper.

2. Allergic contact dermatitis is a delayed cell-mediated hypersensitivity reaction to an offending agent. During the sensitization phase, an allergen penetrates the epidermis and produces proliferation of T-lymphocytes. The T-lymphocyte cells enter the blood circulation, so that all the skin becomes hypersensitive to the allergen. This phase may take days or months, depending on the individual's sensitivity, the amount and concentration of the allergen, and the amount of penetration. In the elicitation phase, the antigen specific T-lymphocytes react to subsequent allergen exposure and produce the inflammatory response.

Poison ivy, oak and sumac produce many cases of allergic **contact** dermatitis. Other allergens include: fur; leather; nickel; topical antibiotics, antihistamines and anesthetics; shoe dyes or glue; hair dyes; adhesive tape; parabens (found in sunscreens and lotions); and latex.

SUBJECTIVE Patient (or caregiver) may:

a. Have history of exposure to chemicals, detergents, medications, plants, lubricants, cleansers or rubber gloves, metal **belt buckles and/or** jewelry (zinc) at home or at work.
b. Have previous history of contact dermatitis.
c. Have Itching, swelling, rash of varying severity and duration.
d. Ask about response to any treatment used.

OBJECTIVE Physical examination:

1. Note character of eruption:
    a. Irritant contact dermatitis usually causes an erythematous dry, scaling eruption with an indistinct margin. Fissures sometimes occur.
    b. Chronic exposure may cause weeping lesions.
    c. Allergic contact dermatitis usually causes more erythema and

edema. Vesicles, characteristic in response to poison ivy, oak and sumac, often weep and form crusts **but can also have a linear line or streak– like pattern.**

2. Note location and pattern of the eruption, which suggest the cause:
    a. Scalp/ears: hair care products, jewelry.
    b. Eyelids: cosmetics, contact lens solution.
    c. Face/neck: cosmetics, cleansers, medications, jewelry.
    d. Trunk/axilla: deodorants, clothing **especially belt buckles**.
    e. Arms/hands: poison ivy/oak/sumac, soaps, detergents, chemicals, jewelry, rubber gloves.
    f. Legs/feet: clothing, shoes.

ASSESSMENT Contact Dermatitis

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Lesions occupy less than 2% body surface area (less than 2x size of patient's palm) and do not involve the face:

    a. Apply triamcinolone 0.1% **Cream or Ointment** 2 to 3 times daily until clear (usually at least 2 weeks).

    Use ointments on dry or cracked skin and creams on inflamed or weeping lesions. Many patients prefer the cream. May need to taper application (twice daily and once daily) to avoid flare-up.

    b. Calamine lotion can be applied as an astringent, protectant, or soothing agent, for conditions such as poison ivy, poison oak, or minor skin irritations. Apply 1 to 4 times daily, avoid if skin is dry. Do not use on open wounds. Educate patient to ensure that they do not obtain Caladryl **which** contains a topical analgesic**. It is** not generally recommended for use in children **younger than 2 years of age.**

    OR

    c. Zinc oxide can be applied several times a day as required to soothe and promote healing of chapped skin.

2. In the early stages, if drainage is occurring, wet dressings, using gauze soaked in Domeboro astringent, are an option to control itching when ointments and the measures described below are insufficient to

control pruritus during the first day or two of therapy. These dressings have the advantage of blocking the child's ability to scratch the area. For use as a wet dressing, saturate gauze in the solution; gently squeeze. Apply saturated cloth loosely to the affected area. Change dressing every 2-3 hours.

3. For relief of itching:

    a. Diphenhydramine hydrochloride elixir

        Children 2 through 5 years of age: Diphenhydramine hydrochloride elixir 12.5 mg/5mL. May give 6.25 mg every 4 to 6 hours; do not exceed 37.5 mg/day.

        Children 6 through 11 years of age: Diphenhydramine hydrochloride elixir 12.5 mg/5mL. May give 12.5mg to 25 mg every 4 to 6 hours; do not exceed 150 mg/day.

        Adults and children 12 years of age and older: Diphenhydramine hydrochloride 25-50 mg orally 3 or 4 times a day (not to exceed 300 mg/day). Do not give in third trimester of pregnancy or to breastfeeding mother.

NOTE: Dosing should be based on severity of symptoms. Do not use topical diphenhydramine. (Contact delegating physician before administering diphenhydramine to a child under 2 years of age).

OR

b. Hydroxyzine (Atarax or Vistaril) 10mg/5ml or 10 or 25 mg tablet Contraindicated in prolonged QT interval.

Children 1 year to less than 6 years: 2 mg/kg/day divided every 6 to 8 hours. Maximum single dose 12.5 mg. Can be started and given once daily (at bedtime) or twice daily (in the morning and at night).

Children 6 years to 12 years: 2 mg/kg/day divided every 6 to 8 hours. Maximum single dose: 25 mg. Can be started and given as once daily (at bedtime) or twice daily (in the morning and at night).

Children 12 years and older and weight > 40 kg: 25 to 50 mg once daily at bedtime or twice daily.

NON- PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Apply cold, wet compresses for 15-20 minutes 3-4 times a day during the blistering and weeping stage.

2. Cool tub baths, with or without colloidal oatmeal (e.g., Aveeno), to decrease inflammation and itching.

3. Dress the area, if necessary, to control scratching. A wet dressing is least likely to aggravate pruritis (Domeboro solution preferred).

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Educate on potential causes. Remove or avoid the irritant/allergen. Wear protective clothing and gloves.

2. For poison ivy, oak, etc:

    a. As soon as possible after exposure, wash the skin with lots of cold water and soap. To wash within 15 minutes is the most effective. If soap and water are not available, alcohol may be used.
    b. Poison ivy dermatitis is not spread elsewhere on the body or to another person, by fluid in the blister. It is spread by any oil from the plant still on the skin, clothes or tub. (Taking a shower rather than a bath is less likely to leave resin around the tub).
    c. A rash will appear first on areas of skin which are thinner, or where the plant oil was more concentrated.
    d. Teach how to identify poison ivy, oak and sumac.
    e. Topical steroids do not work well on vesicles or weeping rashes but may be used after the blistering stage.
    f. Remind of potential for delayed hypersensitivity reaction

3. Avoid use of topical preparations with benzocaines or other -caines.

4. Emollients (e.g., Eucerin, Lubriderm) can be used to protect and care for dry skin.

5. Advise that patch testing may be required to identify the irritant or allergen if more than one is possible.

6. Contact clinic if any problems obtaining medications.

FOLLOW-UP

Re-evaluate in 2-3 days, if no improvement or signs of bacterial infection occur.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present. (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. If moderate to severe dermatitis (greater than 2% body surface area) or significant involvement of the face (oral steroids can bring about dramatic improvement; the sooner oral steroids are started, the more effective they will be).

2. For suspected secondary bacterial infection (significant extension of erythema and/or tenderness beyond the initial border of the rash; fever [not always present], malaise).

3. If no response to treatment.

4. Pregnant or breastfeeding patient.

REFERENCES

1. **M.A. Papadakis, S.J. McPhee, M.W. Rabow (eds), *Current Medical Diagnosis & Treatment 2019 58th ed.,* McGraw-Hill, USA, Copyright @ 2019, Chapter 6: Dermatological Disorders.**

2. **Klaus Wolff, Richard Allen Johnson, *Fitzpatrick's Color Atlas & Synopsis of Clinical Dermatology,* 6th ed., McGraw-Hill, New York, 2009.**

3. **Sewon Kang, Masayuki Amagai, et al., Fitzpatrick's Dermatology, 9th ed., McGraw Hill, 2019, Part 3: Dermatitis, Chapter 24 (Allergic Contact Dermatitis) and Chapter 25 (Irritant Dermatitis**)

4. **C. Keith Stone, Roger L. Humphries, eds., *CURRENT Diagnosis & Treatment Pediatric Emergency Medicine,* 1st ed., McGraw-Hill, New York, 2015, Chapter 47: Dermatological Emergencies.**

5. **Papadakis MA, McPhee SJ. et al., *Quick Medical Diagnosis & Treatment,* McGraw-Hill, USA, 2017.**

6. **William Weston, Contact dermatitis in children. UpToDate (last updated July 06, 2017).**

7. **Brod, Bruce MD, "*Management of allergic contact dermatitis*" UpToDate Wolters Kluwer, < https://www.uptodate.com/contents/management-of-allergic-contact-dermatitis?source=machineLearning&search=poison%20ivy%20treatment&selectedTitle=1~48&sectionRank=2&anchor=H320159#H320159 (Last updated February 26, 2018).**

8. Lexicomp Online, Wolters Kluwer Clinical Drug Information Inc. 2019 < https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/pdh_f/2860023?cesid=3N4esdYxDVr&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dtriamcinolone%2520topical%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dtriamcinolone> **accessed September 27, 2019**.

9. Lexicomp Online, Wolters Kluwer Clinical Drug Information Inc. 2019 <https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/7061?cesid=8SKxSMqOBOw&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3DhydrOXYzine%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dhydro> **accessed September 27, 2019**.

10. Lexicomp Online, Wolters Kluwer Clinical Drug Information Inc. 2019. < >https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/pdh_f/129577?cesid=975gDGQkCYX&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dcalamine%2520lotion%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dcalamine> **accessed September 27,2019**.

11. **Kahl & Hughes. "The Harriet Lane Handbook." 18th edition. 21st ed., 2017, Elsevier Chapter 29.**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR DIAPER DERMATITIS (DIAPER RASH)

DEFINITION Inflammation of the skin within the area usually covered by the diaper.

ETIOLOGY It can be caused, and aggravated by, many factors acting separately or in combination. Contact irritants such as urine, stool and chemicals may be involved. Bacterial, fungal or viral infections may also cause diaper dermatitis. Other causes include seborrheic dermatitis or atopic dermatitis.

SUBJECTIVE Patient (caregiver) may complain of:

a. Pruritus
b. Irritability
c. Erythema
d. Rash

OBJECTIVE Physical examination:

a. Irritant contact diaper dermatitis will show mild erythema, especially on the buttocks, genitalia and lower abdomen with sparing in the creases.
b. Bacterial infection will show vesicles and/or pustules in the diaper area.
c. Monilial (candidal) infection will show smooth, shining, “fire-engine” red, papular and nummular rash, with well-circumscribed borders, that extends into creases, and satellite lesions that are outside the margin of the erythema. Oral thrush may also be present. Small pustules are often present on the periphery. Antibiotic use is a predisposing factor.
d. Affected area may be moist and exudative.
e. During healing of moderate to severe dermatitis, skin may be dry and scaly.

ASSESSMENT Diaper dermatitis.

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. For cases of diaper dermatitis that have the typical appearance of monilial infection (satellite lesions, etc.) or for cases of diaper dermatitis that have been present for more than 3 days without improvement.

    a. Apply nystatin 100,000 units/gm (e.g., Mycostatin©) cream lightly to affected area under a barrier ointment 3 to 4 times a

day for 7-10 days. (May repeat cycle once).

b. Treat for oral thrush, if evident. (See Thrush - Oral Candidiasis protocol).

NOTE: Topical hydrocortisone and fixed-combination medications, Mycolog II and Lotrisone, should NOT be used. (Adverse systemic effects may occur due to use in an occlusive diaper area).

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. General Treatment and Prevention: **Use ABCDE acronym for treatment protocol (Air, Barrier, Cleansing, Diaper and Education).**

    a. Keep diaper area dry and free from urine and stool:
        1) Change diapers frequently.
        2) Cleanse diaper area with warm water with each diaper change. Avoid use of soap which can be irritating to skin, and use mild, non-perfumed, non-medicated soap only if necessary.
        3) Air drying is **an important adjunctive treatment**
        4) Avoid starch, other powders and petroleum jelly.

    b. Apply **protective barrier agent**: bland ointment (e.g., A&D ointment) or a barrier cream (e.g., zinc oxide or Desitin©) after each diaper change.
    c. Avoid the use of commercial diaper wipes, which are often perfumed and irritating. Recommend using plain water and soft, non-abrasive towel for cleaning.
    d. Infants using super absorbent disposable diapers have a significantly lower frequency and severity of diaper rash when compared with infants using cloth diapers. These should be recommended if the dermatitis is recurrent or severe.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Assure that parent/caregiver knows how to treat, as above.

2. Teach parent to promptly change diapers as needed.

3. Teach parent to gently wash area (do not scrub). If rash is severe and to avoid rubbing – to clean and rinse, use a water bottle to squirt warm water gently and pat dry.

4. Teach parent to use mineral oil on a cotton ball to remove dried feces.

5. For cases of recurrent or severe diaper dermatitis a change in the type of diaper used is a reasonable consideration. Diaper rash is less common with use of super absorbent disposable diapers.

6. Contact clinic if any problems obtaining medications.

FOLLOW-UP

1. No follow-up needed if symptoms resolve within 2 weeks.

2. Reevaluate if symptoms persist or worsen beyond 2 weeks.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present. (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. Failure to respond to treatment.

2. Signs of bacterial infection are present.

3. Any rash that is unusual or severe.

REFERENCES

1. **Robert M. Kliegman, et al., *Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics,* 20th ed., Elsevier, Saunders, Philadelphia, PA, 2016, Chapter 655 pp. 3150-3155. e1, Chapter 234 pp. 1515-1518.**

2. **Paul S. Auerbach, *Wilderness Medicine*, 6th ed., Elsevier Mosby, Philadelphia, PA, 2012, <http://www.mdconsult.com/books/linkTo?type=bookPage&isbn=978-1-4377-1678-8&eid=4-u1.0-B978-1-4377-1678-8..00099-4--s0420> accessed on April 28, 2013.**

3. **American Academy of Pediatrics, "Diaper Rash," *Patient Education Handout,* 2018.**

4. **Ruchir Agrawal, Dirk M Elston, et al., "Diaper Dermatitis", Medscape Reference, <http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/911985-treatment> , Last updated June 28, 2018.**

5. Lexicomp Online, Wolters Kluwer Clinical Drug Information, Inc. < https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/pdh_f/2850940?cesid=5I91Zhav3Jl&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dnystatin%2520topical%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dnystatin> **accessed September 27, 2019**.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR DYSLIPIDEMIA SCREENING

DEFINITION Dyslipidemia is a condition marked by abnormal elevations of Total Cholesterol, Low-Density Lipoprotein cholesterol (LDL), Triglycerides, or deficiency of High-Density Lipoprotein cholesterol (HDL) in the blood.

ETIOLOGY Research indicates that atherosclerosis (fatty deposits of plaque in arterial walls) begins in childhood and progresses over the lifespan. Exact causes of atherosclerosis are not known, but certain factors that may damage arterial walls and lead to atherosclerosis are: smoking, high amounts of certain fats and cholesterol in the blood, high blood pressure and high amounts of sugar in the blood.

Dyslipidemias are disorders of lipoprotein metabolism that result in high levels of Total Cholesterol, LDL or Triglycerides and low levels of HDL. Dyslipidemia is a risk factor for cardiovascular disease (CVD) in adults. Early identification of youth with dyslipidemia can lead to interventions that may prevent or delay the progress of atherosclerosis and CVD.

Secondary causes are attributed to sedentary lifestyle, diets high in saturated fat and cholesterol, and conditions such as diabetes, nephrotic syndrome, hypothyroidism. **Also,** certain drugs may affect lipid profiles, e.g. progestins, anabolic steroids, corticosteroids and protease inhibitors.

SUBJECTIVE Risk Factors:

a. Family history of parent with elevated blood cholesterol (level of 240 mg/dL or higher) or known dyslipidemia.
b. Family history (parents, grandparents, aunt/uncle, or sibling with premature (before 55 years of age in males and before 65 years in females) cardiovascular disease (e.g. myocardial infarction, angina, stroke, coronary artery bypass graft/stent/angioplasty).
c. Unobtainable family history.
d. **Personal** history of tobacco use.
e. **Personal** history of diabetes.
f. **Personal** history of hypertension.
g. **Personal** history of excess alcohol intake.
h. Diet that includes excessive consumption of saturated (solid) fats and cholesterol. (Greater than 10 **%** of calories from saturated fatty acids).
i. Low levels of physical activity (less than one hour of active play/physical activity most days of the week).
j. Very high carbohydrate diet (greater than 60 percent of total energy).
k. Significant risk factors/conditions may include: chronic renal disease/end-stage renal disease/post-renal transplant, post-orthotopic heart transplant, Kawasaki disease with current or regressed aneurysms, chronic inflammatory disease (systemic lupus erythematosis, juvenile rheumatoid arthritis), HIV infection, nephrotic

syndrome, **certain genetic conditions**.

OBJECTIVE Reasons to **obtain** lipid screening:

a. Patient age falls within the recommendations for universal screening **(between 9 – 11 years or between 17-21 years) as outlined in Bright Futures Periodicity Schedule**.
b. BMI at or greater than the 95th percentile for age (2 through 8 years old.)
c. BMI at or greater than the 85th percentile for age (9 through 20 years old.)
d. Patient is age 2-8 **years of age** or 12-16 **years of age AND** meets "high risk" criteria for significant risk factors/conditions

ASSESSMENT At Risk for Dyslipidemia

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

1. BMI **for age**: check annually for patient 2 years and older.
   BMI: check annually for patient 21 years and older.

2. Blood Pressure: check annually for patient 3 years and above.

3. **Per Bright Futures Periodicity Schedule,** non-fasting dyslipidemia screening for all patients **occurs** once between ages 9-11 years **and** then again **between** ages 17-21 years.

4. High Risk Screening:

    a. Screen children ages 2-8 **years of age** and 12-16 **years of age who** meet any of the **"high-risk"** criteria (Refer to list under SUBJECTIVE for **"high risk"** criteria). Test only once during this age range.
    b. BMI at or greater than the 95th percentile for age (2 through 8 years old).
    c. BMI at or greater than the 85th percentile for age (9 through 20 years old).

NOTE: Lipid Profile should include total Cholesterol, LDL cholesterol, HDL cholesterol and Triglycerides. Ideally, lipid profile and glucose should be obtained in the fasting state for those patients in the high-risk group. If not possible, non-fasting samples may be obtained.

5. Retest as needed if there are abnormal values or clinical concerns.

6. Evaluate laboratory results per the following reference tables:

Lipid Laboratory Results Parameters						
Youth: 2 through 19 years of age						
	Total Cholesterol (mg/dL)	LDL (mg/dL)	Non-HDL cholesterol (mg/dL)	Triglycerides (mg/dL) 0-9 years	Triglycerides (mg/dL) 10-19 years	HDL (mg/dL)
Acceptable	less than 170	less than 110	less than 120	less than 75	less than 90	greater than 45
Borderline	170-199	110-129	120-144	75-99	90-129	40-45
High	200 or greater	130 or greater	145 or greater	100 or greater	130 or greater	**
Low	**	**	**	**	**	less than 40
Source: Expert Panel on Integrated Guidelines for Cardiovascular Health and Risk Reduction in Children and Adolescents: Summary Report						

Youth 20 years of age					
	Total Cholesterol (mg/dL)	LDL (mg/dL)	Non-HDL cholesterol (mg/dL)	Triglycerides (mg/dL)	HDL (mg/dL)
Acceptable	less than 190	less than 120	less than 150	less than 115	greater than 45
Borderline	190-224	120-159	150-189	115-149	40-44
High	225 or greater	160 or greater	190 or greater	150 or greater	**
Low	**	**	**	**	less than 40
Source: Expert Panel on integrated Guidelines for Cardiovascular Health and Risk Reduction in Children and Adolescents: Summary Report					

THERAPEUTIC

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURE

1. Initiate Therapeutic Lifestyle Changes for all patients as follows:

    a. Patients 2 years of age or older follow nutritional guidance in accordance with Dietary Guidelines for Americans 2015-2020.
    b. Physical activity recommendations for youth 2 years of age and older are 60 minutes or more of active play/physical activity per day.
    c. Lifestyle changes to include smoking avoidance, tobacco use cessation, **healthy sleep volume and pattern**, healthful food and beverage intake, and by increasing physical activity and

reducing screen time.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Counsel patients and families:

    a. To balance caloric intake with physical activity.
    b. To consume more fruits, vegetables, fish, whole grains, **beans/lentils,** and low-fat dairy products.
    c. To reduce the intake of calories from solid fats, saturated fat, **trans fats**, and cholesterol.
    d. Solid fats are solid at room temperature and are primarily saturated **and/or trans** fats. Solid fats mainly come from animal sources but include some plant sources. Some common solid fats are:
        1) Butter
        2) Whole milk and whole milk dairy products
        3) Beef fat (tallow, suet)
        4) Chicken fat**/poultry with skin**
        5) Pork fat (lard)
        6) Coconut and palm oils.

        Trans fats are also solid fats. Check the food label for trans fats. Primary sources of trans fat include:
        1) Shortening and other solid fats
        2) Pastries (i.e., cakes, doughnuts, cookies)
        3) Icing/frosting
        4) Stick margarine and some, but not all, tub margarines
        5) Microwave popcorn.

        Animal food sources all contain cholesterol. Oils from plant sources (vegetable and nut oils) do not contain any cholesterol. In fact, no foods from plants sources contain cholesterol.

    e. To increase the intake of monounsaturated and polyunsaturated fatty acids. Most oils (liquid fats) are high in monounsaturated or polyunsaturated fats, and low in saturated fats. Foods made up mostly of monounsaturated and polyunsaturated fats include:
        1) **Olives and olive** oil
        2) Canola oil
        3) Safflower oil
        4) Peanut oil
        5) Corn oil
        6) Nuts, **nut butters**, and seeds.

7) Avocados
8) Fatty fish such as salmon and tuna

f. On decreasing intake of added sugars. Fruit and milk have naturally occurring sugars. However, added sugars can be commonly found in:
   1) Soft drinks and fruit drinks
   2) Candies and cookies
   3) Cakes and pies
   4) Ice cream
   5) Sweetened yogurt

g. On ways to increase physical activity and decrease sedentary lifestyles.
h. About associated risk factors such as, smoking, obesity, diabetes and hypertension.
i. To increase soluble fiber food such as: oatmeal, 100% whole wheat products, quinoa, brown rice, corn, beans/lentils, sweet potato, broccoli, turnips, carrots, brussel sprouts, spinach, cabbage, kale, all berries, citrus fruits, peaches, pears, apples, grapes, avocado.

2. Encourage family members with dyslipidemia risk factors to obtain medical evaluations as appropriate.

FOLLOW-UP

For patients screened with a fasting or non-fasting lipid profile with abnormal results, refer to a physician for follow-up.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. For patient on oral contraceptives refer to Standard Nurse Protocol for Abnormal Lipid Tests While Using Hormonal Contraceptives.

2. If patient is a tobacco user, referral to local cessation program and/or Georgia Tobacco Quit Line, 1-877-270-STOP (7867).

3. Pregnant or lactating patient refer to APRN or physician.

4. Refer patients with significant risk factors to primary care provider.

5. Refer patients to a registered dietitian nutritionist (RDN) for consultation if lipid management requires individualized nutrition education and counseling. Children 1-5 years old may be eligible for nutrition education and counseling through the WIC Program.

REFERENCES

1. **Joseph R. Hagan, Jr., Judith S. Shaw, and Paula M. Duncan (eds.), *Bright Futures: Guidelines for Health Supervision of Infants, Children, and Adolescents*, 4th ed., 2017, The American Academy of Pediatrics, Elk Grove Village, IL, 2008, pp. 285.**

2. **Georgia Department of Community Health, "Part II Policies and Procedures for Health Check Services (EPSDT)," April 1, 2017.**

3. Rae-Ellen W. Kavey, Denise G. Simons-Morton and Janet M. de Jesus, (eds.), National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute, National Institutes of Health, "Expert Panel on Integrated Guidelines for Cardiovascular Health and Risk Reduction in Children and Adolescents: Summary Report," Pediatrics, Vol. 128, Supplement 5, December 2011, pp. S1-S44 **and S213-S256**.

4. NIH-National Heart, Lung and Blood Institute: http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/health-pro/guidelines/current/cardiovascular-health-pediatric-guidelines

5. **USDA ChooseMYPlate.gov (United States Department of Agriculture) Last updated July 11, 2018, https://www.choosemyplate.gov/saturated-unsaturated-and-trans-fats**

6. Cleveland Clinic, HealthEssentials**.** https://health.clevelandclinic.org/2015/07/avoid-these-10-foods-full-of-trans-fats/

7. American Heart Association http://www.heart.org/HEARTORG/HealthyLiving/HealthyEating/Nutrition/Sugar-101_UCM_306024_Article.jsp#.WTGhKuvyvct

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR FEVER

DEFINITION Fever is an elevation in normal body temperature**.** A fever is generally harmless and can be considered a good sign that **the** immune system is working and that the body is trying to heal itself. Normal body temperature varies with time of day, activity level, age and general health. Infants tend to have higher temperatures than older children. In general, a person's temperature is highest during late afternoon early evening and lowest between midnight and early morning. The average normal body temperature is 98.6 degrees Fahrenheit (37 degrees Celsius). Most pediatricians consider a rectal temperature above 100.4 degrees Fahrenheit (38 degrees Celsius) a fever.

ETIOLOGY Most fevers in children are seen in conjunction with an acute, infectious process. Fever control is of secondary importance to identification and control of its underlying cause.

SUBJECTIVE Patient may:

a. Have history of exposure to other ill children or adults.
b. Be less active than usual or irritable.
c. Have symptoms of illness, such as rhinorrhea, cough, tachypnea, ear pain, dysuria, pain, chills, rash, **sore throat, headache, vomiting and/or diarrhea, increased** urinary frequency **or** sudden enuresis.
d. Have **a** fever pattern **that** may be continuous, remittent, intermittent or recurrent.
e. Have history of recent immunization. **(**However, caution is advised when attributing fever to an immunization. Immunized infants can also harbor an infectious process**).**
f. Have decreased appetite.
g. Complain of pain or discomfort.

OBJECTIVE Physical examination:

a. Elevated temperature greater than 100.4 degrees Fahrenheit (38° Celsius).

   NOTE: **Rectal Thermometry: Rectal temperatures are recommended for infants and children under 2 years of age. Bright Futures guidelines for Health Supervision suggests rectal temperatures can be obtained up to 4 years of age. Do not perform rectal thermometry in a patient with neutropenia.**

   Oral Thermometry: **If child is more than 2 years old and is cooperative, oral thermometry is preferred.**

   Axillary Thermometry: Will be lower than rectal thermometer but

there is no need for adjustment. The National Institute for Health and Care Excellence allows for use of electronic axillary thermometry for children younger than four weeks and up to five years of age due to its ease of use, quicker completion and better acceptance by parents and caregivers. Preferred for neutropenic patient who cannot use an oral thermometer.

Infrared Thermometry (Tympanic Membrane and Temporal Artery): These devices are commonly used in offices, homes and hospitals but accuracy may be affected by sweating or vascular changes. Readings may be lower or higher than rectal temperatures which is the standard reference measurement for risk of serious infections in febrile infants and young children. In these situations, temporal artery temperatures should not be used to make clinical decisions.

b. Pulse and**/or** respiratory rate may be elevated.

ASSESSMENT Fever/Elevated body temperature.

Perform complete physical exam (must rule out a more serious infection).

NOTE: The decision on whether to treat fever is individualized to each child. Antipyretics do not alter the course of disease and can cause side effects and toxicity. Temperature elevations do not correlate with severity of cause. The most common reason for treating fever is that fever makes the child uncomfortable. The decision to treat for comfort's sake should be based on how the child looks and behaves, not a temperature threshold.

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

Laboratory tests as indicated by history and physical findings.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Aspirin should not be given to children **and adolescents 19 years and under** because of its association with Reye's syndrome **especially when used during episodes of fever -causing or viral illnesses**. Use of any medication in children which contain salicylates (such as Alka-Seltzer and Pepto Bismol) should be avoided.

If you do choose to treat a fever, the two recommended medications are:

1. Acetaminophen (less prone to GI irritation)

NOTE: Children with phenylketonuira (PKU) should not take Children's Anacin-3©, Children's Tylenol©, Double Strength Tempra©, Junior Strength Tylenol© and Tempra© in the chewable form. These products, in this dosage form, contain aspartame, which is metabolized in the GI tract to phenylalanine following oral administration.

NOTE: Caution in children with liver impairment

OR

2. Ibuprofen (only for children 6 months and older due to potential harmful effects on kidneys).

NOTE: For anti-pyretic use, refer to recommendations in the following dosage charts. Under no circumstances should these two medications be given in alternating fashion to reduce fever. Failure of fever to respond to antipyretics is not predictive of severity of illness.

DOSAGE RECOMMENDATIONS FOR RELIEF OF FEVER AND PAIN IN CHILDREN ACETAMINOPHEN

NOTE: Healthcare professionals should verify product concentration prior to providing dosing information. Dose is 10 to 15 mg/kg/dose every 4 to 6 hours as needed. Do not give more than 5 doses in 24 hours. Maximum of 75 mg/kg/day (not to exceed 4 g daily).

Acetaminophen dosage

Child's weight		Liquid (suspension*)	Meltaways	Junior meltaways
Lbs	Kg	160 mg per 5 mL	80 mg tablet	160 mg tablet
12-17	5.4-7.7	2.5 mL	Do not use	Do not use
18-23	8.1-10.4	3.75 mL	Do not use	Do not use
24-35	10.9-15.9	5 mL	2 tablets	1 tablet
36-47	16.3-21.3	7.5 mL	3 tablets	1½ tablets
48-59	21.8-26.8	10 mL	4 tablets	2 tablets
60-71	27.2-32.3	12.5 mL	5 tablets	2½ tablets
72-95	32.7-43.1	15 mL	6 tablets	3 tablets

*You may see the word suspension on your child's medicine bottle. Suspension means the medicine is loose in the liquid. This type of medicine needs to be shaken well before it is given to your child.

*Lbs = pounds; kg=kilograms; mg=milligrams; mL=milliliters

IBUPROFEN CHILDREN'S SUSPENSION & CHEWABLE TABLETS

NOTE: Only for children 6 months and older due to potential harmful effects on kidneys. Healthcare professionals should verify product concentration prior to providing dosing information. 5 to 10 mg/kg/dose. Dose may be repeated every 6 to 8 hours, not more than 4 doses in 24 hours**. Use only the dropper provided for infant drops**.

Ibuprofen dosage for 12 years of age and older is 400mg every **6 to 8 hours** as needed. (Maximum: 2,400mg/24 hours); treatment beyond 3 days is not recommended. To reduce the risk of adverse cardiovascular and GI effects, use the lowest effective dose for the shortest period of time **and take with food**.

Ibuprofen dosage

Child's weight		Infant's drops	Liquid (suspension*)	Chewable tabs	Junior chewable tabs
Lbs	Kg	50 mg per 1.25 mL	100 mg per 5 mL	50 mg	100 mg
18-23	8.1-10.4	1.875 mL	Do not use	Do not use	Do not use
24-35	10.9-15.9	2.5 mL	5 mL	2 tablets	Do not use
36-47	16.3-21.3	Do not use	7.5 mL	3 tablets	1½ tablets
48-59	21.8-26.8	Do not use	10 mL	4 tablets	2 tablets
60-71	27.2-32.3	Do not use	12.5 mL	5 tablets	2½ tablets
72-95	32.7-43.1	Do not use	15 mL	6 tablets	3 tablets

*You may see the word suspension on your child's medicine bottle. Suspension means the medicine is loose in the liquid. This type of medicine needs to be shaken well before it is given to your child.

*Lbs = pounds; kg=kilograms; mg=milligrams; mL=milliliters

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Give extra clear liquids such as Pedialyte, Enfalyte, water, juices and popsicles to prevent dehydration. Observe urinary frequency, volume and color for early signs of dehydration.

2. Avoid overdressing the febrile child.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Comfort measures.

2. Children with fever may not feel hungry and it is not necessary to force them to eat.

3. Offer fluids frequently.

4. How to take rectal and oral temperatures (depending on age of child) and to observe for other signs and symptoms which may develop.

5. Safety measures and keeping all medications out of reach of children always.

6. Teach parents to read labels and find other sources of acetaminophen that are often in over the counter medications and can cause toxicity.

7. Reinforce when parents should seek further medical evaluation.

8. Infants and children with fever should not attend daycare or school until afebrile without the use of medication for 24 hours.

9. Educate parent on appropriate dosage of Acetaminophen and Ibuprofen to give child when at home. Reinforce that these medications should not be given in alternating fashions.

10. Discourage the use of alcohol sponging and physical cooling to reduce child's temperature. Never use alcohol for sponging, alcohol can be absorbed through the skin.

    Physical cooling, like sponging, is usually unnecessary and may even be harmful, causing discomfort and chilling. Sponging allows heat to escape without adjusting the hypothalamic thermostat.

As cooling begins, the hypothalamus directs the body to produce more heat, causing muscular shivering and an increase in metabolic rate.

FOLLOW-UP

Return visit in 24-48 hours if no improvement.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present. (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. All infants under 3 months old with a temperature elevation.

2. Any child with decreased mental awareness.

3. Any child that appears toxic (e.g., lethargic or irritable, noninteractive, poor perfusion, hypotension, petechial rash, cardio-respiratory distress, rigors).

4. Any child with signs of acute illness accompanying the fever, such as meningeal signs, alteration in neurologic status, lethargy, pain, rash, petechiae, dysuria, swollen joints, or tachypnea after fever control or other signs of respiratory distress.

5. Fever greater than 102.2° Fahrenheit (39° Celsius) and any of the following (high-risk UTI and bacteremia criteria):

    a. Age 3-6 months.
    b. Age 6-12 months, uncircumcised male.
    c. Age less than 24 months and female unless obvious source.

6. Child has a history of febrile seizures.

7. Any child who has a fever that lasts more than 3 days.

8. Child with immunosuppression, history of chronic conditions such as heart disease or sickle cell disease.

9. Child with prosthetic devices.

10. Child with an unusual exposure history (examples: tick bite, foreign travel, unusual animal exposure, etc.).

11. Pregnant or breastfeeding patient.

REFERENCES

1. **Thomas K. McInerny, et al., *American Academy of Pediatrics Textbook of Pediatric Care,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2017, Part 6, Chapter 152: "Presenting Signs and Symptoms".**

2. **American Academy of Pediatrics, "Febrile Seizures," Last updated November 30, 2017. <http://www.healthychildren.org/English/health-issues/conditions/fever/pages/Febrile-Seizures.aspx?nfstatus=401&nftoken=00000000-0000-0000-0000-000000000000&nfstatusdescription=ERROR%3a+No+local+token>**

3. **American Academy of Pediatrics, "Signs and Symptoms of Fever," (Last updated 11/21/2015), <http://www.healthychildren.org/English/health-issues/conditions/fever/pages/Signs-and-Symptoms-of-Fever.aspx>**

4. **American Academy of Pediatrics, "How to Take a Child's Temperature," (Last updated 11/21/2015), <http://www.healthychildren.org/English/health-issues/conditions/fever/pages/How-to-Take-a-Childs-Temperature.aspx>**.

5. **American Academy of Pediatrics, "Fever and Your Baby," (Last updated 8/3/2016), <http://www.healthychildren.org/English/health-issues/conditions/fever/pages/Fever-and-Your-Baby.aspx>.**

6. Janice E. Sullivan, Henry C. Farrar and the Section on Clinical Pharmacology and Therapeutics, and Committee on Drugs, "Clinical Report−−Fever and Antipyretic Use in Children," *Pediatrics,* Vol. 127, No. 3, March 2011, pp. 580-587.

7. Children's Healthcare of Atlanta (Acetaminophen & Ibuprofen dosage tables)

8. **Ward, Mark A., MD, "Fever in infants and children: Pathophysiology and management" UpToDate 2017, Wolters Kluwer, https://www.uptodate.com/contents/fever-in-infants-and-children-pathophysiology-and-management?source=machineLearning&search=fever%20treatment&selectedTitle=2~150&sectionRank=1&anchor=H11#H11 (Last updated January 14, 2019**)

9. Lexicomp Online. Wolters Kluwer Clinical Drug Information Inc. 2019. < https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/6264?cesid=aj3H0invUGy&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dacetaminophen%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dacetaminophen> **accessed September 27, 2019**.

10. Lexicomp Online. Wolters Kluwer Clinical Drug Information Inc. 2019. < https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/pdh_f/129889?cesid=2jUI9t8Buqx&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dibuprofen%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dibuprofren> **accessed September 27, 2019**.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR IMPETIGO

DEFINITION

A condition involving **bacterial infection in** the superficial layer of the skin and characterized by honey-colored, crusted lesions or seropurulent vesicles surrounded by a narrow margin of erythema. It occurs in two forms: bullous and non-bullous.

Impetigo may be a complication of insect bites, abrasions or dermatitis. Peak incidence is in late summer and early fall. Impetigo is most common in infants and children.

ETIOLOGY

Virtually 100% of bullous impetigo and 75% of non-bullous impetigo is caused by *Staphylococcus aureus*. Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* infection may be present in impetigo. The remainder is caused by group A beta-hemolytic *Streptococcus*. Staphylococci normally spread from the nose to the skin and then infect the skin. It is commonly found on the face.

In non-bullous impetigo (greater than 70% of cases), skin lesions start as small erythematous macules and papules that develop into discrete, thin-walled vesicles, which become pustular and quickly rupture. As the vesicles rupture, a yellow fluid forms an exudate, which dries to form a stratified golden yellow crust that can spread the infection to other parts of the body. Cellulitis follows about 10% of cases of non-bullous impetigo.

Bullous impetigo infection occurs primarily in newborn infants and young children. The characteristic skin lesions of bullous impetigo are superficial, flaccid, thin-walled bullae that occur most often on the extremities but can occur anywhere.

Impetigo may be spread by direct contact with infected persons or it may be secondary to infections of the upper respiratory tract. The incubation period is 2-10 days. The untreated patient is contagious until lesions are healed; treatment shortens the period of contagiousness.

Acute glomerulonephritis (AGN) can follow streptococcal infections of either the skin or pharynx. It can occur at any age and the incidence is variable, ranging from 0 to 28%. The median latent period between infection and the development of AGN is 10 days. It is characterized by hematuria and hypertension. Treatment, even early treatment, does little to prevent the occurrence of AGN in the patient suffering from impetigo; however, it does reduce the spread of impetigo and therefore the development of AGN in other children.

SUBJECTIVE Patient/caregiver complain of:

a. Superficial lesions, anywhere on the body, commonly begin on face.
b. Itching is common, **and** scratching may spread the infection.
c. Often a history of minor trauma **(**such as insect bites or scratches**)**, or **other skin conditions (such as** scabies, **chicken pox** or herpes simplex lesions**)**, provide **a point of** entry for the **bacterial** organism**s**.

OBJECTIVE Physical examination:

a. Superficial clear vesicles are present, containing serous fluid that becomes purulent. The base is erythematous and lesions are surrounded by areas of erythema. May also observe ruptured pustules that have dried centrally and formed a honey-colored crust.
b. Lesions may vary in size from a few millimeters to several centimeters.
c. May have regional lymphadenopathy, which occurs more often in streptococcal than in staphylococcal infections.
d. Bullous impetigo is characterized by very large vesicles (bullae) that rupture and form circular, raw lesions resembling a second-degree burn; these eventually form a crust. It is very infectious and may be present on multiple sites of body and even on other family members.
e. MRSA impetigo: Considered when impetigo is not improving despite the use of standard antibiotics

ASSESSMENT Impetigo

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

1. Check urine for blood and protein if there is any history of unusually dark (smoky) urine.

2. Check blood pressure.

3. Consider skin culture **for identification and** sensitivity **testing**:

    a. If there is reason to suspect Methicillin-resistant staphylococcus aureus (MRSA).
    b. History of MRSA infection in the household.
    c. Cellulitis.
    d. If there is an outbreak of impetigo in the community.
    e. Failure to respond promptly to treatment.
    f. If poststreptococcal glomerulonephritis is present.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Local treatment may be adequate when only one or two lesions are present and there is no fever present.

    a. Remove crusts by soaking and gentle washing with warm water and antiseptic soap before applying antibiotic ointment.

    b. Mupirocin 2% ointment (prescription required) should be applied to lesions 3 times a day for 7-10 days.

    OR

    c. Retapamulin 1% ointment (prescription required).

    Children 9 months of age and older. Topical: Apply to affected area twice daily for 5 days. Total treatment area should not exceed 2% of total body surface area.

2. Reevaluate patient not showing a response in 2 to 3 days. May need culture **for identification and** sensitivity testing.

3. Systemic treatment is used for multiple lesions (e.g., 3 or more), widely separated lesions or lesions that are not showing rapid response to local therapy. If infection is severe (e.g., multiple large lesions with fever or other systemic symptoms refer to a physician. Before starting systemic antibiotic, obtain culture **for identification** and sensitivity **testing.**

    a. Cephalexin (Keflex), suspension of 125 mg/5mL or 250 mg/5 mL, or 500 mg capsules. Give 25-50 mg/kg/day orally, divided into 2 equal doses every 12 hours for 10 days.

    If younger than 1 year of age, divide into 3-4 doses. If over 15 years of age, 500 mg orally twice daily for 10 days.

    OR

    b. Erythromycin ethylsuccinate (EryPed, EES, Pediamycin) 200 mg/5 mL or 400 mg/5 mL suspension, or 200 mg chewable or 400 mg film-coated tablets.

    Give Erythromycin ethylsuccinate 30-50 mg/kg/day, orally in four equally divided doses every 6 hours for 10 days. If twice-a-day dosage is desired, ½ of the total daily dose may be given every 12 hours. Doses may also be given three times daily by administering one-third of the total daily dose every 8

hours.

Adolescents and Adults weighing 100 lbs or more: Erythromycin ethylsuccinate 400 mg by mouth every 6 hours for 10 days.

NOTE: Do not use if allergic to macrolides. Give after meals to decrease gastric upset**. Do not use erythromycin with infants under 6 months of age due to potential risk for infantile hypertrophic pyloric stenosis (IHPS).**

4. If MRSA is suspected or confirmed, give:

   a. Clindamycin

      Child Dose: Clindamycin 20mg/kg/day in three divided doses.
      Adult dose: Clindamycin 300 mg to 450 mg four times per day for 7-10 days.

      OR

   b. Bactrim

      Child Dose: Trimethoprim 8-12 mg/kg per day in two divided doses.
      Adult dose: Bactrim 1-2 double strength tablets twice per day for 7-10 days.

5. **NOTE:** Treat or refer all family/household members in close contact who also have impetiginous lesions, to avoid reinfection and further spread.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Instruct family and child in importance of hand-washing.

2. Instruct in handling of linen and clothing separate from the rest of household.

3. Instruct in trimming and keeping nails clean.

4. Instruct in soaking and removal of crusts from lesions: gently wash the affected areas with clean gauze and antiseptic soap every day. Soak any areas of crusted skin in warm soapy water to help remove the layers of crust. It is not necessary to completely remove all crust.

5. Give parent information about symptoms of glomerulonephritis to observe for: hematuria; periorbital edema; headache; fever; malaise; or tea or “smoky”-colored urine.

6. May return to school 24 hours after starting antibiotic treatment. Children with draining or open lesions should have lesions covered with a clean, dry dressing (gauze and tape or a loose bandage). Close contact with other children should be avoided.

7. Contact clinic if any problems obtaining medications.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Reevaluate in 2-3 days if infection is not showing a response to medication, is worsening, or is spreading.

2. Recheck in 18-21 days or sooner if rash/infection gets worse while on treatment. Note any signs or symptoms of glomerulonephritis (brown colored urine, hematuria, periorbital edema, headache, malaise). Check blood pressure. If indicated, check urine for blood and protein (dipstick adequate).

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present. (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. If rash is not completely resolved at end of medication regimen.

2. Infants under the age of 2 months.

3. Non-adherence with medication or instructions.

4. Severe infections (e.g., multiple large lesions with fever or other systemic symptoms).

5. If extensive local inflammation or cellulitis.

6. If any signs/symptoms of glomerulonephritis.

7. If multiple recurrences, to evaluate child for nasopharyngeal carriage state of *S. aureus.*

8. If progression after 24 hours of treatment or a culture positive for MRSA.

9. Pregnant or breastfeeding.

REFERENCES

1. Rose W. Boynton, et al., *Manual of Ambulatory Pediatrics,* 6th ed., Wolters Kluwer Health, Philadelphia, 2009, pp. 322-325. (Current)

2. **Committee on Infectious Diseases, American Academy of Pediatrics, David W. Kimberlin MD, et al., *Red Book®: 2018: Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases.* 31st ed., Itasca, IL: American Academy of Pediatrics: pp. 732-733.**

3. **Thomas K. McInerny, et al, *American Academy of Pediatrics Textbook of Pediatric Care,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2017, Part 7, Chapter 222.**

4. **Robert M. Kliegman, et al., *Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics,* 20th ed., Elsevier, Saunders, Philadelphia, PA, Copyright @ 2016, Chapter 183 pp. 1327-1337. e1, Chapter 665 3203-3213. e1**

5. **J.E. South-Paul, S.C. Matheny, E.L. Lewis, eds., *Current Diagnosis and Treatment in Family Medicine,* 4th ed., McGraw-Hill, New York, Copyright @ 2015, Chapter 6: Skin diseases in infants and children.**

6. J.E. Tintinalli, J.S. Stapczynski, et al., eds. *Tintinalli's Emergency Medicine: A Comprehensive Study Guide,* 7th ed., McGraw-Hill, New York, 2011, <http://www.accessmedicine.com.medlib-proxy.mercer.edu/content.aspx?aID=6383200>, accessed April 30, 2013.

7. **W.W. Hay, Jr., et al., eds. *Current Diagnosis and Treatment: Pediatrics*, 24th ed., McGraw-Hill, New York, Copyright @ 2018, Chapter 15: Skin.**

8. **Joanne Murren-Boezem, "Impetigo," *Kids Health.org from Nemours,* <http://kidshealth.org/PageManager.jsp?dn=KidsHealth&lic=1&ps=107&cat_id=20047&article_set=22786> (Last updated June 2018).**

9. **Kahl & Hughes. "Harriet Lane Handbook." 21st ed., Elsevier, Chapter 8, pp. 203-228.**

10. Sage Journals, Journal of Pharmacy Practices, Beta-Lactam Hypersensitivity and Cross-Reactivity, Adrienne T. Terico, PharmD, Jason C. Gallagher, PharmD, FCCP, BCPS http://www.jpedsurg.org/article/S0022-3468(14)00699-X/fulltext http://journals.sagepub.com/doi/pdf/10.1177/0897190014546109 http://www.jem-journal.com/article/S0736-4679(11)00545-2/fulltext

11. **Baddour, Larry M, MD, FIDSA, FAHA, "Impetigo" UpToDate, Wolters Kluwer 2019.** https://www.uptodate.com/contents/impetigo?search=oral%20antibiotic%20treatment%20for%20impetigo&sectionRank=1&usage_type=default&anchor=H11&source=machineLearning&selectedTitle=1~150&display_rank=1#H11> **accessed September 30, 2019. <**

12. Lexicomp Online. Wolters Kluwer Clinical Drug Information, Inc. 2019. <https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/pdh_f/2841043?cesid=5vpemcDdPnO&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Derythromycin%2520ethylsuccinate%26t%3Dname%26va%3Derythromycin>**accessed September 30, 2019**.

13. Lexicomp Online. Wolters Kluwer Clinical Drug Information, Inc. 2019. < https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/pdh_f/129705?cesid=2psXemPGDPa&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dmupirocin%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dmupro> **accessed September 30, 2019**.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR TREATMENT OF IRON DEFICIENCY ANEMIA

DEFINITION

Iron deficiency is a condition in which there is a reduction of iron in the body to less than normal. Iron depletion is the earliest stage of deficiency, where iron storage is decreased but serum iron concentration and blood hemoglobin levels are normal. Iron deficiency anemia is the most advanced stage of iron deficiency with low serum iron concentration and low blood hemoglobin concentration.

ETIOLOGY

Anemia occurs when there is a reduction in hemoglobin concentration or red blood cells, resulting in decreased oxygen carrying capacity of blood. Anemia may result from excessive blood loss, excessive blood cell destruction, or decreased blood cell formation. The latter anemia may result from inhibition of or loss of, bone marrow function, defective nucleoprotein synthesis (as in pernicious anemia) or deficiency of iron in the diet. The most common anemia in children is iron deficiency anemia. Iron deficiency occurs most commonly in late infancy, early childhood and adolescence.

Iron deficiency anemia represents the most severe end of the iron-deficiency spectrum. There is evidence that substantial iron deficiency during infancy and early childhood can have long term neurocognitive implications**,** and it is likely that by the time iron-deficiency progresses to anemia the neurological consequences have already occurred. Some of these neurodevelopment and behavior effects may be irreversible. It is, therefore, imperative that iron deficiency be prevented, and if not prevented then diagnosed early and treated aggressively.

Subsets at increased risk for iron deficiency include: infants of diabetic mothers, preterm infants and infants with growth restrictions; breastfed infants older than 6 months not receiving iron supplementation, children with elevated lead levels, children living at or below the poverty level, **children and** adolescents on low-meat or no-meat diets and post-menarchal girls.

NOTE: For female patient 18 years and over in Women's Health Program, see **Standard Nurse Protocol for Iron Deficiency Anemia**.

SUBJECTIVE

Patient may report:

a. Asymptomatic.
b. Poor appetite, inadequate diet, or anorexia.
c. Irritableness or fussiness.
d. Poor weight gain.
e. Headaches.
f. Easily fatigued, listlessness, decreased social interaction, poor attention to tasks, developmental delays.

g. Pica (can be a symptom of iron deficiency anemia and/or lead poisoning; iron deficiency anemia increases risk for lead poisoning).
h. Excessive milk/dairy intake (more than 24 oz. per day) and limited intake of iron-containing foods.
i. Infants six months and older and exclusively fed human milk without iron supplementation (e.g., iron fortified cereals, oral iron, pureed meats).
j. Consumption of cow milk in infancy.
k. Gestational severe maternal iron deficiency, maternal hypertension and maternal diabetes mellitus.
l. History of intestinal parasites.
m. History of sickle cell anemia or thalassemia.
n. History of blood loss including GI bleeding or nose bleeds.
o. Heavy menstrual blood loss (greater than or equal to 80mL per month).
p. Excessive aspirin or antacid consumption.
q. History of splenectomy or cholecystectomy.

OBJECTIVE

Physical examination may reveal:

a. Hemoglobin/hematocrit below acceptable values (see table).
b. Skin pallor and/or pale mucous membranes
c. Tachycardia
d. Elevated blood lead level. (Obtain lead level if indicated; reference Georgia Childhood Lead Poisoning Prevention Program Guidelines).
e. Premature (less than 37 weeks gestation) or low birth weight (less than 2,500 gm).
f. Check Georgia newborn screening results (and other states as available) for sickle cell and other hemoglobin variants.

ASSESSMENT

Iron deficiency anemia

Assessment for iron deficiency anemia should be performed at the 12-month health check following Bright Futures/American Academy of Pediatric Recommendations for preventative Pediatric Health Care periodicity table. **Assessment should also occur during other age-based health checks when there are positive findings within the Bright Futures risk assessment questions** that suggest anemia.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

For obtaining hemoglobin value, follow the HemoCue® Hemoglobin System standard operating procedure guidelines.

DIAGNOSTIC CRITERIA

Iron deficiency anemia, presumptive if hemoglobin or hematocrit are below acceptable values and if:

a. No suggestion of sickle cell, thalassemia or other chronic illness including recurrent nosebleeds,
b. No recent infections or inflammatory conditions**,**
AND
c. 3 negative stools for occult blood (if performed).

A diagnosis of iron deficiency anemia can be confirmed following a presumptive diagnosis, if, after iron supplementation, the hemoglobin increases by at least 1 gm/dL, or the hematocrit increases by more than 3% in one month.

NOTE: Check stool for occult blood if abnormal stool history (tarry, bloody, chronic diarrhea).

Iron deficiency anemia may coexist when there is GI bleeding, chronic nosebleeds, lead poisoning or other chronic illness. However, these underlying causes should be addressed **through** a referral. **The** diagnosis of iron deficiency will commonly include a full CBC and reticulocyte count a serum iron measurement **and a TIBC, as well as a ferritin level**. Simple dietary iron-deficiency anemia is most common under 30 months of age. When iron deficiency anemia is identified after 30 months of age, more aggressive efforts should be made to identify causes other than simple dietary deficiency such as occult GI blood loss or malabsorption.

AGE-SPECIFIC LOWEST NORMATIVE RED BLOOD CELL VALUES

NOTE: If patient's hemoglobin/hematocrit is less than the values in this table, begin therapeutic treatment as listed above.

Age[5]	Hemoglobin (g per dL)	Hematocrit (%)
6 months - 11 months	11	33
12 months - 23 months	11	32.9
24 months - 5 years	11.2	33
6 - 12 years	11.5	33

5 As created by Kortney Floyd APRN, CPNP GA DPH Deputy Chief Nurse, Nurse Protocols

12 - 18 years (male) 12 – 18 years (female)	13 12	39 36

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. For Iron Deficiency Anemia (infants and children) give Ferrous Sulfate (Elemental Iron), 4 mg/kg/day **by mouth given once or divided into 2 doses daily**.
   A range of 3 mg/kg/day to 6 mg/kg/day is acceptable. Maximum dose should not exceed 150 mg of elemental iron.

   Treat for 2-3 months after hemoglobin/hematocrit return to normal to replenish total body stores. If adherence is a problem, the entire daily dose may be given as a single dose, with a meal. Do not give if patient has sickle cell or hemoglobin variants. Available OTC. See chart for a list of elemental iron products.

   Ideally, take iron supplement 30 to 45 minutes before meals or two hours after meals, and only with juice or water, rather than with food or milk. If gastric upset occurs, may take supplement after a meal or on a full stomach. Avoid taking with dairy. See Patient Education section for more information.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Dietary counseling for iron deficiency anemia in children.

   a. Give list of iron-rich foods.
   b. Encourage vitamin C-rich foods to improve iron absorption **of non-heme iron (iron from** plant sources**)**.
   c. Reduce excessive dairy intake.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Poison control safety counseling; large doses of iron are poisonous. Store all medications out of reach of children. If drug is taken by accident call the poison control center right away.

2. The appropriate dose should be taken on an empty stomach. If unable to tolerate (GI upset occurs), advise to take after meals with 4 oz. of vitamin C-rich juice (orange, pineapple, tomato, grapefruit or apple juice fortified with vitamin C) to increase absorption of iron and decrease gastric irritation. Taking iron with food can decrease the iron

absorption by at least 50%. However, this may be preferred if compliance becomes a problem because of gastric discomfort when taking iron between meals. If iron must be given with food for improved compliance then avoid milk (including soymilk), milk products (i.e., yogurt, cheese), tea, and cereals.

3. Iron can interfere with many drugs' absorption into the body. If the patient takes other medications, please check with pharmacist or healthcare professional.

4. For children ages 1 to 5 years: their daily total intake of milk containing products should not exceed 24 oz. per day (including cow's milk, goat's milk, soy milk, yogurt, ice cream, cheese and breast milk).

5. Do not feed cow's milk before 1 year of age.

6. The American Academy of Pediatrics supports exclusive breastfeeding for the first 6 months of life; if formula fed, only iron-fortified formula should be used.

7. Iron products stain teeth. Instruct parents on importance of brushing teeth and rinsing the mouth after iron supplement is given.

8. Eat nutritious meals and snacks; limit low nutrient dense foods**.**

9. Iron can cause black stools, constipation or diarrhea.

10. Some iron products contain tartrazine. If allergic to tartrazine, please check product ingredients.

11. For tablets, have the child swallow whole.

12. For liquid drops or elixir, use the measuring device that comes with the drug and measure carefully.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Recheck hemoglobin/hematocrit after 4 weeks of treatment to assess for therapeutic progress and emphasize compliance.

    a. Iron Deficiency Anemia: An increase in Hgb of 1gm/dL or more; or Hct 3% or more confirms the diagnosis of iron deficiency anemia.

b. If confirmed, reinforce dietary counseling, continue iron treatment and recheck hemoglobin or hematocrit in one month.

2. Continue iron supplementation for 2 to 3 months after hemoglobin/hematocrit has normalized.

3. Reassess approximately 6 months after successful treatment is completed.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present. (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. For patient with presumptive iron deficiency anemia, refer to physician if treatment has been given as directed and Hgb/Hct levels are not improving or have not returned to normal values after one to two months.

2. Refer if known HIV infected patient.

3. Chronic nosebleeds and/or GI bleeding.

4. For prevention of iron deficiency, in a term breastfed infant at least 6 months of age and not receiving sufficient iron from complementary foods (e.g., greater than or equal to 2 servings of iron-fortified infant cereal), refer to physician for consideration of iron supplementation to prevent deficiency.

5. For prevention of iron deficiency, in breastfed preterm or low birth weight infant between 1 and 12 months of age and not receiving oral iron supplementation, refer to physician for iron supplementation evaluation.

6. For prevention of iron deficiency, in formula fed preterm infant in first year of life, and not receiving oral iron supplementation or vitamin preparation with iron, refer to physician for evaluation.

7. Infant less than 6 months of age with abnormal hemoglobin or hematocrit.

8. All ages with hemoglobin less than 9 grams or hematocrit less than 27%.

9. Presence of sickle cell or other hemoglobin variants.

10. Refer to nutritionist and/or WIC if child is under 5 years old and meets criteria.

11. Consult with physician for any irregularity in response to therapy.

Weight	Elemental Iron Dosing by body weight is preferred. Acceptable dosing range is 3mg/kg/day to 6mg/kg/day (up to 150mg per day max dose)	Supplements should generally produce a hemoglobin rise of greater than 1 g/dL within four weeks. Check concentration closely prior to ordering/dispensing. Orders written in milliliters (mL) should be clarified by indicating the amount of elemental iron.	
Lbs (kg)	Dosages below are estimated ranges based on 4 mg/kg/day	Suggested Product Options	
15-25 (7-11kg)	28mg-44mg	220 mg (44 mg iron) per 5 mL[6]	Ferrous Sulfate Elixir
		300 mg (60 mg iron) per 5 mL	Ferrous Sulfate Syrup
		75 (15 mg iron) per mL	Ferrous Sulfate Solution
		125mg (25mg iron) per mL	Ferrous Sulfate Drops (Fer-Gen-Sol®Drops)
		75 (15 mg iron) per mL	Ferrous Sulfate Drops e.g., Fer-In-Sol® (with alcohol 0.02%)
26-32 (12-14kg)	48mg-56mg	220 mg (44 mg iron) per 5 mL [6]	Ferrous Sulfate Elixir
		300 mg (60 mg iron) per 5 mL	Ferrous Sulfate Syrup
		75 (15 mg iron) per mL	Ferrous Sulfate Solution
		125mg (25mg iron) per mL	Ferrous Sulfate Drops (Fer-Gen-Sol®Drops)
		75 (15 mg iron) per mL	Ferrous Sulfate Drops e.g. Fer-In-Sol ®(with alcohol 0.02%)
33-39 (15-17kg)	60mg-68mg	300 mg (60 mg iron) per 5 mL	Ferrous Sulfate Syrup
		220 mg (44 mg iron) per 5 mL [6]	Ferrous Sulfate Elixir
		15 mg iron	Carbonyl Iron Tablets, chewable Iron Chews Icar® Pediatric
		15 mg iron per 1.25 mL	Carbonyl Iron Suspension Icar® Pediatric
40-43 (18-19kg)	72mg-76mg	220 mg (44 mg iron) per 5 mL [6]	Ferrous Sulfate Elixir
		300 mg (60 mg iron) per 5 mL	Ferrous Sulfate Syrup
		15 mg iron per 1.25 mL	Carbonyl Iron Suspension Icar® Pediatric

[6] Available from one or more manufacturer, distributor, and/or repackager by generic (nonproprietary) name.

Weight	Elemental Iron Dosing by body weight is preferred. Acceptable dosing range is 3mg/kg/day to 6mg/kg/day (up to 150mg per day max dose)	Supplements should generally produce a hemoglobin rise of greater than 1 g/dL within four weeks. Check concentration closely prior to ordering/dispensing. Orders written in milliliters (mL) should be clarified by indicating the amount of elemental iron.	
Lbs (kg)	Dosages below are estimated ranges based on 4 mg/kg/day	Suggested Product Options	
44-52 (20-23kg)	80mg-92mg	15 mg iron per 1.25 mL	Carbonyl Iron Solution Icar Pediatric
		300 mg (60 mg iron) per 5 mL	Ferrous Sulfate Syrup
		325 mg (65 mg iron) [6]	Ferrous Sulfate enteric-coated tablets
		325 mg (65 mg iron) [6]	Ferrous Sulfate film-coated tablets
		160 mg (50 mg iron)	Ferrous Sulfate, Dried: Tablet, extended-release Slow FE®
		200 mg (65 mg iron)	Ferrous Sulfate, Dried: Tablet Feosol®
		45 mg (of iron)	Carbonyl Iron Tablets Feosol® Caplets
53+ (24kg+)	96mg-150mg	300 mg (60 mg iron) per 5 mL	Ferrous Sulfate Syrup
		325 mg (65 mg iron) [6]	Ferrous Sulfate enteric-coated tablets
		325 mg (65 mg iron) [6]	Ferrous Sulfate film-coated tablets
		160 mg (50 mg iron)	Ferrous Sulfate, Dried: Tablet, extended-release Slow FE®
		200 mg (65 mg iron)	Ferrous Sulfate, Dried: Tablet Feosol®
		45 mg (of iron)	Carbonyl Iron Tablets Feosol® Caplets
		324 mg (106 mg iron) [6]	Ferrous Fumarate Tablet Hemocyte®

[6] Available from one or more manufacturer, distributor, and/or repackager by generic (nonproprietary) name.

REFERENCES

1. CDC, "Iron Deficiency United States, 1999-2000", Vol. 51(40); 897-899, October 2002.

2. **Thomas K. McInery, et al., *American Academy of Pediatrics Textbook of Pediatric Care,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2017, Part 7, Chapter 279.**

3. Carol Berkowitz, *Berkowtiz's Pediatrics: A Primary Care Approach,* 5th edition, June 20, 2014.

4. American Academy of Pediatrics, *Pediatric Nutrition Handbook*, 7th ed., 2013.

5. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, "Iron Deficiency," *Healthy People 2020,* http://healthypeople.gov/2020/topicsobjectives2020/objectiveslist. aspx? topicid=29 (May 8, 2013).

6. Robert Baker, Frank Greer, and The Committee on Nutrition, The American Academy of Pediatrics, "Clinical Report-Diagnosis and Prevention of Iron Deficiency and Iron-Deficiency Anemia in Infants and Young Children (0-3Years of Age), *Pediatrics*, 2010, pp. 1040-1050. (Current)

7. "Food Sources of Iron", *2011 Georgia WIC Procedures Manual and State Plan,* p. CT-227.

8. **Powers, Jacquelyn, "Iron deficiency anemia in infants and children <12 years: Screening, prevention, clinical manifestations, and diagnosis" UpToDate, Wolters Kluwer 2019. <**https://www.uptodate.com/contents/iron-deficiency-in-infants-and-children-less-than12-years-screening-prevention-clinical-manifestations-and-diagnosis?search=iron%20deficiency%20anemia%20in%20children&source=search_result&selectedTitle=1~150&usage_type=default&display_rank=1> **(Last updated January 21, 2019) Accessed September 30, 2019**.

9. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, April 3, 1998/Vol.47/No. RR-3 (current April 20, 2015).

10. Georgia Department of Public Health, Nurse Protocols for Registered Professional Nurses 2014, *Standard Nurse Protocol for Prevention and Treatment of Iron Deficiency with or without Anemia,* Child Health 8.73

11. Facts and Comparisons Online. Wolters KluwerClinical Drug Information, Inc 2019. https://fco.factsandcomparisons.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/fc_dfc/5548310> **Accessed September 30, 2019**.

12. Facts and Comparisons Online. Wolters KluwerClinical Drug Information, Inc 2019. <https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/essential_ashp/410445?cesid=1voQBcXQcnJ&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dferrous%2520sulfate%2520elixir%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dferrous%2520sulfate> **Accessed September 30, 2019**.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR OTITIS EXTERNA

DEFINITION Inflammation of the external auditory canal and auricle caused by a variety of infectious agents.

ETIOLOGY The most common cause of otitis externa is accumulation of water in the ear, leading to maceration and desquamation of the lining and conversion of the pH from acid to alkaline (e.g., swimming or frequent showers). It also may be initiated by trauma from scratching (fingernail or cotton-tipped applicator) or poorly-fitting earplugs for swimming. It may also accompany the chronic drainage from a perforated eardrum.

NOTE: It is unusual for an infant to be diagnosed with otitis externa. Before making this diagnosis in an infant, other causes of ear drainage and pain should be ruled out, including perforated otitis media and mastoiditis.

Common causative agents are *Staphylococcus*, *Pseudomonas* species and fungi, such as *Candida albicans*.

SUBJECTIVE Patient may have:

a. Pain and itching in ear(s).
b. Purulent discharge from ear.
c. Occasionally, decrease in hearing, or a sensation of obstruction in the ear(s).

OBJECTIVE Physical examination:

a. Pain aggravated by movement of the pinna **or** tragus (the most common finding).
b. Ear canal may be swollen and erythematous. The patient may be resistant to any attempt to insert an ear speculum.
c. Debris and exudate may be seen in the canal; the drum may be impossible to visualize in severe cases.
d. Pre-auricular and/or post-auricular lymph nodes may be enlarged.
e. Swelling or pain over the mastoid should NOT be observed in uncomplicated otitis externa.

ASSESSMENT Otitis externa

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

NOTE: Tympanogram is contraindicated due to pain and need to avoid pressure.

THERAPEUTIC

Therapy centers around the basic principles of: **1)** local cleaning of debris and drainage of infection, **2)** restoration of the normal acidic protective barrier, **3)** judicious use of appropriate local and/or systemic antibiotics, and **4)** patient education to prevent recurrent infection.

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Desquamated epithelium and moist cerumen may need to be removed by gentle irrigation before treatment.

1. For those patients with an intact tympanic membrane:

    a. Children 1 year of age or older: Cortisporin otic suspension (not the solution), instill 3 drops in affected ear canal(s) 3-4 times a day for 10 days.

    OR

    b. Children 1 year of age or older, Cipro HC otic suspension, 3 drops in the affected ear canal(s) twice daily for 7 days.

    For each medication above, the bottle of medication should be warmed in hands for 1-2 minutes. Shake suspension well immediately before use. The head should lie with the affected ear upward for medication instillation and stay in that position for 1- 5 minutes to facilitate penetration of the drops into the ear canal.

2. May take age-appropriate doses of acetaminophen or ibuprofen for pain.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC

Local cleaning is regarded by most otolaryngologists as an essential component of treatment. This is not easily accomplished in small children because of the tenderness of the ear canal. If the

child will tolerate gentle irrigation with warm, dilute (1:1) peroxide solution that would be beneficial.

If not tolerated, but the canal is not totally obscured by exudates, it is reasonable to treat with antibiotic drops as advised below and follow-up by telephone in 24 hours. If there has been no improvement, then referral for debridement and instillation of a wick would be indicated.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Preventing external otitis may be necessary for individuals susceptible to recurrences, especially children who swim. The most effective prophylaxis is to place 2 or 3 drops ethyl alcohol 70% 1:1 solution with acetic acid 2% (household white vinegar) in the ear canal immediately after swimming or bathing. OTC commercially prepared drops (such as Swim Ear and Auro-Dry) are also available. Place 4-5 drops into affected ears after bathing, showering and swimming.

2. Counseling is provided regarding the causes of otitis externa, administration of ear drops, and signs and symptoms which indicate the need for further evaluation.

3. Swimming, particularly during the acute phase, should be avoided. Bathing should be done in such a way as to keep the head out of the water, to avoid introducing soapy water and dirt into the ear canal.

4. Keep fingers and instruments (e.g., cotton swabs) out of the ear canals. There is no need to clean canals with swabs.

5. Contact clinic if any problems obtaining medications.

FOLLOW-UP

Follow-up visit in one week to assess and document effect**iveness** of treatment.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present. (When a patient is REFERRED to the

primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. Severe pain, fever or swelling of canal extensive enough to prevent instillation of drops. A cotton wick may be required.

2. Cellulitis of ear or surrounding tissue.

3. Patients with diabetes or other conditions predisposing them to more severe infection.

4. Failure to respond to treatment in 3 days (24 hours if significant exudate was present and local debridement was not tolerated).

5. More than one recurrence.

6. Tympanic membrane is perforated, not intact or not visualized.

7. Refer child less than 1 year of age.

REFERENCES

1. **Robert M. Kliegman, et al., *Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics,* 20th ed., Elsevier, Saunders, Philadelphia, PA, 2016, Chapter 639 pp. 3038-3085. e1**

2. **William W. Hay et al., *Current Pediatric Diagnosis and Treatment,* 24th ed., McGraw-Hill, United States of America, 2018, Chapter 18: Ear, Nose and Throat.**

3. **Thomas K. McInery, et al., *American Academy of Pediatrics Textbook of Pediatric Care,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2017, Part 7, Chapter 305.**

4. **Goguen, Laura A., MD. "External otitis: Treatment" UpToDate 2019. Wolters Kluwer. < 9** https://www.uptodate.com/contents/external-otitis-treatment?search=cortisporin%20otic%20suspension&source=search_result&selectedTitle=2~150&usage_type=default&display_rank=2**> (Last updated January 23, 2019)**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PEDICULOSIS CAPITIS (HEAD LICE)

DEFINITION

Pediculosis Capitis is the infestation of the scalp and hair by head lice (Pediculus humanus capitis). Most commonly occurs in school-age children because they have very close head to head contact. Head lice are not a sign of poor hygiene nor are they a health hazard. Lice do not cause the spread of any disease.

ETIOLOGY

An adult head louse measures 2-3mm long (the size of a sesame seed), is greyish-white to tan in color and has 6 legs. The female louse can live up to 3-4 weeks and can lay up to 10 eggs per day. The eggs are firmly attached to the hair very close to the scalp usually within 4-5 mm by a glue-like substance produced by the female louse. The eggs are difficult to see because they are camouflaged by pigment to match the hair color. They are most easily identified at the posterior hairline. Empty egg casings (nits) are easier to see because they are white in color. The eggs require body heat to incubate and usually hatch within 7-12 days. After hatching a nymph will reach adult stage in 9-12 days. Females can begin laying eggs 1.5 days after reaching adulthood. Head lice survive by feeding on small amounts of human blood. They cannot survive if away from the scalp for more than a day. In addition, their eggs cannot hatch if away from the warm temperatures near the scalp.

Transmission occurs primarily by direct head-to-head contact with an actively infested person, and much less frequently by contact with infested objects such as hairbrushes, head gear, clothing, carpets, upholstered furniture and beds. Lice can only crawl; they do not jump or hop. Pets do not play a role in transmission of human lice. Combing dry hair can generate static electricity that may eject an adult louse up to 1 meter. Control measures should focus reducing the number of live lice on the head and limiting head to head contact.

SUBJECTIVE

Patient has:

a. Itching.
b. Rash.
c. Nits or adult lice seen.
d. May give history of exposure to lice.

OBJECTIVE

Physical examination:

a. Identifying adult lice, nymphs or nits on the scalp establishes the diagnosis.

b. Identification of live lice or eggs attached to head hair, eyebrows or eyelashes. Adult lice are hard to find, often less than 12 **per** patient. Eggs are grayish to brown in color **(pigmented)**. Hatched nits (empty egg cases) are translucent or whitish in color.
c. Common sites are the back of the head and behind the ears. Eggs are firmly attached to the hairs and cannot be moved up and down the hair shaft like hair casts, scales and dandruff. Recently laid nits are usually, but not always close to the scalp within 1 cm.
d. Small red papules or secondary excoriations to the scalp, nape.
e. Occipital or cervical lymphadenopathy may be present.

ASSESSMENT Pediculosis capitis (Head lice)

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

Pediculicide resistance, particularly to pyrethroids and malathion, is an increasing concern. The treatment choice should consider local resistance patterns (follow CDC Guidelines), agent-specific side effects, patient age, and treatment cost.

NOTE: Only patients with live infestations should receive treatment.

Instruct pregnant or breastfeeding females to consult with their physician before using any pediculocides. Instruct person applying pediculocide to wear gloves, to avoid direct contact with product.

1. Front-line treatment options (for patients with active infestations who are not suspected to have head lice that are resistant to permethrin or pyrethrins):

    a. Permethrin 1% cream (NIX)

    Although NIX is FDA approved for infants at least 2 months old, non-pharmacologic methods should be attempted first. Do not use NIX on patients who are allergic to synthetic pyrethroid, or pyrethrin, or any of its components, or chrysanthemums.
        1) Apply NIX to shampooed, rinsed and towel dried hair (make sure to use non-conditioning shampoo). Hair should be damp, not wet.
        2) Saturate the hair and scalp with NIX crème rinse. Not using enough pediculocide can result in

treatment failure. Keep NIX out of eyes, nose and mouth. Keep eyes closed and protect with a washcloth.
3) Leave on for 10 minutes but not longer. Use a timer.
4) Rinse NIX out with warm water and towel dry.
5) Follow Therapeutic measures in Non-Pharmacologic section.

Treatment with NIX may temporarily exacerbate pruritus, erythema, or edema. Patients may experience mild transient burning/stinging, tingling, numbness, or scalp discomfort. If any reaction persists, refer patient to a private care provider.

NOTE: Re-treatment on day 9 is recommended to kill any surviving hatched lice.

OR

b. Pyrethrins with piperonyl butoxide (such as nonprescription A-200, Pronto and RID shampoo). Do not use on patients allergic to pyrethrins, chrysanthemums or ragweed.

NOTE: Only FDA approved for children age 2 years and older. Keep away from fire, open flame, or excessive heat.

1) Begin with completely dry hair. **First apply behind the ears and to the back of the neck**. Saturate hair and scalp with solution. Not using enough pediculocide can result in treatment failure.
2) Wait 10 minutes, but no longer; use a timer.
3) Add warm water to form lather, and rinse thoroughly. Keep product out of eyes, nose and mouth. Keep eyes closed and protect with a washcloth.
4) Follow Therapeutic measures in Non-pharmacologic section.

Re-treatment is recommended on day 9 to kill any hatched lice.

2. If front line therapy medications are ineffective, the following medications are alternative options that can be used to treat head lice that may be resistant to previous treatments. (Safety concerns and side effects of these medications can be

eliminated or reduced if used appropriately).

a. Sklice® (Ivermectin lotion). Patients 6 months of age or older; do not use in pregnant patients.
    1) Apply sufficient amount (up to 1 tube) to completely cover dry scalp and hair; for single-dose use only. For external use only.
    2) Apply to dry scalp and hair closest to scalp first, then apply outward towards ends of hair; completely covering scalp and hair.
    3) Leave on for 10 minutes (start timing treatment after the scalp and hair have been completely covered).
    4) The hair should then be rinsed thoroughly with warm water. Avoid contact with the eyes. Nit combing is not required, although a fine-tooth comb may be used to remove treated lice and nits. Lotion is for one-time use; discard any unused portion. May cause skin or eye irritation.

OR

b. Benzyl alcohol 5% (Ulesfia®) Topical Lotion (prior authorization may be required). Patients 6 months of age or older.
    1) Apply appropriate volume for hair length to dry hair and completely saturate the scalp
    2) Leave on for 10 minutes
    3) Rinse thoroughly with water
    4) Repeat in 7 days. May cause skin and eye irritation, transient skin numbness.

    Hair length 0 to 2 inches: 4 to 6 ounces
    Hair length 2 to 4 inches: 6 to 8 ounces
    Hair length 4 to 8 inches: 8 to 12 ounces
    Hair length 8 to 16 inches: 12 to 24 ounces
    Hair length 16 to 22 inches: 24 to 32 ounces
    Hair length greater than 22 inches: 32 to 48 ounces

OR

c. Spinosad (Natroba®) topical suspension for patients 6 months of age and older. Preferred over Malathion. Contains benzyl alcohol. Do not use Natroba on individual allergic to benzyl alcohol.
    1) Shake bottle well before use.

2) Apply Natroba to dry hair.
3) Completely cover the scalp with Natroba first then apply outwards towards the ends of the hair. If not enough Natroba is used, some lice may escape treatment. It is important to apply enough Natroba. For very thick, medium length hair or long hair, an entire bottle (120 mL) of Natroba may be needed. **(maximum single application dose: 120mL)**
4) Leave Natroba on hair for 10 minutes. Use a timer and start timing after Natroba has been completely applied.
5) After 10 minutes, completely rinse Natroba from hair and scalp with warm water.
6) Wash hands after applying Natroba.
7) Retreat in 7 days if live lice are present.

OR

d. Malathion (e.g., prescription Ovide®, prior authorization may be required). Do not use on patients under age 6 years or those with asthma. Direct supervision by an adult is required. Maximum of 2 fl. oz.
    1) Apply carefully to dry hair; completely saturate the scalp and hair. Change child into clean clothing once the malathion has been applied. Keep product out of eyes, nose and mouth. Keep eyes closed and protect with a washcloth.
    2) Allow hair to dry naturally; do not use a hair dryer or another electric heat source. Malathion is flammable. Warn to stay away from lighted cigarettes, open flames, and electric heat sources. Do not cover head with a cap or other occluding material.
    3) Consider applying at bedtime and covering the sleeping pillow with a towel. Leave 8 hours, then shampoo and rinse thoroughly. Set a reminder to shampoo and rinse thoroughly.
    4) Malathion is highly ovicidal but may not kill all lice eggs. If live lice are seen in 7 to 9 days, repeat Malathion treatment.

3. For itching, may give diphenhydramine **(Benadryl) which** may cause drowsiness. (Contact physician before administering diphenhydramine to a child under 2 years of age).

The non-sedating antihistamines appear to have only a very modest influence on **itching**.

Children 2 through 5 years of age: Diphenhydramine hydrochloride elixir 12.5 mg/5mL. May give 6.25 mg every 4 to 6 hours; do not exceed 37.5 mg/day.

Children 6 through 11 years of age: Diphenhydramine hydrochloride elixir 12.5 mg/5mL. May give 12.5mg to 25 mg every 4 to 6 hours; do not exceed 150 mg/day.

Adults and children 12 years of age and older: Diphenhydramine hydrochloride 25-50 mg orally 3 or 4 times a day (not to exceed 300 mg/day). Do not give in third trimester of pregnancy or to breastfeeding mother.

3. Evidence of secondary infection requires systemic antibiotic treatment. The patient should be assessed for impetigo treatment or physician referral.

NOTE: Manual removal of nits is advised because pediculocides are not 100% ovicidal, **because** resistance to pediculocides is increasing, and to avoid diagnostic confusion, which can result in overtreatment with pediculocides. Successful elimination and prevention of head lice infestation is important in effort to limit exposure to pediculocides, which are costly and, in some cases, ineffective. Additionally, in a recent study, these products were found in the urine of school children in Georgia, and the long-term effects of exposure to pediculocides is unknown.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Remove nits with a nit comb working through very small sections of hair at a time. Fine toothed metal combs specifically made for removing nits work better for most persons. Be sure to comb the hair close to the scalp where most unhatched nits will be located. Wet hair combing is recommended over dry hair combing.

NOTE: Wet hair may slow the lice making them easier to find and remove. Dry combing can cause a build-up of static electricity which has been reported to physically eject an adult louse from the head more than 1 meter.

Check for lice and nits on the comb and clean the comb often. The hair should be combed thoroughly and meticulously,

focusing on small areas of hair at a time. Use good lighting and look carefully for lice and nits by parting off small sections of hair. If possible, check outside in daylight. Remove any lice and nits found. Continue daily nit combing on wet hair, checking for any new lice or nits that were missed; continue for 2-3 weeks until lice and nits are no longer found.

2. It is important that all other close contacts are checked by a trained person and treated if active infestation is found. If possible, treat all infested persons at the same time. If checking close contacts by a trained person is not practical, advise combing wet hair with a nit comb and then checking the teeth of the comb, to improve detection of live lice and nits.

3. Environmental interventions are directed towards items that the infested person has been in contact with during the 48 hours prior to treatment.

    a. Launder clothing, bedding, towels and other items that have been used by the infested person in the past 2 days in hot water and/or dry on high heat for 20 minutes. Items that are not washable can be dry cleaned or sealed in a plastic bag and stored for 2 weeks.
    b. Vacuum furniture, floorings, car seats and other fabric covered items. Fumigation of the home is not recommended and can be toxic.
    c. Soak brushes, combs and hair accessories in hot water (at least 130 degrees Fahrenheit) for 10 minutes.

4. Mild topical antipruritic/anti-inflammatory cream or ointment may be obtained over-the-counter for itching. May interfere with effectiveness of topical ointment.

5. Evidence of secondary infection requires systemic antibiotic treatment. The patient should be assessed for impetigo treatment or physician referral.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Instructions vary for pediculocide products. Follow product instructions. If re-treatment is recommended in 7 to 10 days, re-treat on day 9. Exception: Natroba -re-treat if live lice are seen 7 days after first treatment.

2. Stress importance of checking all other close contacts and

treating infested contacts at the same time to prevent re-infestation.

3. Do not use conditioners, shampoo/conditioner combinations or crème rinses on hair prior to treatment. Do not re-wash hair for 1-2 days after the lice medication is removed. Exception: If using Natroba may shampoo hair immediately after treatment.

4. Teach importance of using pediculocides as instructed. It is important to completely saturate the hair and scalp with pediculocide, be sure to include behind the ears and at the back of the neck.

   NOTE: Inadequate treatment can sometimes be mistaken for drug resistance.

5. Do not get pediculocides and other chemicals in the eyes, nose or mouth. Cover eyes and face with towel. Instruct child to close eyes tightly. If pediculocide gets in the eyes, flush the eyes with large amounts of cool water immediately and seek medical care.

6. All topical pediculicides should be rinsed from the hair over a sink rather than in the shower or bath to limit skin exposure. Instruct patient to rinse with warm rather than hot water to minimize absorption.

7. Using vinegar: water solutions and other products after NIX may interfere with effectiveness and are not recommended.

8. Using a hair dryer alone, will not eliminate a head lice infestation. Malathion is flammable.

9. Home remedies to control head lice, (e.g., vinegar, mayonnaise, petroleum jelly, olive oil, isopropyl alcohol, butter and water submersion up to 6 hours**)** have not been proven effective in killing lice or eggs. Lice do not have air sacs or lungs and are not easily suffocated. Lice can survive for prolonged periods without air.

10. Chemicals such as gasoline and kerosene, or animal products should never be used.

11. Do not use more than one pediculocide product at a time.

12. Itching may persist for 1-2 weeks even after adequate treatment and should not be considered a reason for reapplication of

medication.

13. Avoid head-to-head or hair-to-hair contact. This is the most common mode of transmission. Other ways to prevent transmission include:

    a. Do not share combs, brushes or head gear/coverings with other persons.
    b. Hang coats where they do not touch those of other persons.
    c. Do not lie on furniture, pillows, stuffed animals or other items that have recently been used by an infested person.
    d. Practice good handwashing and cleaning under fingernails to prevent transmission especially after scratching.
    e. Avoid sleepovers and slumber parties during lice outbreaks.

14. General Hair Care Recommendations:

    a. Shaving a child's head or cutting the hair very short is not necessary to eliminate the infestation.
    b. Modest shortening of the hair to a length acceptable to both the child and the parent will make combing easier.

15. Assure that head lice infestation is a common problem in the school-age population and affects children of all socio-economic groups.

16. Instruct caregiver that child may return to daycare or school the next day after first treatment for head lice. It is not recommended that child be excluded from school based on the presence of nits.

17. Teach as with all medications, to keep pediculocides safely stored, locked out of reach of children. Pediculocides should be used under direct adult supervision.

18. Do not swallow pediculocides. If swallowed, contact Poison Control Center immediately.

19. Contact clinic if any problems obtaining medications or questions about treatment.

20. Return to clinic if active infestation is suspected after completion

of treatment.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Assess if infestation is active.

2. Evaluate adherence with treatment plan and response to therapy. Possible reasons for treatment failure include: inadequate treatment, resistant lice, re-infestation. Re-treatment may be necessary. Reinforce teaching. Consider use of an alternate regimen if not responding to treatment.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present. (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. Consult with physician regarding any question of management.

2. Refer patient if pregnant or breastfeeding.

REFERENCES

1. Lexi for drugs and Pediatrics, May 2015, Volume 135, Issue 5.

2. Head Lice. The Council on School Health and Committee on Infectious Diseases, Cynthia D. Devore, MD, FAAP. Gordan E. Schultze, MD, FAAP

3. "Lexicomp Online", "Wolters Kluwer Clinical Drug Information, Inc. 2019, < https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/pdh_f/3966802?cesid=9vJ6WEnoDX5&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dsklice%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dsklice**> accessed September 30, 2019**.

4. "Lexicomp Online", "Wolters Kluwer Clinical Drug Information, Inc. 2019,< https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/essential_ashp/988052?cesid=1dvQBy12BRf&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dpyrethrins%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dpyrethrins> **accessed September 30, 2019**.

5. "Lexicomp Online", "Wolters Kluwer Clinical Drug Information, Inc. 2019,< https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/pdh_f/2682262?cesid=0squHIyD5RH&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dbenzyl%2520alcohol%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dbenzyl%2520alco**> accessed September 30, 2019**

4. **Committee on Infectious Diseases, American Academy of Pediatrics, David W. Kimberlin, et al., *Red Book®: 2018 Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases* - 31st ed., Itasca, IL: American Academy of Pediatrics, 2018, pp. 607-612.**

5. **Children's Healthcare of Atlanta, et al., *Georgia School Health Resource Manual*, 2016 Edition, pp. 8 and pp. 22.**

6. Christine J. Ko and Dirk M. Elston, "Pediculosis," Journal of the American Academy of Dermatology, 50:1-12, 2004. (Current)

7. **Thomas K. McInery, et al., American Academy of Pediatrics Textbook of Pediatric Care. Elk Grove Village, IL, 2017, Part 7, Chapter 277.**

8. **The National Pediculosis Association, Welcome to head lice. org., 2019 http://www.headlice.org/ Last accessed 2019.**

9. **CDC, Parasites – Lice - Head Lice, Last updated August 19, 2016 http://www.cdc.gov/parasites/lice/head/treatment.html**

10. **Bayer Healthcare, LLC, "RID Lice Killing Shampoo," Lice Elimination with RID, 2012,** (May 17, 2013).

11. L. P. Naeher, et al., "Pesticide Exposure Resulting from Treatment of Lice

Infestation in School-Aged Children in Georgia," Environment International, February 2009, pp. 358-62. (Current)

12. Barbara L. Frankowski and Joseph A. Bocchini, Jr. "Clinical Report -Head Lice," *Pediatrics,* 2010, 126(2):392-403. (Current)

13. **U.S. National Library of Medicine, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, National Institutes of Health, "Medline Plus Trusted Health Information for You," *Permethrin Topical*, Last updated January 15, 2018 http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/druginfo/meds/a698037.html**

14. **U.S. National Library of Medicine, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, National Institutes of Health, "Medline Plus Trusted Health Information for You," *Pyrethrin and Piperonyl Butoxide Topical*, Last updated November 15, 2015 http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/druginfo/meds/a601105.html.**

15. Gerald L. Mandell, John E. Bennett, Raphael Dolin, *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases*, 7th ed., Elsevier, Philadelphia, PA, 2010, http://www.mdconsult.com/books/linkTo?type=bookPage&isbn=978-0-443-06839-3&eid=4-u1.0-B978-0-443-06839-3.00293-9--s0035 , accessed on May 17, 2013. (Current)

16. Dow Stough, Susan Shellabarger, John Quiring and Alvin A. Gabrielsen, Jr, "Efficacy and Safety of Spinosad and Permethrin Creme Rinses for Pediculosis Capitis (Head Lice)," *Pediatrics*, Vol. 124, No. 3, September 2009, pp. e389-e395. (Current)

17. ParaPRO LLC, Patient Information Natroba (Nah-TRO-buh) (spinosad) topical suspension, 0.9%, January 18, 2011.

18. **Goldstein, Adam O. MD, MPH, Goldstein, Beth G, MD. "Pediculosis capitis" 2017 UpToDate, Wolters Kluwer, https://www.uptodate.com/contents/pediculosis-capitis?source=machineLearning&search=head%20lice&selectedTitle=1~36&se_ctionRank=2&anchor=H28#H28. (Last updated October 25, 2018)**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PINWORMS

DEFINITION

Pinworms are parasitic nematode**s** causing infestation of the intestines and rectum. Pinworms are the most common human worm infection in the United States and worldwide**.** Pinworms are indigenous to the climate of the southern United States, usually affecting young children and their families. Adult worms are 2-13 mm long and live in the intestines. Females deposit eggs on the perianal area, primarily at night, causing intense pruritus. Scratching contaminates the fingers and allows transmission back to the host or to contacts.

ETIOLOGY

The nematode, *Enterobius vermicularis.*

SUBJECTIVE

Patient may complain of the following symptoms:

a. No symptoms
b. Nocturnal perianal pruritus is the primary symptom.
c. Restlessness and disturbed sleep are common.
d. Young females may experience genital irritation with vulvovaginitis and dysuria.
e. History of caretaker's observation of worms in anal area at night while child is sleeping.
f. Anorexia, enuresis, insomnia, and grinding teeth during sleep.

OBJECTIVE

Physical examination:

a. Observation of pinworm(s) during exam.
b. May have local irritation or secondary infection of scratched skin
c. **Normal exam**.

ASSESSMENT

Pinworms

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

NOTE: Diagnosis based on symptoms and exam findings is sufficient; diagnostic test is optional.

Laboratory identification of eggs from perianal area: Apply transparent adhesive tape to the perianal area to pick up any eggs; apply tape to a glass slide and examine under a low-power microscope. A single test will usually detect 50% of infestations, 3 tests should detect 70%, and 5 tests should detect 100%. (Obtain specimens in the early morning before patient bathes or defecates).

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

If not taking piperazine **or** theophylline, and patient does not have liver disease, anemia or malnutrition, the following is an option but may have the following side-effects: anorexia, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea.

1. Pyrantel pamoate (Pin-X, Reese's Pin Worm Medication, Pyrantel Pamoate Suspension), available as a suspension of 144 mg/mL (equivalent to pyrantel base 50 mg/mL) or a Chewable tablet 720.5 mg (equivalent to pyrantel base 250 mg).

   Dosing: 11mg**/**kg pyrantel base/kg (maximum 1 gram). Administered orally as a single dose. Dosage should be repeated after 2 weeks. Dosing chart **is** below.

Pyrantel Dosing (Give as a Single Dose) in Children [7]		
Weight range lb (kg)	Number of chewable tablets (250mg)	Amount of suspension (mL) (50mg/mL)
25-37lb (11-16 kg)	½	2.5
38-62lb (17 -28kg)	1	5
63-87lb (29-39 kg)	1½	7.5
88-112lb (40-50kg)	2	10
113-137lb (51-62kg)	2½	12.5
138-162lb (63-73kg)	3	15
163-187lb (74-84kg)	3½	17.5
188lb and greater (85kg and greater)	4	20

NOTE: If patient weighs less than 25 lbs or is younger than 2 years old, refer to physician.

   a. The chewable tablet must be chewed thoroughly before swallowing.
      NOTE: <u>The chewable tablet contains aspartame which is metabolized to phenylalanine and must be avoided in patients with phenylketonuria</u>.
   b. Dose may be taken with or without food. Drug may be mixed with milk or fruit juice.
   c. Repeat treatment once in 14 days.

7 As created by Takieya Jones RN, CLC GA DPH Child Health Nurse Consultant

d. Treat all household members simultaneously even if other household members are asymptomatic, with one of the above regimens, or refer for simultaneous treatment.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Instruct parent to contact health department or consult their physician if medication side effects such as anorexia, abdominal cramps, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, headache, or dizziness persist.

2. Hygienic precaution is essential to prevent reinfection. Emphasize the importance of personal hygiene, particularly hand washing before eating or preparing food and after using the toilet/changing diaper; do not scratch the infected area or place fingers in mouth.

3. Daily used bed linens, towels, underclothes and clothes of symptomatic family members should be washed in hot water at time of treatment and daily until infection is cleared.

4. Upholstered furniture and carpet should be vacuumed. Other flooring should be wet mopped.

5. Shower immediately upon rising for several mornings after treatment. Showering is preferred over bathing because it avoids contaminating bath water with pinworm eggs. Also, discourage co-bathing.

6. Keep fingernails trimmed short.

7. Wear snug fitting underwear to deter direct contact by scratching.

8. Petroleum jelly applied at the perianal area may decrease egg dispersal.

9. Contact clinic if any problems obtaining medications.

FOLLOW-UP:

If no improvement in 1 month.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present. (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. Child under 2 years of age or weighing less than 25 pounds.

2. Pregnant or lactating.

3. Patients with any that are contraindications for treatment; patients who are on medications that adversely interact with pyrantel pamoate.

4. Patients who develop side effects from treatment.

REFERENCES

1. **Committee on Infectious Diseases, American Academy of Pediatrics, David W. Kimberlin, et al., *Red Book®: 2018: Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases* - 31st ed., Itasca, IL: American Academy of Pediatrics, 2018, pp.634-635.**
   LexiComp Online. Wolters Kluwer Clinical Drug Informtaion Inc. 2019. <https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/pdh_f/129741?cesid=2og8b5wDUTN&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dpyrantel%2520pamoate%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dpyrantel> **accessed September 30, 2019**.

2. **CDC, "Parasites – Enterobiasis (also known as Pinworm Infection), January 10, 2013, < http://www.cdc.gov/parasites/pinworm/index.html>**

3. **CDC, "Parasitic Disease Information," *Parasites and Health Enterobiasis,* March 06, 2019, <http://www.dpd.cdc.gov/dpdx/HTML/Enterobiasis.htm>**

4. **Thomas K. McInery, et al., *American Academy of Pediatrics Textbook of Pediatric Care,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2017, Part 7, Chapter 314.**

5. **CDC. "Pinworm Prevention." (Last updated January 10, 2013) https://www.cdc.gov/parasites/pinworm/prevent.html**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR RINGWORM: NON-HAIRY SKIN (TINEA CORPORIS)

DEFINITION Superficial fungal infection involving the face, trunk or limbs.

ETIOLOGY Several different fungi. Transmitted by direct contact with an infected person, animal, or contaminated articles.

SUBJECTIVE Pruritus (common) but patient may be asymptomatic.

OBJECTIVE Erythematous scaling patches to the skin on body (usually 1-2) that are round or oval. The lesions start small, then expand outward with clearing of the eruption in the center of the patch and activity restricted to the border of the lesion, as a ring. The border of the lesion is usually raised and scaly but may include small pustules or vesicles. Appearance of lesions are sometimes altered by prior application of topical corticosteroids and can mislead the examiner. Lesions are most common on the trunk, face, and arms.

Granuloma annulare can mimic tinea corporis. The distinguishing feature of tinea is the scale which may be subtle and delicate but will always be present with untreated tinea. If the scale is not present and there is only one isolated lesion, refer patient to their pediatrician to rule out Lyme Disease (not the most common cause of Granuloma Annulare but the most serious cause).

ASSESSMENT Tinea corporis (ringworm of the skin)

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Apply a non-prescription topical anti-fungal preparation. May choose one of the following **for patients 2 years of age and older:**

   a. Clotrimazole 1% (e.g., Lotrimin, available as Lotrimin AF, cream or solution). Apply to affected areas twice daily for 4 weeks.

   OR

   b. Miconazole nitrate 2% (e.g., Micatin), cream. Apply to affected areas twice daily for 4 weeks.

   OR

c. **Patient's 12 years of age and older**: Ketoconazole 2% cream. Apply to affected areas once daily for 2-4 weeks.

OR, if can't use any of the above,

d. Tolnaftate 1% (e.g., Tinactin), cream or solution. Apply to affected areas twice daily for 4 weeks.

OR

e. **Naftifine (Naftin®) 2% cream: Apply a thick layer once daily to affected area and healthy surrounding skin (1/2 inch margin) for 2 weeks.**

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Contacts of infected persons should perform periodic inspections for signs of infection and seek medical evaluation as needed.

2. Avoid direct contact with known sources of infection. Infected animals need veterinary examination.

3. Do not share clothing. Launder and dry clothing on hottest acceptable temperatures.

4. Advise against OTC corticosteroid topical medications, they will exacerbate lesions.

5. Keep lesions dry. Fungi thrive in moist areas.

6. Avoid tight fitting clothing and clothing that restricts air movement. Cotton clothing is preferable.

7. Children generally can return to school after applying medication to affected area(s) for at least 24 hours.

8. It is important to apply the topical antifungal for **the length of therapy ordered,** even if the rash clears in less than the length of therapy ordered, to prevent recurrence.

9. Return to clinic if no significant improvement in 7 to 9 days.

10. Return to clinic sooner if lesions worsen.

11. Contact clinic if any problems obtaining medication.

FOLLOW-UP

1-2 weeks if no improvement.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present. (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. Children less than 2 years of age.

2. Severe or widespread infection.

3. Secondary bacterial infection.

4. Failure to respond to treatment may require oral therapy. Also, several skin conditions can closely mimic ringworm, these include: granuloma annulare, nummular eczema, pityriasis rosea, psoriasis, seborrheic dermatitis, tinea versicolor, erythema chronicum migrans, and early Lyme disease.

   NOTE: If there has been tick exposure, refer to physician immediately. Early Lyme disease is an urgent diagnosis.

5. If present on scalp (tinea capitis).

6. Pregnant or breastfeeding patient.

REFERENCES

1. **Robert M. Kliegman, et al., *Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics,* 20th ed., Elsevier, Saunders, Philadelphia, PA, 2016, Chapter 666 pp. 3213-3220. e1**

2. **Committee on Infectious Diseases, American Academy of Pediatrics, David W. Kimberlin, et al., *Red Book®: 2018 Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases* - 31st ed., Itasca, IL: American Academy of Pediatrics, 2018, pp. 801-804.**

3. Rose Boynton, et al., *Manual of Ambulatory Pediatrics,* 6th ed., Wolters Kluwer Health, Philadelphia, 2009, pp. 395-396. (Current)

4. **Children's Healthcare of Atlanta, et al., "Georgia School Health Resource Manual," *Georgia School Health Resource Manual*, 2016 Edition, pp. 8 and pp. 50 (March 19, 2013).**

5. **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, "Fungal Diseases", Last reviewed August 06, 2018.**

6. **Goldstein, Adam O., MD, MPH, Goldstein, Beth G, MD. *"Dermatophyte (tinea) infections."* 2019 UpToDate, Wolters Kluwer. <** https://www.uptodate.com/contents/dermatophyte-tinea-infections?search=ringworm%20treatment%20children&sectionRank=3&usage_type=default&anchor=H35&source=machineLearning&selectedTitle=1~150&display_rank=1#H35**accessed** **October 10, 2019. (Last updated August 30, 2019).**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR RUBRAL/HEAT RASH

DEFINITION

Heat rash ("prickly heat") is characterized by an erythematous papular rash, distributed in areas where sweat glands are concentrated. Obstruction of the eccrine sweat ducts occurs often in neonates and often produces one or two clinical pictures depending on the level of obstruction:

1. Miliaria crystallina is characterized by tiny (1-2 mm), superficial grouped vesicles, without erythema, over intertriginous areas and adjacent skin (neck, upper chest). Obstruction occurs in the **stratum** corneum portion of the eccrine duct.

2. Miliaria rubra is more common. Obstruction of the eccrine duct deeper in the epidermis results in erythematous, grouped papules in the same area. Rarely, these may progress to pustules.

ETIOLOGY

This rash result from obstruction of the ducts of the sweat glands. The ducts become distended and break, leaking sweat into the skin, which causes the irritation. Heat and high humidity in the external environment cause sweating that leads to swelling and plugging of the sweat gland orifice.

SUBJECTIVE

Patient **(or parent/guardian)** may **complain of**:

a. Fine, red raised rash on child. Pustules under neck and armpits may be present.
b. Itching.
c. History of over-dressing.
d. History of predisposing environmental factors (e.g., hot spells in summer or house kept too warm).

OBJECTIVE

Physical examination:

Rash is erythematous and vesiculopapular. Lesions are pinhead size and may coalesce on an erythematous patch or remain isolated. The sudden appearance of red patches of small papules and/or vesicles are discrete and accompanied by red areolae.

Rash is distributed in areas of sweat gland concentration and friction: over the trunk, neck, back of head, shoulders, chest, axillae, face, antecubital and popliteal fossae, and intertrigi**nous** areas.

ASSESSMENT

Rubral/heat rash, according to lesion appearance and history (hot, humid environment).

Differentiate from:

1. Contact dermatitis (history of contact, distribution in area of contact, edematous, erythematous and vesicular lesions)

2. Viral rashes (history of elevated temperature or other systemic symptoms)

3. Candidiasis (shiny, intensely inflamed, sharply-defined border, and satellite lesions)

4. Erythema toxicum neonatorum (raised yellow or white spots surrounded by red skin, usually appears within 2 days of life and self resolves by 14 days of life)

PLAN

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. In severe cases, may apply nonprescription 1% hydrocortisone cream as a thin film and rub in gently **two to** three times a day for 1-2 days.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Avoid overdressing the child. The parent should dress the child as she/he would dress self for weather conditions.

2. Avoid hot, humid conditions. Keep patient in cool and dry environment as much as possible. Use air conditioner, fan and/or dehumidifier, if possible.

3. Keep patient's skin clean and dry.

4. Bathe patient in tepid water for cooling.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. If hydrocortisone cream used, apply sparingly.

2. Use mild or hypoallergenic soap for bathing.

3. Use mild detergents to launder clothes and avoid bleach and fabric softeners.

4. Keep patient's fingernails short.

5. Avoid dressing patient **with (**or placing patient in contact with**)** irritating clothing (e.g., synthetic fabrics, wool, nylon, plastic liners). Light cotton clothing is preferred.

6. Avoid extended sun exposures.

7. Return for reevaluation if condition does not improve with proper management.

FOLLOW-UP

1. No follow-up needed if symptoms resolve within 2 weeks.

2. Re-evaluate if symptoms persist or worsen beyond 2 weeks.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present. (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. If there is no improvement with treatment.

2. Exacerbation of the rash.

3. Pregnant or breastfeeding patient.

REFERENCES

1. Rose W. Boynton, et al., *Manual of Ambulatory Pediatrics,* 6th ed., Wolters Kluwer Health, Philadelphia, 2009, pp. 342-343. (Current)

2. **William W. Hay, et al., *Current Pediatric Diagnosis and Treatment*, 24th ed., McGraw-Hill, United States of America, 2018, Chapter 2: The Newborn Infant and Chapter 15: Skin.**

3. **Robert M. Kliegman, et al., *Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics,* 20th ed., Elsevier, Saunders, Philadelphia, PA, Copyright @ 2016, Chapter 661 pp. 3190-3192. e1**

4. **Thomas K. McInery, et al., *American Academy of Pediatrics Textbook of Pediatric Care,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2017, Part 4, Chapter 95.**

5. **PubMed Health, *"Erythema toxicum,"* A.D.A.M Medical Encyclopedia, August 1, 2012, (March 19, 2013).**

6. **Miller, Jami, MD. *"Miliaria"* UpToDate, Wolters Kluwer. <** https://www.uptodate.com/contents/miliaria?search=heat%20rash%20children&sectionRank=3&usage_type=default&anchor=H444596835&source=machineLearning&selectedTitle=1~66&display_rank=1#H444596835 **> Accessed October 10, 2019. (Last updated May 31, 2019**).

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SCABIES

DEFINITION

Infestation with the *Sarcoptes scabiei* mite. The initial skin lesion is a burrow made by an impregnated female to lay her eggs. It appears as a fine, wavy, dark line boring from a few mm to 1 cm in length, with a minute papule at the open end. Papules or vesicles contain the mite. After several days, sensitivity to the mite results in **intense** pruritus followed by punctate excoriations from scratching, and **possible development of** impetiginous and eczematous changes at the site of the lesion**s**. A generalized urticarial rash may also develop.

The condition is highly contagious and is spread predominately by skin-to-skin contact and to a lesser degree by contact with contaminated clothing or linens. Transmission to household members and sexual contacts is frequent. Outbreaks in schools, day care centers and nursing homes have occurred.

ETIOLOGY

The *Sarcoptes scabiei* mite. The female is about 0.44 mm long and has 4 sets of legs. The male is about half her size. Fertilization occurs on the skin surface. The impregnated female burrows into the stratus corneum and lays 1-3 eggs daily throughout her 30-day life cycle. Mites do not survive more than 3 days away from the skin. The eggs hatch in 3-5 days and the larvae return to the skin to grow, molt and mature.

In persons without previous exposure the incubation period is approximately 4 to 6 weeks. Thus, itching and lesions may be **un**apparent during the initial infestation and these persons are asymptomatic carriers. Repeat infestations generally lead to more rapid development of symptoms within 1 to 4 days.

Pruritus is secondary to a delayed hypersensitivity reaction to mite feces and eggs, not to the physical presence of the mite itself. Once sensitized, the host reacts much more quickly with an immune response.

SUBJECTIVE

Patient has:

a. Intense itching, most severe at night.
b. Rash.
c. History of known exposure to scabies or of several family/group members having a similar itchy rash.

OBJECTIVE Physical examination:

a. Observation of burrows and red papular vesicles or pustules, distributed according to age:

    1. Infants: palms, soles, neck, face, scalp, legs and buttocks are commonly affected. Burrows are absent and vesicles, pustules, bullae and eczematous lesions are common.

    2. Older children, adolescents and adults: The lesions begin in the interdigital spaces and spread to the wrist, elbows, ankles, buttocks, umibilicus, belt line, groin, genitalia, areola, female breast and axillae. The upper back, neck, face, scalp, palms and soles are usually spared.

b. Red, itchy rash, pustules and excoriation.
c. Secondary infection from scratching.

NOTE: Atypical forms of scabies do occur and can be related to such things as personal hygiene, by the presence of another skin disease or in altered immunologic response in patients suffering from malnutrition, or other neurologic or physical disorders/diseases (Norwegian scabies).

ASSESSMENT Scabies, based on history and suspicious lesions.

With appearance varying, differential diagnosis depends on the type of lesion present. Papulovesicular lesions can appear like: papular urticaria, chicken pox, drug eruptions, canine scabies, viral exanthems, dermatitis herpetiform, **contact dermatitis from poison ivy, poison sumac**, and folliculitis.

If the lesions are eczematous, atopic dermatitis, and seborrheic dermatitis must be ruled out. Nodular scabies may be misdiagnosed as urticaria pigmentosa, histiocytosis, and insect bite granuloma.

NOTE: Confirmatory diagnosis can be made microscopically.

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

1. Microscopic visualization of the mite.

    a. The suspected lesion is immobilized between the

forefinger and the thumb and the top is removed with a Number 15 scalpel blade laid parallel to the skin surface, after a drop of mineral oil is placed on the skin. No anesthesia is required.

b. The specimen is then placed on a glass slide, with a cover-slip, and examined under low power for the mite, eggs or larvae.

NOTE: A scraping is not necessary when there is an intensely pruritic rash in the typical locations that meets any of the following additional criteria:

2. History of close contact with a known case of scabies.

3. Burrows.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Permethrin 5% Cream (Elimite) single application for children 2 months and older.

   a. Do not bathe or shower before applying the cream.
   b. Thoroughly massage into all skin from the neck down to the soles of the feet, avoiding contact with mucous membranes, eyes and mouth. Also, include the head, scalp and neck in infants and toddlers.
   c. Remove by washing after 8-14 hours. Thirty grams or half of a 60-gram tube should be sufficient for a child**.**
   d. Wear gloves when applying.
   e. One application is generally curative; however, the treatment may be repeated once after 7 days. Demonstrable living mites after 7 days indicate that retreatment is necessary.

   Patients often experience pruritus after treatment. This is rarely a sign of treatment failure and is not an indication for retreatment.

   NOTE: Worsening of asthma has been reported.

2. Cool baths with mild soap, nonprescription hydrocortisone cream topically or diphenhydramine (e.g., Benadryl) **or hydroxyzine (not available over the counter)** orally for itching, which may persist for several weeks.

a. Topical Hydrocortisone cream:

Children greater than 2 years of age: Apply hydrocortisone cream to affected area(s) 2-4 times/day. Apply cream as a thin film and rub in gently. Avoid contact with eyes.

b. Diphenhydramine

Children 2 years-5 years of age: Diphenhydramine hydrochloride elixir 12.5 mg/5 mL. May give 6.25 mg every 4 to 6 hours as needed for itching. **Maximum:** 37.5 mg/day.

Children 6-11 years of age: 12.5mg every 4 to 6 hours as needed for itching. Maximum: 150mg/day.

Children 12 years and older: 25-50mg every 4 to 6 hours as needed for itching. Maximum: 300mg/day.

OR

c. Hydroxyzine (Vistaril®) 10mg/5ml or 10 or 25 mg tablet

40kg or less: Oral: 2 mg/kg/day by mouth in divided doses every 6 to 8 hours only as needed; maximum dose 25mg/dose.

Greater than 40kg: Oral: 25 to 50 mg by mouth once daily at bedtime or twice daily
Contraindicated in prolonged QT interval.

NOTE: Dosing should be based on severity of symptoms. Do not use topical diphenhydramine. Contact physician before administering diphenhydramine **or hydroxyzine** to a child under 2 years of age.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Keep fingernails clean and well-trimmed.

2. While receiving pharmacologic treatment, launder all bedding, towels, wash cloths and clothing that have been in contact with the patient for the previous 4 days prior to

treatment. Laundering should be done in hot water and drying in the hot cycle of the clothes dryer. If washing/drying is not possible, store the items (including shoes) in a plastic bag for 3 days to one week to avoid re-infestation.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Encourage to wash hands often, clean under fingernails, wear clean clothes daily and not to exchange clothes with others.

2. Elimite may temporarily increase itching, edema and redness. Mild and transient stinging and/or burning of the skin may also occur. These reactions are associated with the severity of the infestation.

3. The rash and pruritus of scabies may persist for up to 2 weeks after treatment.

4. Children should be allowed to return to school or child-care 24 hours after treatment has been completed.

5. Disinfecting the environment is unnecessary and unwarranted.

6. All close personal and household contacts within the preceding month need examination and prophylactic treatment at the same time as the patient**.** Manifestations of scabies infestation may not appear for as long as 2 months after exposure, during which time they can be transmitted.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Re-examine in one week. May re-treat once if no improvement, though single application of permethrin 5% cream is usually curative.

2. A patient symptomatic longer than 4 weeks after treatment should be re-evaluated for possible re-exposure.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following

conditions are present. (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. Severe/widespread infection, or secondary bacterial infection.

2. Infection of the scalp (usually infants).

3. Less than 2 months of age.

4. Pregnant or lactating.

5. Failure to respond to 2 rounds of permethrin treatment.

6. Immunocompromised patient.

7. Refer close personal contacts of index case for examination and prophylactic treatment at the same time as the index case.

8. Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for reporting possible sexual or physical abuse of children if encountered through history or physical. All suspected sexual or physical abuse of children must be reported to the county Department of Family and Children Services (DFCS) office per guidelines for *Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel*. For patients with suspected sexual related transmission, refer to Sexually Transmitted Disease Standard Nurse Protocol for Scabies.

REFERENCES

1. **Thomas K. McInerny, et al., *American Academy of Pediatrics Textbook of Pediatric Care,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2017, Part 7, Chapter 277.**

2. **Robert M. Kliegman, et al., *Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics,* 20th ed., Elsevier, Saunders, Philadelphia, PA, 2016, Chapter 668 pp. 3222-3228.**

3. **Committee on Infectious Diseases, American Academy of Pediatrics, David W. Kimberlin, et al., *Red Book®: 2018 Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases* - 31st ed., Itasca, IL: American Academy of Pediatrics, 2018, pp. 718-721.**

4. **Children's Healthcare of Atlanta, et al., *Georgia School Health Resource Manual*, 2016 Edition, pp. 8 and pp. 54.**

5. **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, *Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015.***

6. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, *"Parasites-Scabies,"* November 2, 2010, < https://www.cdc.gov/parasites/scabies/health_professionals/meds.html> accessed October 10, 2019. (Last Review: February 21, 2018)

7. LexiComp Online, 2019 Clinical Drug Information. Wolters Kluwer. < https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/7061?cesid=8HQOlcj5bal&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3DhydrOXYzine%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dhydrox#monograph-tab-content > accessed October 10, 2019.

8. **Kahl & Hughes. "The Harriet Lane Handbook." 21st ed., Elsevier. Chapter 29**.

9. **Goldstein, Adam O., MD, MPH, Goldstein, Beth G, MD. *"Scabies:Management" UpToDate, Wolters Kluwer 2019.* <** https://www.uptodate.com/contents/scabies-management?search=scabies%20treatment%20children&sectionRank=3&usage_type=default&anchor=H272604929&source=machineLearning&selectedTitle=1~90&display_rank=1#H272604929> **accessed October 10, 2019.**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR TEETHING

DEFINITION Inflammation of the gum tissue caused by eruption of primary teeth.

ETIOLOGY In general, an infant's first tooth erupts at 6 months and one each month thereafter until all 20 have erupted. However, this is highly variable from child to child. One child might begin teething as early as 3 months, while another would not begin until age 12 months. The central lower incisors are usually the first to erupt.

SUBJECTIVE Symptoms:

a. The infant may be irritable and fretful.
b. The infant may have decreased appetite.
c. The infant may suck his fist, fingers or other objects, more than usual.
d. Some parents report increased drooling.

OBJECTIVE Physical examination:

a. Erupting teeth are sometimes preceded by a bluish discoloration of the proximal gum, a benign process.
b. Gums proximal to erupting tooth may be swollen.
c. Erupting tooth felt with finger or seen.
d. Teething associated with diarrhea, fever, and other illness is likely coincidental and further examination is warranted.
e. With increased drooling, rule out lesions in mouth and/or rash on hands and feet reflective of Hand, Foot and Mouth Disease.

ASSESSMENT Teething

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Systemic analgesia (acetaminophen or ibuprofen) in appropriate doses as listed in tables below. Ibuprofen preferred for teething if infant is older than 6 months, due to anti-inflammatory effect. Do not give acetaminophen and ibuprofen in an alternating fashion.

    a. Ibuprofen children's solutions for children ages 6 months and older due to risk of harmful effects on kidneys. 5 to 10 mg/kg/dose. Dose may be repeated

every 6 to 8 hours, not more than 4 doses in 24 hours.

NOTE: Treatment for greater than 3 days is not recommended. No more than 4 doses in 24 hours. Use the lowest effective dose for the shortest period of time to reduce risk of adverse cardiovascular and GI effects. Infant drops: use only the dropper provided.

Ibuprofen dosage

Child's weight		Infant's drops	Liquid (suspension*)	Chewable tabs	Junior chewable tabs
Lbs	Kg	50 mg per 1.25 mL	100 mg per 5 mL	50 mg	100 mg
18-23	8.1-10.4	1.875 mL	Do not use	Do not use	Do not use
24-35	10.9-15.9	2.5 mL	5 mL	2 tablets	Do not use
36-47	16.3-21.3	Do not use	7.5 mL	3 tablets	1½ tablets
48-59	21.8-26.8	Do not use	10 mL	4 tablets	2 tablets
60-71	27.2-32.3	Do not use	12.5 mL	5 tablets	2½ tablets
72-95	32.7-43.1	Do not use	15 mL	6 tablets	3 tablets

*You may see the word suspension on your child's medicine bottle. Suspension means the medicine is loose in the liquid. This type of medicine needs to be shaken well before it is given to your child.

*Lbs = pounds; kg=kilograms; mg=milligrams; mL=milliliters

b. Acetaminophen children's liquid suspension 160mg/5mL dosage as listed in table below.

NOTE: Healthcare Professionals should be aware that acetaminophen infant drops products with both the new and old concentrations may be available on pharmacy shelves and in the clinic medication room. Either product may be continued to be used, but the concentration must be verified and used according to labeled dosing directions. Healthcare professionals should verify product concentration prior to providing dosing information.

Dose is 10 to 15 mg/kg/dose every 4 to 6 hours as needed. Do not give more than 5 does in 24 hours. Use of weight to select dose is preferred

Acetaminophen dosage

Child's weight		Liquid (suspension*)	Meltaways	Junior meltaways
Lbs	Kg	160 mg per 5 mL	80 mg tablet	160 mg tablet
12-17	5.4-7.7	2.5 mL	Do not use	Do not use
18-23	8.1-10.4	3.75 mL	Do not use	Do not use
24-35	10.9-15.9	5 mL	2 tablets	1 tablet
36-47	16.3-21.3	7.5 mL	3 tablets	1½ tablets
48-59	21.8-26.8	10 mL	4 tablets	2 tablets
60-71	27.2-32.3	12.5 mL	5 tablets	2½ tablets
72-95	32.7-43.1	15 mL	6 tablets	3 tablets

*You may see the word suspension on your child's medicine bottle. Suspension means the medicine is loose in the liquid. This type of medicine needs to be shaken well before it is given to your child.
*Lbs = pounds; kg=kilograms; mg=milligrams; mL=milliliters

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Be patient and soothe the infant. **Gently rub or massage the child's gums with one of your fingers**.

2. Offer infant chilled teething rings of **firm rubber,** or a clean, cold, wet washcloth for chewing on.

FOLLOW-UP

As needed.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Counsel parent about the above therapeutic measures.

2. Be sure that the infant/child does not chew on things that would break or splinter in the mouth.

3. Teach parent to read labels and be aware of other sources of acetaminophen that are often in over the counter medications to avoid toxicity/overdose. Teach parent not to give acetaminophen and ibuprofen in alternating fashion to control pain/discomfort **due to increased risk of adverse effects from toxicity.**

4. **Teach parent not to give homeopathic teething tablets or teething products with benzocaine (Baby Orajel, Hurricaine, Anbesol, Cepacol, Chloraseptic) due to recent FDA warning linking benzocaine with methemoglobinemia**.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present. (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. Child under 3 months old.

2. Eruption cysts or hematomas.

REFERENCES

1. William W. Hay et al, *Current Pediatric Diagnosis and Treatment,* 24th ed., McGraw-Hill, United States of America, Copyright @ 2018, Chapter 17: Oral Medicine and Dentistry.

2. Carol D. Berkowitz, *Pediatrics: A Primary Care Approach,* 3rd ed., W.B. Saunders, United States of America, 2008, p. 82. (Current)

3. Robert Kliegman, et al., *Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics,* 20th ed., Elsevier Saunders, Philadelphia, PA, Copyright @ 2016, Chapter 313 pp. 1775-1776. e1

4. Rose W. Boynton, et al., *Manual of Ambulatory Pediatrics,* 6th ed., Wolter Kluwer, Philadelphia, 2009, pp. 59, 62, 65 and 71. (Current)

5. Michael Macknin, et al., "Symptoms Associated with Infant Teething: A Prospective Study," *Pediatrics,* Vol. 105, No. 4, April 2000, pp. 747-752. (Current)

6. Sheri M. Carson, "Alternating Acetaminophen and Ibuprofen in the Febrile Child: Examination of the Evidence Regarding Efficacy and Safety," *Pediatric Nursing*, Vol. 29, No. 5, September 2003, pp. 379-382. (Current)

7. Lexicomp Online. 2019 Wolters Kluwer Clinical Drug Information, Inc., < https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/7066?cesid=17nFxR3DJPC&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dibuprofen%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dibuprofen> **accessed October 10, 2019**.

8. Lexicomp Online. 2019 Wolters Kluwer Clinical Drug Information, Inc.,< https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/6264?cesid=8OXEkhEA2ZW&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dacetaminophen%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dac> **accessed October 10, 2019**.

9. Janice E. Sullivan, Henry C. Farrar, et al., "Fever and Antipyretic Use in Children" Pediatrics, Volume 127 No. 3, March 01, 2011.

10. FDA Press release and Drug Safety Communication 5/23/2018.

11. Healthy Children.org "Teething:4-7 months" (Last updated 10/6/2016).

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR THRUSH (ORAL CANDIDIASIS)

DEFINITION Superficial fungal infection of the mouth, frequently occurring in healthy newborns and young infants. Uncommon in children 12 months and older, except those receiving antibiotic therapy or with other underlying conditions and/or immune suppression.

ETIOLOGY The causative organism is usually *Candida albicans*, which is acquired from the following sources:

a. In newborns and infants, from infected mother's vagina during birth and/or from infected mother's breast via breastfeeding.
b. By contamination of caretaker's hands or objects shared by infected infants.
c. Adult with vulvovaginal candidiasis, through contamination of her hands. (See **Women's Health** protocol for vulvovaginal candidiasis).
d. Infants/children with candidal diaper dermatitis, through contamination of hands.

SUBJECTIVE Symptoms:

a. Creamy white patches in the mouth, may be curd-like in nature.
b. May have pain during feeding and difficulty swallowing.
c. May have history of recent steroid, antibiotic or chemotherapy treatment.
d. Mother may have history of or concurrent candida infection of vaginal area and/or breasts.

OBJECTIVE Physical examination:

a. White filmy coating or patches covering all or part of the tongue, gingiva, buccal mucosa and, occasionally, the lips, that does not remove easily with scraping. Distinguish from milk curds left on the tongue after feeding, which are easily removed. If patches are removed they leave a painful, red bleeding lesion.
b. The patient may have candidal diaper dermatitis that needs treatment. (See Diaper Dermatitis protocol).
c. May have an inadequate oral intake because of mouth pain. Assess for dehydration, which is uncommon (assess intake, urine output and weight loss).

ASSESSMENT Oral Candidiasis (Thrush)

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

Optional: Potassium hydroxide preparation of scrapings of lesions to detect budding yeast with or without hyphae. This study is usually not needed; diagnosis can be made based on examination and signs/symptoms listed above.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Nystatin oral suspension 100,000 units/mL.

   For infants greater than 28 days old: Nystatin dosage is 200,000 units (2 mL) divided as 1mL in each side of the mouth 4 times a day for up to 14 days. Continue treatment for at least 3 days after perioral symptoms disappear.

   For infants ages 0-28 days old: Nystatin dosage is 100,000 units (1mL) divided as ½ mL in each side of the mouth 4 times a day. Continue treatment at least 3 days after perioral symptoms disappear.

   The suspension should be retained in the mouth as long as possible. One way to accomplish this is to apply a portion of the dose to two Q-tips and gently massage these Q-tips against the plaques. Avoid feeding for 5-10 minutes after the dose.

   For Mother: Nystatin oral suspension 100,000 units/mL; swab 1 mL on each nipple of breasts 4 times daily after feeding, for 2 weeks.

   Avoid nursing for 5-10 minutes after application, if possible.

   If diaper rash is present, treat per Nurse Protocol for Diaper Dermatitis due to candidiasis.

FOLLOW-UP

In 2 weeks if no improvement or sooner if worsens.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Continue Nystatin treatment for 2 weeks, even if mouth appears to have cleared prior to the 14th day.

2. Properly treated, thrush should not be a cause for weaning from the breast.

3. Breast-fed infants and their mothers are to be treated simultaneously.

4. Household members and caretakers should practice good handwashing, especially when caring for infant.

5. Rubber/plastic nipples and pacifiers should be boiled for 10 minutes or replaced after beginning treatment. Do not allow infants to share pacifiers or nipples.

6. Seek prompt medical evaluation if infant refuses liquids.

7. Contact clinic if any problems obtaining medications.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present. (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. Failure to respond after two weeks of Nystatin therapy.

2. Weight loss or suspected dehydration.

3. Recurrent or resistant breast infections.

4. Persons with recurrent infections are to be evaluated for HIV infection.
5. Children 12 months old or older with symptoms of thrush.

REFERENCES

1. Robert M. Kliegman, et al., *Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics,* 20th ed., Elsevier, Saunders, Philadelphia, PA, Copyright @ 2016, Chapter 234 pp. 1515-1518. e1

2. Carol D. Berkowitz, *Pediatrics: A Primary Care Approach*, 3rd ed., W.B. Saunders, USA, 2008, pp. 331 and 664. (Current)

3. Thomas K. McInery, et al., *American Academy of Pediatrics Textbook of Pediatric Care,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2009, pp. 123-124, 818-819 and 1696. (Current)

4. Rose W. Boynton, et al., *Manual of Ambulatory Pediatrics,* 6th ed., Wolters Kluwer, Philadelphia, 2009. pp. 34, 253, 391-393. (Current)

5. American Academy of Pediatrics, *Red Book Atlas of Pediatric Infectious Diseases,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2007, pp. 37-38. (Current)

6. Committee on Infectious Diseases, American Academy of Pediatrics, David W. Kimberlin, et al., Redbook 2018: Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases, 31st ed., Itasca, IL: American Academy of Pediatrics, 2018: pp.263-269.

7. William W. Hay et al, *Current Pediatric Diagnosis and Treatment,* 24th ed., McGraw-Hill, United States of America, 2018, Chapter 43: Infections: Parasitic and Mycotic.

8. Micromedex Healthcare Series, Thomson Reuters (Healthcare), Inc., 2013, http://www,thomsonhc.com (accessed May 13, 2013).

9. Lexicomp Online. 2019 Wolters Kluwer Clinical Drug Information, Inc., https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/1799543?cesid=5XRsfBdQVUp&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dnystatin%2520oral%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dnystatin#monograph-tab-content> **accessed October 10, 2019**. <

10. Medlin Abstract for Reference 4 of “Candida infections in children”. Health Canada warns Canadians of potential cancer risk associated with gentian violet. Available at: http://healthycanadians.gc.ca/recall-alert-rappel-avis/hc-sc/2019/70179a-eng.php (Accessed on October 10, 2019). (Updated June 27, 2019). no abstract available

11. Campbell, Judith R, MD, Palazzi, Debra L, MD, MEd. “Candida infections in children” 2019 UpToDate, Inc. Wolters Kluwer. <. https://www.uptodate.com/contents/candida-infections-in-children?search=thrush%20treatment%20infants%20gentian%20violet&sectionRank=2&usage_type=default&anchor=H552172751&source=machineLearning&selectedTitle=1~150&display_rank=1#H552172751> **Accessed October 10, 2019**.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR TINEA PEDIS

DEFINITION Dermatophyte infections of the skin of the feet and toes.

ETIOLOGY *Trichophyton rubrum* is the most common pathogen. *Trichophyton mentagrophytes* causes more inflammatory lesions.

The fungus is transmitted by direct contact with contaminated surfaces in moist areas such as swimming pools, community showers or baths and locker rooms. Tinea pedis occurs most frequently in adolescents and adults. Risk factors include sweaty feet and occlusive footwear.

SUBJECTIVE Patient may be/have:

a. Asymptomatic.
b. Mild itching.
c. Burning, stinging, and other sensations.

OBJECTIVE Physical examination:

a. On the sole and heel: usually non-inflammatory scaling, occasionally with thickening and cracking of the skin. May have groups of vesicles or exfoliation of the skin. Foul odor is common.
b. Between the toes: scaling or fissuring, fine vesicles or pustules, maceration.
c. Potassium hydroxide (KOH) skin-scraping: hyphae demonstrated

ASSESSMENT Tinea pedis

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

Order 1 of the following products. Continue treatment for 1-2 weeks after clinically cleared. Apply to normal skin 2 cm beyond affected area.

1. Over-the-counter products, applied twice daily in a thin layer for 4 weeks to the affected area(s):

    a. Miconazole (e.g., Micatin) 2% cream

OR

b. Clotrimazole (e.g., Lotrimin) 1% solution, cream or lotion

OR

c. Tolnaftate 1% (e.g., Tinactin),

OR

d. Terbinafine 1% Cream. Must be 12 years of age or older. Apply once or twice daily for 1 week.

OR

2. Prescription products

a. **12 years of age and older**: Ketoconazole 2% cream (e.g., Nizoral). Apply once daily for 6 weeks.

OR

b. Econazole 1% cream. Apply once daily for 4 weeks.

c. Burrow's solution may be used as a foot soak, 20-30 minutes twice daily, for lesions between the toes to relieve itching or discomfort.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Wear rubber or wooden sandals in community showers and locker rooms.

2. Carefully dry between the toes after bathing/showering. Dry the groin area before drying feet to avoid inoculating tinea pedis dermatophytes into the groin area. A hair dryer on low setting may be used after toweling dry.

3. Change socks frequently. Avoid occlusive footwear. Remove shoes and socks, when possible, to allow air circulation for feet and toes.

4. Apply dusting or drying powders as necessary. Using antifungal powders may prevent recurrence of infection.

5. Completion of therapy is important. Use the medication for the full treatment time even though the symptoms may have improved.

6. Avoid spreading the infection to others. Good hand-washing, thorough cleaning of bathrooms and avoidance of sharing bath towels and wash clothes may inhibit transmission.

7. Medications are for external use only.

8. Keep out of reach of children. If swallowed, get medical help or
contact a poison control center right away.

9. Contact clinic if any problems obtaining medications.

FOLLOW-UP

Recheck in 2 weeks if not improved.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present. (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. No improvement after 2 weeks of treatment.

2. Severe infection or secondary bacterial infection.

3. Extension of the disease to the nails.

4. Pregnant or breastfeeding patient.

5. Under 2 years of age.

REFERENCES

1. Klaus Wolff and Richard Allen Johnson, *Fitzpatrick's Color Atlas and Synopsis of Clinical Dermatology,* 6th ed., McGraw-Hill, United States of America, 2009, http://www.accessmedicine.com.medlibproxy.mercer.edu/resourceTOC.aspx?resourceID=45 accessed on March 21, 2013. (Current)

2. **Committee on Infectious Diseases, American Academy of Pediatrics, David W. Kimberlin, et al., *Red Book®: 2018: Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases,* 31st ed., Itasca, IL: American Academy of Pediatrics, 2018, pp.806-808.**

3. American Academy of Pediatrics, *Red Book Atlas of Pediatric Infectious Diseases,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2007, pp. 308-309. (Current)

4. Rose W. Boynton, et al., *Manual of Ambulatory Pediatrics,* 6th ed., Wolter Kluwer, Philadelphia, 2009, pp. 399-401. (Current)

5. **Robert M. Kliegman, et al., *Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics,* 20th ed., Elsevier, Saunders, Philadelphia, PA, Copyright @ 2016, Chapter 666 pp. 3213-3220.**

6. Sarah Long, *Principles and Practice of Pediatric Infectious Disease*, 4th ed., Elsevier, China, 2012, <http://www.mdconsult.com/books/linkTo?type=bookPage&isbn=978-1-4377-2702-9&eid=4-u1.0-B978-1-4377-2702-9..00256-7--s0055>, Accessed on March 19, 2013.

7. **Goldstein, Adam O, MD, MPH, Goldstein, Beth G, MD. "Dermatophyte (tinea)infections"2019 UpToDate, Inc., Wolters Kluwer. <** https://www.uptodate.com/contents/dermatophyte-tinea-infections?search=tinea%20pedis%20treatment&sectionRank=3&usage_type=default&anchor=H35&source=machineLearning&selectedTitle=1~104&display_rank=1#H26> **Accessed October 10, 2019**. (**Last updated August 30, 2019.)**

8. ***LexiComp Online. Pediatric and Neonatal Lexi-Drugs. Wolters Kluwer. <*** https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/pdh_f/129641?cesid=2LsQANH3lkQ&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Deconazole%26t%3Dname%26va%3Deconazole> **Accessed October 10, 2019**.

LexiComp Online. Pediatric and Neonatal Lexi-Drugs. Wolters Kluwer. < https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/pdh_f/2850766?cesid=4W5RDb8CZlQ&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dketoconazole%2520topical%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dketocona#monograph-tab-content> **Accessed October 10, 2019**.

10. Facts and Comparisons eAnswers. 2019 Wolters Kluwer < https://fco.factsandcomparisons.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/fc_dfc/5549994> **Accessed October 10, 2019**.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR UPPER RESPIRATORY INFECTION (COMMON COLD)

DEFINITION An acute **viral** infection of the upper respiratory tract involving the nose, pharynx, sometimes the paranasal sinuses and, perhaps, the middle ears. It lasts several days. Since the activity of the viruses in the upper respiratory tract can impair local defense mechanisms, invasion by bacteria may occur and cause **secondary bacterial** infections of the ears and sinuses.

ETIOLOGY Numerous viruses. In the U.S., peak incidences in children occur in early fall (when schools open), midwinter and early spring. Colds occur most commonly during the second and third years of life, and the average child has from three to eight infections per year. Malnutrition seems to increase susceptibility to colds.

SUBJECTIVE Patient may complain of:

a. General malaise.
b. Nasal stuffiness, nasal discharge, sneezing, cough.
c. Mild sore throat.
d. Watery eyes.
e. Decreased appetite, particularly in infants.

OBJECTIVE Physical examination:

a. Low-grade fever (less than 101°Fahrenheit or less than 38.5° Celsius) occurs more commonly in children under 3 years old and lasts from a few hours to a few days. Older children usually have no fever. If they have a fever, evaluate for other causes, such as strep throat, otitis media, or pneumonia.
b. Erythematous, edematous nasal mucosa, with clear, thick nasal discharge initially. The discharge may become mucoid or purulent as the illness resolves.
c. Mildly erythematous pharynx.
d. Mild conjunctivitis.
e. Erythematous tympanic membranes in infants. (Rule out otitis media).

ASSESSMENT Common cold/upper respiratory infection (URI)

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Sodium Chloride nasal solution

a) Infants - use saline nose drops if needed for congestion: 1-2 drops in each nostril, followed by gentle aspiration of nasal secretions with rubber suction bulb **or Nose Frida**, particularly before feeding. Caution: may aggravate nasal congestion if nasal mucosa is injured. (Available products: Ayr Baby Saline; Ayr Saline Drops; NaSal Saline Drops; Simply Saline Baby)

b) Children - use saline nose drops for congestion: 2-6 drops in each nostril every 2 hours if needed for sinus congestion. (Available products: Ayr Baby Saline; Ayr Saline Drops; NaSal Saline Drops; Simply Saline Baby).

2. **Ipratropium intranasal solution 0.06% (42mcg/spray). Use beyond 4 days has not been established for symptomatic relief of rhinorrhea.**

   a) Children 5 years to 11 years of age: 2 sprays (84mcg) per nostril 3 times daily; maximum dose 504mcg/day
   b) 12 years of age and older: 2 sprays (84mcg) per nostril 3 to 4 times daily; maximum dose 672mcg/day

3. Acetaminophen or Ibuprofen orally - Pediatric (See dosage chart with Nurse Protocol for Fever) if fever is associated with discomfort or decreased fluid intake. Do not use aspirin.

4. Treatment of cough is discouraged because cough is a protective mechanism that helps clear the lung of infectious particles.

   NOTE: The American Academy of Pediatrics position is that over-the-counter cough and cold medicines do not work for children younger than 6 years and in some cases, may pose a health risk.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Increase oral fluid intake.

2. Cool mist humidifiers may be used.

3. Avoid environmental respiratory irritants (e.g., cigarette smoke in the home).

4. Elevate head of bed slightly, for infants older than 6 months of age. Elevating head of bed is discouraged for infants younger than 6 months of age due to risk of SIDS**/sudden unexpected infant death syndrome (SUIDS)**.

5. Nasal dilator strips are adhesive bands placed on the nose that dilate nasal air passages thus relieving nasal congestion. Over the counter strips (e.g., Breathe-Right® Strips) are FDA-approved for use in children 5 years and older. Do not use if allergic to latex.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Rest and increased fluid intake.

2. Seek prompt medical evaluation if chest pain, dyspnea, signs of dehydration, wheezing, moist frequent cough, persistent abdominal pain or vomiting, persistent lethargy, agitation, behavioral changes, or confusion occur.

3. Seek prompt medical evaluation for child less than 3 months of age with temperature elevation.

4. Stress importance of good hand washing technique and proper disposal of tissues.

5. Caution parent not to use OTC cough and cold medications, including Zicam and Vicks VapoRub® **under 6 years of age** without consulting physician. If 12 years of age or older, may use OTC decongestant if necessary.

6. Do not give cough drops to young children. They are a choking hazard.

7. Breathe-Right strips may also present a choking hazard.

FOLLOW-UP

1. No follow-up needed if symptoms resolve within one week.

2. Reevaluate if: symptoms persist beyond 7-10 days, deterioration with return of fever **or increased work of breathing**, or worsening coughing after apparent improvement after 4-6 days of illness (suspect pneumonia).

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

NOTE: Refer patient to primary care provider OR consult with APRN or delegating physician for care management if the following conditions are present. (When a patient is REFERRED to the primary care physician, the Public Health RN may no longer care for the patient under this nurse protocol):

1. Any infant or child with suspected secondary infection (e.g., pneumonia, sinusitis) or URI symptoms persisting longer than 2 weeks.

2. Persistent lethargy or irritability for longer than 2 hours despite adequate treatment of fever.

3. Any infant/child:

    a. under 3 months of age with a temperature elevation.
    b. 3 to 6 months of age with temperature over 102.2°F.
    c. 6 to 24 months of age with temperature over 102°F and less than 2 pneumococcal immunizations.

4. Pregnant or breastfeeding patient.

REFERENCES

1. **Robert M. Kliegman, et al., *Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics,* 20th ed., Elsevier Saunders, Philadelphia, PA, Copyright @ 2016, Chapter 379 pp. 2011-2014 e1.**

2. **Thomas K. McInerny, et al., *American Academy of Pediatrics Textbook of Pediatric Care,* Elk Grove Village, IL, 2017, Part 7, Chapter 233.**

3. **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, "Cough and Cold Medicines: Information for Parents," September 2009,** (March 23, 2013). (Current)

4. **Center for Disease Control and Prevention, "Common cold and runny nose", September 26, 2017**.

5. Juan Carlos Abanses, et al., "Vicks VapoRub Induces Mucin Secretion, Decreases Ciliary Beat Frequency, and Increases Tracheal Mucus Transport in the Ferret Trachea," *Chest,* Vol. 135, January 2009, pp. 143-148. (Current)

6. Ian M. Paul, et al., "Vapor Rub, Petrolatum, and No Treatment for Children with Nocturnal Cough and Cold Symptoms," *Pediatrics,* Vol. 126, No. 6 December 2010, pp. 1092 -1099.

7. American Academy of Pediatrics "Withdrawal of Cold Medicines: Addressing Parent Concerns," <http://www.aap.org/en-us/professional-resources/practice-support/pages/Withdrawal-of-Cold-Medicines-Addressing-Parent-Concerns.aspx?nfstatus=401&nftoken=00000000-0000-0000-0000-000000000000&nfstatusdescription=ERROR%3a+No+local+token> (March 23, 2013).

8. GlaxoSmithKline, "Breathe Right FAQs," 2013, http://www.breatheright.com/faqs (March 23, 2013).

9. FDA, "Warnings on Three Zicam Intranasal Zinc Products," June 16, 2009, <http://www.fda.gov/ForConsumers/ConsumerUpdates/ucm166931.htm> (March 24, 2013). (Current)

10. **Pappas, Diane E. *"The common cold in children: Management and prevention."* 2017 UpToDate, Wolters Kluwer. https://www.uptodate.com/contents/the-common-cold-in-children-management-and-prevention?source=machineLearning&search=common%20cold%20children&selectedTitle=1~150&sectionRank=2&anchor=H199067770#H199067770> accessed (Last updated February 20, 2019).**

11. Lexicomp Online. 2019 Wolters Kluwer Clinical Drug Information, Inc.<. https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/1797825?cesid=7Tqk4Z7VBLQ&searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dipratropium%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dipratropiu#monograph-tab-content> **Accessed October 10, 2019**.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR TYPE II DIABETES MELLITUS IN ADULTS

Funding Source for Development of this Nurse Protocol: CDC Cooperative Agreement DP13-1305 State Public Health Actions.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR TYPE II DIABETES MELLITUS IN ADULTS
CLINICAL REVIEW TEAM

Shana M. Scott JD, MPH Health System Lead Chronic Disease Prevention Section GA Department of Public Health	**Stephen Goggans MD, MPH** District Health Director East Central Health District Medical Consultant
Angela Y. Morton, RD, CSR, LD Program Specialist / Nutrition Education Georgia WIC Program Georgia Department of Public Health	**Allison Smith, MPH, CHES** Healthcare Program Consultant 3 Chronic Disease Prevention Section Georgia Department of Public Health
William R. Grow, MD, FACP District Health Director South Health District	**Tonia Parrott, Ph.D, MT (ASCP)** Clinical Microbiology Services Director Georgia Public Health Laboratory Georgia Department of Public Health
Tammy Burdeaux, RN, BSN, CRNI District Nursing and Clinical Coordinator East Central Health District	**Kelly Knight, RN, BSN** Clinical Nursing Coordinator South Central Health District
Rise Wood, RPh District Pharmacist Northwest Health District	
Latronda Davis, MPH, RN, BSN Diabetes and Hypertension Nurse Program Manager Georgia Department of Public Health	

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR TYPE II DIABETES MELLITUS IN ADULTS

DEFINITION

Diabetes mellitus is a group of metabolic diseases characterized by hyperglycemia resulting from defects in insulin secretion, insulin action or both. Diabetes is characterized by fasting plasma glucose (FPG) equal to or greater than 126 mg/dL or random plasma glucose equal to or greater than 200 mg/dL (with testing on two separate days) accompanied by symptoms. Symptoms of diabetes mellitus are frequently due to the osmotic diuresis associated with hyperglycemia. Complications of diabetes may be acute and/or chronic. Acute complications include: hyperglycemia, hypoglycemia, diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) and hyperosmolar hyperglycemic syndrome (HHS). The chronic complications of diabetes are most often the result of sustained hyperglycemia and include damage, dysfunction and failure of various organs, such as eyes, kidneys, nerves, heart and vascular system.

NOTE: This protocol is for Type II Diabetes and does not include treatment for patients with impaired kidney function or Chronic Kidney Disease, heart failure, pregnant or lactating women, suspected secondary hypertension, evidence of end organ damage, history of stroke, or other complicated factors.

ETIOLOGY

Type II Diabetes Mellitus

1. Cause: combination of insulin resistance and/or inadequate insulin production. Increased hepatic glucose production and decrease of glucose uptake in the skeletal muscle contributes to elevated fasting blood glucose levels. Insulin resistance in the liver and muscle and impaired insulin secretion also contribute to hyperglycemia.

2. **Risk factors**:

    a. Overweight or obese - BMI equal to or greater than 25 kg/m^2 and BMI equal to or greater than 23 kg/m^2 for Asian Americans.

    b. Waist circumference greater than 102cm (40 inches) for men and greater than 88cm (35 inches) for women.

    c. Sedentary lifestyle, such as sitting for more

than 30 minutes at a time or little to no moderate to vigorous activity in the past 30 days.

d. Age equal to or greater than 45 years old.

e. First degree relative with diabetes.

f. Race – African-American, Latino, Native American, Asian and Pacific Islander at greater risk.

g. History of large birth-weight babies – greater than 9 pounds or history of diagnosed with gestational diabetes.

h. History of A1C equal to or greater than 5.7%, impaired Glucose tolerance-2-hour plasma glucose in 75 –g Oral Glucose Tolerance Test of 140 mg/dL to 199 mg/dL or fasting plasma glucose of 100 mg/dL to125 mg/dL.

i. Hypertensive -blood pressure equal to or greater than 140/90 mmHg or on therapy for hypertension.

j. HDL cholesterol level less than 35mg/dL and/or triglyceride level greater than 250mg/dL.

k. Women with polycystic ovary syndrome.

l. Clinical conditions associated with insulin resistance, such as severe obesity and acanthosis nigricans.

m. History of cardiovascular disease.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient history may or may not reveal the following:

a. Symptoms of hyperglycemia-polyuria, polydipsia, polyphagia, blurry vision, extreme fatigue, slow healing, and or tingling, and pain or numbness in feet and hands (primarily Type II)

b. Unexplained weight loss or gain.

c. Previously diagnosed with “borderline diabetes” or pre-diabetes, gestational diabetes or impaired glucose tolerance.

d. Past or current symptoms of coronary heart disease, heart failure, cerebrovascular disease, peripheral vascular disease, renal disease, gout or sexual dysfunction.

2. The patient, primarily those with Type II diabetes, may be asymptomatic. Elevated glucose levels are often found in routine lab work, during evaluations for surgery or work-up for other conditions. Patients suspected to have type 1 diabetes may report rapid onset of symptoms.

3. There may or may not be a family history or obvious risk factors.

4. Current diabetes self-management routine, if previously diagnosed, to include:

a) Duration of diabetes, including age and characteristics of onset, such as diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) or asymptomatic.

b) Current and prior medications for diabetes; Assess medication-taking behaviors, such as compliance and barriers to medication adherence.

c) Eating patterns for all meals during the day, weight history, and nutritional status.

d) Prior self-management education/training, including nutrition education.

e) Self-monitoring of blood glucose (SMBG) pattern and results and A1C results if available.

f) Current physical activity-type, frequency, duration.

g) Frequency of usage and indications for OTC medications, prescriptions, and alternative medications, home remedies, nutritional supplements and herbal supplements.

5. Acute complications: severe hypoglycemia (glucose of 70mg/dL or less is an alert value; glucose of 54mg/dL or less is clinically significant), DKA, severe

hypoglycemia requiring assistance of another, hypoglycemia unawareness, hypoglycemia frequency and causes. Prior emergency room visits, and hospitalizations related to diabetes.

6. **History of infections-type, treatment, resolution time.**

7. **Family history of diabetes, chronic kidney disease, premature cardiovascular disease.**

8. **CHD risk factors-hypertension, abnormal lipids, high sodium intake, tobacco use, prior myocardial infarction, coronary revascularization, heart failure, stroke, transient ischemic attacks, peripheral arterial disease, sleep apnea.**

9. **History of target organ damage: retinopathy (visual disturbances/changes- loss or fluctuation of visual acuity, blurry vision, floaters or history of cataracts, macular degeneration, or ophthalmic procedures); nephropathy (history of renal disease, ankle edema, fatigue, hypertension); peripheral (stocking and glove pattern of numbness, tingling, pain or weakness) and/or autonomic neuropathy (resting tachycardia, fixed heart rate, postural hypotension, syncope, urinary frequency, urgency, incontinence, male or female sexual dysfunction, gastrointestinal complaints such as gastroparesis, nausea, vomiting, early satiety, abdominal bloating, and weight loss).**

10. **History of foot ulcers and deformities. Patients should be asked if they perform at home foot checks to reduce complications.**

11. **Psychosocial and social situation, including economic factors, work environment and type of work (to assess activity level).**

12. **Smoking or other tobacco use including e-cigarettes, alcohol and recreational drug use. Number of cigarettes per day, number of drinks per day and frequency of drug use should be noted.**
13. **Female reproductive history: menstrual history, method of contraception, pregnancies and outcomes.**

14. **Current immunization status.**

15. Presence of dental disease

OBJECTIVE

1. Appearance: Frequently overweight or obese.

2. Routine assessment of blood pressure (standing and sitting or sitting and lying) to assess for dehydration and autonomic neuropathy. Blood pressure may be greater than 140/90 mmHg.

3. Extremities - changes in color, deformity, injury, sensation, temperature changes, muscle strength and deep tendon reflexes (use a 128-Hz tuning fork and a monofilament).

4. Mouth - gum problems, tooth decay and oral candidiasis.

5. Feet - thickened nails, signs of fungal or bacterial infections, and signs of compromised blood flow. Assess for decreased or absent deep tendon reflexes, numbness or burning sensation or sensory loss may be present.

6. Sites of previous insulin injections, shiny spots over tibial bones, loss of hair over lower legs and toes, ulcerations of feet/legs, carbuncles and ulcers, lipohypertrophy or lipoatrophy at insulin injection sites. In Type II diabetes early hyperinsulinemia may be evidenced by Acanthosis Nigricans around the neck, waist, inguinal and axillary skin folds (dark velvety hyperpigmentation).

7. Orthostatic hypotension, hypertension, decreased capillary refill, absent pedal pulses, impaired circulation.

8. Possibly enlarged liver.

9. Hands may have deformities and decreased mobility.

DIAGNOSTIC FINDINGS

(Non-Pregnant Adults)

1. Confirmed A1C equal to or greater than 6.5%

OR

2. Confirmed fasting plasma glucose level equal to or greater than 126mg/dL on at least two different occasions (on subsequent days).

OR

3. Confirmed random plasma glucose level equal to or greater than 200mg/dL (with classic symptoms of diabetes), on two different occasions.

ASSESSMENT Type II Diabetes Mellitus

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC AND FOLLOW-UP STUDIES**

Inform the patient on the meaning of abnormal results. Patients should be provided with follow-up and referrals if necessary. If a service is not available in the clinic, the patient should be given resource/referral information that must be appropriately documented in the patient's record. The patient's follow-through on the recommendations should be documented at the next visit.

1. A1C – Initially and every six months for well controlled patients on diet therapy or oral medication. Every three months for patients poorly controlled or when medications have been changed.

   A1C target goals should be individualized based on patient desires, values, and willingness to participate in management, potential risks of hypoglycemia and other adverse events, patient's age and duration of diabetes, comorbidities (such as cardiovascular disease) and established vascular complications. Treatment goal is generally less than 7%, however, any lowering of A1C levels has benefit.

   As an example, A1C goals may be more aggressive by setting goal at less than 6.5% for those who may have a short duration of diabetes or no significant CVD. A1C goals may also be less aggressive by setting goals of less than 8% for those who may have a history of severe hypoglycemia or hypoglycemia unawareness or extensive comorbid conditions.

2. Initial lipid profile. Lipid management is an integral part of diabetes management.

3. Metabolic profile initially and annually.

4. Serum creatinine, potassium, and sodium or more frequently based on medication profile.

5. ECG annually (or as indicated).

6. Annual dilated eye exam.

7. Provide patients with adequate information about frequent foot checks at home during each follow-up.

8. Spot urine for albumin to creatinine ratio.

9. TSH as indicated by findings on physical examination or suggestive history.

10. Annual dental examination.

11. Weight and calculation of BMI on each visit; height annually.

12. Referral to other specialties and services as needed.

13. Urine cultures as indicated. Urinalysis for ketones, protein and sediment.

14. Refer women of reproductive age to Women's Health.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

Diabetes Medication Management, Type II Diabetes

NOTE: In patients with markedly symptomatic and/or elevated blood glucose levels (equal to or greater than 300-350 mg/dL) or A1c (greater than or equal to 10-12 %) consider initiating insulin therapy. If insulin therapy is indicated, please refer these patients to an outside provider.

NOTE: Be familiar with local discount drug programs and keep an up-to-date list (may change frequently). To the extent possible, order

medications from these lists. Consult with the delegating physician as appropriate.

1. Monotherapy- Metformin is the preferred first agent, unless it is contraindicated or not tolerated.

    a. **Biguanides: Metformin (Glucophage):**

    Initial Dose: Take with meals; Due to GI side effects start once daily with the evening meal and titrate up as tolerated (500 mg per week or 850 mg increases every 2 weeks). Patients should be counseled on side effects and reminded that adverse GI effects are transient and will subside once the patient is stabilized.

    Contraindications: Avoid in renal impairment (Men: SCr ≥ 1.5 mg/dL, Women: SCr ≥ 1.4 mg/dL)

NOTE: Elderly patients should not be titrated to maximum dose.

NOTE: Significant responses may not be seen at doses less than 1,500 mg/day. Start at low dose and titrate.

<table>
<tr><th>Drug</th><th>Initial Dose</th><th>Max Dose</th><th>Supplied</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Metformin (Glucophage)</td><td rowspan="2">500 mg once or twice daily with meals
or
850 mg once daily with meals</td><td rowspan="2">Immediate-release 2,550mg/day

ER: 2000 mg/day (Glucophage XR, Glumetza)
ER: 2,500mg/day (Fortamet)</td><td>500, 850, 1000 mg tab</td></tr>
<tr><td>ER: 500, 750,1000 mg tab</td></tr>
</table>

    b. A sulfonylurea or meglitinide (see below) may be used as first line therapy in patients unable to take Metformin.

Considerations: Consider adding additional agents if A1C goal is not reached after 3 months of monotherapy OR if A1C is equal to or greater than 9%. Please see list below for additional agents.

2. **Dual therapy**: Sulfonylureas, DPP-4 inhibitor, meglitinides may be added as second line therapy, if patient not meeting glycemic goals. Use appropriate monitoring of FPG and A1C measurements

to ensure that the patient is not subjected to excessive drug exposure or increased probability of secondary drug failure. If glucose targets are not achieved after a suitable trial of combination therapy and lifestyle changes, consider discontinuing these drugs and refer to an outside provider for initiation of insulin therapy.

a. **Sulfonylureas (SU):**

There is little difference among the various sulfonylureas except perhaps in duration of action, with glyburide having a longer duration of action than glimepiride or glipizide. The 2015 AACE/ACE treatment algorithm suggests sulfonylureas as a final as a last-line add-on therapy for either dual- or triple-therapy regimens for all patients.

When used in combination therapy, sulfonylureas should be combined with medications that complement the mechanism of action. The 2009 ADA/EASD consensus statement recommends all sulfonylureas except glyburide as an addition to metformin if metformin monotherapy fails. Glyburide is not recommended because of an increased risk of hypoglycemia.

When sulfonylureas are added to a DPP-4 inhibitor, their dosage should be halved.

If insulin treatment is warranted, sulfonylureas should be discontinued, and the patient referred to a physician.
Sulfonylureas cross the placenta and are present in breastmilk. Individuals who are pregnant to lactating should be referred to a physician.

DRUG GENERIC NAME	BRAND NAME	INITIAL DOSE	TITRATION	MAXIMUM DAILY DOSE	Notes
GLIPIZIDE	Glucotrol	2.5mg once a day 30 min before a meal, preferably before breakfast	2.5-5mg every 1-4 weeks	20mg/day	Pt receiving more than 15mg per day should be administered in 2 divided doses and may have a more satisfactory response
GLIPIZIDE XL	Glucotrol	2.5-5mg once	5-10mg	20mg/day	Do not halve, crush, or

	XL	**a day with breakfast or first meal of the day**	**based on glycemic control**		**chew tablets.**
GLIMEPIRIDE	**Amaryl**	**1-2mg once daily with breakfast**	**1-2mg every 1-2 weeks**	**8mg once daily**	
GLYBURIDE	**Glynase**	**2.5-5mg/day with breakfast or first meal of the day (patients sensitive to hypoglycemia should start at 1.25mg)**	**2.5mg every week**	**20mg/day**	**Pt receiving more than 10mg per day may have a more satisfactory response with twice daily dosing**
GLYBURIDE MICRONIZED	**Micronase**	**1.5-3mg/day with breakfast or first meal of the day (patients sensitive to hypoglycemia should start at .075mg)**	**1.5mg every week**	**12mg/day**	**Pt receiving more than 6mg per day may have a more satisfactory response with twice daily dosing**

Contraindications:
Hypersensitivity to sulfonylureas or sulfonamides.
Diabetic ketoacidosis
Type 1 diabetes mellitus
Severe renal impairment

Common Adverse reactions:
Hypoglycemia, dizziness, headache, nausea, diarrhea, allergic skin reactions, weight gain

Caution:
Disulfiram-like reaction is possible. Avoid alcohol consumption.
Sound-alike/look alike issues: Glimepiride may be confused with Glipizide.
Use and titrate with extreme caution.
Avoid use in elderly.

Drug Interactions:

Potentially significant drug interactions may exist with sulfonylureas. These interactions may require dose or frequency adjustment, additional monitoring, and/or selection of alternative therapy. Consult drug interactions database for more detailed information

NOTE: Meglitinides (See below under Specific Situation therapy) may be used in place of Sulfonylureas in patients with a sulfa allergy and/or irregular meals schedules or who have late rise in postprandial glucose levels on SU's.

2. Dipeptidyl Peptidase- 4 (DPP-4) inhibitors: Alogliptin (Nesina); Linagliptin(Tradjenta); Sitagliptin (Januvia);
Saxagliptin(Onglyza)

In patients who do not achieve HbA_{1c} less than 6.5% after 3 months of monotherapy with another agent, present with HbA_{1c} between 7.5% and 9%, or present with HbA_{1c} above 9% without symptoms, a DPP-4 inhibitor is acceptable as add-on to monotherapy.

Combination therapies should include medications with mechanisms of action that complement each other.

ADA/EASD consensus statement advises that although DPP-4 inhibitors are weight neutral, their long-term safety has not been established. Also, they are relatively expensive.

DRUG GENERIC NAME	BRAND NAME	INITIAL DOSE
Alogliptin	Nesina	25mg once daily with or without food
Linagliptin	Tradjenta	5mg once daily with or without food
Saxagliptin	Onglyza	2.5-5mg once daily with or without food.
Sitagliptin	Januvia	100mg once daily with or without food

Contraindications:

Hypersensitivity (eg, anaphylaxis, angioedema, exfoliative skin conditions, urticaria, or bronchial hyperreactivity) to the drug or any component of the formulation.
Type 1 diabetes
Diabetic ketoacidosis.

Adverse Reactions:
Hypoglycemia, arthralgia, headache, signs of common cold, rhinitis, pharyngitis, rhinorrhea

Caution:
Use with caution in patients with a history of pancreatitis. Discontinue immediately if pancreatitis is suspected. Caution is advised with the use of DPP-4 inhibitors in patients with preexisting heart failure.

Use with caution in patients with abnormal serum transaminases or symptoms of hepatic injury (jaundice, dark urine, anorexia or abdominal pain). DPP-4 inhibitor use has been associated with development of bullous pemphigoid; cases have typically resolved with topical or systemic immunosuppressive therapy and discontinuation of DPP-4 inhibitor therapy.

Advise patients to report development of blisters or erosions. Discontinue therapy if bullous pemphigoid is suspected and refer to a physician.

When used in combination with a sulfonylurea, the sulfonylurea dose should be halved.

Drug Interactions:
Potentially significant drug interactions may exist with DPP-4 Inhibitors. These interactions may be serious and require dose or frequency adjustment, additional monitoring, and/or selection of alternative therapy. Consult drug interactions database for more detailed information

3. **Specific Situation therapy**
   a. **Meglitinides - Meglitinides are generally *not* used in patients with type 2 diabetes *except* for the following special situations:**
      1) Patients with irregular meal schedules

2) Patients who develop postprandial hypoglycemia when taking a sulfonylurea
3) Patients who are unable to take a sulfonylurea due to sulfa allergy

DRUG GENERIC NAME	BRAND NAME	RECOMMEND DOSE	DOSE TITRATION	Maximum Dose
Repaglinide	Prandin	HbA1C<8%: 0.5mg before each meal (2,3, or 4 times per day depending on number of meals) HbA1C≥8%: 1-2mg before each meal (2,3, or 4 times per day depending on number of meals).	may double the dose with each meal at intervals of ≥1 week until adequate glycemic control is achieved	Maximum dose: 4mg/meal or 16mg/day
Nateglinide	Starlix	120mg 3 times daily before meals; 60mg dose may be used in patients who are near HbA1C goal when treatment is initiated		

Contraindications:
Hypersensitivity to nateglinide, repaglinide, or any component of the formulation; Concurrent gemfibrozil therapy (repaglinide only).

Adverse reactions:

Hypoglycemia, upper respiratory Infections, dizziness, headache, Increased uric acid levels, weight gain

Caution:
Use with caution in patients with adrenal or pituitary impairment.
Use with caution in patients with hepatic impairment.
Use with caution in patients with renal impairment.
Stress-related states: It may be necessary to discontinue nateglinide and administer insulin if the patient is exposed to stress (eg, fever, trauma, infection, surgery). If insulin use is warranted, refer to a physician.

Drug Interactions:
Potentially significant and serious interactions may exist requiring dose or frequency adjustment, additional monitoring, and/or selection of alternative therapy. Consult drug interactions database for more detailed information

4. Triple Therapy

Consider initiating triple therapy:

- In patients who either do not achieve HbA_{1c} less than 6.5% after 3 months with dual therapy
- In patients with HbA1C equal to or greater than 10 to 12%
- In patients with blood glucose equal to or greater than 300 to 350 mg/dL.

Triple therapy combinations within the drug classes covered by this protocol:

a. Metformin + Sulfonylurea + DPP-4 inhibitor* **OR**
b. Metformin+Meglitinides+DPP4

CHOLESTEROL MANAGEMENT-HIGHLY RECOMMENDED ADDITIONAL TREATMENT THERAPY

An important component of the 2013 AHA guidelines was eliminating the use of specific cholesterol level targets (goal-directed therapy). So, those guidelines did not include any LDL level to be achieved by treatment. In its place, the aim of therapy was recommended to be treating each patient with a potent enough drug given at the correct dose. Based on clinical trials, using an appropriate dose of a strong enough drug will achieve the maximum reduction of CV risk, while avoiding unnecessary testing and dose titration. This approach was adopted in

the 2017 American Diabetes Association (ADA) Standards of Care for Patients with Diabetes.

Hyperlipidemia is classified as:

a. **Total cholesterol is 200mg/dL or higher**
b. **LDL is 130mg/dL or higher (higher than 100mg/dL in persons with diabetes)**
c. **HDL is 40mg/dL or lower**
d. **Triglyceride is 200mg/dL higher (higher than 150mg/dL in persons with diabetes)**

<u>NOTE: Provide nutrition counseling and promote adherence to a low cholesterol/low fat diet to decrease cholesterol level.</u>

Initiate pharmacologic treatment based on patient's age and the following guidelines:

1. For patients between 40-75 years of age, if they have known cardiovascular disease or any listed risk factor, treat with a high potency statin; if they have no known cardiovascular disease or listed risk factors, treat with a medium potency statin.

2. For patients less than 40 years of age, if they have known cardiovascular disease, treat with a high potency statin; if they have any listed cardiovascular risk factor, treat with a moderate potency statin; if they have no listed cardiovascular risk factors, continue annual monitoring as listed below in FOLLOW-UP section.

3. The clinical judgement to lower LDL-C in adults 75 years of age and older should be based on patient characteristics and should occur after a full discussion of the potential benefits and costs. Consider comorbidities, safety considerations, and priorities of care. Shared decision making is important in this setting. Data does support the continuation of use of statins beyond 75 years of age in persons who are already taking and tolerating the drug. Also, some data supports use of moderate intensity statin for secondary prevention. Data is less supportive for use in primary prevention.

If therapy is elected for patients older than 75 years, treat with a medium potency statin.

NOTE: If a patient has difficulty obtaining a recommended agent due to cost, patient assistance or similar programs, Medicaid eligibility and any community programs should be explored to attempt to get the preferred agent. If no assistance is available, a less potent but more affordable agent can be substituted.

PHARMACOLOGIC

High Potency Statins and Therapeutic Doses =50% or greater LDL-C reduction	Moderate Potency Statins and Therapeutic Doses =30-49% LDL-C reduction	Low Potency Statins and Therapeutic Doses =less than 30% LDL-C reduction
Atorvastatin 40-80mg daily	Atorvastatin 10-20mg daily	Simvastatin 10mg daily
Rosuvastatin 20-40mg daily	Rosuvastatin 5-10mg daily	Pravastatin 10-20mg daily
	Simvastatin 20-40mg daily	Lovastatin 20mg daily
	Pravastatin 40-80mg daily	
	Lovastatin 40mg daily	
NOTE: Initial doses are listed below, then double doses as discussed below.		

1. **When initiating statin medications, recommended starting doses are:**

   a. **Rosuvastatin 10mg daily**

   b. **Atorvastatin 20mg daily,**

   c. **Simvastatin 20mg daily,**

   d. **Pravastatin 20mg daily,**

   e. **Lovastatin 20mg daily.**

   Doses can be doubled every 2-4 weeks until the target dose is achieved. If a patient has difficulty tolerating an agent, consult with the delegating physician.

NOTE: If a patient has known or suspected liver disease, a statin should not be initiated without physician consultation. If a patient on statins develops elevated liver enzymes or muscle pain, the drug should be stopped immediately and notify delegating physician immediately. Statins are not to be used in pregnant or lactating women, consult with delegating physician. Potentially significant drug

interactions may exist with statins (HMG-CoA Reductase Inhibitors), requiring dose or frequency adjustment, additional monitoring, and/or selection of alternative therapy. Consult drug interactions database for more detailed information

NOTE: Warn female patient of reproductive potential to avoid pregnancy during therapy (Use contraception). Side effects may include constipation, nausea, abdominal pain, headache, insomnia, vertigo, and upper respiratory infections. Advise patient to immediately report symptoms of myopathy or rhabdomyolysis, especially when accompanied by fever or malaise, or if symptoms persist after discontinuation of drug. Instruct patient to immediately report symptoms of liver injury. Instruct patient to avoid grapefruit juice while taking drug.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING (NON-PHARMACOLOGIC INTERVENTIONS)

1. Diabetes Self-Management Education/Training (DSME/DSMT) is considered an essential element for persons with diagnosed diabetes. DSME/T provides the knowledge, skills and support necessary for diabetes self-care. For Medicare reimbursement, DSMT coding must be used.

2. Nutrition Therapy-Evidence suggests that there is no ideal percentage of calories from carbohydrate, protein and fat for all persons with diabetes. More emphasis is placed on a pattern approach rather than specific macronutrient and micronutrient recommendations. Macronutrient distribution should be based on individualized assessment of current eating patterns, preferences and metabolic goals. The goals of nutrient therapy are:

    a. Promote and support healthful eating patterns, emphasizing a variety of nutrient-dense foods. Nutrient-dense foods are naturally lean or low in solid fats and have little or no added solid fats, sugars, refined starches, or sodium. These foods are vegetables, fruits, whole grains, low-fat and fat-free dairy, and lean meats.

    b. Attain individualized glycemic, blood pressure and lipid goals.

    c. Achieve and maintain body weight goals. Body weight management is important for overweight and obese people with type 1 and Type II diabetes.

d. Delay or prevent complications of diabetes.

e. Address individual nutrition needs based on personal and cultural preference, health literacy, access to healthy food choices, willingness and ability to make behavior changes, and barriers to change.

f. Maintain pleasure of eating by providing positive nonjudgmental messages about food choices while limiting food choices only when indicated by scientific evidence.

g. Provide patients with practical tools for developing healthy eating patterns rather than focusing on individual macronutrients, micronutrients, or single foods. A variety of meal planning tools, DASH Eating Plan, Therapeutic Lifestyle Changes Diet, USDA Choose My Plate, Mediterranean style diet, and vegetarian and vegan eating plans may be used.

3. Physical activity has been shown to improve blood glucose control by decreasing insulin resistance and increasing metabolism, reducing cardiovascular risk factors, contributing to weight loss and improved sense of well-being.

h. Patients should reduce sedentary time by breaking up bouts of sedentary activity (greater than 30 minutes) by briefly standing, walking or performing other light physical activities.

i. Adults should be advised to perform at least 150 minutes per week of moderate-intensity aerobic physical activity spread over at least 3 days per week with no more than 2 consecutive days without exercise. Shorter durations (minimum 75 minutes/week) of vigorous-intensity or interval training may be sufficient for younger and more physically fit individuals.

j. Adults should do muscle strengthening activities that involve all major muscle groups 2 or more days per week. Examples include weight training, working with resistance bands, push-ups, pull-ups, sit-ups and heavy gardening.

k. Patients over the age of 65 or those with disabilities should follow the above guidelines to the extent possible, and if not possible, they should be as physically active as possible.

l. Consideration of existing diabetes related health issues identified during the patient's assessment, such as cardiovascular disease, hypertension, peripheral and/or autonomic neuropathy, and microvascular changes, should be considered when recommending a physical activity program.

NOTE: In individuals taking insulin and/or insulin secretagogues, during physical activity, closer glucose monitoring is recommended as increased physical activity may lead to hypoglycemia. Individual may need to eat some added carbohydrate if pre-exercise glucose levels are <100 mg/dL.

4. Monitoring

m. Self-Monitoring of Blood Glucose (SMBG):

1) Used to assess effectiveness of meal plan, exercise and medication.
2) Patients with Type II diabetes being treated with medication should perform SMBG on a regular, consistent basis until blood glucose targets are reached. One example of a testing schedule is performing a fasting and one other test during the day on an alternating routine, such as pre-meal testing on alternate days (pre-lunch one day, pre-evening one day and at bedtime on the third day). If fasting and pre-meal values are within target values but A1C values do not correlate, post-prandial blood glucose values may provide guidance in reviewing composition and portion sizes of meals. Once 50% of blood glucose values are within target blood glucose range, SMBG frequency can be modified to treatment (e.g., meal planning only, 2-3 times per week; oral medications once per day on alternating fasting and pre-meal schedule). Frequency of monitoring may depend on patient's willingness and physical ability to perform SMBG, financial resources, comorbid conditions and ability to act when abnormal values occur.
3) Individualized target blood glucose ranges are based on treatment regimen, age, and presence of complications such as hypoglycemia unawareness. The recommended target goals for most patients: pre-meal glucose between 80-130 mg/dL and peak post-

prandial glucose less than 180mg/dL. Discuss target glucose levels with the patients and have them write down their target glucose levels in their logbook.

4) The patient's SMBG records should be reviewed on each visit to identify patterns of blood glucose levels to consider adjustments in the management plan. Provide the patient with feedback to support and encourage continued monitoring as well as behavior and lifestyle changes.

5) Additional testing may be indicated during times of stress, especially infection/illness.

Hypoglycemia

a) Patients taking medications for diabetes must be counseled on risks for hypoglycemia: delaying or skipping meals, physical activity, taking too much medication, or drinking alcohol.

b) Symptoms of hypoglycemia include: sweating, palpitations, pallor, tremors, behavior change, confusion, drowsiness, tachycardia and hunger. Severe, untreated hypoglycemia can lead to loss of consciousness, seizure, coma, or death.

c) Treatment of hypoglycemia (blood glucose alert value of 70mg/Dl or less) for the conscious individual is 10-15 grams of easily absorbed carbohydrate such as 3-4 glucose tablets or 4 ounces of juice or regular soda. 15 minutes after treatment, if SMBG shows continued hypoglycemia, the treatment should be repeated.

Hyperglycemia

a) Patients must be counseled on risks for hyperglycemia: binge eating, consumption of inexpensive carbohydrate-rich processed foods, omission of prescribed medications, lack of physical activity, infection or illness, and taking medications that may increase blood glucose levels.

b) Symptoms of hyperglycemia include: increased thirst and urination, increased hunger, fatigue, blurry vision, and headaches.

c) Patients should be counseled to test their blood glucose level when symptoms occur contact the healthcare provider when blood glucose levels are 250mg/dL or greater on 2 occasions or if experiencing symptoms of illness or infection.

Sick Day Management

a) Patients should be counseled to drink 8oz. of fluid per hour, test their blood glucose at least every 4 hours or more frequently if continues to rise, continue medications as able and to notify health care provider if vomiting occurs on more than one occasion, unable to retain liquids, diarrhea lasting more than 6 hours, and symptoms of hyperglycemia become worse.

b) Patients, especially elderly persons who live alone, should be instructed to have someone check on them on a regular basis when they are not feeling well.

n. A1C testing, which reflects average blood glucose concentration over the past 90-120 days, should be performed at least two times per year in patients meeting target treatment goals and quarterly in patients whose therapy is changed or who are not meeting treatment goals. Reduction of A1C to 7% or less has been shown to reduce microvascular complications and long-term reduction in macrovascular disease.

A1C	**Average mg/dL**
6.5%	140 mg/dL
7%	150 mg/dL
8%	183 mg/dL

c. Weight monitoring. Weight loss has been shown beneficial for persons with diabetes, particularly Type II diabetes, to improve glycemic control and reduce the need for glucose-lowering medications. Nutritional interventions and increased physical activity can promote controlled weight loss.

Unintentional weight loss may occur because of uncontrolled hyperglycemia or other underlying causes. Weight gain should be monitored, and possible reasons explored, such as medications and need for additional nutritional counseling.

d. Regularly assess for cardiovascular risk factors and the presence of macrovascular disease.

1) Monitor blood pressure and insure that hypertension is being treated to target goal of systolic blood pressure less than 140 mmHg and diastolic blood pressure less than 90 mmHg.

3) Assess for symptoms of macrovascular disease:

a) chest pain

b) decreased tolerance for physical activity
c) chronic fatigue
d) shortness of breath
e) swelling of feet and ankles
f) sudden numbness or weakness on one side of the body
g) inability to walk or weakness, paralysis on one side of the body
h) pain in the calves when walking or pain in feet when at rest
i) coolness of lower extremities

e. Smokers, e-cigarette users, or other nicotine users- Utilize Ask, Advise and Refer (AAR) model and provide cessation counseling and referral to the Georgia Quit Line 1-877-270 STOP (7867) using the Quit Line Fax Back Form as appropriate.

f. Foot evaluation and care-Early recognition and appropriate management of patients with insensate feet is important to reduce risk of amputation.

1) All patients with diabetes should have an annual comprehensive foot examination as described in the Objective Section. Patients with insensate feet, foot deformities, ulcers and complaints of numbness and/or burning, should, at minimum, have a visual inspection of their feet at each visit.

2) All patients should receive general foot care instructions. Patients with neuropathy, insensate feet, history of foot ulcers, or deformities as well as those with visual impairment, should be given enhanced foot care instructions and/or referral to a specialist or podiatrist. See Patient Education/Counseling Section for additional information.

g. Psychological assessment and care-Depression is not uncommon in persons with diabetes and may affect a patient's ability to perform self-management activities.

1) Patients should routinely be asked how diabetes and its care is impacting their lives, if they are feeling anxious, down or helpless, changes in sleep patterns, and additional financial burden of diabetes.

2) The Patient Health Questionnaire (PHQ)-9 is a brief depression self-report scale that is a useful screening tool and can be found at: http://phqscreeners.com/pdfs/02_PHQ9/English.pdf.

3) Referral to mental health resources may be appropriate for patients who might benefit from a more comprehensive evaluation and when poor glycemic control persists despite ongoing adjustments in management regimen.

h. Dental patients with diabetes, especially if poorly controlled, are at greater risk for periodontal disease. This can lead to difficulty chewing, pain, possible loss of teeth, and persistent bad breath. Patients should brush and floss daily, regular visits to a dentist, good glucose control, and avoidance of tobacco products.

i. Immunizations are important preventive services for persons with diabetes to reduce diabetes-related hospitalizations and to prevent morbidity and mortality.

1) Provide routine vaccinations as for the general population

2) Annual flu vaccinations

3) Administer pneumococcal poly-saccharide vaccine23 (PPSV23) to all patients with diabetes

4) Adults 65 years of age or greater, if not previously vaccinated should receive pneumococcal conjugate13 (PCV 13) vaccine followed by PPSV23 within 6-12 months after initial vaccination.

5) Adults 65 years of age or greater, if previously vaccinated with PPSV23 should also receive a PCV13 vaccine no sooner than 12 months after receiving PPSV23.

6) Administer hepatitis B vaccine to unvaccinated adults, aged 19-59 years, with diabetes. Consider administering hepatitis B vaccination at the discretion of the treating clinician to unvaccinated persons aged equal to and older than 60 years.

REFERRAL/CONSULTATION

1. Smokers, e-cigarette users, or other nicotine users- Utilize Ask, Advise and Refer (AAR) model and provide cessation counseling and referral to the Georgia Quit Line 1-877-270-STOP (7867) using the Quit Line Fax Back Form as appropriate.

2. Referral to mental health resources may be appropriate for patients who might benefit from a more comprehensive evaluation and when poor glycemic control persists despite ongoing adjustments in management regimen.

3. In patients with markedly symptomatic and/or elevated blood glucose levels (300-350mg/dL or higher) or A1c (10-12 % or higher) consider initiating insulin therapy. If insulin therapy is indicated, please refer these patients to an outside provider.

4. All patients should have, at minimum, a nutritional evaluation and development of an appropriate meal plan by a Registered Dietitian or Public Health Nutritionist, if available. Nutrition therapy has an integral role in overall diabetes management. Nutrition therapy delivered by a Registered Dietitian is associated with A1C decreases.

5. Refer all patients to a Diabetes Self-Management Education/Training Program and/or Chronic Disease Self-Management Program and local diabetes support groups.

6. Patients with prediabetes should be referred to lifestyle change programs or Diabetes Prevention Programs.

7. **Medical Referral** - In addition to periodic review by a physician, special consultation with delegating physician is indicated if:
   a. Patients who do not reach and/or maintain target blood glucose and/or A1C levels with the limited pharmacologic agents and dosing covered by this Nurse Protocol.
   b. Patients present with blood glucose levels equal to or greater than 300mg/dL and/or A1C levels equal to or greater than 10%.
   c. Recurrent episodes of hypoglycemia (glucose level less than 70mg/dL) or after one episode of severe hypoglycemia (loss of consciousness or glucose level less than 54mg/dL).

d. Patients presenting with features suggesting possibility of Type 1 diabetes should be discussed with the delegating/ consulting physician.
e. Positive ketonuria.
f. Pregnancy
g. Systolic pressure is 180mmHg or greater.
h. Diastolic pressure is 110mmHg or greater.
i. Abnormal, total cholesterol is 200mg or higher, LDL is 100mg/dL or greater, HDL equal to or less than 40mg/dL in men and less than 50mg/dL in women, fasting triglyceride is 500mg/dL or greater, serum creatinine of 1.4mg/dL or greater for women and 1.5mg/dL for men or greater, serum potassium of 3.5 mEq or less or 5.5 mEq or greater, or positive urinary albumin creatinine ratio equal to or greater than 30mg/dL.
j. New onset angina, intermittent claudication, acute vision loss, acute foot injury or ulceration and/or abnormal ECG
k. Presence of complications or other medical conditions.

REFERENCES

1. **American Diabetes Association. Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes 2019, Diabetes Care, Vol. 42, Suppl. 1, S13 – S28, January, 2019.**

2. Inzucchi, SE., Bergenstal, RM., Diamanat, Buse, JB, Diamant, M, Ferrannini, E, Nauck, M, Peters, AL, Tsapas, A, Wender, R, Matthews, DR, Management of Hyperglycemia in Type II Diabetes: A Patient-Centered Approach. **Position Statement of the American Diabetes Association (ADA) and the European Association for the Study of Diabetes (EASD).** Diabetes Care, Feb 2013 vol. 36 no. 2. (Current)

3. Powers, MA, Bardsley, J, Cypress, M, Dukeer, P, Funnell, MM, Fischl, AH, Maryniuk, MD, Siminerio, L, Vivian, E. A Joint Position Statement: Diabetes Self-Management Education and Support in Type 2 Diabetes, The Diabetes Educator OnlineFirst, Published online before print June 5, 2015, doi:10.1177/0145721715588904 The Diabetes Educator. June 5, 2015 0145721715588904. (Current)

4. Evert. AB, Boucher, JL, Cypress, M, Dunbar, SA, Franz, MJ, Mayer-Davis, EJ, Neumiller, JJ., Nwannkwo, R., Verdi, CL., Urbanski, P., Yancy, WS. Nutrition Therapy Recommendations for the Management of Adults with Diabetes Care, January 2014
vol. 37 no. Supplement 1 S120-S143. (Current)

5. American Association of Diabetes Educators, AADE 7 Self-Care Behaviors, http://www.diabeteseducator.org/ProfessionalResources/AADE7/, 2019.

6. **Wolters Kluwer, *Lexi Comp Online*. (2019, March 01). Glyburide. Retrieved March 19, 2019, from https://online.lexi.com/crlsql/servlet/crlonline .**

7. PL Detail-Document, Drugs for Type 2 Diabetes, Pharmacist's Letter/Prescriber's Letter, March 2019.

8. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services and U.S. Department of Agriculture. 2015–2020 Dietary Guidelines for Americans. 8th Edition. December 2015. Available at http://health.gov/dietaryguidelines/2015/guidelines/. **(Current)**

9. American Diabetes Association. Diabetes Pro Professional Resource Online Website. http://professional.diabetes.org/diapro/glucose_calc. Accessed March 19, 2019.

10. Nathan DM, Kuenen J, Borg R, Zheng H, Schoenfeld D, Heine R. Translating the a1c assay into estimated average glucose values. *Diabetes Care*. 2008; 31:1-6. DOI: 10.2337/dc07-0545 (Current).

11. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. Physical Activity Guidelines for Americans, 2nd edition. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, 2018.

12. Grundy SM, Stone NJ, Bailey AL, Beam C, Birtcher KK, Blumenthal RS, Braun LT, Braun LT, de Ferranti S, Faiella-Tommasino J, Forman DE, Goldberg R, Heidenreich PA, Hlatky MA, Jones DW, Lloyd-Jones D, Lopez-Pajares N, Ndumele CE, Orringer CE, Peralta CA, Saseen JJ, Smith Jr SC, Sperling L, Virani SS, Yeboah J, 2018 AHA/ACC/AACVPR/AAPA/ABC/ACPM/ADA/ AGS/APhA/ASPC/NLA/PCNA Guideline on the Management of Blood Cholesterol: Executive Summary, Journal of the American College of Cardiology (2018), doi: **https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacc.2018.11.002**.

13. **Wolters Kluwer, *Lexi Comp Online*. (2019, March 01). Glipizide. Retrieved March 19, 2019, from** https://online.lexi.com/crlsql/servlet/crlonline

14. **Wolters Kluwer, *Lexi Comp Online*. (2019, March 01). Glimepiride. Retrieved March 19, 2019, from** https://online.lexi.com/crlsql/servlet/crlonline

15. **Wolters Kluwer, *Lexi Comp Online*. (2019, March 01). Alogliptin . Retrieved March 22, 2019, from** https://online.lexi.com/crlsql/servlet/crlonline

16. **Wolters Kluwer, *Lexi Comp Online*. (2019, March 01). Linagliptin. Retrieved March 22, 2019, from** https://online.lexi.com/crlsql/servlet/crlonline

17. **Wolters Kluwer, *Lexi Comp Online*. (2019, March 01). Saxagliptin. Retrieved March 22, 2019, from** https://online.lexi.com/crlsql/servlet/crlonline

18. **Wolters Kluwer, *Lexi Comp Online*. (2019, March 01). Sitagliptin. Retrieved March 22, 2019, from** https://online.lexi.com/crlsql/servlet/crlonline

19. **Wolters Kluwer, *Lexi Comp Online*. (2019, March 01). Repaglinide. Retrieved March 25, 2019, from** https://online.lexi.com/crlsql/servlet/crlonline

20. **Wolters Kluwer, *Lexi Comp Online*. (2019, March 01). Nateglinide. Retrieved March 25, 2019, from** https://online.lexi.com/crlsql/servlet/crlonline

21. **Wolters Kluwer, *Facts & Comparisons® eAnswers*. (2019, March 01). Sulfonyureas. Retrieved March 25, 2019, from** http://online.factsandcomparisons.com/

22. **Wolters Kluwer, *Facts & Comparisons® eAnswers*. (2019, March 01). DPP-4 Inhibitors. Retrieved March 25, 2019, from** http://online.factsandcomparisons.com/

23. **Wolters Kluwer, *Facts & Comparisons® eAnswers*. (2019, March 01). Metiglinides. Retrieved March 25, 2019, from** http://online.factsandcomparisons.com/

24. **Wolters Kluwer, *Facts & Comparisons® eAnswers*. (2019, March 01). HMG-CoA Reductase Inhibitors. Retrieved March 25, 2019, from** http://online.factsandcomparisons.com/

25. **IBM, *Micromedex*. (2019, March 01). Sulfonyureas. Retrieved March 25, 2019, from** http://www.micromedexsolutions.com/micromedex2/librarian/deeplinkaccess

26. **IBM, *Micromedex*. (2019, March 01). DPP-4 Inhibitors. Retrieved March 25, 2019, from** http://www.micromedexsolutions.com/micromedex2/librarian/deeplinkaccess

27. **IBM, *Micromedex*. (2019, March 01). HMG-CoA Reductase Inhibitors. Retrieved March 25, 2019, from** **http://www.micromedexsolutions.com/micromedex2/librarian/deeplinkaccess**

28. **Wolters Kluwer, *Facts & Comparisons® eAnswers*. (2019, March 01). Sulfonyureas. Retrieved March 25, 2019, from** http://online.factsandcomparisons.com/

29. **Wolters Kluwer, *Facts & Comparisons® eAnswers*. (2019, March 01). DPP-4 Inhibitors. Retrieved March 25, 2019, from** http://online.factsandcomparisons.com/

30. **Wolters Kluwer, *Facts & Comparisons® eAnswers*. (2019, March 01). Metiglinides. Retrieved March 25, 2019, from** http://online.factsandcomparisons.com/

31. **Wolters Kluwer, *Facts & Comparisons® eAnswers*. (2019, March 01). HMG-CoA Reductase Inhibitors. Retrieved March 25, 2019, from** http://online.factsandcomparisons.com/

32. **IBM, *Micromedex*. (2019, March 01). Sulfonyureas. Retrieved March 25, 2019, from** http://www.micromedexsolutions.com/micromedex2/librarian/deeplinkaccess

33. **IBM, *Micromedex*. (2019, March 01). DPP-4 Inhibitors. Retrieved March 25, 2019, from** http://www.micromedexsolutions.com/micromedex2/librarian/deeplinkaccess

34. **IBM, *Micromedex*. (2019, March 01). HMG-CoA Reductase Inhibitors. Retrieved March 25, 2019, from http://www.micromedexsolutions.com/micromedex2/librarian/deeplinkaccess**

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

EMERGENCY GUIDELINES, POLICIES, PROCEDURES AND PROTOCOLS

EMERGENCY GUIDELINES, POLICIES, PROCEDURES AND PROTOCOLS
CLINICAL REVIEW TEAM

Jennifer Burkholder, RN, MSN, MPH **Deputy Chief Nurse** **Emerging Health Threats** **Office of Nursing** **Department of Public Health**	**Dyna Cross, RN, BSN** **Infectious Disease Coordinator** **Northeast Health District** **District 10**
Stacey Upshaw, RN, MSN **Assistant Nursing Director** **South Central Health District** **District 5-1**	**Gloria Beecher, DNP, RN, CPHQ** **Director of Nursing & Clinical Services** **Fulton County Board of Health** **District 3-2**
Angela Griffin, RN, BSN **County Nurse Manager** **Appling County Health Department** **District 9-2**	**Rebecca Y Kershner, RN, CCP** **County Nurse Manager** **Richmond County Health Department** **District 6**
Shalonna Stewart, MSN, FNP-c, APRN **APRN Clinic Lead** **East Central Health District** **District 6**	**Jennifer Riemann, RN** **District Tuberculosis Nurse** **Coastal Health District** **District 9-1**
John Reese, PharmD, MS **Pharmacy Program Coordinator** **DeKalb County Board of Health** **District 3-5**	**David Holland, M.D., M.H.S.** **Chief Clinical Officer** **Fulton County Board of Health** **District 3-2**
Kimberley Hazelwood, Pharm D **Pharmacy Director** **Office of Pharmacy** **Department of Public Health**	**Donelle Humphrey-Franklin, RPh, MBA** **Assistant Pharmacy Director** **Office of Pharmacy** **Department of Public Health**

GUIDELINES FOR EMERGENCY KITS/CARTS IN PUBLIC HEALTH CLINIC SITES

A. GENERAL POLICY

Local factors such as anticipated Emergency Medical System (EMS) response time, the availability of a physician and the ability of trained personnel to initiate an emergency procedure in the event of vasovagal syncope, and/or an acute anaphylaxis/allergic reaction will determine the need for medications and supplies beyond the minimum as identified in these guidelines. Emergency plans and procedures should be coordinated with the local EMS.

All emergency drugs and supplies should be kept together in a secured kit or cart that is easily moveable and readily accessible/visible during clinic service hours. Inventory should be checked monthly with careful attention to medication expiration dates and the working condition of equipment.

Emergency drills must be conducted at least once annually at each clinic site and documented to ensure staffs familiarity with the cart and emergency procedures.

DEFINITION OF EMERGENCY KIT/CART

Emergency kits/carts are those drugs and supplies which may be required to meet the immediate therapeutic needs of patients and which are not available from other authorized sources in sufficient time to prevent risk or harm to patients. Medications may be provided for use by authorized health care personnel in emergency kits/carts, provided such kits/carts meet the following requirements:

2. Storage
   Emergency kits/carts shall be stored in limited-access areas and sealed with a disposable plastic lock to prevent unauthorized access and to insure a proper environment for preservation of the medications in them.

2. Labeling - Exterior
   The exterior of emergency kits/carts shall be labeled to clearly and unmistakably indicate it is an emergency drug kit/cart and is for use in emergencies only.

3. Labeling – Interior
   All medications contained in emergency kits/carts shall be labeled in accordance with the name of the medication, strength, quantity, lot number and expiration date.

4. Removal of Medications
   Medications shall be removed from emergency kits/carts only pursuant to nurse protocol/procedure, by authorized clinic personnel, a physician or pharmacist.

5. Inspections
   Each emergency kit/cart shall be opened, and its contents inspected by **LPN**/RN/APRN/Pharmacist/MD monthly, except for oxygen, **which** should be inspected every 6 months, **and the AED, which should be inspected daily**. The monthly inspection **of the emergency kit/cart** shall be documented on an Emergency Check-Off Log sheet **(see next page)** which includes:

   a. the listing of all emergency supplies and equipment,

   b. the name of the medication(s), its strength, quantity, lot number and expiration date,
      the disposable lock was not tampered with or removed and if the lock contained an identification number/marking, it was correct

   c. the staff member's name who performed the inspection and the inspection date.

      Upon completion of the inspection, the emergency kit/cart shall be locked with the appropriate disposable plastic key**. If the key contains an identification number/marking, it must be recorded**.

6. Minimum Medication(s)

   a. Epinephrine vials 1mg/mL AND/OR Epinephrine auto-injectors.
      1) If cart does not contain 1mg/ml vials, the cart must have both 0.3mg and 0.15mg auto-injectors; 3 doses of each strength.
      2) Also, recommend including 0.1mg auto-injector on the cart when available on the market.
   b. Diphenhydramine 50mg/mL (2 ampules)
   c. Diphenhydramine elixir/solution 12.5mg/5mL (1 bottle **with dosing apparatus**)
   d. Diphenhydramine HCl 25mg capsules or tablets (#10, may be blister packs)
   e. Portable oxygen (by nasal cannula at 5L/ min for children and adults unless patient has history of emphysema or chronic lung disease then it should be administered at 2L/min). **Document oxygen tank capacity as F, ¾, ½, ¼, or E along with expiration date.**

7. Minimum Supplies

   a. Blood pressure cuffs (adult and child): **check function**

   b. Stethoscope

   c. Flashlight/extra batteries

d. Copy of emergency protocols/procedures

e. Allergic Reaction/Acute Anaphylaxis Record

f. Bag-valve-mask (AMBU) for resuscitation (Infant/Child/Adult)

g. Copy of current Monthly Checklist of Drugs and Supplies with appropriate signatures/initials

h. Nasal cannula for oxygen administration

i. Needles and syringes **for IM injection**

j. 5-micron filter needles (for use when aspirating medication from glass ampule to reduce contamination)

8. Recommended Additional Supplies and Medications

a. Pulse-oximeter: **check batteries**

b. Automated external defibrillator (AED)

c. Stop the Bleed Kit

d. Glucometer kit

e. Glucose tab

Emergency Cart Checklist _____**County Health Department** **Year** _____

Instructions: This checklist is intended to assist with Emergency Cart quality assurance. Please fill in the lot number, expiration date, and quantity for all medications and supplies in the emergency cart.

MEDICATIONS																			
Medication Name/Strength	**Unit**	**Amount Required**	**Mfg.**	**Lot #**	**Expiration Date**	**Amount on Hand**	**Jan**	**Feb**	**Mar**	**Apr**	**May**	**Jun**	**July**	**Aug**	**Sept**	**Oct**	**Nov**	**Dec**
Epinephrine 1mg/1 ml **OR**	ampule	3																
Epinephrine Auto-Injector 0.3 mg **AND**	auto-injector	3 doses																
Epinephrine Auto-Injector 0.15 mg		3 doses																
Epinephrine Auto injector 0.1 mg		3 doses																
Diphenhydramine 50 mg/1 ml	ampule	2																
Diphenhydramine elixir 12.5 mg/5 ml	Elixir/solution	1 bottle																
Diphenhydramine HCl 25 mg (may be blister packs)	Capsules/ Tablets	10																
SUPPLIES																		
Portable Oxygen																		
Oxygen Tubing																		
Oral Dosage Syringe																		
Nasal Bulb Syringe Aspirator																		
Adult and Child Nasal Cannulas																		
Adult, Child and Infant Ambu Bags																		
Adult and Pediatric Blood Pressure Cuffs																		
Stethoscope																		
Flashlight w/extra batteries																		
Needles and Syringes for IM Injection																		
5-Micron Filter Needles																		
Copy of Emergency Protocols/ Procedures																		
Allergic Reactions/Acute Anaphylaxis Record																		
Copy of Current Monthly Checklist with Appropriate Signatures/Initials																		
Pulse-oximeter (optional)																		
Automated External Defibrillator (AED) (optional)																		
Stop the Bleed Kit (optional)																		
Glucometer Kits (optional)																		
Glucose tablets (optional)																		
Date:																		
Initials																		

GUIDELINES FOR ALLERGIC REACTIONS, INCLUDING ACUTE ANAPHYLAXIS IN ADULTS, INFANTS AND CHILDREN

DEFINITION

Allergic reactions are potentially life-threatening (anaphylactic) reactions, that occur after exposure to an antigen which has been injected, ingested or inhaled.

Reactions range from mild, self-limited symptoms to rapid death:

1. Mild to moderate allergic reactions involve signs and symptoms of the gastrointestinal tract and skin. Observing the patient for rapid increase in severity of signs and symptoms is important, as the sequence of itching, cough, dyspnea and cardiopulmonary arrest can lead quickly to death.

2. Severe/anaphylactic reactions involve signs and symptoms of the respiratory and/or cardiovascular systems. These may initially appear minor (i.e., coughing**,** hoarseness, dizziness, mild wheeze) but any involvement of the respiratory tract or circulatory system has the potential to rapidly become severe. Death can occur within minutes. Therefore, prompt and effective treatment is mandatory if the patient's life is to be saved.

ETIOLOGY

Agents commonly associated with allergic reactions/anaphylaxis, include:

1. Medications:

    a. Over the counter, especially non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs.

    b. Prescribed medication, especially antibiotics; may occur with vaccines.

    c. Illicit or illegal drugs.

    d. Herbal or home remedies.

2. Food:

    a. Especially tree nuts, peanuts, shellfish and eggs.

3. Environmental:

    a. Stings (e.g., bee, wasp, yellow jacket, hornet, fire ants).

    b. Pollens, grass, molds, smoke, animal dander.

    c. Iodinated contrast media.

SUBJECTIVE Allergic reactions may affect 1 or more organ systems:

1. Skin (itching, hives, welts, flushing or skin edema, tingling)
2. Gastrointestinal (abdominal pain, nausea, diarrhea)
3. Cardiac (dizziness, fainting, palpitations, chest pain)
4. Respiratory (difficulty breathing, upper airway swelling, including lips and tongue)

OBJECTIVE Allergic reactions may affect 1 or more organ systems:

1. Skin (hives, welts, flushing, skin edema)
2. Gastrointestinal (vomiting, diarrhea)
3. Cardiac (hypotension)
4. Respiratory (wheezing, angioedema)

ASSESSMENT Severe Reactions (anaphylaxis): Reactions involving more than one organ system or causing difficulty breathing or hypotension/shock are severe and may progress rapidly to death. Most severe reactions occur soon after exposure. The faster a reaction develops, the more severe it is likely to be.

OR

Mild Allergic Reaction: Reactions involving signs and symptoms of the gastrointestinal tract and skin.

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. For treatment of severe anaphylactic allergic reaction (respiratory and/or circulatory signs/symptoms develop):

DANGER SIGNS: Rapid progression of symptoms, evidence of respiratory distress (e.g., stridor, wheezing, dyspnea, increased work of breathing, retractions, persistent cough**ing**, cyanosis), signs of poor perfusion, abdominal pain, vomiting, dysrhythmia, hypotension, collapse.

NOTE: Early recognition and early treatment with epinephrine is essential in preventing death.

a. Call for someone, preferably 2 people to help you. (Do not leave the patient unattended!)

b. Have respondent call EMS (911) and delegating physician

c. Assure open airway; begin CPR if indicated.

d. Assign one person to be timekeeper and record events in anaphylaxis record.

e. Assign the other person to continue CPR, if indicated.

2. Administer epinephrine into outer thigh (choose vial or autoinjector).

a. Autoinjector: Should be held firmly in place for 3-10 seconds prior to removal.
b. Vial or glass ampule:
1) Filter needles should be available and used each time a medication is aspirated from a glass ampoule to reduce glass particle contamination.
2) Remove filter needle and change to appropriate IM needle for injection to patient.

3. Epinephrine vials/ampules for IM injection 1 mg/mL

a. Ampules may be labeled as 1:1000 which is equivalent to 1mg/mL.
b. Can be given subcutaneously if necessary. IM provides a more rapid increase in the plasma and tissue concentrations of epinephrine.
c. Patients who weigh more than 50 kg can be **given** 0.5 mg (0.5 mL of the 1mg/mL solution). If the patient is obese, this can be administered using a 1.5-inch needle to penetrate the subcutaneous fat.

NOTE: Dosing chart below may be used. However, infants and small children weighing less than 15 kg should be given an exact weight-based dose (not estimated), WHENEVER POSSIBLE. However, if obtaining an exact dose causes a significant delay in assisting the patient, autoinjector should be considered. It is expected that the side effects would be mild and transient.

Children weighing less than 15kg may be given 0.1mg autoinjector if calculating the exact dose would significantly delay administration. If 0.1mg epinephrine autoinjector is not on the cart, use 0.15mg autoinjector.

Chart below obtained from:
http://www.immunize.org/catg.d/p3082a.pdf

First-Line Treatment: Epinephrine

		Age group	Range of weight (lb)	Range of weight (kg)*	Epinephrine Dose: 1 mg/mL injectable (1:1000 dilution); intramuscular Minimum dose: 0.05 mL	Epinephrine Dose: Epinephrine auto-injector, 0.15 mg or 0.3 mg
Recommended dose is 0.01 mg/kg body weight up to 0.5 mg maximum dose. May be repeated every 5–15 minutes for a total of 3 doses.	Infants and children	1–6 months	9–19 lb	4–8.5 kg	0.05 mL (or mg)	off label
		7–36 months	20–32 lb	9–14.5 kg	0.1 mL (or mg)	off label
		37–59 months	33–39 lb	15–17.5 kg	0.15 mL (or mg)	0.15 mg/dose
		5–7 years	40–56 lb	18–25.5 kg	0.2–0.25 mL (or mg)	0.15 mg/dose
		8–10 years	57–76 lb	26–34.5 kg	0.25–0.3 mL (or mg)	0.15 mg or 0.3 mg/dose
	Teens	11–12 years	77–99 lb	35–45 kg	0.35–0.4 mL (or mg)	0.3 mg/dose
		13 years & older	100+ lb	46+ kg	0.5 mL (or mg) – max. dose	0.3 mg/dose

NOTE: If body weight is known, then dosing by weight is preferred. If weight is not known or not readily available, dosing by age is appropriate.

* *Rounded weight at the 50th percentile for each age range*

4. Apply oxygen at 5 L/minute by nasal cannula or at 2L/min if patient has history of emphysema or chronic lung disease. Place patient in supine position, legs elevated, if tolerated. Begin monitoring Vital Signs with BP every 5 minutes.

NOTE: EMS must be called for transport of any patient who has received epinephrine; copy of anaphylaxis record must be provided to EMS to go with the patient.

5. If exhibiting cutaneous symptoms with or without anaphylaxis:

a. For treatment of mild allergic reaction showing cutaneous symptoms:

i. Children: (See dosing chart)

Diphenhydramine IM Dosing The standard dose is 1 mg/kg body weight, up to 100mg. May repeat dose every 6-8 hours; Adult not to exceed 400mg/day. Child not to exceed 300 mg/day.	
Weight lbs (kg)	Diphenhydramine Dose (Injection: 50 mg/mL)
24-37 (11-17)	15 mg / 0.3 mL
37-51 (17-23)	20 mg / 0.4 mL
51-77 (23-35)	30 mg / 0.6 mL
77-99 (35-45)	40 mg / 0.8 mL
99+ (45kg+)	50 mg / 1 mL

NOTE: Children younger than 2 years of age should receive diphenhydramine only after consulting with a physician.

Diphenhydramine PO Dosing (The standard dose is 1 mg/kg body weight, up to 100 mg) May repeat dose every 6 – 8 hours. Adult not to exceed 400 mg/day. Child not to exceed 300 mg/day.	
Weight lb(kg)	Diphenhydramine Dose (Suspension: 12.5mg/5mL)
22 – 26lb (10-12kg)	5mL
27 – 32lb (12-14kg)	6.25mL
33-37lb (14-16kg)	7.5mL
38-43lb (17-19kg)	8.75mL
44-54lb (20-24kg)	10mL
55-65lb (25-29kg)	12.5mL
66-76lb (30-34kg)	15mL
77-87lb (35-40kg)	17.5mL
88lb and greater (40kg and greater)	20mL

ii. Adults: Diphenhydramine 25-50 mg PO or IM every 4-8 hours (max dose 400 mg in 24 hours).

NOTE: Patients without anaphylaxis observe 60 minutes prior to releasing from health department.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. For cutaneous symptoms only, if patient needs to continue self-administration of diphenhydramine:

a. If symptoms persist, advise to follow dosing instructions provided on the package of diphenhydramine over the counter product.

b. Advise if experiencing dizziness, difficulty breathing or chest pain, call 911.

c. **Instruct patient to inform their primary care provider of symptoms.** Inform the patient that he/she has an apparent allergy to the causative agent and advise that this information should be provided to all healthcare providers in the future.

d. Education the patient/caretaker about use of medical alert bracelets.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Consult with delegating physician for alternative treatment options when allergen is medication that was ordered/dispensed under nurse protocol.

2. Immediately refer patients with wheezing, laryngeal edema, hypotension, shock or cardiovascular collapse to ER via EMS.

3. Refer to primary care provider for further evaluation**.**

FOLLOW-UP

1. Place an allergy label on the front of patient's medical record and/or enter the allergy into the electronic medical record as appropriate.

2. If the allergic reaction is immunization-induced, complete a vaccine adverse event record (VAERS).

ALLERGIC REACTION/ANAPHYLAXIS RECORD – page 1

District/Clinic Site _____ Date _____

Patient Demographic Information:

Name: _____

DOB _____/_____/_____ AGE _____ months / years

Estimated/Actual Weight *(please circle one)* Infant / Child / Adult _____lbs/kg

Event which precipitated reaction:

_____ Immunization
_____ Medication administered
_____ Biologicals administered
_____Food ingested
_____Exposure to Environmental Hazard(s)
_____ Other: (please explain) _____

TIME OF REACTION: _____ TIME EMS CALLED: _____

Signs and Symptoms: (please check)

_____ Apprehension
_____ Flushing and/or skin edema
_____ Palpitations
_____ Numbness and tingling
_____ Itching
_____ Localized or generalized urticaria (rash, welts)
_____ Seizure Activity
_____ Choking sensation
_____ Coughing/hoarseness/wheezing
_____ Difficulty breathing
_____ Nausea and vomiting
_____ Severe hypotension
_____ Vasomotor collapse
_____ Loss of consciousness

Other (e.g., dizziness**)**: _____

OTHER OBSERVATIONS/COMMENTS: _____
_____
_____

SIGNATURE OF RN/APRN: _____

DISPOSITION: _____

REVIEWER: _____

ALLERGIC REACTION/ANAPHYLAXIS RECORD – page 2

1. Call for HELP
2. Assign timekeeper/recorder
3. Assure AIRWAY
4. Check VITAL SIGNS q 5 minutes
5. CPR if necessary
6. Call EMS if indicated

PATIENT NAME:_____
PATIENT WEIGHT:_____
PATIENT DOB/AGE:_____

For cutaneous symptoms with or without anaphylaxis:

Diphenhydramine IM Dosing The standard dose is 1 mg/kg body weight, up to 100mg). May repeat dose every 6-8 hours; Adult max 400mg/day. Child max 300 mg/day.	
Weight lbs (kg)	Diphenhydramine Dose (Injection: 50 mg/mL)
24-37lb (11-17kg)	15 mg / 0.3 mL
37-51lb (17-23kg)	20 mg / 0.4 mL
51-77lb (23-35kg)	30 mg / 0.6 mL
77-99lb (35-45kg)	40 mg / 0.8 mL
99lb+ (45kg+)	50 mg / 1 mL
*Note: Children younger than 2 years of age should receive diphenhydramine only after consulting with a physician.	

Diphenhydramine PO Dosing The standard dose is 1 mg/kg body weight, up to 100 mg) May repeat Dose every 6-8 hours. Adult max 400 mg/day. Child max 300mg/day.	
Weight lb(kg)	Diphenhydramine Dose (Suspension: 12.5/5mL)
22 – 26lb (10-12kg)	5mL
27 – 32lb (12-14kg)	6.25mL
33-37lb (14-16kg)	7.5mL
38-43lb (17-19kg)	8.75mL
44-54lb (20-24kg)	10mL
55-65lb (25-29kg)	12.5mL
66-76lb (30-34kg)	15mL
77-87lb (35-40kg)	17.5mL
88lb and greater (40kg and greater)	20mL
*Note: Children younger than 2 years of age should receive diphenhydramine only after consulting with a physician.	

Severe Reactions (anaphylaxis) involving more than one organ system or causing difficulty breathing or hypotension/shock:

Epinephrine IM Dosing

Epinephrine chart obtained from:
http://www.immunize.org/catg.d/p3082a.pdf

First-Line Treatment: Epinephrine				Epinephrine Dose	
	Age group	Range of weight (lb)	Range of weight (kg)☆	1 mg/mL injectable (1:1000 dilution); intramuscular Minimum dose: 0.05 mL	Epinephrine auto-injector, 0.15 mg or 0.3 mg
Recommended dose is 0.01 mg/kg body weight up to 0.5 mg maximum dose. May be repeated every 5–15 minutes for a total of 3 doses.					
Infants and children	1–6 months	9–19 lb	4–8.5 kg	0.05 mL (or mg)	off label
	7–36 months	20–32 lb	9–14.5 kg	0.1 mL (or mg)	off label
	37–59 months	33–39 lb	15–17.5 kg	0.15 mL (or mg)	0.15 mg/dose
	5–7 years	40–56 lb	18–25.5 kg	0.2–0.25 mL (or mg)	0.15 mg/dose
	8–10 years	57–76 lb	26–34.5 kg	0.25–0.3 mL (or mg)	0.15 mg or 0.3 mg/dose
Teens	11–12 years	77–99 lb	35–45 kg	0.35–0.4 mL (or mg)	0.3 mg/dose
	13 years & older	100+ lb	46+ kg	0.5 mL (or mg) – max. dose	0.3 mg/dose

NOTE: If body weight is known, then dosing by weight is preferred. If weight is not known or not readily available, dosing by age is appropriate.

☆ *Rounded weight at the 50th percentile for each age range*

Children weighing less than 15kg may be given 0.1mg autoinjector if calculating the exact dose would significantly delay administration. If 0.1mg epinephrine autoinjector is not on the cart, use 0.15mg autoinjector.

TIME EMS CALLED:_____
TIME EMS ARRIVED:_____

VITAL SIGNS (monitor every 5 minutes)

Time	B/P	Pulse	Resp
_____	___/___	_____	_____
_____	___/___	_____	_____
_____	___/___	_____	_____
_____	___/___	_____	_____
_____	___/___	_____	_____
_____	___/___	_____	_____
_____	___/___	_____	_____

CPR Indicated: _____YES _____NO
TIME CPR started:_____AM / PM
TIME CPR ended: _____AM / PM

Oxygen started: _____YES _____NO

TIME	DOSE	ROUTE
____	_____	_____

Epinephrine 1mg/1mL ampule

TIME	DOSE	ROUTE	SITE
_____	_____	IM	____
_____	_____	IM	____
_____	_____	IM	____

Epinephrine Auto-Injector

TIME	DOSE/TYPE	ROUTE	SITE
____	_____	IM	____
____	_____	IM	____
____	_____	IM	____

IM Diphenhydramine 50 mg/mL vial

TIME	DOSE	ROUTE	SITE
_____	_____	IM	____

Oral Diphenhydramine 12.5 mg/5mL (Elixir/Solution) OR 25mg, 50 mg (Capsules)

TIME	DOSE	ROUTE
_____	_____	PO

EMS DEPARTED TO HOSPITAL: _____
HOSPITAL NAME: _____
Patient's status when transported to hospital: _____

If not transported, patient's status when leaving clinic: _____
_____

REFERENCES

1. ***Guidelines for the Diagnosis and Management of Food Allergy in the United States: Report of the NIAID-Sponsored Expert Panel*, Journal of Allergy Clinical Immunology, Vol. 126, 2010, pp. 1105-18. (Accessed 3/18/2019)**

2. **Choo, KLJ, "Glucocorticoids for the Treatment of Anaphylaxis: Cochrane Systematic Review" Allergy Vol. 65 No. 10, October 2010, p 1205. (Accessed 3/18/2019)**

3. **P. Lieberman et al. / Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol 115 (2015) 341e384. Anaphylaxis- A Practice Parameter Update 2015. https://www.aaaai.org/Aaaai/media/MediaLibrary/PDF%20Documents/Practice%20and%20Parameters/2015-Anaphylaxis-PP-Update.pdf**

4. **Campbell, Ronna L, Kelso, John M. Anaphylaxis: Emergency Treatment. In: UpToDate Online, UpToDate, Waltham, MA (Accessed on March 8, 2019.)**

5. **Diphenydramine. Lexi-Drugs. Lexicomp. Wolters Kluwer Health, Inc. Riverwoods, IL. Available at http://online.lexi.com. (Accessed on March 8, 2019.)**

6. Philip Lieberman, et al., "The diagnosis and management of anaphylaxis: an updated practice parameter," *Journal of Allergy Clinical Immunology*, Vol. 115, No. 3, March 2005, pp. S483-523.

7. **Brice Labruzzo Mohundro, et al., "Important Considerations When Dispensing Epinephrine Auto-Injector Devices," *Pharmacy Times*, September 23, 2010, http://www.pharmacytimes.com/p2p/P2PEpinephrine-0910 (Accessed on March 8, 2019.)**

8. **Hugh Sampson, et al., "Second symposium on the definition and management of anaphylaxis: Summary report – Second National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Disease/Food Allergy and Anaphylaxis Network symposium," *Journal of Clinical Immunology*, Vol. 117, February 2006, pp. 391-397. (Accessed on March 8, 2019.)**

9. **UpToDate. Prescribing epinephrine for anaphylaxis self-treatment. Accessed March 18, 2019. https://www.uptodate.com/contents/prescribing-epinephrine-for-anaphylaxis-self-treatment?search=epinephrine%20autoinjector%20obese%20patient&source=search_result&selectedTitle=1~150&usage_type=default&display_rank=1**

POLICY FOR REVIEWING EMERGENCY PROTOCOLS/PROCEDURES IN PUBLIC HEALTH CLINIC SITES

A review of emergency protocol/procedures shall be completed at least once annually at each clinic site. The Nursing Supervisor shall arrange for the annual review and completion of the attached checklist.

Staff member(s) listed below participated in training updates for all age ranges and performed in a mock emergency drill on _____.
(Date)

District Health Director Name_____

District Health Director Signature_____ Date_____

District Nursing and Clinical Director Name_____

District Nursing and Clinical Director Signature_____ Date____

Name(s) of Staff Member(s)

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

EMERGENCY CHECKLIST FOR PUBLIC HEALTH CLINIC SITES

To assure that each site is equipped and prepared to handle emergencies that may occur.

The Nursing Supervisor and District Public Health Nursing & Clinical Director will assure that this checklist is completed annually for each site and that follow-up occurs for any inadequacies/incomplete areas.

#	EMERGENCY ITEM	Complete/ Adequate	Incomplete/ Inadequate	Comments
1.	Emergency numbers posted on each phone.			
2.	Exits clear.			
3.	Hallways clear.			
4.	Staff able to describe action to take in case of emergency.			
5.	Staff demonstrates use of anaphylaxis equipment.			
6.	Emergency kit/cart stored in secured area except during clinic hours.			
7.	Emergency kit/cart stocked according to district protocol for anaphylaxis and has been checked monthly, as required.			
8.	All staff trained in emergency procedures and certified in CPR (every 2 years).			
9.	**Evacuation/Exit maps posted**			
10.	Practice emergency drill(s) conducted and documented at least annually. **NOTE:** Drills should include age-group variations (i.e., adults, infants and children).			

County_____

Nursing Supervisor Printed Name _____

Nursing Supervisor Signature _____

Date of Review: _____ Date Corrected: _____

District Nursing & Clinical Director Printed Name _____

District Nursing & Clinical Director Signature _____

EVALUATION TOOL FOR PRACTICE DRILL

		Yes	No
A.	Response Team		
1.	Team effort utilized and well-coordinated.	_____	_____
2.	Response team timely.	_____	_____
3.	Patient assessment complete.	_____	_____
4.	**Agency specific code** called.	_____	_____
5.	Emergency Medical Services**/** Physician/**APRN/Nurse Manager** notified.	_____	_____
6.	Emotional support provided to significant others, if applicable.	_____	_____
B.	Patient Outcome		
1.	Level of consciousness assessed.	_____	_____
2.	Vital signs monitored.	_____	_____
3.	Appropriate drugs given.	_____	_____
4.	CPR instituted, if applicable.	_____	_____
5.	EMS/physician/**APRN/Nurse Manager** responded.	_____	_____
6.	Documentation complete.	_____	_____

C. Recommendations/Comments:

_____

_____

Site_____ Date_____

Evaluator Printed Name_____

Evaluator Signature _____

Agency specific codes should be used to signal an emergency

GUIDELINES FOR SUSPECTED OPIOID OVERDOSE

DO NOT USE THIS PROTOCOL FOR A PERSON THAT HAS A KNOWN HYPERSENSITIVITY TO NALOXONE HYDROCHLORIDE.

DEFINITION

Overdose is defined as the accidental or intentional **ingestion** of a drug at a quantity substantially greater than normally used or recommended resulting in serious harmful symptoms or death. **An overdose** is a medical emergency in which response time is of the essence to save the person who is usually unconscious, hypoxic, and in the more severe cases, apneic. Initiating treatment for an opioid overdose as early as possible **is medically** imperative and a critical determinant of outcome in opioid overdose.

ETIOLOGY

Heroin and prescription opioids such as oxycodone, hydrocodone, codeine, fentanyl, and morphine are opioid receptor agonists. With larger doses, respiratory depression can occur, limiting adequate oxygenation of blood, which reduces oxygen availability to the brain and heart, leading to unresponsiveness, anoxia, cyanosis, and death. Respiratory depression, which is reversible until death occurs, can take 1 to 3 hours and can be reversed with the pharmacological antidote naloxone, which displaces opioids from the opioid receptor and blocks the binding of additional opioids for 20 to 90 minutes.

NOTE: It is important to prevent first responders' exposure to fentanyl-based substances. Be sure to assess the area for your safety. Always wear nitrile gloves when caring for a person you suspect is experiencing an opioid overdose. If a powdery substance is found, do not touch it without wearing nitrile gloves, face mask (preferably N-95), and eye shields. Also, be sure to remove gloves properly after caring for patient and wash hands.

NOTE: Alcohol-based hand sanitizers do not get rid of the presence of fentanyl-based substances.

OBJECTIVE

Face extremely pale and/or clammy
Limp body
Fingernails or lips have a purple or blue color
Vomiting or making gurgling noises
Cannot be awakened or unable to speak
Pinpoint pupils
Low blood pressure
Breathing or heartbeat slows or stops

NOTE: If a person displays any or all of these symptoms, CALL 911 IMMEDIATELY.

ASSESSMENT **SUSPECTED OPIOID OVERDOSE**

NOTE: The auto-injector and intranasal naloxone may be administered to infants and neonates. However, in neonates with known or suspected exposure to maternal opioid use, consider using another form of naloxone (IM) to allow dosing according to weight and titration to effect.

DO NOT USE THIS PROTOCOL FOR A PERSON THAT HAS A KNOWN HYPERSENSITIVITY TO NALOXONE HYDROCHLORIDE.

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

1. Have someone CALL 911 IMMEDIATELY if you suspect a person is experiencing an opioid overdose. If at any time the person has stopped breathing, begin to administer 2-person rescue breathing or CPR with a bag-valve mask device to prevent the first responder from being exposed to fentanyl-substances.

    a. Also have someone notify the **on-site clinical supervisor** and Delegating Physician.

2. Use PPE to prevent absorption of fentanyl-related substances.

    a. These substances are designed to be absorbed into the body by all means, including injection, oral ingestion, contact with mucous membranes, inhalation, and via transdermal transmission.

    b. Always wear nitrile gloves when caring for a person you suspect is experiencing an opioid overdose.

    c. If a powdery substance is found, do not touch it without wearing nitrile gloves, face mask (preferably N-95), and eye shields.

    d. Also, be sure to remove gloves properly after caring for patient and wash hands with soap and water.

3. Administer naloxone hydrochloride either intramuscularly or intranasally, every 2-3 minutes until person responds. If a total of 10 mg has been administered and no improvement do not give more, opioid overdose may not be the cause of symptoms. Continue monitoring vital signs, administer rescue breathing or CPR if necessary, until paramedics arrive.

   If patient responds to naloxone administration, after reversal, may need to re-administer dose(s) at a later interval (i.e., 20 to 60 minutes) depending on type/duration of opioid.

   a) Intramuscularly

      Naloxone hydrochloride solution:

      1) **Adults, adolescents, and children older than 5 years or weighing more than 20 kg:** Naloxone hydrochloride injection 2 mg IM every 2-3 minutes until person is spontaneously breathing and/or condition improves. **Can give subcutaneously, if dose can't be administered IM.**

         Infants and children younger than 5 years or weighing less than 20 kg: Initial dose is 0.01 mg/kg/dose; if no response, a subsequent dose of 0.1 mg/kg may be given. Depending on the volume of the dose, the dose may need to be given in divided doses. Can give subcutaneously, if dose can't be administered IM.

      OR

      2) Autoinjector (for neonates, infants, adolescents and adults)

         a) Naloxone hydrochloride auto-injector 0.4 mg or 2 mg IM every 2-3 minutes until person is spontaneously breathing and/or condition improves.

NOTE: Evzio Autoinjector (naloxone hydrochloride) for IM use should be placed against the outer thigh, through clothing if needed. Press firmly and hold in place for 5 seconds.

OR

b) Intranasally (for neonates, infants, adolescents, and adults)
   1) Narcan (naloxone hydrochloride) intranasal 2 mg or 4 mg one-time use dispensers. Do not prime or test the device prior to administration.

   2) Place the patient in the supine position and administer contents of one nasal spray as a single dose = 1 squirt in one nostril. Provide support to the back of the neck to allow the head to tilt back.

   3) Follow administration, turn the patient on their side. May repeat dose every 2-3 minutes in alternating nostrils until spontaneously breathing and/or condition improves.

NOTE: A new unit of intranasal naloxone spray must be used with each administration as each unit of naloxone Nasal Spray contains a single dose. Do not prime or test the device prior to administration.

Note: Alternating between dosage forms is acceptable.

4. Stay with person until EMS arrives.

   a. The administration of naloxone hydrochloride can cause sudden opioid withdrawal symptoms, including agitation or combativeness; ensure the safety of patient and staff.

b. Some other symptoms include body aches, diarrhea, tachycardia, fever, runny nose, sneezing, piloerection, sweating, yawning, nausea or vomiting, nervousness, restlessness or irritability, shivering or trembling, abdominal cramps, weakness, and increased blood pressure.

5. Place patient in recovery position if spontaneously breathing.

6. Monitor vital signs every 5 minutes until EMS arrives.

OPIOID OVERDOSE RECORD

1. Call 911 and notify **on-site supervisor and** delegating physician.
2. Administer naloxone hydrochloride every 2-3 minutes until spontaneous respirations/conditions improves.
3. Place person in recovery position. Check vital signs every 5 minutes until EMS arrives.
4. If necessary, administer 2-person rescue breathing or CPR with bag-valve mask device.

Patient name _____
Patient DOB/age _____

Time 911 called _____
Rescue breaths needed Yes No
Time initiated _____
CPR needed: Yes No
Time initiated _____
CPR discontinued (time) _____
Oxygen started YES NO

Naloxone Dosage Info

If a total of 10 mg has been administered and no improvement do not give more.
Administer naloxone hydrochloride every 2-3 minutes until spontaneous respirations/ conditions improve.

Naloxone HCl Solution:

Adults, adolescents, and children 5 years and older or weighs more than 20 kg: Naloxone hydrochloride 0.4 mg or 2 mg IM

Infants and children younger than 5 years or weighs less than 20 kg: Initial dose is 0.01 mg/kg/dose; if no response, a subsequent dose of 0.1 mg/kg may be given.

OR

Naloxone HCl Autoinjector:
0.4 mg or 2mg IM

OR

Intranasal: 2 mg or 4 mg one-time use dispenser. Administer 1 squirt of naloxone in one nostril. Do not prime or test the device prior to administration.

Naloxone Administration

Dose _____ Route ☐ Nasal ☐ IM/Auto
If IM, indicate site _____

Time Dose 1 given _____
Time Dose 2 given _____
Time Dose 3 given _____
Time Dose 4 given _____
Time Dose 5 given _____

* * If a total of 10 mg has been administered and no improvement, opioid overdose may not be the cause of symptoms. Continue to monitor vitals, administer rescue breathing or CPR, if necessary, until paramedics arrive. **

Vital Signs every 5 minutes

Time	B/P	Pulse	Respirations	Pulse Oximetry	Comments

EMS arrival _____ EMS departure _____ Hospital name _____
Patient condition when transported to hospital: _____
_____

Signature of LPN/ RN/APRN _____

REFERENCES

1. **Narcan for the U.S. Healthcare Professional. Accessed March 14, 2019. https://www.narcan.com/healthcare-professional**

2. **Naloxone hydrochloride information. Accessed March 14, 2019. https://dailymed.nlm.nih.gov/dailymed/drugInfo.cfm?setid=8535cc84-ad4a-4d67-8480-fb5a2e3406f8**

3. **Naloxone hydrochloride information. Accessed March 9, 2019. http://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/7338**

4. **Evzio Product Information. Accessed March 14, 2019. https://www.Evzio.com**

5. **ACMT and AACT Position Statement: Preventing Occupational Fentanyl and Fentanyl Analog Exposure to Emergency Responders (July 12, 2017). Accessed March 14, 2019. https://www.acmt.net/cgi/page.cgi/_zine.html/The_ACMT_Connection/ACMT_Statement_on_Fentanyl_Exposure**

6. **Lexicomp Online. 2019 Wolters Kluwer Clinical Drug Information, Inc. Accessed March 9, 2019.**<https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/7338?searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dnaloxone%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dnaloxone#monograph-tab-content> accessed Sept. 9, 2019.

NURSE PROTOCOL FOR ADMINISTERING VACCINES DURING PUBLIC HEALTH EMERGENCIES

All staff that provides vaccine services as part of a Public Health clinic, campaign or mass vaccination event will adhere to requirements of The Georgia Immunization Program (GIP) Manual that provides Public Health personnel with up-to-date information and guidance. The GIP Manual is based primarily on the Recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP). The ACIP Recommendations are located at http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/hcp/acip-recs/index.html

The GIP Manual and ACIP recommendations are the official Department of Public Health (DPH) policies, procedures, and standards for administering vaccines, providing and documenting immunization services, and evaluating quality assurance in Public Health Districts.

The signatures below indicate an agreement between the delegating physician(s) and the registered professional nurse(s) RN(s) who are authorized to administer the vaccines included in the Nurse Protocol Agreement for Administering Vaccines during Public Health Emergencies.

The RN or APRN whose signature appears below on this signature page:

1. Has successfully completed all required training on the provision of vaccines in accordance with requirements of the Georgia Immunization Program Manual for vaccines included in the Nurse Protocol Agreement for Administering Vaccines during Public Health Emergencies.

_____ _____
Signature of Delegating Physician Date

_____ _____
Signature of RN or APRN Date

NURSE PROTOCOL AGREEMENT
FOR ADMINISTERING VACCINES DURING PUBLIC HEALTH EMERGENCIES

The signatures below indicate an agreement authorized through O.C.G.A. § 43-34-23 between the delegating physician(s) and the registered professional nurse(s) (RNs) and/or advanced practice registered nurses (APRNs) that the undersigned individuals are authorized to administer, order and dispense the specific vaccines listed below in accordance with the requirements of the Nurse Protocol for Administering Vaccines During Public Health Emergencies.

Vaccine Administration:

Vaccines can be administered for the following populations (all ages or specific age groups):

1. _____

The following vaccines can be administered:

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

The signatures below indicate an agreement between the delegating physician(s) and the registered professional nurse(s) RN(s) who are authorized to administer the vaccines listed in this agreement.

_____ _____
Signature of Delegating Physician Date

_____ _____
Signature of RN or APRN Date

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

HIV

HIV
CLINICAL REVIEW TEAM

Takiyah Turks, MPH, BSN, RN HIV Office Nurse Consultant GA Department of Public Health	**Gregory Felzien, MD, AAHIVS** Diplomat: Internal Medicine and Infectious Disease *Medical Advisor* HIV Office GA Department of Public Health
Sandra Metcalf, MPH, BSN, RN, ACRN QM Nurse Consultant Team Lead - HIV GA Department of Public Health	**Rosemarie D. Parks, MD, MPH** District Health Director Southeast Health District 9-2
Tonia Parrott, PhD GA Public Health Laboratory	**Pachia Dixon, RPh** Coastal Health District 9-1
Katrina Harber, BSN, RN Northwest District 1-1	**Ellie Purdy, FNP-BC, AAHIVS** North Health District 1-2
Cecily Kannapell, RD, LD North Health District 2	**Cathy Graves, RN** West Central Health District 7
Susan Alt, BSN, RN, ACRN Coastal Health District 9-1	**Robin Grant, RN, MSN** Southeast Health District 9-2
Rachel D. Agnew, RD, LD WIC Regional Advisor Georgia Department of Public Health	**Jennifer Chastain, RN** Northeast Health District 10
Adam Barefoot DMD, MPH Director of Oral Health Division of Health Promotion Georgia Department of Public Health	**David Reznik, DDS** Director of Oral Health Center Infectious Disease Program Grady Health System

RECOMMENDATIONS FOR USE OF THE HIV/AIDS-RELATED STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOLS

The HIV Nurse Protocol Committee recommends the following HIV-related nurse protocols for use by public health nurses. Use of standard nurse protocols from other areas is strongly encouraged in order to provide comprehensive care. The use of these protocols, such as the STD Nurse Protocols, Women's Health Nurse Protocols and/or other HIV-related protocols by public health nurses should be based on the nurse's experience, training, and competency. In the following HIV/AIDS-Related Standard Nurse Protocols, the term "provider" refers to an APRN or physician.

Due to the rapidly evolving management of HIV disease, the HIV Nurse Protocol Committee recommends that individual protocols be locally updated as Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS) HIV-related guidelines are revised. Compliance with all DHHS HIV/AIDS-related guidelines is a requirement of the Health Resources and Service Administration (HRSA) for sites receiving Ryan White Comprehensive AIDS Resources Emergency (CARE) Act funding. These guidelines are considered "living" documents and are available online at the AIDSinfo website http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/; therefore, changes in these guidelines supersede information in the following HIV/AIDS-related nurse protocols.

The HIV Nurse Protocol Committee supports the use of the AIDS Education and Training Centers (AETC) publication, "Guide for HIV/AIDS Clinical Care," (current edition), as a reference guide for midlevel provider practice available online at http://www.aidsetc.org/. The Committee further recommends use of this publication in conjunction with more frequently updated HIV-related guidelines and references from sources such as, DHHS, http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/, HRSA https://hab.hrsa.gov/clinical-quality-management/clinical-care-guidelines-and-resources, AETC http://www.aidsetc.org, Stanford University, HIV Drug Resistance Database https://hivdb.stanford.edu/, the Georgia CAPUS Resource Hub https://www.gacapus.com/r/**,** the Georgia Department of Public Health (DPH) Hepatitis C Testing Toolkit for Primary Care Providers http://dph.georgia.gov/hepatitis-c**, the National HIV Curriculum, National STD Curriculum, and Hepatitis C Online available online at https://idea.medicine.uw.edu, and the National Alliance of State and Territorial AIDS Directors Integrating HIV and HCV testing toolkit https://www.nastad.org/resource/integrated-testing-toolkit .**

Advance Practice Registered Nurses (APRNs) should list these documents in the "Reference Guidelines for Practice" section of the APRN protocol agreement and add HIV/AIDS-related medications to the APRN formulary. If the APRN is working under the Nurse Protocol Statute (O.C.G.A. §43-34-23), please note that the APRN agreement must exclude controlled substances. If the APRN is working under prescriptive authority (O.C.G.A. §43-34-25), the APRN agreement may include controlled substances.

People living with HIV are at higher risk of acquiring many types of infections

compared with immunocompetent people. Nurses should ensure that **patients living with HIV** receive recommended immunizations. For the latest recommendations see http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/schedules/index.html.
Recommended immunization schedules by medical condition are available at https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/schedules/easy-to-read/adult.html.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SHORT TERM CONTINUATION OF ANTIRETROVIRAL THERAPY IN ADULTS LIVING WITH HIV

DEFINITION

Antiretroviral therapy refers to a combination of medications used to treat HIV infection. These drug combinations are commonly called antiretroviral therapy (ART). Currently, there are **seven**-classes of these drugs approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA): nucleoside and nucleotide reverse transcriptase inhibitors, non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors, protease inhibitors, fusion inhibitors, Chemokine receptor 5 **(CCR5**) antagonists, and **CD4 Post-Attachment Inhibitors** integrase strand transfer inhibitors. Since the mid-1990s, when studies demonstrated the superiority of three-drug regimens over single or dual drug regimens, national guidelines have mandated the use of three or more drugs in combination to treat HIV infection.

More recently two-drug combinations have been FDA approved for the treatment of HIV-1 infection in adults. Details can be found at:

- https://www.accessdata.fda.gov/drugsatfda_docs/label/2018/210192s002s004lbl.pdf
- https://www.gsksource.com/pharma/content/dam/GlaxoSmithKline/US/en/Prescribing_Information/Dovato/pdf/DOVATO-PI-PIL.PDF

Once an ART regimen is initiated, it is generally continued indefinitely unless the **patient desires treatment simplification or** experiences medication intolerance, severe side effects, adverse reactions, **drug-drug interactions,** treatment failure, or **there are significant advances in ARV treatment**.

SUBJECTIVE

1. **Established patient** currently taking an appropriate ART regimen.
2. Reports medication adherence and a desire to continue current ART regimen.
3. Absence of adverse reactions**, medication intolerance,** or significant side effects **to antiretroviral** medications.
4. Absence of allergies to antiretroviral medications.
5. Obtain a complete medication profile **and review** to determine **whether** there are any clinically significant drug-drug interactions, especially to new medications initiated

since the previous assessment. **Include over-the-counter medications, herbals, vitamins, and prescription medications, (including prescribed medications from outside providers).**

6. See the latest DHHS antiretroviral guidelines, "Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in HIV-1 Infected Adults and Adolescents," for recommendations including antiretroviral regimens, agent formulations and dosing, adverse events, and drug-drug interactions. Read http://www.aidsinfo.nih.gov/ .

OBJECTIVE

1. CD4 count and HIV viral load **has been completed within the last 6 months**.

2. **Review of all historical** resistance testing history. No evidence of past or current resistance to any medication contained in the current ART regimen.

3. **No evidence of virologic failure, e.g. HIV RNA level greater than or equal to 200 copies/mL**. https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/1/adult-and-adolescent-arv/15/virologic-failure

4. Recent (within **6** months) complete blood count (CBC) with differential **and** comprehensive metabolic panel (assessing renal and hepatic function).

5. Verify established patient with current ART prescription regimen.

6. If a release of information is available, contacting the pharmacy for a refill history is recommended, as part of the adherence assessment.

NOTE: Drug resistance is cumulative; thus, all prior treatment history and resistance test results should be considered when evaluating resistance. Interpretation of resistance testing is often complex and requires consultation with specialists in HIV drug resistance. **If needed c**onsult the **delegating** physician or **the provider designated in his or her absence** regarding results of resistance testing (e.g., genotypes, phenotypes, and/or tropism).

7. If ordering abacavir (may be present in fixed combination formulations such as Epzicom™, Triumeq™, etc.), no evidence of Human Leukocyte Antigen – B*5701 (HLA-

B*5701) positive test result.

8. If ordering a CCR5 antagonist (e.g., maraviroc), no evidence of Chemokine receptor 4 (CXCR4) or dual/mixed coreceptor tropism.

NOTE: Maraviroc should only be considered a fully active antiretroviral agent in treatment-experienced **patients** who have only CCR5 virus and who are naïve to CCR5 inhibitors. A tropism assay must be obtained before a CCR5 inhibitor is used and maraviroc not initiated if CXCR4 or **dual/mixed** virus (CCR5/CXCR4) is present.

ASSESSMENT No contraindications for continuation of antiretroviral regimen.

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

1. Check pregnancy test for women of child-bearing age, if indicated.

Note: If indicated, check Hepatitis A total Ab, Hepatitis B (sAb, sAg, Total core Ab), Hepatitis C Ab, Tb testing (TST or IGRA), other STIs (gonorrhea, chlamydia, syphilis, trichomonas), update immunizations (influenza, Hepatitis A and B, pneumovax, etc.), repeat CD4 count, viral load, CBC with differential, CMP (to assess hepatic and renal function), and assess need for additional care, e.g., PAP smear, etc.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Order one-month supply of each antiretroviral medication the **patient** is currently taking. **If enacting this continuation protocol for a second time, maximum of two-month supply total to be given in succession.**

NOTE: Antiretroviral medications frequently have drug-drug interactions that require dose modifications. Check with the physician, a pharmacist, drug and HIV references, and/or the latest DHHS antiretroviral guidelines for appropriate dose modifications including for individuals with acute/chronic kidney failure. Other online references may be referenced as needed and available, such as:

a. HIV Insite, *Database of Antiretroviral Drug*

Interactions,
http://www.hivinsite.org/InSite?page=ar-00-02

b. University of Liverpool, *HIV Drug Interactions,*
http://www.hiv-druginteractions.org/

c. University of Maryland Medical Center, *Drug Interaction Tool,*
https://www.umms.org/ummc/patients-visitors/health-library/drug-interaction-tool

d. Lexicomp,
http://www.wolterskluwercdi.com/lexicomp-online/

e. Drugs.com, *Drug Interactions Checker,*
https://www.drugs.com/drug_interactions.php

PATIENT EDUCATION AND COUNSELING

1. Review current drug regimen including drug storage, dose (including dose adjustments in kidney failure), route of administration, schedule, food requirements or restrictions, side effects, potential drug-drug interactions, and follow-up monitoring.

2. Explain the importance of adherence, the goals of therapy, and methods to prevent transmission to others (e.g. routine partner testing, condom use (also to decrease exposure to other STIs), remaining virally suppressed on ARVs (treatment as prevention/undetectable equals untransmittable), decreasing number of partners, partner use of pre-or post-exposure prophylaxis, etc.)

3. Provide measures to promote adherence such as written medication schedules, pillboxes, phone apps, alarms, etc.

4. Discourage **patient** from stopping ART regimen without consulting **prescribing** provider first.

NOTE: Simultaneously discontinuing all drugs in an ART regimen may lead to “functional” monotherapy of one drug due to the drug’s longer half-life compared with the other drugs (e.g., data have shown that efavirenz or nevirapine drug levels may persist for 21 days or longer). Currently there are no guidelines for optimal discontinuation intervals

between drugs. Check with the physician concerning discontinuation instructions. **Patients** with hepatitis B coinfection receiving one or a combination of NRTIs (i.e., emtricitabine, lamivudine, or tenofovir) may experience an exacerbation of hepatitis upon drug discontinuation.

5. Instruct **patient** to return for scheduled appointments. Stress that failure to keep appointments may result in gaps in services with possible discontinuation of medications and services.

6. Ask **patient** to immediately report adverse drug reactions, side effects or other changes in health that he/she feels are important to his/her care provider.

NOTE: If **patient** experiences hypersensitivity reactions to abacavir, it should be discontinued**, along with all other ARVs,** immediately.

If abacavir is stopped due to hypersensitivity reaction, then contact the designated provider immediately and advise the **patient** to hold all ART until further recommendations are available. If the **patient**'s symptoms are severe, advise the patient to present to the closest ER for an assessment. **If able, have the patient or family ask the assessing provider to contact the ARV prescribing provider**. **Patients** who have **an** HLA-B*5701-positive screen should not be prescribed abacavir, and positive status should be recorded in the patient records as an abacavir allergy. **Patient**s, including those with negative screening tests, should be warned to consult their provider immediately if they note two or more of the hallmark symptoms, including fever, skin rash, GI symptoms (nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, abdominal pain), respiratory symptoms (cough, dyspnea, pharyngitis) and/or constitutional symptoms (malaise, fatigue, myalgia) especially during the first month of therapy. If the **patient** stops taking abacavir because of adverse reactions, it should not be re-started. Abacavir hypersensitivity reactions can be fatal.

7. Instruct **patient** that HIV medications, especially protease inhibitors and non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors, have a high potential for significant drug interactions.

8. Ask **patient** to check with his/her pharmacist or provider about interactions before taking a new medication, nutritional or herbal supplement, or OTC drug/product.

9. Request that the patient not "borrow" **or lend** medications from **or to** friends or family or obtain prescription drugs outside the care of his/her physician (e.g., erectile dysfunction agents). **Also, do not skip days to try to extend the medication supply.**

10. Instruct patient to bring all medications, nutritional or herbal supplements, and OTC drugs/products to his/her medical appointments.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Check patient's needs, e.g., AIDS Drug Assistance Program (ADAP), immunizations **(meningitis, HPV vaccines through age 26, etc.)**, labs, etc. If needs are identified, schedule the patient with the provider, case manager, lab, etc., as soon as possible.

2. Check for any upcoming provider appointments:

    a. If no appointment scheduled, schedule with the provider as soon as possible (ideally within 30 days).
    b. If appointment scheduled, consider rescheduling if **timeframe is** beyond 30 days.

3. Review barriers to care and stress the importance of keeping scheduled appointments to minimize gaps in services and potential discontinuation of medications **and services**.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Refer the following to the delegating physician:

    a. Non-adherent **patient**s.
    b. ART regimens that do not follow the latest DHHS treatment guidelines.
    c. Suspected treatment failure.
    d. Adverse reactions to ART or severe/significant side effects.
    e. Identification of mutations from previous resistance testing or outside records not

previously reviewed by the delegating physician.

f. **Patient**s desiring pregnancy or pregnant.
g. **Hepatitis co-infected patients.**
h. Patient on an abacavir-containing regimen is HLA-B*5701 positive.
i. Patient on a CCR5 antagonist has CXCR4 or dual/mixed coreceptor tropism.
j. Patients desiring treatment simplification.

2. Consult delegating physician of the following:

   a. Abnormal lab values.
   b. Medication side effects and/or adverse events.

3. Consult delegating physician concerning instructions for discontinuing or **switching** ART regimens.

4. Consult delegating physician concerning antiretroviral therapy in **patient**s with acute or progressive renal or hepatic insufficiency.

5. Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed, and HIV/AIDS nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

6. Refer to mental health provider if patient has new emotional stress, history of eating disorder/laxative abuse, anxiety disorder or panic attacks.

REFERENCES

1. AETC AIDS Education and Training Center Program, "National Coordinating Center," <https://www.aidsetc.org/> **(March 7, 2019).**

2. Department of Health and Human Services Panel on Antiretroviral Guidelines for Adults and Adolescents, "Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in Adults and Adolescents Living with HIV," **October 25, 2018**, <http://www.aidsinfo.nih.gov/contentfiles/adultandadolescentgl.pdf**> (March 7, 2019).**

3. Drugs.com, "Drug Interactions Checker," **February 28, 2018,** <https://www.drugs.com/drug_interactions.php> **(March 7, 2019).**

4. **GlaxoSmithKline, "Full Prescribing Information: Juluca", September 2018, <https://www.gsksource.com/pharma/content/dam/GlaxoSmithKline/US/en/Prescribing_Information/Juluca/pdf/JULUCA-PI-PIL.PDF> (March 7, 2019).**

5. Lexi-Comp, Inc., "Lexi-Comp Online," *Wolters Kluwer Health, Inc.*, **2019**, < **http://www.wolterskluwercdi.com/lexicomp-online**/> **(April 2, 2019).**

6. **Pacific AIDS Education and Training Center, "HIV Essentials and Quick Clinical Guides", November 2018, < http://paetc.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/12/PAETC_HIVEssentialsAndQuickClinicalGuides.pdf > (March 7, 2019).**

7. Stanford University, "HIV Drug Resistance Database," *HIVdb Program,* **February 13, 2019, <https://hivdb.stanford.edu/hivdb/by-mutations/> (March 7, 2019).**

8. University of California, San Francisco, UCSF Center for HIV Information, "HIV InSite," *Database of Antiretroviral Drug Interactions,* **2019,** <http://hivinsite.ucsf.edu/InSite?page=ar-00-02> **(March 7, 2019).**

9. University of Liverpool, "HIV Drug Interactions**," March 7, 2019**, <http://www.hiv-druginteractions.org/> (**March 7, 2019).**

10. University of Maryland Medical Center, "Drug Interaction Tool,"

2019, < **https://www.umms.org/ummc/patients-visitors/health-library/drug-interaction-tool**> (**April 2, 2019).**

11. **U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, AIDSinfo, "Management of the Treatment-Experienced Patient: Optimizing Antiretroviral Therapy in the Setting of Virologic Suppression", October 25, 2018, < https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/1/adult-and-adolescent-arv/16/optimizing-antiretroviral-therapy-in-the-setting-of-virologic-suppression> (March 7, 2019)**

12. **U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, AIDSinfo, "Management of the Treatment-Experienced Patient: Virologic Failure", October 25, 2018 <https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/1/adult-and-adolescent-arv/15/virologic-failure> (March 7, 2019)**

13. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, "Table 3. Laboratory Testing Schedule for Monitoring HIV-Infected Patients Before and After Initiation of Antiretroviral Therapy," *AIDSinfo Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in HIV-1-Infected Adults and Adolescents Laboratory Testing for Initial Assessment and Monitoring of HIV-Infected Patients on Antiretroviral Therapy*, **October 25, 2018**, https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/1/adult-and-adolescent-arv-guidelines/3/tests-for-initial-assessment-and-follow-up **(March 7,2019).**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR DISSEMINATED MYCOBACTERIUM AVIUM COMPLEX PROPHYLAXIS IN ADULTS LIVING WITH HIV

DEFINITION

Persons **living with HIV** with CD4 counts less than 50 cells/mm^3 should receive primary prophylaxis to prevent a first episode of disseminated *Mycobacterium avium* complex (DMAC) disease **only if they are on an ART regimen that does fully suppress the virus**. In the absence of antibiotic prophylaxis, DMAC occurs in up to 40% of patients **living with HIV** with CD4 counts of less than 50 cells/mm^3.

Persons with DMAC should receive lifelong therapy (e.g., secondary prophylaxis or maintenance therapy), unless immune reconstitution occurs due to antiretroviral therapy (ART).

ETIOLOGY

Mycobacterium avium is the etiologic agent in greater than 95% of patients **living with HIV** who acquire DMAC. *Mycobacterium avium* complex (MAC) organisms are common in the environment, and have been isolated in sources, e.g., food, water, soil and animals. MAC organisms usually enter the body via the gastrointestinal or respiratory tracts, and person-to-person transmission is unlikely. Of note, an estimated 7% to 12% of adults have been previously infected with MAC, therefore DMAC typically results from new infection instead of reactivation of latent infection.

Note*: Although epidemiologic associations have been identified, no environmental exposure or behavior has been consistently linked to subsequent risk of developing MAC disease. Available information does not support specific recommendations regarding avoidance of exposure. In addition, household or close contacts of those with MAC disease do not appear to be at increased risk of disease, and person-to-person transmission is unlikely.*

SUBJECTIVE

1. May or may not have a history of DMAC and/or treatment for DMAC.

2. No history of active tuberculosis (TB).

3. No symptoms suggestive of DMAC (e.g., fevers, chills, night sweats, weight loss, abdominal pain or diarrhea).

4. Absence of allergies to macrolide antibiotics (e.g., azithromycin, clarithromycin, erythromycin) or ethambutol.

5. No history of cholestatic jaundice/hepatic

dysfunction associated with prior use of azithromycin.

6. Obtain a complete medication profile to determine whether there are any clinically significant drug-drug interactions with treatment.

NOTE: Medication profiles should include: over-the-counter medications, herbals, vitamins, and prescription medications (including prescribed medications from outside providers). If a release of information is available, then contact the pharmacy, if necessary, in obtaining an up to date medication list.

OBJECTIVE

1. CD4 count less than 50 cells/mm^3, unless history of DMAC disease with treatment.

2. Absence of signs of current DMAC infection (e.g., weight loss, fever, enlarged spleen or liver, abdominal tenderness).

3. **B**lood culture for MAC **are** negative**, if performed.**

4. Recent (within **6** months) complete blood count (CBC) with differential **and** comprehensive metabolic panel (assessing renal and hepatic function).

5. No signs of active TB.

ASSESSMENT

Candidate for DMAC prophylaxis (primary or secondary), at risk of DMAC disease.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. If recent (within 3 months) MAC blood culture results not available, order blood culture for MAC.

2. If recent results not available **(within 6 months)**, order CBC with differential **and** comprehensive metabolic panel (assessing renal and hepatic function).

Note: If indicated, repeat CD4 count and viral load.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Primary Prophylaxis (Prevention of First Episode of DMAC Disease) **<u>is not recommended</u> for adults and adolescents**

who immediately initiate ART.

If no history of DMAC, CD4 count less than 50 cells/mm^3, and **NOT on fully suppressive ART**, order:

a. Azithromycin 1,200mg by mouth once per week

OR

b. Azithromycin 600mg by mouth twice weekly

OR

c. Clarithromycin 500mg by mouth two times/day

2. Secondary Prophylaxis (Chronic Maintenance Therapy)

If history of DMAC disease with treatment, order:

a. Preferred Therapy: Clarithromycin 500mg by mouth two times/day

PLUS

Ethambutol 15mg/kg by mouth daily

OR

b. Azithromycin 600mg by mouth daily (when drug interactions or intolerance precludes the use of clarithromycin):

PLUS

Ethambutol 15mg/kg by mouth daily

NOTE: Testing of susceptibility to clarithromycin or azithromycin is recommended. Ethambutol and Macrolides may require dosage adjustment in **patient** with renal and or hepatic impairment. Consult with physician regarding appropriate dosing.

NOTE: Aluminum- and magnesium-containing antacids decrease serum levels of azithromycin. Avoid concurrent administration of aluminum or magnesium containing antacids with azithromycin. Azithromycin should be administered at least 1 hour before or 2 hours after aluminum or magnesium containing antacids.

Aluminum-containing antacids decrease absorption of ethambutol. Avoid concurrent administration of aluminum-containing antacids for at least 4 hours following ethambutol. Clarithromycin has many drug-drug interactions and doses may need to be adjusted. If break-through DMAC occurs, there is a chance it may be macrolide resistant. Rifabutin is an alternative prophylactic agent for DMAC disease but, because of associated drug interactions, physicians should make the decision about ordering this medication.

If ethambutol ordered, conduct baseline vision assessment, which includes subjective symptoms (e.g., blurred vision, blind spots), visual acuity screening and red-green color discrimination.

NOTE:

Clarithromycin:

- **With all Protease Inhibitors**
  - **Consider alternative macrolide (e.g., azithromycin).**
  - **Monitor for clarithromycin-related toxicities or consider an alternative macrolide (e.g., azithromycin).**
  - **May cause QTc prolongation**
  - **Reduce clarithromycin dose by 50% in patients with CrCl 30-60 mL/min.**
  - **Reduce clarithromycin dose by 75% in patients with CrCl less than 30 mL/min.**

- **With NNRTIs**
  - **Efavirenz and Nevirapine: Monitor for effectiveness or consider alternative agent, such as azithromycin, for MAC prophylaxis and treatment.**
  - **Etravirine and Rilpivirine: Consider alternative macrolide, such as azithromycin, for MAC prophylaxis and treatment**

- **With Elvitegravir/ritonavir:**
  - **CrCl 50−60 mL/min:**
    - **Reduce clarithromycin dose by 50%.**
  - **CrCl less than 50 mL/min:**
    - **EVG/c is not recommended**

- **With Maraviroc:**
  - **Dose Maraviroc at 150 mg twice a day**

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Explain reason for regimen. Review current drug regimen, including: drug storage, dose, route of administration, schedule, side effects, clinically significant drug interactions and follow-up monitoring.

2. Instruct patient to stop the **DMAC** medications and immediately report adverse drug reactions, side effects (e.g., rash, vomiting, severe diarrhea, fever, chills, numbness or tingling in arms or legs, persistent loss of appetite, vision changes) or other changes in health that he/she feels are important to his/her provider.

3. If **patient** is taking ethambutol, instruct to report vision changes immediately.

   NOTE: Ethambutol-related visual impairment has been estimated to occur in 2.25% receiving ethambutol at standard doses. Risk-benefits should be assessed especially in young children, unconscious patients, or any other patient who may be unable to discern and report visual changes. The onset of optic neuritis is usually greater than 1 month after treatment initiation but can occur within days. A baseline visual acuity (Snellen test) and color discrimination tests followed by monthly color discrimination tests are performed during ethambutol use. To avoid permanent deficits, ethambutol is promptly discontinued if visual abnormalities are found as effects are normally reversible, but reversal may require up to a year.

4. Instruct that taking medications as ordered and keeping appointments is very important to prevent this life-threatening illness.

5. Explain that prophylaxis may be discontinued due to sustained rise in CD4 count while on ART but may need to be re-started in the event of stopping ART, CD4 counts dropping to less than 50 cells/mm^3 (primary prophylaxis), 100 cells/mm^3 (secondary prophylaxis), or if health condition worsens.

6. Instruct patient to report any signs and symptoms of DMAC to his/her provider.

7. Ask female patient to inform her provider if she is, or is planning to become, pregnant.

8. Educate patients who receive Azithromycin about adverse effects (QT Prolongation, Torsades de pointes, etc.) and document the patient's understanding.

9. Ask patient to check with his/her pharmacist or provider about interactions before taking a new medication, nutritional or herbal supplement, or OTC drug/product.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Check for any upcoming provider appointments:

    a. If no appointment scheduled, schedule with the provider as soon as possible (ideally within 30 days).
    b. If appointment scheduled, consider rescheduling if beyond 30 days.

2. Monitor for medication adherence, adverse drug events and medication side effects.

3. Monitor vision in patients taking ethambutol by providing vision checks monthly, which include asking patient about subjective vision changes (e.g., blurred vision, blind spots), visual acuity screening and red/green color discrimination.

4. Obtain a complete medication profile **(include both prescribed and OTC medications)** to determine whether there are any clinically significant drug-drug interactions, especially to new medication initiated since the previous assessment.

5. Obtain and monitor lab values for CBC with differential and comprehensive metabolic panel (assessing renal and hepatic function) within 4 to 6 weeks after initiation of regimen and then as indicated.

6. Monitor for signs/symptoms of DMAC.

7. Obtain and monitor CD4 counts and percentage at least every 3 to 6 months:

a. Discontinue primary prophylaxis in patients who have responded to ART and have sustained CD4 counts greater than 100 cells/mm^3 for 3 months or more. Primary prophylaxis should be reintroduced if the CD4 count decreases to less than 50 cells/mm^3 **ONLY if not on fully suppressive ART**.
b. Discontinue secondary prophylaxis in patients who have completed at least 12 months treatment for DMAC, are asymptomatic for DMAC, and have sustained CD4 counts greater than 100 cells/mm^3 for 6 months or more in response to ART. Secondary prophylaxis should be reintroduced if the CD4 count decreases to less than 100 cells/mm^3.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. **Consult** the delegating physician **or the designated provider immediately** of the following:

    a. Abnormal lab values.
    b. Medication side effects and/or adverse events.
    c. Signs/symptoms of DMAC.
    d. Changes in vision (e.g., blurred vision, blind spots), visual acuity screening and red/green color discrimination.
    e. If a patient is already being treated for an opportunistic infection.
    f. If an alternative prophylactic agent, e.g., rifabutin, for DMAC disease needs to be considered.
    g. If medication dosage adjustments are needed for a patient with abnormal renal or hepatic function tests.

2. Refer pregnant patients to delegating physician.

3. Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed, and HIV/AIDS nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

REFERENCES

1. **CredibleMeds, "Azithromycin, Levofloxacin and Increased Risk of Cardiac Arrhythmia and Death", May 31, 2014, <https://www.crediblemeds.org/blog/azithromycin-and-levofloxacin-and-increased-risk-cardiac-arr/> (March 8, 2019)**

2. **Judith Currier, UpToDate, "Mycobacterium avium complex (MAC) infections in HIV-infected patients," May 31, 2017, <https://www.uptodate.com/contents/mycobacterium-avium-complex-mac-infections-in-hiv-infected-patients?search=Ethambutol%20Drug%20information&source=search_result&selectedTitle=1~53&usage_type=default&display_rank=1> (March 8, 2019).**

3. **Pacific AIDS Education and Training Center, "HIV Essentials and Quick Clinical Guides", November 2018, < http://paetc.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/12/PAETC_HIVEssentialsAndQuickClinicalGuides.pdf > (March 7, 2019).**

4. Panel on Opportunistic Infections in HIV-Infected Adults and Adolescents. "Guidelines for the prevention and treatment of opportunistic infections in HIV-infected adults and adolescents: recommendations from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, the National Institutes of Health, and the HIV Medicine Association of the Infectious Diseases Society of America," <http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/contentfiles/lvguidelines/adult_oi.pdf> **(March 7, 2019**).

5. Payam Nahid, et al., "Official American Thoracic Society/Centers for Disease Control and Prevention/Infectious Diseases Society of America Clinical Practice Guidelines: Treatment of Drug-Susceptible Tuberculosis," Clinical Infectious Diseases, Vol. 63, October 2016, p. e169.

6. **Pfizer Laboratories, "Zithromax-azithromycin dihydrate", Sept 2018, <http://labeling.pfizer.com/ShowLabeling.aspx?id=511> (March 8, 2019)**

7. Richard Drew, UpToDate, "Ethambutol: An Overview," **November 7, 2017**, <https://www.uptodate.com/contents/ethambutol-an-overview?search=Ethambutol-drug-information&source=search_result&selectedTitle=2~53&usage_type=default&display_rank=2> **(March 8, 2019)**.

8. SADS Foundation, "Acquired, Drug-Induced Long QT Syndrome," *Acquired, Drug-Induced Long QT Syndrome, A Guide for Patients and Health Care Providers,* April 2006, <https://www.nhs.uk/conditions/long-qt-syndrome/documents/acquired-lqt-brochure06.pdf> **(March 8, 2019).**

9. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, AIDSinfo, “Guidelines for the Prevention and Treatment of Opportunistic Infections in HIV-Infected Adults and Adolescents: Disseminated Mycobacterium avium Complex Disease”, **February 15, 2019**, <https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/4/adult-and-adolescent-opportunistic-infection/326/mac> **(March 8, 2019).**

10. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, “Table 3. Laboratory Testing Schedule for Monitoring HIV-Infected Patients Before and After Initiation of Antiretroviral Therapy,” AIDSinfo Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in HIV-1-Infected Adults and Adolescents Laboratory Testing for Initial Assessment and Monitoring of HIV-Infected Patients on Antiretroviral Therapy, **October 25, 2018**, <https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/1/adult-and-adolescent-arv-guidelines/3/tests-for-initial-assessment-and-follow-up> **(March 7, 2019).**

11. U.S. Food and Drug Administration, “FDA Drug Safety Communication: Azithromycin (Zithromax or Zmax) and the risk of potentially fatal heart rhythms,” March 12, 2013 <https://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/DrugSafety/UCM343347.pdf> **(March 8, 2019).**

12. U.S. National Library of Medicine, DailyMed, “Ethambutol Hydrochloride,” **February 1, 2017**, <https://dailymed.nlm.nih.gov/dailymed/drugInfo.cfm?setid=c732b415-e1f9-478f-896d-1dc8b6362da4> **(March 8, 2019).**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR HERPES ZOSTER (SHINGLES) IN ADULTS LIVING WITH HIV

DEFINITION

Herpes zoster is a viral illness that usually presents as a vesicular rash, with pain and itching, in a unilateral dermatomal distribution. The duration of vesicles and crusts, as well as significant pain, is usually 2-3 weeks. Thoracic dermatomes are most frequently involved, followed by cranial nerve, cervical, lumbar, and sacral dermatomes. Involvement of the trigeminal nerve can cause infection of the eye, which may lead to blindness.

Herpes zoster is seen throughout the course of HIV infection and is particularly common in healthy-appearing individuals before the onset of other HIV-related symptoms, but frequency of disease is highest with CD4 counts less than 200 cells/mm^3 and is not reduced by antiretroviral therapy. It may be particularly painful, necrotic and hemorrhagic in persons **living with HIV**. Necrotic lesions may last for up to six weeks and cause severe scarring. Secondary bacterial infections of the skin may occur, which may be severe (e.g., necrotizing fasciitis) and require hospitalization.

Note*:* A person's lifetime risk for herpes zoster is 15% to 20%, with the highest incidence occurring in the elderly and Immunocompromised individuals. The incidence of herpes zoster is greater than 15-fold higher for adults living with HIV than for age-matched controls.

Most herpes zoster-related complications in patients **living with HIV**, including disseminated herpes zoster, occur in patients with CD4 counts less than 200 cells/mm^3. Viral dissemination may occur to the visceral organs (e.g., lungs) and the CNS. The CNS is the primary target for herpes zoster dissemination in patients co-infected with HIV. Various VZV-related neurologic syndromes may occur (e.g., CNS vasculitis, multifocal leukoencephalitis, ventriculitis, myelitis, myeloradiculitis, optic neuritis, cranial nerve palsies, focal brain-stem lesions, and aseptic meningitis).

Patients with advanced HIV infection may present with prolonged lesion formation and viral dissemination. Cutaneous dissemination can result in hundreds of vesicles outside the primary dermatome and may be difficult to distinguish from primary varicella (e.g., chickenpox). Disseminated VZV infection may appear as widespread blisters with or without an associated dermatomal eruption or may present as widespread ecthymatous ulcers or hyperkeratotic verrucous lesions. Although patients **living with HIV** may have a severely impaired immune system response, most

patients **living with HIV** with zoster do not develop life-threatening complications, and most patients have an uncomplicated clinical course.

NOTE: VZV is contagious and contact or airborne-spread from vesicle fluid may cause chickenpox in non-immune persons *(*e.g., no history of chickenpox or shingles and/or varicella seronegative). Non-immune healthcare workers, especially if pregnant or planning to become pregnant, should not take care of patients with VZV infection until all the patient's lesions are dry and crusted. Immune reconstitution following initiation of ART appears to be associated with an increased frequency of VZV reactivation (e.g., 2- to 4-fold increased risk between 4 and 16 weeks after initiating ART). The clinical presentation and natural history of VZV in the setting of immune reconstitution do not differ from those observed in other patients **living with HIV**.

ETIOLOGY

Herpes zoster is caused by reactivation of VZV (e.g., reactivation of chickenpox).

SUBJECTIVE

1. May report numbness, itching or pain in a dermatomal distribution that precedes the appearance of lesions by many days (prodrome).

2. Complains of painful and/or itching skin blisters or ulcerations along one side of the face or body.

3. May complain of:

    a. Severe pain in area after rash has healed.
    b. Disseminated skin lesions.
    c. Loss of or change in vision.
    d. Respiratory symptoms.
    e. Symptoms of encephalitis (e.g., headaches, vomiting, lethargy, ataxia, tremor and dizziness).

4. Conduct pain assessment using pain tool/scale (e.g., faces of pain or 0-10 numerical scale).

5. May report a history of:

    a. Shingles.
    b. Chickenpox.

6. Obtain a complete medication profile to determine whether there are any clinically significant drug-drug interactions with

treatment.

NOTE: Medication profiles should include over-the-counter medications, herbals, vitamins, and prescription medications (including prescribed medications from outside providers). If a release of information is available, then contact the pharmacy, if necessary, in obtaining an up to date medication list.

7. Absence of drug allergies to acyclovir, valacyclovir or famciclovir.

OBJECTIVE

1. Vesicular lesions with erythematous bases following dermatomes; may be bullous, hemorrhagic and/or necrotic.

   NOTE: Lesions in the eye area or tip of nose, along the trigeminal nerve, represent a therapeutic emergency and the patient should be evaluated immediately in the Emergency Room. **Assessment, if available, by an experienced ophthalmologist is strongly recommended.**

2. May have allodynia (e.g., pain provoked by normally innocuous stimuli) and/or sensory deficits.

3. May have dermatomal scarring and/or hypopigmentation.

4. May or may not have signs of disseminated skin or visceral disease (e.g., respiratory signs, altered mental status).

5. Review previous lab results for evidence of renal impairment.

6. Recent CD4 count (within the last **6** months).

ASSESSMENT Herpes Zoster

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

1. Swabs collected from the base of a fresh lesion can be submitted for viral culture, direct fluorescent antigen testing, or polymerase chain reaction (PCR). In addition, scabs are very good specimens for PCR testing. When submitting specimens for PCR, please consult the laboratory performing the test for sample requirements, i.e., samples sent to the CDC should be collected as advised at https://www.cdc.gov/chickenpox/hcp/lab-tests.html.

Swabs being collected for PCR testing at Georgia Public Health Laboratory, http://dph.georgia.gov/sites/dph.georgia.gov/files/related_files/site_page/LSM2013_June.docx%207.3.13.pdf should be placed in a separate empty container. Unlike swabs collected for viral culture, the swab should remain dry and should not be placed into transport media. If only one specimen can be collected, PCR is more sensitive and should be the primary
method of testing.

2. If recent results not available **(within 6 months)**, order CBC with differential **and** complete metabolic panel (assessing hepatic and renal function).

Note: If indicated, repeat CD4 count and viral load.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. If patient does not have clinical features of disseminated or visceral infection, and if lesions **are not in the eye area, tip of nose, or along the trigeminal nerve** begin treatment:

PREFERRED:

a. Valacyclovir 1 gram by mouth three times/day for 7 to 10 days.

OR

b. Famciclovir 500mg by mouth three times/day for 7 to 10 days,

ALTERNATIVE:

a. Acyclovir by mouth 800mg 5 times/day for 7 to 10 days.

NOTE: Longer duration of therapy should be considered if lesions resolve slowly.

NOTE: Treatment should begin within 72 hours of outbreak. Prompt treatment should be instituted in all immunosuppressed **patient**s with herpes zoster if

presentation occurs within 1 week of rash onset or any time before full crusting of lesions. **Valacyclovir or famciclovir** are the recommended treatment for localized dermatomal herpes zoster. Dose reductions are required for patients with renal impairment. Exercise caution when treating elderly patients who are more likely to have renal or CNS adverse reactions. Acyclovir resistant zoster has been reported in AIDS patients previously treated with acyclovir. If the patient does not respond to therapy or acyclovir resistance is known or suspected, contact the provider for other options.

2. For pain management: May instruct patient to try over-the-counter
analgesics but to avoid aspirin because of the risk of Reye syndrome.

NOTE: Postherpetic neuralgia is the most common complication of herpes zoster causing persistent pain in the area of where the previous rash resolved. Postherpetic neuralgia can last for weeks or months and occasionally, for many years. Risk of postherpetic neuralgia increases with age and older adults are more likely to have longer lasting and more severe pain. Postherpetic neuralgia is rare in individuals younger than 40 years old, but approximately 13% (and possibly more) of people 60 years of age and older with herpes zoster will get postherpetic neuralgia. Other predictors of postherpetic neuralgia include the level of pain a person has when they have the rash and the size of their rash. Patients diagnosed with postherpetic neuralgia may require prescription medications (e.g., Nortriptyline, Gabapentin, Pregabalin, Lidocaine 5% patches, Capsaicin cream or Sustained-release opiates), and should be referred to the prescribing provider if additional pain management is indicated.

For patients with uncomplicated zoster, there is no role for adjuvant agents, such as gabapentin, tricyclic antidepressants, or glucocorticoids, in the acute setting. As an example, there are no definitive data to suggest that tricyclic antidepressants in patients with herpes zoster prevent postherpetic neuralgia from developing, and the risk of adverse events with tricyclic antidepressants is increased in elderly patients.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Bathe skin lesions in mild soap and water. Avoid deodorant astringent soaps. Use a separate cloth for bathing affected area to avoid dissemination. Pat skin dry without rubbing it.

2. Warm saline wet-to-dry dressing can be applied 2-3 times/day to necrotic tissue and lesions gently debrided. Lesions should be kept clean and dry as much as possible.

3. Antibiotic ointments may be applied to aid in the prevention of secondary infection and to keep dressings from sticking.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Inform patient that VZV is contagious, and contact or airborne spread from vesicle fluid may cause chickenpox in non-immune persons *(*e.g., no history of chickenpox or shingles). Patient should avoid exposing non-immune persons to VZV. If a non-immune person, especially a pregnant woman, some infants or immunocompromised individual, has been exposed, he/she should seek medical care as soon as possible (within 96 hours after exposure) to receive prophylactic assessment and treatment (e.g., VariZIG, vaccine, etc.). Refer to theGA-DPH STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR CHILDHOOD AND ADULT IMMUNIZATIONS.

Review current drug regimen, including drug storage, dose, route of administration, schedule, side effects, drug interactions and follow-up monitoring.

3. Instruct patient to report adverse drug reactions or side effects to his/her provider.

4. Instruct patient to report signs/symptoms of disseminated disease, secondary infections (e.g., fever, worsening skin lesions), and facial lesions, especially near eye or on tip of nose or recurrence of lesions to provider. Delays in assessment should be minimized and the patient should be instructed to present to the local Emergency Room for any severe symptoms or inability in reaching the clinic for recommendations.

5. Explain that pain may continue even after skin lesions heal and patient should inform provider of continued pain.

6. Explain that recurrences may occur, and to notify his/her provider.

7. Ask female patient to inform her provider if she is or is planning to become pregnant.

FOLLOW-UP

As needed, until lesions heal.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Patients presenting with lesions on the face, tip of nose, near the eye, or complaints of visual disturbances should be evaluated immediately in the Emergency Room, as this represents a therapeutic emergency. Delays in evaluation should be minimized and the patient should be assessed the same day.

2. Refer all patients with severe, disseminated or visceral infection, or renal impairment/failure to delegating physician. Delays in evaluation should be minimized in patients with severe disease and the patient should be assessed the same day with referral to the Emergency Room if necessary.

3. **Consult delegating physician if longer duration of therapy is being considered due to slowly resolving lesions.**

4. Consult delegating physician regarding appropriate pain management.

5. Consult delegating physician if signs/symptoms of secondary infection are present.

6. Refer pregnant patients to delegating physician.

7. Consult delegating physician for:

    a. Abnormal lab results.
    b. Medication side effects and/or adverse events.

8. Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is **needed,** and HIV/AIDS nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

REFERENCES

1. **American Chronic Pain Association, "Ability Chart", 2012, <http://www.theacpa.org/wp-content/uploads/2017/08/ACPA-AbilityChart.pdf> (March 15, 2019).**

2. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, "Shingles (Herpes Zoster)," **October 17, 2017** <https://www.cdc.gov/shingles/hcp/clinical-overview.html> **(March 15, 2019).**

3. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, "Chickenpox (Varicella): Interpreting Laboratory Tests," **December 31, 2018** <https://www.cdc.gov/chickenpox/hcp/lab-tests.html> **(March 15, 2019).**

4. Columbia University Department of Neurological Surgery, "About Postherpetic Neuralgia,", **2019**, <http://www.columbianeurosurgery.org/conditions/postherpetic-neuralgia/> **(March 15, 2019).**

5. Kim Erlich, University of California San Francisco, HIVInSite, "Varicella Zoster Virus and HIV," November 2011, <http://hivinsite.ucsf.edu/InSite?page=kb-05-03-01#S1X> **(March 15, 2019).**

6. Georgia Department of Public Health, "Georgia Public Health Laboratory Service Manual," *Georgia Public Health Laboratory,* 2013 <http://dph.georgia.gov/sites/dph.georgia.gov/files/related_files/site_page/LSM2013_June.docx%207.3.13.pdf> **(March 15, 2019).**

7. Medscape, "Pain Assessment," WebMD, LLC, **September 27, 2018**, <http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/1948069-overview> **(March 15, 2019**).

8. **Pacific AIDS Education and Training Center, "HIV Essentials and Quick Clinical Guides", November 2018, < http://paetc.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/12/PAETC_HIVEssentialsAndQuickClinicalGuides.pdf > (March 7, 2019).**

9. Panel on Opportunistic Infections in HIV-Infected Adults and Adolescents. "Guidelines for the prevention and treatment of opportunistic infections in HIV-infected adults and adolescents: recommendations from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, the National Institutes of Health, and the HIV Medicine Association of the Infectious Diseases Society of America," <http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/contentfiles/lvguidelines/adult_oi.pdf> **(March 7, 2019).**

10. **U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, AIDSinfo, "Guidelines for the Prevention and Treatment of Opportunistic Infections in the HIV-Infected Adults and Adolescents", July 25, 2017,**

<https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/4/adult-and-adolescent-opportunistic-infection/341/vzv > (March 15, 2019).

11. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, “Table 3. Laboratory Testing Schedule for Monitoring HIV-Infected Patients Before and After Initiation of Antiretroviral Therapy,” AIDSinfo Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in HIV-1-Infected Adults and Adolescents Laboratory Testing for Initial Assessment and Monitoring of HIV-Infected Patients on Antiretroviral Therapy, **October 25, 2018**, <https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/1/adult-and-adolescent-arv-guidelines/3/tests-for-initial-assessment-and-follow-up> **(March 7, 2019).**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR NEW ONSET (ACUTE) DIARRHEA IN ADULTS LIVING WITH HIV

DEFINITION

Acute diarrhea is a change in normal bowel movements characterized by abrupt or gradual onset of frequent (more than 3-4 per day) loose stools for more than 3 days and less than 14 days. Large volume of stools with periumbilical pain usually indicates small bowel disease. Small volume, frequent stools, which may be associated with urgency, tenesmus, lower abdominal cramps or perianal pain, are usually associated with colonic and/or anorectal disease.

ETIOLOGY

There are many possible causes of acute diarrhea ranging from medication side effects to infections and non-infectious etiologies.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Assess pattern of diarrhea: onset, duration amount, frequency, and appearance (e.g., foul-smelling, frothy, black, watery, visible blood, pus, mucus).

2. Assess whether diarrhea is interfering with activities of daily living.

3. May or may not be accompanied by one or more of the following:

    a. Fever.
    b. Abdominal pain/cramping.
    c. Nausea and/or vomiting.
    d. Bloating.
    e. Urgency.
    f. Tenesmus (i.e., anal pain and spasms that may include the urge to defecate without being able to pass stool).
    g. Perianal pain and/or sores.
    h. Recent involuntary weight loss.
    i. Difficulty urinating.

4. May or may not have symptoms of dehydration (e.g., thirst, decrease in urine output, dark-colored urine, dry skin and mucous membranes, fatigue, light-headedness, and rapid heartbeat).

5. May or may not report a history of the following:

    a. Taking medications, which may cause diarrhea (e.g., protease inhibitors, cobicistat, laxative use/abuse).

b. Antibiotics taken within the last 6-8 weeks.
c. Recent hospitalization.
d. Recent travel to a foreign and/or developing country or camping trip.
e. Exposure to potentially contaminated food or water (e.g.,
f. ingestion of raw meat, eggs, or shellfish, lake or stream or well water, or recalled food products).
g. Recent herbal or alternative therapies.
h. Exposure to a pet or another animal with diarrhea.
i. Exposure to a coworker or family member with similar illness.
j. Recent receptive anal sex and/or oral-anal sexual contact and/or sexually transmitted disease.
k. Working in daycare, healthcare, or food industry.
l. Food intolerance (e.g., lactose intolerance).
m. Irritable bowel syndrome or inflammatory bowel disease.
n. Anxiety disorders, panic attacks, or new emotional stress.
o. Eating disorder.
p. Alcohol or other recreational drug use.

6. Obtain a complete medication profile to determine whether there are any clinically significant drug-drug interactions with treatment.

NOTE: Medication profiles should include: over-the-counter medications, herbals, vitamins, and prescription medications (including prescribed medications from outside providers). If a release of information is available, then contact the pharmacy, if necessary, in obtaining an up to date medication list.

OBJECTIVE

1. May or may not have fever and/or recent weight loss.

2. May or may not have signs of dehydration (e.g., orthostatic hypotension (a decline in systolic BP greater than 20 mm Hg with supine to standing and/or increase in heart rate greater than 20 beats/min.), tachycardia, dry mucous membranes, poor skin turgor, and lethargy).

3. May or may not have hyperactive or hypoactive bowel sounds, abdominal tenderness or distention, organomegaly, perianal lesions or tissue breakdown, or heme-positive stools.

4. Recent CD4 count (within last **6** months).

5. If stool samples previously collected during current

symptoms, are negative for *C. difficile, Salmonella, Shigella* or *Campylobacter*.

ASSESSMENT New onset (acute) diarrhea

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

1. If recent results not available (**within 6 months)**, order CBC with differential **and** comprehensive metabolic panel (assessing renal and hepatic function).

NOTE: If indicated, repeat CD4 count and viral load.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

If patient is afebrile and without bloody stools and/or abdominal pain, and diarrhea is concomitant with starting of antiretroviral agents (e.g., protease inhibitors or cobicistat), may order:

1. Calcium 500mg tablets by mouth two times/day for 7 days,

AND/OR

2. Loperamide hydrochloride (HCL) 4mg by mouth initially, followed by 2mg by mouth after each loose stool until symptoms are controlled; to a maximum of 16mg/day for 7 days.

NOTE: Antidiarrheal agents should not be used in cases of bloody diarrhea or in patient's that are highly suspect for *C. difficile*-related, *Salmonella, Shigella* or *Campylobacter* diarrhea. In patients taking atazanavir or tipranavir, avoid simultaneous administration of antacids (e.g., Tums (calcium carbonate)); give atazanavir or tipranavir **at least** 2 hours before or 1 hour after these medications. **For Rilpivirine, give antacids at least 2 hours before or at least 4 hours after Rilpivirine. For integrase inhibitors and**

Antacids Containing Al/Mg or Ca:

- **Bictegravir can be taken under fasting conditions at least 2 hours before antacids containing Al/Mg or Ca.**
  - **Do not co-administer Bictegravir simultaneously with, or 2 hours after, antacids containing Al/Mg or Ca.**

- **Give Dolutegravir at least 2 hours before or at least 6 hours after antacids containing polyvalent cations.**
- **Separate EVG/c/TDF/FTC and antacid administration by more than 2 hours.**
- **Do not co-administer Raltegravir (RAL) and Al-Mg hydroxide antacids. Use alternative acid reducing agent.**
    - **With CaCO3 Antacids:**
        - **RAL 1200 mg once daily: Do not co-administer.**
        - **RAL 400 mg BID: No dose adjustment or separation necessary.**

NOTE: Loperamide HCL is not a controlled substance. Potential abuse and dependence are possible, primarily being misused for relief from opioid withdrawal, and abused by a few users who obtain some (reportedly mild-moderate) level of euphoria. Cases of Torsades de Pointes, cardiac arrest, and death have been reported with the use of a higher than recommended dosages.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Adjust diet and fluid intake to decrease diarrhea and maintain adequate hydration and electrolyte levels (see below in patient education/counseling).

   If history of lactose intolerance, avoid dairy products or take **L**actaid pills before ingesting dairy products.

   NOTE: Diarrheal disease can produce temporary malabsorption or lactose intolerance.

   NOTE: If allergic to milk or dairy products or sensitive to lactose, avoid using Lactobacillus products. Cases of severe infections with Lactobacillus have been reported in patients with late stage AIDS.

2. If diarrhea is associated with recent antibiotic therapy the normal bacterial flora of the intestinal tract may be disrupted and may self-resolve after discontinuation of antibiotics. The effectiveness and safety of probiotics in patients **living with HIV** with diarrheal illness has not been adequately studied.

3. Current HIV/AIDS care guidelines recommend a bland diet, with avoidance of fat, dairy and complex carbohydrates.

4. Discontinue any newly started herbal or alternative therapy.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Instruct patient to maintain hydration and electrolyte levels by ingesting ½-strength Gatorade, broth, soups, ½-strength fruit juices.

   NOTE: Formulas for inexpensive oral rehydration solutions include:

   a. Combine ½ teaspoon of salt, 1 teaspoon of baking soda, 8 teaspoons of sugar, and 8 ounces of orange juice; add water to make 1 liter and drink.
   b. Drink 1 glass containing 8 ounces of apple, orange, or other juice, ½ teaspoon of corn syrup or honey; and a pinch of salt; then drink 1 glass containing 8 ounces of water and ¼ teaspoon of baking soda.
   c. Mix ½ cup of dry, precooked baby rice cereal with 2 cups of water (boil first in areas of poor water quality); add ¼ teaspoon of salt and drink.

2. Instruct patient to avoid foods that tend to aggravate diarrhea, including milk/dairy products, and foods that are greasy, high-fiber or very sweet. Also, avoid products that contain alcohol or caffeine.

3. Encourage patient to eat small meals every 2-3 hours. Gradually add soft, bland foods to diet, including bananas, plain rice, boiled
potatoes, toast, crackers, cooked carrots, and skinless baked chicken.

4. Instruct patient to keep perianal area clean and dry. May use sitz baths and perineal hygiene cleaners and skin-protection ointments to maintain skin integrity.

5. Inform patient given calcium or loperamide HCL that he/she should experience improvement of symptoms within a few days. If symptoms do not improve within 2-3 days or if symptoms worsen, contact provider immediately. If constipation occurs, reduce doses or discontinue calcium and/or loperamide.

   NOTE: **Instruct patients taking antacids (e.g., Tums (calcium carbonate) to follow instructions as noted**

above. Instruct patients taking atazanavir or tipranavir to avoid simultaneous administration of antacids (e.g., Tums (calcium carbonate)); take atazanavir or tipranavir **at least** 2 hours before or 1 hour after antacids.

6. Stress the importance of not stopping antiretroviral therapy or other medications unless he/she has consulted with his/her provider first.

7. If suspect infectious diarrhea, instruct patient to not work as a food handler or return to work, i.e. daycare center, healthcare worker,
until diarrhea is controlled. Stress importance of hand washing. Patient should contact, if available, their occupational health department concerning work policy on diarrheal illnesses.

8. Instruct patient on ways to prevent diarrhea in the future, including: drinking bottled or purified water, using proper food handling and cooking techniques, avoiding recalled food products, and performing proper hand-washing techniques.

FOLLOW-UP

Return appointment as needed with provider if symptoms have not improved/resolved.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Refer patient immediately to the delegating physician or direct to the closest emergency room for severe symptoms for any of the following (patient may require hospitalization):

    a. Fever over 101 degrees Fahrenheit.
    b. Blood in the stool.
    c. Signs and symptoms of dehydration.
    d. Profuse diarrhea.
    e. CD4 counts less than100 cells/mm^3.
    f. Abdominal pain and/or distention.
    g. Perianal pain and/or lesions.
    h. Recent involuntary weight loss of 3-5 lbs. or more.
    i. Difficulty urinating.
    j. Suspect infectious agent causing diarrhea.
    k. Suspect laxative abuse.

2. Refer patient to delegating physician for immediate consultation, if patient's CD4 count is between 100 and 200 cells/mm^3.

3. Consult with delegating physician to discontinue and/or change medications that may be causing diarrhea.

4. Refer to mental health provider if patient has new emotional stress, history of eating disorder/laxative abuse, anxiety disorder or panic attacks.

5. May refer to dietitian/nutritionist for further dietary recommendations.

6. Consult delegating physician concerning patients who have persistent diarrhea for greater than 7 days despite taking antidiarrheal agents.

7. Consult delegating physician for:

   a. Abnormal lab results.
   b. Medication side effects and/or adverse events.

8. Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed, and HIV/AIDS nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

REFERENCES

1. Oskar Adolfsson, et al., "Yogurt and Gut Function," *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition,* Vol. 80, 2004, pp. 245-256. (Current).

2. Department of Health and Human Services Panel on Antiretroviral Guidelines for Adults and Adolescents, "Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in Adults and Adolescents Living with HIV," **October 25, 2018**, <http://www.aidsinfo.nih.gov/contentfiles/adultandadolescentgl.pdf**> (March 7, 2019).**

3. Drugs.com, "Drug Interactions Checker," **February 28, 2018,** <https://www.drugs.com/drug_interactions.php> **(March 7, 2019).**

4. Louise Gagnon, "Medscape Medical News," *Community-Associated Clostridium difficile Increasing, Often Not Linked to Antimicrobial Use*, October 17, 2006, <http://www.medscape.com/viewarticle/546189> **(April 3, 2019).**

5. Richard L. Guerrant, et al., "Practice Guidelines for the Management of Infectious Diarrhea," *Clinical Infectious Diseases*, Vol. 32, No. 3, February 1, 2001, pp. 331-351, (Current).

6. Carrie A. Horwitch, et al., "Lactobacillemia in Three Patients with AIDS," *Clinical Infectious Diseases*, Vol. 21, No. 6, December 1, 1995, pp. 1460-1462. (Current).

7. Johnson & Johnson Consumer Inc., McNeil Consumer Healthcare Division, IMODIUM CAPSULES Rx, October 2016, <https://www.accessdata.fda.gov/drugsatfda_docs/label/2016/017694s052lbl.pdf> (April **3**, 201**9**).

8. Ed J. Kuijper and Jaap T. van Dissel, "Commentary: Spectrum of *Clostridium difficile* Infections Outside Health Care Facilities," *Canadian Medical Association Journal*, Vol. 179, No. 8, October 7, 2008, pp. 747-748. (Current).

9. Jeffrey B. Lanier, et al., "Evaluation and Management of Orthostatic Hypotension," *American Family Physician*, Vol. 84, No. 5, September 1, 2011, pp. 528-536. (Current).

10. D. Ledoux, et al., "Lactobacillus acidophilus Bacteraemia After Use of a Probiotic in a Patient with AIDS and Hodgkin's Disease," *International Journal of STD and AIDS*, Vol. 17, No. 4, April 17, 2006, pp. 280-282. (Current).

11. **Pacific AIDS Education and Training Center, "HIV Essentials and Quick Clinical Guides", November 2018, < http://paetc.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/12/PAETC_HIVEssentialsAndQuickClinicalGuides.pdf**

> (March 7, 2019).

12. Panel on Opportunistic Infections in HIV-Infected Adults and Adolescents. "Guidelines for the prevention and treatment of opportunistic infections in HIV-infected adults and adolescents: recommendations from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, the National Institutes of Health, and the HIV Medicine Association of the Infectious Diseases Society of America," **March 28, 2019,** <http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/contentfiles/lvguidelines/adult_oi.pdf> **(April** 3, 201**9**).

13. Fabrizio Ricci, et al., "Orthostatic Hypotension," *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, Vol. 66, No. 7, August 18, 2015, pp. 848-860.

14. **Michael J. A. Reid and Phyllis C. Tien. Emergency Management of Infectious Diseases. "Table 27.1 Small Versus Large Bowel Diarrhea Symptoms Common Pathogens," Google Books, 2018, pp. 180-182. https://books.google.com/books?hl=en&lr=&id=XeRfDwAAQBAJ&oi=fnd&pg=PA181&dq=diarrhea in HIV-infected patients MJAReid&ots=AqFDEtazO2&sig=6NvnVuarKETkHBkav42fZlNSgRc#v=onepage&q&f=false> (February 2019).**

15. Mark S. Riddle, et al., "ACG Clinical Guidelines: Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention of Acute Diarrheal Infections in Adults," *American Journal of Gastroenterology*, Vol. 111, May 2016, pp. 602-622.

16. Barbara Swanson (ed.), *ANAC's Core Curriculum for HIV/AIDS Nursing,* 3rd ed., Jones and Bartlett Publishers, Sudbury, Massachusetts, 2010, "Diarrhea," pp. 170-172. (Current).

17. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Food and Drug Administration, "Food Safety for People with HIV/AIDS," **March 12, 2019**, <https://www.fda.gov/Food/FoodborneIllnessContaminants/PeopleAtRisk/ucm312669.htm> (**April 3, 2019**).

18. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, "Table 3. Laboratory Testing Schedule for Monitoring HIV-Infected Patients Before and After Initiation of Antiretroviral Therapy," *AIDSinfo Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in HIV-1-Infected Adults and Adolescents Laboratory Testing for Initial Assessment and Monitoring of HIV-Infected Patients on Antiretroviral Therapy*, **October 25, 2018**, <https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/1/adult-and-adolescent-arv-guidelines/3/tests-for-initial-assessment-and-follow-up> **(March 7, 2019).**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PERSISTENT (CHRONIC) DIARRHEA IN ADULTS LIVING WITH HIV

DEFINITION Chronic diarrhea is a change in normal bowel movements characterized by frequent (more than 3-4 per day) loose stools for more than 2 weeks. Large volume of stools with periumbilical pain usually indicates small bowel disease. Small volume, frequent stools, which may be associated with urgency, tenesmus, lower abdominal cramps or perianal pain, are usually associated with colonic and/or anorectal disease.

ETIOLOGY Chronic diarrhea in adults **living with HIV** is often related to an enteric pathogen or medications. However, in some patients no cause is identified.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Assess pattern of diarrhea: onset, duration amount, frequency, appearance (e.g., foul-smelling, frothy, black, watery, visible blood, pus, mucus).

2. Assess whether diarrhea is interfering with activities of daily living.

3. May or may not be accompanied by one or more of the following:

    a. Fever.
    b. Abdominal pain/cramping.
    c. Nausea and/or vomiting.
    d. Bloating.
    e. Urgency.
    f. Tenesmus (i.e., anal pain and spasms that may include the urge to defecate without being able to pass stool).
    g. Perianal pain and/or sores.
    h. Involuntary weight loss.
    i. Difficulty urinating.

4. May or may not have symptoms of dehydration (e.g., thirst, decrease in urine output, dark-colored urine, dry skin and mucous membranes, fatigue, light-headedness, and rapid heartbeat).

5. May or may not report a history of the following:

    a. Taking medications which may cause diarrhea (e.g., protease inhibitors, cobicistat, laxative use/abuse).

b. Antibiotics taken within the last 6-8 weeks.
c. Recent hospitalization.
d. Recent travel to a foreign and/or developing country or camping trip.
e. Exposure to potentially-contaminated food or water (e.g., ingestion of raw meat, eggs, or shellfish, lake or stream or well water or recalled food products).
f. Recent herbal or alternative therapies.
g. Exposure to a pet or another animal with diarrhea.
h. Exposure to a coworker or family member with similar illness.
i. Recent receptive anal sex and/or oral-anal sexual contact and/or sexually transmitted disease.
j. Working in daycare, healthcare, or food industry.
k. Food intolerance (e.g., lactose intolerance).
l. Irritable bowel syndrome or inflammatory bowel disease.
m. Anxiety disorders, panic attacks, or new emotional stress.
n. Eating disorder.
o. Alcohol or other recreational drug use.

6. Obtain a complete medication profile to determine whether there are any clinically significant drug-drug interactions with treatment.

NOTE: Medication profiles should include over-the-counter medications, herbals, vitamins, and prescription medications (including prescribed medications from outside providers). If a release of information is available, then contact the pharmacy, if necessary, in obtaining an up to date medication list.

OBJECTIVE

1. May or may not have fever and/or weight loss.

2. May or may not have signs of dehydration, (e.g., orthostatic hypotension (a decline in systolic BP greater than 20 mm Hg with supine to standing and/or increase in heart rate greater than 20 beats/min.), tachycardia, dry mucous membranes, poor skin turgor, and lethargy).

3. May or may not have hyperactive or hypoactive bowel sounds, abdominal tenderness or distention, organomegaly, perianal lesions or tissue breakdown, heme-positive stools.

4. Recent CD4 count (within last **6** months).

5. If stool samples previously collected during current symptoms, are negative **(e.g., C. difficile, Salmonella, Shigella, Campylobacter, etc.***)*

ASSESSMENT Persistent (chronic) diarrhea

PLAN DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. If recent results not available **(within the last 6 months)**, order CBC with differential **and** comprehensive metabolic panel (assessing renal and hepatic function).

2. C. difficile (CD): Only test patients who are clinically likely to have CD infection. These are patients who have 3 or more unformed, diarrheal stools (those that take the shape of the container) in a 24-hour period without an underlying condition (inflammatory colitis, constipation with overflow diarrhea) or therapy (stool softeners/laxatives, chemotherapy, enteral feeding, oral contrast).

a. Nucleic amplification assay test (NAAT) in conjunction with clinical symptoms consistent with CD infection.

OR

b. Two-step testing: enzyme immunoassay (EIA) EIA for glutamate dehydrogenase (GDH) or NAAT to screen samples, followed by EIA toxin A/B if the screening test is positive.

OR

c. Three-step testing: EIA for GDH and toxins A and B, followed by NAAT for discrepant results.

NOTE: Non-recommended laboratory test: EIA toxin A/B as a stand-alone test due to low sensitivity. Repeat testing during the same episode of diarrhea, particularly when a nucleic acid amplification test (NAAT) such as polymerase chain reaction (PCR) is used is not necessary. Do not perform test of cure as the assay may be positive after clinical cure.

NOTE: Recent studies indicate that community-associated

clostridium difficile is increasing and may not be linked to recent antibiotic use. Some studies identified a possible link with proton pump inhibitor therapy.

3. Stool for:

    a. Bacterial culture (if negative repeat x 1-2).
    b. Mycobacterial culture if CD4 count less than 100/mm^3.
    c. AFB smear (if negative repeat x 1-2) if CD4 count less than 100/mm^3.
    d. Ova and Parasites (O&P) examination for intestinal parasites (repeat specimen collection for 3 consecutive days)

PLUS

    1) Modified acid-fast stain for *Cryptosporidia*, *Cyclospora*, *Isospora.*
    2) Chromotrope or other stains for Microsporidia.

    e. *Giardia* antigen detection by direct Immunofluorescence or by enzyme-linked immunoassay (EIA).

4. May order direct Immunofluorescence or enzyme-linked immunoassay (EIA) for detection of *Cryptosporidia* antigens.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

If patient is afebrile and without bloody stools and/or abdominal pain; and/or patient is taking antiretroviral agents (e.g., protease inhibitors, cobicistat) or other medications (e.g., laxative use/abuse), which may cause diarrhea, may order:

1. Calcium 500mg tablets by mouth two times/day for 10 days,

AND/OR

2. Loperamide hydrochloride (HCL) 4mg by mouth initially, followed by 2mg by mouth after each loose stool until symptoms are controlled; to a maximum of 16mg/day for 10

days,

AND/OR

3. Stool Bulking Agents

   a. Psyllium powder, 1 teaspoon (e.g., Metamucil®) mixed in 2/3 of fluid required on package instructions by mouth daily or two times/day for 10 days,

   OR

   b. Psyllium fiber wafers, 2 wafers by mouth daily or two times/day for 10 days,

   OR

   c. Oat bran tablets 1500mg by mouth two times/day for 10 days.

NOTE: Antidiarrheal agents should not be used in cases of bloody diarrhea or in patient's that are highly suspect for *C. difficile*-related, *Salmonella, Shigella* or *Campylobacter* diarrhea. **In patients taking atazanavir or tipranavir, avoid simultaneous administration of antacids (e.g., Tums (calcium carbonate)); give atazanavir or tipranavir at least 2 hours before or 1 hour after these medications.**

For Rilpivirine, give antacids at least 2 hours before or at least 4 hours after Rilpivirine. For integrase inhibitors and
Antacids Containing Al/Mg or Ca:

- **Bictegravir can be taken under fasting conditions at least 2 hours before antacids containing Al/Mg or Ca.**
  - **Do not co-administer Bictegravir simultaneously with, or 2 hours after, antacids containing Al/Mg or Ca.**
- **Give Dolutegravir at least 2 hours before or at least 6 hours after antacids containing polyvalent cations.**
- **Separate EVG/c/TDF/FTC and antacid administration by more than 2 hours.**
- **Do not co-administer RAL and Al-Mg hydroxide antacids. Use alternative acid reducing agent.**

- **With CaCO3 Antacids:**
  - **RAL 1200 mg once daily: Do not co-administer.**
  - **RAL 400 mg BID: No dose adjustment or separation necessary.**

Psyllium should be taken at least 2-3 hours before or after other drugs because it can decrease effects of certain drugs. In patients taking atazanavir or tipranavir, avoid simultaneous administration of antacids (e.g., Tums (calcium carbonate)); give atazanavir or tipranavir **at least** 2 hours before or 1 hour after these medications.

NOTE: Loperamide HCL is not a controlled substance. Potential abuse and dependence are possible, primarily being misused for relief from opioid withdrawal, and abused by a few users who obtain some (reportedly mild-moderate) level of euphoria. Cases of Torsades de Pointes, cardiac arrest, and death have been reported with the use of a higher than recommended dosages.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Adjust diet and fluid intake to decrease diarrhea and maintain adequate hydration and electrolyte levels (see below in patient education/counseling).

2. If history of lactose intolerance, avoid dairy products or take Lactaid pills before ingesting dairy products.

   NOTE: Diarrheal disease can produce temporary malabsorption or lactose intolerance.

   NOTE: If allergic to milk or dairy products or sensitive to lactose, avoid using Lactobacillus products. Cases of severe infections with Lactobacillus have been reported in patients with late stage AIDS.

3. Discontinue any newly started herbal or alternative therapy.

4. If diarrhea is associated with recent antibiotic therapy, the normal bacterial flora of the intestinal tract may be disrupted and may self-resolve after discontinuation of antibiotics. The effectiveness and safety of probiotics in patients **living with**

HIV with diarrheal illness has not been adequately studied. Current HIV/AIDS care guidelines recommend a bland diet, with avoidance of fat, dairy and complex carbohydrates.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Instruct patient to maintain hydration and electrolyte levels by ingesting ½-strength Gatorade, broth, soups, ½-strength fruit juices.

   NOTE: Formulas for inexpensive oral rehydration solutions include:

   a. Combine ½ teaspoon of salt, 1 teaspoon of baking soda, 8 teaspoons of sugar, and 8 ounces of orange juice; add water to make 1 liter and drink.
   b. Drink 1 glass containing 8 ounces of apple, orange, or other juice, ½ teaspoon of corn syrup or honey; and a pinch of salt; then drink 1 glass containing 8 ounces of water and ¼ teaspoon of baking soda.
   c. Mix ½ cup of dry, precooked baby rice cereal with 2 cups of water (boil first in areas of poor water quality); add ¼ teaspoon of salt and drink.

2. Instruct patient to avoid foods that tend to aggravate diarrhea, including milk/dairy products, and foods that are greasy, high-fiber
   or very sweet. Also, avoid products that contain alcohol or caffeine.

3. Encourage patient to eat small meals every two-three hours. Gradually add soft, bland foods to diet, including bananas, plain rice, boiled potatoes, toast, crackers, cooked carrots, and skinless baked chicken.

4. Instruct patient to keep perianal area clean and dry. Patient may use sitz baths, perineal hygiene cleaners, and skin-protection ointments to maintain skin integrity.

5. Inform patient given calcium or loperamide HCL that he/she should experience improvement of symptoms within a few days. If symptoms do not improve within 2-3 days or if symptoms worsen, contact provider. Upon resolution of symptoms or if constipation occurs, discontinue calcium and/or loperamide. Stool

bulking agents may be continued or discontinued per manufacturer's recommendations.

NOTE: **Instruct patients taking antacids (e.g., Tums (calcium carbonate); to follow instructions as noted above.** Instruct patients taking atazanavir or tipranavir to avoid simultaneous administration of antacids (e.g., Tums (calcium carbonate)); take atazanavir or tipranavir **at least** 2 hours before or 1 hour after antacids.

6. Instruct patient to notify provider if symptoms worsen or do not improve.

7. Stress the importance of not stopping antiretroviral or other medications unless he/she has consulted with his/her provider first.

8. If suspect infectious diarrhea, instruct patient to not work as a food handler or return to work, i.e. daycare center, healthcare worker, until diarrhea is controlled. Stress importance of hand washing. Patient should contact, if available, their occupational health department concerning work policy on diarrheal illnesses.

9. Instruct patient on ways to prevent diarrhea in the future, including drinking bottled or purified water, using proper food handling and cooking techniques, avoiding recalled food products, and performing proper hand-washing techniques.

10. Inform patients who have well water or private water sources to consider testing water source by obtaining test kit and instructions from local Environmental Health office

FOLLOW-UP

Return appointment with provider as needed, if symptoms have not improved or do not resolve.

CONSULTATION/REFFERAL

1. Refer patient immediately to the delegating physician or direct them to the closest emergency room for severe symptoms for the following (patient may require hospitalization):

    a. Fever over 101 degrees Fahrenheit.

b. Blood in the stool.
c. Signs and symptoms of dehydration.
d. CD4 counts less than100 cells/mm^3.
e. Abdominal pain and/or distention.
f. Perianal pain and/or lesions.
g. Involuntary weight loss of over 5 lbs.
h. Difficulty urinating.
i. Suspect infectious agent causing diarrhea.
j. Suspect laxative abuse.

2. Refer patient to delegating physician for immediate consultation, if patient's CD4 count is between 100 and 200 cells/mm^3.

3. Consult delegating physician to discontinue and/or change medications that may be causing diarrhea.

4. Consult delegating physician of stool studies and lab results. If specific etiology revealed, refer to provider for treatment.

5. If stool studies are negative and symptoms continue, **refer to** delegating physician for further testing (e.g., endoscopy, sigmoidoscopy, or colonoscopy).

6. Refer to mental health provider if patient has new emotional stress, history of eating disorder/laxative abuse, anxiety disorder or panic attacks.

7. May refer to dietitian/nutritionist for further dietary recommendations.

8. If antidiarrheal treatment was ordered and did not improve or resolve diarrhea, consult delegating physician.

9. Consult delegating physician for:

   a. Abnormal lab results.
   b. Medication side effects and/or adverse events.

10. **Consult** delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed, and HIV/AIDS nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

REFERENCES

1. Oskar Adolfsson, et al., “Yogurt and Gut Function,” American Journal of Clinical Nutrition, Vol. 80, 2004, pp. 245-256. (Current).

2. **Rachel Chin et al., Emergency Management of Infectious Diseases, Cambridge University Press, San Francisco, California, 2018, p. 181, Table 27.1 & 27.2, <https://books.google.com/books?hl=en&lr=&id=XeRfDwAAQBAJ&oi=fnd&pg=PA181&dq=diarrhea+in+hiv-infected+patients+MJA+Reid&ots=AqFDEtazO2&sig=6NvnVuarKETkHBkav42fZlNSgRc#v=onepage&q&f=false> (March 8, 2019).**

3. R. Cunningham, “Is Over-use of Proton Pump Inhibitors Fueling the Current Epidemic of Clostridium difficile-associated Diarrhoea?” Journal of Hospital Infection, Vol. 70, No. 1, September 1, 2008, pp. 1-6. (Current).

4. Drugs.com, “Drug Index A to Z,” **February 28, 2019**, <https://www.drugs.com/drug_information.html> **(March 8, 2019**).

5. Richard L. Guerrant, et al., “Practice Guidelines for the Management of Infectious Diarrhea,” Clinical Infectious Diseases, Vol. 32, No. 3, February 1, 2001, pp. 331-351, (Current).

6. Carrie A. Horwitch, et al., “Lactobacillemia in Three Patients with AIDS,” Clinical Infectious Diseases, Vol. 21, No. 6, December 1, 1995, pp. 1460-1462. (Current).

7. Johnson & Johnson Consumer Inc., McNeil Consumer Healthcare Division, IMODIUM CAPSULES Rx, October 2016, <https://www.accessdata.fda.gov/drugsatfda_docs/label/2016/017694s052lbl.pdf **(March 8, 2019).**

8. Jeffrey B. Lanier, et al., “Evaluation and Management of Orthostatic Hypotension,” *American Family Physician*, Vol. 84, No. 5, September 1, 2011, pp. 528-536. (Current).

9. D. Ledoux, et al., “Lactobacillus acidophilus Bacteraemia After Use of a Probiotic in a Patient with AIDS and Hodgkin’s Disease,” *International Journal of STD and AIDS*, Vol. 17, No. 4, April 17, 2006, pp. 280-282. (Current).

10. Emily G. McDonald, et al., “Continuous Proton Pump Inhibitor Therapy and the Associated Risk of Recurrent Clostridium difficile Infection,” *JAMA Internal Medicine,* Vol. 172, No. 5, May 2015, pp. 784-791.

11. Panel on Opportunistic Infections in HIV-Infected Adults and Adolescents. "Guidelines for the prevention and treatment of opportunistic infections in HIV-infected adults and adolescents: recommendations from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, the National Institutes of Health, and the HIV Medicine Association of the Infectious Diseases Society of America," <http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/contentfiles/lvguidelines/adult_oi.pdf> **(March 7, 2019**).

12. Fabrizio Ricci, et al., "Orthostatic Hypotension," *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, Vol. 66, No. 7, August 18, 2015, pp. 848-860.

13. Mark S. Riddle, et al., "ACG Clinical Guidelines: Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention of Acute Diarrheal Infections in Adults," *American Journal of Gastroenterology*, Vol. 111, May 2016, pp. 602-622.

14. Barbara Swanson (ed.), *ANAC's Core Curriculum for HIV/AIDS Nursing,* 3rd ed., Jones and Bartlett Publishers, Sudbury, Massachusetts, 2010, "Diarrhea," pp. 170-172. (Current).

15. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Food and Drug Administration, "Food Safety for People with HIV/AIDS," **June 22, 2018**, <https://www.fda.gov/Food/FoodborneIllnessContaminants/PeopleAtRisk/ucm312669.htm> **(March 8, 2019**).

16. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Panel on Antiretroviral Guidelines for Adults and Adolescents. "Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in Adults and Adolescents Living with HIV", **October 25, 2018**, <https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/contentfiles/lvguidelines/adultandadolescentgl.pdf> **(March 8, 2019**).

17. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, "Table 3. Laboratory Testing Schedule for Monitoring HIV-Infected Patients Before and After Initiation of Antiretroviral Therapy," AIDSinfo Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in HIV-1-Infected Adults and Adolescents Laboratory Testing for Initial Assessment and Monitoring of HIV-Infected Patients on Antiretroviral Therapy, **October 25, 2018**, <https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/1/adult-and-adolescent-arv-guidelines/3/tests-for-initial-assessment-and-follow-up> (**March 7, 2019).**

18. K. A. Yearsley, et al., "Proton Pump Inhibitor Therapy is a Risk Factor for Clostridium difficile-Associated Diarrhea," *Alimentary Pharmacology and Therapeutics*, Vol. 24, No. 4, August 15, 2006, pp. 613-619. (Current).

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR OROLABIAL HERPES SIMPLEX IN ADULTS LIVING WITH HIV

DEFINITION

Herpes simplex virus (HSV) primarily infects the orolabia (e.g., mouth and lips), genitals, and anorectal area. In addition, HSV can infect the esophagus, brain, and retina.

Infections with HSV type 1 (HSV-1) and type 2 (HSV-2) are common. Initial infection with HSV-1 usually occurs in childhood. Approximately 95% of persons **living with HIV** are seropositive for either HSV-1 or HSV-2 and 70% are seropositive for HSV-2. Severity and frequency of HSV recurrence may increase with advancing immunosuppression. HSV-2 infection increases the risk of HIV acquisition and HSV-2 reactivation results in increases in HIV RNA levels.

Primary infection of the orolabial area with HSV in the immunocompetent patient is usually asymptomatic. **Patients living with HIV** with immunosuppression may present with painful vesicular eruptions of the lip, tongue, pharynx, and buccal mucosa. These vesicles quickly rupture and become ulcers. Associated signs and symptoms include fever, malaise, cervical lymphadenopathy, and pharyngitis.

Recurrent HSV infection usually presents as small vesicles that ulcerate and may coalesce to form large ulcers. In immunocompetent patients **living with HIV**, ulcers usually resolve within 5 to10 days if left untreated. In immunosuppressed patients **living with HIV**, HSV infection may be persistent, painful and/or expand to form large, crusted erosions. It also may not respond to routine therapy in patients **living with HIV**.

ETIOLOGY

Primary infection, or recurrent disease from latent infection, with herpes simplex virus, type-1 (HSV-1) or type-2 (HSV-2).

SUBJECTIVE

1. Painful blisters followed by ulcers on lips and/or in mouth.

2. May or may not have:

    a. Prodrome of tingling and numbness at the site 12-24 hours before blisters occurred.
    b. Fever.
    c. Uneasiness.
    d. Swollen lymph nodes in neck.
    e. Sore throat.
    f. Persistent ulcers or large crusted erosion.

g. Severe pain.
h. Symptoms of encephalitis (e.g., headaches, vomiting, lethargy, ataxia, tremor and dizziness).

NOTE: In profoundly immunocompromised patients, extensive, deep, nonhealing ulcerations can occur.

3. May have a history of:

a. Cold sores/fever blisters or genital herpes/ulcers.
b. Partner with cold sores/fever blisters or genital herpes/ulcers.

4. Obtain a complete medication profile to determine whether there are any clinically significant drug-drug interactions with treatment.

NOTE: Medication profiles should include over-the-counter medications, herbals, vitamins, and prescription medications (including prescribed medications from outside providers). If a release of information is available, then contact the pharmacy, if necessary, in obtaining an up to date medication list.

5. Absence of allergies to acyclovir, valacyclovir or famciclovir.

OBJECTIVE

1. Grouped vesicles and/or large ulcer(s) with scalloped border covered by whitish-yellow film over the oral mucosa and/or perioral area or may have atypical presentation in late stage HIV disease. In profoundly immunocompromised patients, extensive, deep, nonhealing ulcerations can occur.

2. May have:

a. Cervical lymphadenopathy.
b. Swelling and/or erythema of oral mucosa and/or pharynx.
c. Large, crusted erosion.
d. Altered mental status.

3. Recent CD4 count (within the **last 6** months).

4. Review previous lab results for evidence of renal impairment.

Note: If indicated, repeat viral load, CBC with differential, and CMP (to assess hepatic and renal function).

ASSESSMENT Orolabial herpes simplex

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

1. May order HSV viral culture, serology, or polymerase chain reaction (PCR) assay.

   NOTE: Mucosal HSV infections cannot be diagnosed accurately by clinical examination, especially in persons with HIV infection, a laboratory diagnosis should be pursued in all cases, but negative results do not rule out the possibility of HSV infection.

2. May order syphilis serology testing.

   NOTE: Any patient who presents with genital, anal, or oral ulceration, even if the suspicion of HSV is high, syphilis serologic testing should be done. Refer to the GA-DPH STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOLS FOR SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED DISEASES.

3. If recent results not available **(within 6 months)**, order CBC with differential **and** comprehensive metabolic panel (assessing renal and hepatic function).

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Episodic treatment (Duration 5 to 10 days):

   a. Acyclovir 400mg by mouth three times/day,

   OR

   b. Valacyclovir 1 gram by mouth two times/day,

   OR

   c. Famciclovir 500mg by mouth two times/day.

   NOTE: Dose reductions of these medications are required for patients with renal impairment. Acyclovir resistance may occur. Cross resistance with Valacyclovir and Famciclovir may also occur.

2. For suppressive therapy of frequent or severe recurrences and patient's renal function lab tests are within normal values:

   a. Acyclovir 400mg by mouth two times/day,

   OR

   b. Famciclovir 500mg by mouth two times/day,

   OR

   c. Valacyclovir 500mg by mouth two times/day.

   NOTE: Dose reductions of these medications are required for patients with renal impairment. Acyclovir resistance may occur. Cross resistance with Valacyclovir and Famciclovir may also occur. Evaluate ongoing need for suppressive therapy annually.

3. May use over the counter oral pain relief medications, per manufacturer's recommendations.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Counsel on preventing exposure and transmission of HSV. Inform patient that HSV can be transmitted to other persons and asymptomatic shedding/transmission of the virus often occurs. HSV shedding is increased in persons **living with HIV**. Persons should specifically avoid contact with symptomatic herpetic lesions and during prodromal periods (e.g., no kissing and no oral-genital sex).

2. Counsel patients to inform partners about herpes and to encourage them to obtain evaluation and counseling.

3. Review current drug regimen including drug storage, dose, route of administration, schedule, side effects and follow-up monitoring.

4. Instruct patient to report adverse drug reactions or side effects to his/her provider.

5. Instruct patient to report persistent ulcers, secondary

infections and/or continued pain to his/her provider. Instruct patient to return in 2 weeks if ulcers do not resolve.

6. Explain to patient that HSV is not curable, recurrences may occur and to notify his/her provider.

7. Ask female patient to inform her provider if she is or is planning to become pregnant.

FOLLOW-UP

1. As needed, if lesions do not heal.

2. For patient on suppressive therapy, order renal function lab tests (e.g., comprehensive metabolic panel) every 6 months and as needed based on medical history and concomitant use of additional nephrotoxic drugs.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Patients reporting symptoms of encephalitis (e.g., headaches, vomiting, lethargy, ataxia, tremor, and dizziness) and/or exhibiting altered mental status should be immediately referred to delegating physician or direct them to the closest Emergency Room to minimize any delays in treatment (patient may require hospitalization).

2. Refer severe or persistent cases to delegating physician.

3. Consult delegating physician for:

   a. Abnormal lab results.
   b. Medication side effects and/or adverse events.

4. Consult delegating physician concerning the continued need for suppressive therapy. Suppressive therapy for HSV may be continued indefinitely, without regard for improved CD4 cell count, although need for continuation should be addressed on an annual basis, particularly if immune reconstitution has occurred.

5. Refer pregnant patients to delegating physician.

6. Pain management beyond OTC therapy should be referred to the delegating physician.

7. Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed, and HIV/AIDS nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

REFERENCES

1. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, "Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines, 2015," MMWR, Vol. 64, No. 3, June 5, 2015, **< https://www.cdc.gov/std/tg2015/tg-2015-print.pdf> (April 3, 2019)**

2. Lexi-Comp, Inc., "Lexi-Comp Online," *Wolters Kluwer Health, Inc.*, **2019**, < **http://www.wolterskluwercdi.com/lexicomp-online**/> **(April 2, 2019).**

3. **Pacific AIDS Education and Training Center, "HIV Essentials and Quick Clinical Guides", November 2018, < http://paetc.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/12/PAETC_HIVEssentialsAndQuickClinicalGuides.pdf > (March 7, 2019).**

4. Panel on Opportunistic Infections in HIV-Infected Adults and Adolescents. "Guidelines for the prevention and treatment of opportunistic infections in HIV-infected adults and adolescents: recommendations from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, the National Institutes of Health, and the HIV Medicine Association of the Infectious Diseases Society of America," **March 28, 2019,** <http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/contentfiles/lvguidelines/adult_oi.pdf> **(April** 3, 201**9**).

5. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, "Table 3. Laboratory Testing Schedule for Monitoring HIV-Infected Patients Before and After Initiation of Antiretroviral Therapy," *AIDSinfo Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in HIV-1-Infected Adults and Adolescents Laboratory Testing for Initial Assessment and Monitoring of HIV-Infected Patients on Antiretroviral Therapy*, **October 25, 2018**, <https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/1/adult-and-adolescent-arv-guidelines/3/tests-for-initial-assessment-and-follow-up> **(March 7, 2019).**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PCP PROPHYLAXIS IN ADULTS LIVING WITH HIV

DEFINITION

Pneumocystis jiroveci pneumonia (PCP) prophylaxis is treatment given to individuals **living with HIV** to prevent either a primary episode or recurrence of PCP. According to the CDC, *P. carinii* is now exclusive to the pneumocystis that infects rodents and *P. jiroveci* refers to the species that infects humans. However, the abbreviation remains PCP.

Primary prophylaxis (prevention of first episode) should be administered to all persons **living with HIV** with a CD4 count of less than 200 cells/mm^3, **or a CD4% of less than 14% of the total lymphocyte count or aa CD4 count greater than 200 but less than 250 cells/mm^3, if ART cannot be initiated, and if CD4 cell count monitoring (e.g., every 3 months) is not possible**.

Secondary prophylaxis (prevention of recurrence) should be administered to patients **living with HIV** who have a history of a previous PCP episode for life if an episode of PCP occurs at a CD4 count **greater than** 200 cells/mm^3 while on ART. It would be prudent to then continue PCP prophylaxis for life, regardless of how high the CD4 cell count rises as a consequence of ART.

ETIOLOGY

Pneumocystis jiroveci is a ubiquitous fungus acquired through inhalation. Initial infection with *Pneumocystis jiroveci* usually occurs in early childhood; two-thirds of healthy children have antibodies to *Pneumocystis jiroveci* by ages 2 to 4 years. Disease probably occurs by new acquisition of infection and by reactivation of latent infection with most cases occurring in patients who are unaware of their HIV infection or are not receiving ongoing care for HIV, and in those with advanced immunosuppression, e.g. CD4 counts **less than**100 cells/mm^3.

SUBJECTIVE

1. May or may not have a history of:

    a. Previous PCP episode.
    b. Oropharyngeal candidiasis.
    c. An AIDS-defining illness.

2. No history of active tuberculosis (TB).

3. No complaints of symptoms suggestive of active PCP (e.g., non-productive cough, fever, shortness of breath).

4. Absence of allergies to sulfa drugs, dapsone, pyrimethamine and/or atovaquone.

5. Obtain a complete medication profile to determine whether there are any clinically significant drug-drug interactions with treatment.

   NOTE: Medication profiles should include over-the-counter medications, herbals, vitamins, and prescription medications (including prescribed medications from outside providers). If a release of information is available, then contact the pharmacy, if necessary, in obtaining an up to date medication list.

OBJECTIVE

1. May have recent (**within 6** months) CD4 count less than 200 cells/mm^3 or CD4 percent less than 14%.

2. Absence of pulmonary signs and symptoms (e.g., tachypnea).

3. Recent (**within 6** months) CBC with differential and comprehensive metabolic panel (assessing renal and hepatic function.

4. Absence of Glucose-6-Phosphate Dehydrogenase (G6-PD) deficiency. (If patient has G6-PD deficiency, and dapsone is being considered, refer to delegating physician for prophylaxis medication).

   NOTE: Whenever possible, patients should be tested for G6-PD deficiency before administration of dapsone. Alternative agent should be used if the patient is found to have G6-PD deficiency. Additionally, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole should be used with caution in patients with G6-PD deficiency.

ASSESSMENT

Candidate for PCP Prophylaxis (primary or secondary); at risk for PCP.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. If previous results not available, test for G6-PD deficiency.

NOTE: If indicated, repeat CD4 count, viral load, CBC with differential, and CMP (to assess hepatic and renal function).

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. First Choice

    a. Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole* (TMP-SMZ) one double strength (DS) tablet by mouth daily†

OR

    b. TMP-SMZ* one single-strength (SS) tab by mouth daily†

2. Alternative

    a. TMP-SMZ* one DS tablet by mouth 3 times per week† (e.g., Monday, Wednesday, Friday)

OR

3. Alternative in individuals intolerant to TMP-SMX

    a. Dapsone Regimens

        1) **Dapsone 200mg by mouth once per week**

PLUS

Pyrimethamine 75mg by mouth once per week

PLUS

Leucovorin 25mg by mouth once per week†

        2) Dapsone 50mg by mouth two times/day or 100 mg by mouth daily‡

NOTE: As of June 2015, pyrimethamine is no longer available in retail pharmacies in the United States. It is only available through a special pharmacy program (http://www.daraprimdirect.com/). If there is a delay in procuring pyrimethamine for a patient in whom it is needed, consult physician for

guidance.

OR

b. Atovaquone suspension 1500mg by mouth daily with food†¶

NOTE: For use of Atovaquone with Zidovudine, monitor for zidovudine adverse effects.

LEGEND
* Many patients become intolerant of sulfa medications. Severe reactions may include persistent neutropenia, fever, renal failure, severe erythroderma and Stevens-Johnson syndrome (bullae & desquamation of the skin). Some patients with milder reactions can be desensitized.
†Regimen is also effective against toxoplasmosis.
‡This regimen is not recommended for prevention of toxoplasmosis.
¶Very expensive and should not be used if other alternatives are available.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Explain reason for regimen. Review current drug regimen including drug storage, dose, route of administration, schedule, side effects and follow-up monitoring.

2. Instruct patient to stop **PCP** medications immediately and report adverse drug reactions or side effects (e.g., unusual bleeding or bruising, changes in skin color, sore throat, rash, high fever) to his/her care provider. Also report other changes in health that he/she feels are important.

3. Instruct that taking medications as ordered **for full prescribed length of time** and keeping appointments is very important to prevent this life-threatening form of pneumonia.

4. Explain that prophylaxis may be discontinued due to sustained rise in CD4 cell count while on ART but may need to be re-started in the event of stopping ART, CD4 cell counts dropping or if health condition worsens.

5. Inform the patient that PCP can occur or recur despite prophylaxis **or an elevated CD4 count** and to call his/her provider if patient develops symptoms, (e.g., cough, fever, shortness of breath, chest pain).

6. Ask female patient to inform her provider if she is or is

planning to become pregnant.

7. Inform patient that regular blood tests are necessary during therapy.

8. Explain that TMP-SMZ may cause increased sensitivity to sunlight and instruct to wear sunblock, protective clothing and dark glasses or avoid direct exposure to sunlight.

9. **Instruct patient to drink plenty of fluids while on TMP-SMZ to prevent kidney stones**.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Check for any upcoming provider appointments.

    a. If no appointment scheduled, schedule with the provider as soon as possible (ideally within 30 days).
    b. If appointment scheduled, consider rescheduling if beyond 30 days.

    Obtain a complete medication profile to determine whether there are any clinically significant drug-drug interactions, especially to new medications initiated since the previous assessment.

    NOTE: Medication profiles should include over-the-counter medications, herbals, vitamins, and prescription medications (including prescribed medications from outside providers). If a release of information is available, then contact the pharmacy, if necessary, in obtaining an up to date medication list.

2. Obtain a complete medication profile to determine whether there are any clinically significant drug-drug interactions, especially to ne medication initiated since the previous assessment.

3. Monitor for medication adherence, adverse drug events and medication side effects.

4. Obtain and monitor lab values for CBC with differential and comprehensive metabolic panel (assessing renal and hepatic function) within 4 to 6 weeks after initiation of regimen and then as indicated.

5. Monitor for signs/symptoms of PCP.

6. Obtain and monitor CD4 cell counts and percentage at least every 3-6 months.

    a. Discontinue primary and secondary prophylaxis in patients whose CD4 counts have increased from less than 200 cells/mm³ to 200 cells/mm³ or greater for at least 3 months in response to ART.
    b. Restart primary prophylaxis if the CD4 count decreases to less than 100 cells/mm^3, regardless of HIV RNA or if CD4 count is 100 to 200 cells/mm³ and HIV RNA is above detection limit of assay.
    c. Restart secondary prophylaxis if CD4 count is less than 200 cells/mm^3.
    d. If PCP occurs at a CD4 count of greater than 200 cells/mm^3 while on ART, then it would be prudent to continue PCP prophylaxis for life, regardless of how high the CD4 count rises because of ART.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Consult the delegating physician **or the designated provider** of the following:

    a. Abnormal lab values.
    b. Medication side effects and/or adverse events.
    c. Signs/symptoms of PCP.
    d. Defer prophylaxis medication decision for G6-PD deficient patients to physician, if dapsone is being considered.

2. Refer pregnant patients to delegating physician.

3. Consult delegating physician concerning dosage adjustments for patient with abnormal renal or hepatic function tests.

4. Primary and secondary PCP prophylaxis may be discontinued in select patients with CD4 counts of 100 to 200 cells/mm^3 and HIV RNA levels below limits of detection

for at least 3 to 6 months. Consult delegating physician for guidance in selected patients.

5. If PCP occurred at a CD4 count of greater than 200 cells/mm^3 while patient not on ART, discontinuation of prophylaxis can be considered when HIV RNA levels are below limits detection for at least 3 to 6 months. Consult delegating physician for guidance in selected patients.

6. Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed, and HIV/AIDS nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

REFERENCES

1. Pacific AIDS Education and Training Center, “HIV Essentials and Quick Clinical Guides”, **November 2018**, < http://paetc.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/12/PAETC_HIVEssentialsAndQuickClinicalGuides.pdf > **(March 7, 2019).**

2. Panel on Opportunistic Infections in HIV-Infected Adults and Adolescents. “Guidelines for the prevention and treatment of opportunistic infections in HIV-infected adults and adolescents: recommendations from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, the National Institutes of Health, and the HIV Medicine Association of the Infectious Diseases Society of America,” <http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/contentfiles/lvguidelines/adult_oi.pdf> **(March 7, 2019).**

3. **U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, *Guidelines for the Prevention and Treatment of Opportunistic Infections in HIV-Infected Adults and Adolescents.* “Table 1. Prophylaxis to Prevent First Episode of Opportunistic Disease”, February 15, 2019, < https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/brief-html/4/adult-and-adolescent-opportunistic-infection/354/primary-prophylaxis> (March 8, 2019).**

4. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, “Table 3. Laboratory Testing Schedule for Monitoring HIV-Infected Patients Before and After Initiation of Antiretroviral Therapy,” AIDSinfo Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in HIV-1-Infected Adults and Adolescents Laboratory Testing for Initial Assessment and Monitoring of HIV-Infected Patients on Antiretroviral Therapy, **October 25, 2018**, <https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/1/adult-and-adolescent-arv-guidelines/3/tests-for-initial-assessment-and-follow-up> **(March 7, 2019).**

5. U.S. National Library of Medicine, Genetics Home Reference, *“*Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency*,”* **March 5, 2019**, <https://ghr.nlm.nih.gov/condition/glucose-6-phosphate-dehydrogenase-deficiency> (**March 8, 2019**).

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR TOXOPLASMOSIS PROPHYLAXIS IN ADULT LIVING WITH HIV

DEFINITION

All persons **living with HIV** should be tested for IgG antibody to *Toxoplasma* soon after HIV diagnosis. Persons found to be *Toxoplasma*-seropositive and have CD4 counts less than 100 cells/mm^3 should be administered primary prophylaxis to prevent toxoplasmic encephalitis (TE).

Persons **living with HIV** who have completed initial treatment for TE should be administered secondary prophylaxis (chronic maintenance therapy) for life, unless immune reconstitution occurs due to antiretroviral therapy (ART).

Eating raw shellfish has been identified as a novel risk factor for infection, yet up to 50% of individuals with documented primary infection do not have an identifiable risk factor. The organism is not transmitted through person-to-person contact. Toxoplasma IgG-negative patients should be counseled to avoid sources of infection, e.g., avoid eating raw or undercooked meat, especially pork, lamb, game, and venison, wash hands after handling raw meat and after gardening or contact with soil, and encourage patients not to adopt or handle stray cats, and, if they own cats, to wash hands thoroughly after cleaning litter boxes. In addition, Toxoplasma IgG-negative patients who are not taking a PCP prophylactic regimen known to be active against TE, such Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, should be retested for IgG antibody to Toxoplasma when their CD4 counts decline to less than 100 cells/mm^3 to determine whether they have seroconverted and therefore are at risk for TE.

ETIOLOGY

Toxoplasma gondii is a protozoan organism, with an infection rate of approximately 22.5% of individuals 12 years and older in the United States, commonly found in cats, mammals and birds. In the era before antiretroviral therapy (ART), the 12-month incidence of TE was approximately 33% in patients with advanced immunosuppression who were seropositive for *T. gondii* and not receiving prophylaxis with drugs against the disease. A low incidence of toxoplasmosis is seen in patients who are seronegative for *T. gondii*. If patients are truly seronegative, their toxoplasmosis presumably represents primary infection (typically occurring after eating undercooked meat containing tissue cysts or ingesting oocysts that have been shed in cat feces and sporulated in the environment, a process that takes at least 24 hours), re-activation of latent disease (most commonly due to immunodeficiency) in individuals who cannot produce detectable

antibodies, *or* testing with insensitive assays. *T. gondii* can infect any tissue, but the most common sites are the brain, lungs and eyes. In persons with AIDS the most common presentation is focal encephalitis. In immunocompetent persons, the infection is usually controlled, but a small number of organisms survive. Clinical disease is rare among patients with CD4 T lymphocyte (CD4) counts greater than 200 cells/mm^3 with the greatest risk in those patients with CD4 counts lesser than 50 cells/mm^3.

SUBJECTIVE

1. May or may not have a history of TE and treatment for TE.

2. No history/complaints of neurological symptoms suggestive of TE (e.g., seizures, altered mental status, motor weakness, headaches, and/or cognitive impairment).

3. Absence of allergies to sulfa drugs, dapsone, pyrimethamine, atovaquone, folate derivatives and/or clindamycin.

4. Obtain a complete medication profile to determine whether there are any clinically significant drug-drug interactions with treatment.

   NOTE: Medication profiles should include: over-the-counter medications, herbals, vitamins, and prescription medications (including prescribed medications from outside providers). If a release of information is available, then contact the pharmacy, if necessary, in obtaining an up to date medication list.

OBJECTIVE

1. *Toxoplasma* IgG seropositive.

2. Recent (within last **6** months) CD4 count less than 100 cells/mm^3.

3. Absence of neurological signs of TE (e.g., altered mental status, aphasia, ataxia, hemiparesis and cranial nerve palsies).

4. Recent (within last **6** months) CBC with differential **and** complete metabolic panel (assessing renal and hepatic function).

5. Absence of Glucose-6-Phosphate Dehydrogenase (G6-PD) deficiency. (If patient has G6-PD-deficiency and dapsone is being considered, refer to delegating physician for prophylaxis medication.)

   NOTE: Whenever possible, patients should be tested for G6-PD

deficiency before administration of dapsone. Alternative agent should be used if the patient is found to have G6-PD deficiency. Additionally, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole and sulfadiazine should be used with caution in patients with G6-PD deficiency.

ASSESSMENT Candidate for toxoplasmosis prophylaxis (primary or secondary); at risk for activation of latent toxoplasmosis infection.

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

1. If previous positive results or recent IgG antibody testing for *Toxoplasma* not available, test for IgG antibody to *Toxoplasma*.

2. If previous results not available, test for G6-PD deficiency.

NOTE: If indicated, repeat CD4 count, viral load, CBC with differential, and CMP (to assess hepatic and renal function),

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Primary Prophylaxis (Prevention of TE)

   a. Preferred Regimen
   Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole* (TMP-SMZ) one double strength (DS) tablet by mouth daily†

   OR

   b. Alternative Regimen
      1) TMP-SMZ* one single strength (SS) tablet by mouth daily†

      OR

      2) TMP-SMZ* one (DS) tablet by mouth 3 times per week† (e.g., Monday, Wednesday, Friday)

   NOTE: TMP/SMZ may require dosage adjustment in patients with renal impairment. Consult with delegating physician regarding appropriate dosing.

OR

If patient cannot tolerate TMP-SMZ:

1) Dapsone Regimens†
   a) Dapsone 200mg by mouth once per week

PLUS

Pyrimethamine 75mg by mouth once per week

PLUS

Leucovorin 25mg by mouth once per week.

OR

b) Atovaquone 1500mg by mouth daily with food†‡

NOTE: As of June 2015, pyrimethamine is no longer available in retail pharmacies in the United States. It is only available through a special pharmacy program (http://www.daraprimdirect.com/). If there is a delay in procuring pyrimethamine for a patient in whom it is needed, consult physician for guidance

NOTE: For use of Atovaquone with Zidovudine, monitor for zidovudine adverse effects.

2. Secondary Prophylaxis (Chronic Maintenance Therapy)

a. Preferred Regimen

Sulfadiazine* 500mg or 1000mg by mouth 4 times/day

PLUS

Pyrimethamine 25mg or 50mg by mouth daily

PLUS

Leucovorin 10mg or 25mg by mouth daily†

OR

b. Alternative (if patient cannot tolerate sulfa drugs)
Clindamycin§ 600mg by mouth every 8 hours

PLUS

Pyrimethamine 25mg or 50mg by mouth daily

PLUS

Leucovorin 10mg or 25mg by mouth daily¶

NOTE: **Because this alternative regimen does not provide protection against PCP (as the preferred regimen does), an additional agent must be used, so refer patient to delegating provider.**

As of June 2015, pyrimethamine is no longer available in retail pharmacies in the United States. It is only available through a special pharmacy program (http://www.daraprimdirect.com/). If there is a delay in procuring pyrimethamine for a patient in whom it is needed, consult physician for guidance.

OR

1) TMP-SMZ* one DS tablet by mouth daily or every 12 hours†‖

OR

2) Atovaquone 750mg or 1500mg by mouth every 12 hours with food†‡

NOTE: For use of Atovaquone with Zidovudine, Monitor for zidovudine adverse effects.

LEGEND
*Many patients become intolerant of sulfa medications. Severe reactions may include persistent neutropenia, fever, renal failure, severe erythroderma and Stevens-Johnson syndrome (bullae & desquamation of the skin). Some patients with milder reactions can be desensitized.
†Regimen is also effective against PCP. (Atovaquone dosed at 750mg every 12 hours is an alternative regimen for secondary TE prophylaxis, but not for PCP).
‡Very expensive and should not be used if other alternatives are available.
§Clindamycin has been associated with severe colitis, which may end fatally, reserve it for serious infections for which less toxic antimicrobial agents are inappropriate.
¶This regimen is not recommended for the prevention of PCP. Additional agent must be added for PCP prophylaxis. Avoid concurrent use of leucovorin with trimethoprim (plus sulfamethoxazole) for PCP prophylaxis.
‖To reduce pill burden, TMP-SMX can be used, but use of the lower dose may be associated with an increased risk of relapse, and if the once daily dosing is used, a gradual transition may be beneficial (e.g., follow acute therapy with 4–6 weeks of 1 double-strength tablet twice daily before lowering to 1 double-strength tablet once daily).

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Explain reason for regimen. Review current drug regimen including: dose, drug storage, route of administration, schedule, side effects, and follow-up monitoring.

2. Instruct patient to stop medications immediately and report adverse drug reactions or side effects (e.g., unusual bleeding or bruising, changes in skin color, sore throat, rash, high fever) to his/her provider. Also, report other changes in health that he/she feels are important.

3. **Instruct that taking medications as ordered and keeping appointments is very important to prevent this life-threatening form of pneumonia.**

4. Explain that prophylaxis may be discontinued due to sustained rise in CD4 cell count while on ART but may need to be re-started in the event of stopping ART or if CD4 cell counts drop.

5. Instruct patient to report any neurological signs/symptoms to provider.

6. Ask female patient to inform her provider if she is, or is planning to become, pregnant.

7. Inform patient that regular blood tests are necessary during therapy.

   If taking TMP-SMZ or sulfadiazine, explain that these medications may cause increased sensitivity to sunlight and instruct to wear sunblock, protective clothing and dark glasses,

or avoid direct exposure to sunlight.

8. **Instruct patient to drink plenty of fluids while on TMP-SMZ to prevent kidney stones.**

9. Ask patient to check with his/her pharmacist or provider about interactions before taking a new medication, nutritional or herbal supplement, or over-the-counter drug/product.

10. Toxoplasma IgG-negative patients should be counseled to avoid sources of infection, e.g., avoid eating raw or undercooked meat, especially pork, lamb, game, and venison, wash hands after handling raw meat and after gardening or contact with soil, and encourage patients not to adopt or handle stray cats, and, if they own cats, to wash hands thoroughly after cleaning litter boxes.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Check for any upcoming provider appointments:

   a. If no appointment scheduled, schedule with the provider as soon as possible (ideally within 30 days).
   b. If appointment scheduled, consider rescheduling if beyond 30 days.

2. Obtain a complete medication profile to determine whether there are any clinically significant drug-drug interactions, especially to new medications initiated since the previous assessment.

   NOTE: **Medication profiles should include over-the-counter medications, herbals, vitamins, and prescription medications (including prescribed medications from outside providers). If a release of information is available, then contact the pharmacy, if necessary, in obtaining an up to date medication list.**

3. Monitor for medication adherence, adverse drug events, and medication side effects.

4. Obtain and monitor lab values for CBC with differential and comprehensive metabolic panel (assessing renal and hepatic function) within 4-6 weeks after initiation of regimen and then as indicated.

5. Monitor for signs/symptoms of TE.

6. Monitor CD4 counts and percentage at least every 3-6 months:

    a. Discontinue primary prophylaxis in patients who have responded to ART and have sustained CD4 counts greater than 200 cells/mm^3 for 3 months or more. Primary prophylaxis should be restarted if the CD4 count decreases to less than 100-200 cells/mm^3.
    b. Discontinue secondary prophylaxis in patients who **successfully** completed initial therapy for TE, have responded to ART and have sustained CD4 counts greater than 200 cells/mm^3 for 6 months or more, and are asymptomatic for TE. Secondary prophylaxis should be restarted if the CD4 count decreases to less than 200 cells/mm^3.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. **Consult** delegating physician **with** the following:

    a. Abnormal lab values.
    b. Medication side effects and/or adverse events.
    c. Signs/symptoms of TE, e.g., seizures, altered mental status, motor weakness, headaches, and/or cognitive impairment.
    d. If G6-PD deficient and dapsone is being considered.

2. Refer pregnant patients to delegating physician.

3. Consult delegating physician concerning dosage adjustments for patient with abnormal renal or hepatic function tests.

4. Primary prophylaxis may be discontinued in select patients with CD4 counts of 100 to 200 cells/mm^3 and HIV RNA levels below limits of detection for at least 3 to 6 months. Consult delegating physician for guidance in selected patients.

5. Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed, and HIV/AIDS nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

REFERENCES

1. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, "Parasites - Toxoplasmosis (Toxoplasma infection)," **August 29, 2018**, <https://www.cdc.gov/parasites/toxoplasmosis/> **(March 11, 2019**).

2. **Pacific AIDS Education and Training Center, "HIV Essentials and Quick Clinical Guides", November 2018, < http://paetc.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/12/PAETC_HIVEssentialsAndQuickClinicalGuides.pdf > (March 7, 2019).**

3. Panel on Opportunistic Infections in HIV-Infected Adults and Adolescents. "Guidelines for the prevention and treatment of opportunistic infections in HIV-infected adults and adolescents: recommendations from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, the National Institutes of Health, and the HIV Medicine Association of the Infectious Diseases Society of America," <http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/contentfiles/lvguidelines/adult_oi.pdf> **(March 7, 2019**).

4. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, "Table 3. Laboratory Testing Schedule for Monitoring HIV-Infected Patients Before and After Initiation of Antiretroviral Therapy," AIDSinfo Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in HIV-1-Infected Adults and Adolescents Laboratory Testing for Initial Assessment and Monitoring of HIV-Infected Patients on Antiretroviral Therapy, **October 25, 2018**, <https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/1/adult-and-adolescent-arv-guidelines/3/tests-for-initial-assessment-and-follow-up> (**March 7, 2019).**

5. **U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, AIDSinfo, "Guidelines for the Prevention and Treatment of Opportunistic Infections in HIV-Infected Adults and Adolescents: Table 1. Prophylaxis to Prevent First Episode of Opportunistic Disease", February 15, 2019, < https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/brief-html/4/adult-and-adolescent-opportunistic-infection/354/primary-prophylaxis> (March 11, 2019).**

6. **U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, AIDSinfo, "Guidelines for the Prevention and Treatment of Opportunistic Infections in HIV-Infected Adults and Adolescents: Toxoplasma gondii Encephalitis", July 25, 2017, https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/4/adult-and-adolescent-opportunistic-infection/322/toxo> (March 13, 2019).**
7. U.S. National Library of Medicine, Genetics Home Reference, *"*Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency*,"* **May 2017**, <https://ghr.nlm.nih.gov/condition/glucose-6-phosphate-dehydrogenase-deficiency> (**April 3, 2019**).

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SEBORRHEIC DERMATITIS IN ADULT LIVING WITH HIV

DEFINITION Seborrheic dermatitis is a skin condition commonly seen in persons **living with HIV** (3-5% in the general population and up to 85-95% of patients with advanced HIV infection). It is chronic and usually undergoes periods of exacerbation and remission. The condition occurs in areas where sebaceous glands are concentrated, including the scalp, eyebrows, nasolabial folds, forehead, cheekbones, ears, hairline, chest, axilla and groin.

ETIOLOGY The probable cause of seborrhea is a yeast, *Malassezia* (formerly called *Pityrosporum ovale*). Overgrowth of the Malassezia yeast in the oily skin environment, failure of the immune system to regulate the fungus, and the skin's inflammatory reaction to the yeast overgrowth appear to be the chief factors that cause the dermatitis.

SUBJECTIVE

1. May or may not report rash, sometimes itchy, or "dry skin" that will not go away despite of the application of topical moisturizers.

2. May or may not have a history of dandruff and/or seborrheic dermatitis.

3. Obtain a complete medication profile to determine whether there are any clinically significant drug-drug interactions with treatment.

   NOTE: Medication profiles should include over-the-counter medications, herbals, vitamins, and prescription medications (including prescribed medications from outside providers). If a release of information is available, then contact the pharmacy, if necessary, in obtaining an up to date medication list.

OBJECTIVE

1. Fine white scaling, without erythema, affecting the scalp (dandruff),

   AND/OR

2. Scaly/crusty patches and plaques of erythema with indistinct margins and yellowish, greasy scale affecting one or more of the following areas: scalp, eyebrows, nose, nasolabial folds, forehead, cheekbones, ears, hairline, chest, breast folds, axilla, back and/or groin.

3. Absence of symptoms suggestive of secondary syphilis, (e.g., palmoplantar and mucosal lesions, peripheral adenopathy, condylomata lata, patchy alopecia) see STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SYPHILIS, EARLY SYMPTOMATIC (PRIMARY and SECONDARY).

ASSESSMENT Probable Seborrheic Dermatitis

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

1. May perform a potassium hydroxide (KOH) preparation to rule out *Candida albicans* and other superficial yeast infections.

2. If recent results not available **(within the last 6 months)**, order CBC with differential, comprehensive metabolic panel (assessing renal and hepatic function) and, if indicated, fasting lipid profile.

3. If recent results not available **(within the last 6 months)**, order CD4 count.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. For scalp conditions:

NOTE: Consult physician if patient has experienced a history of severe allergic reaction (e.g., severe rash, hives, difficulty breathing, dizziness) to sulfur, aspirin, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID) (e.g., ibuprofen, naproxen, celecoxib); and/or if patient is taking anticoagulants, (e.g., heparin, warfarin, apixaban, enoxaparin, rivaroxaban), aspirin, methotrexate, or sulfonylureas (e.g., glipizide) because the risk of side effects may be increased by Sebex shampoo.

   a. Regular use of an over-the-counter dandruff shampoo that contains sulfur and salicylic acid (e.g., Sebex), selenium sulfide (e.g., Selsun Blue, Dandrex), ketoconazole (e.g., Nizoral-AD), coal tar, or zinc pyrithione (e.g., Head and Shoulders, Zincon). Instruct patient to shampoo per manufacturer's recommendations until condition resolves (2 to 4 weeks).

Rotation of different classes of shampoos may improve and maintain efficacy of these formulations in clinical practice. Irritation and/or burning sensation have been
reported in 1 to 3 percent of patients.

OR

b. Ketoconazole 2% shampoo (prescription strength) used daily or at least two or three times per week until condition resolves (2 to 4 weeks). Instruct patient to wet hair, massage well into scalp and leave on for 5 to 10 minutes and then rinse thoroughly.

OR

c. If shampoo alone is not adequate, a medium-potency topical corticosteroid solution (e.g., triamcinolone 0.1% applied once daily to the scalp for 2 to 4 weeks) may be used. Instruct patient to part hair, apply a small amount of the solution on the affected area, and rub it in gently. Protect the area from washing and rubbing until the solution dries. Hair may be washed as usual but not right after applying the medicine.

NOTE: Avoid application of medium potency topical steroids to the face.

d. For individuals requiring maintenance therapy in preventing relapses: Use an over-the-counter dandruff shampoo listed above or ketoconazole 2% shampoo once per week.

2. For face conditions:

a. First Choice:
Apply ketoconazole 2% cream to affected areas once or twice daily until condition resolves (2 to 4 weeks).

OR

b. Second Choice: Apply hydrocortisone 1% cream to affected areas once or twice daily until condition resolves (2 to 4 weeks).

Least potent topical corticosteroid creams should be

used because of the potential adverse effects with prolonged use (e.g., permanent telangiectasia and atrophy). Long-term (months to years) continuous use of even mild topical corticosteroids can result in permanent telangiectasia and atrophy and should be avoided.

c. For individuals requiring maintenance therapy in preventing relapses: Use an over-the-counter dandruff shampoo listed above or ketoconazole shampoo 2% as a facial wash once a week.

OR

Apply ketoconazole 2% cream to affected areas once a week.

d. For patients with mustaches and/or beards: Apply over-the-counter dandruff shampoo listed above or ketoconazole 2% shampoo to facial hair daily until condition resolves (2-4 weeks) and then once per week if needed for maintenance therapy in preventing relapses.

3. For conditions on trunk and intertriginous areas:

a. Apply topical 2% ketoconazole cream to affected area(s) 1 to 2 times per day until condition resolves (2 to 4 weeks).

AND/OR

Apply topical 0.1% triamcinolone cream to affected area(s) 1 to 2 times per day until condition resolves (2 to 4 weeks).

b. To prevent relapses:

Apply ketoconazole 2% cream to the involved area(s) once a week.

OR

Use ketoconazole 2% shampoo as a body wash once weekly.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Explain reason for regimen. Review current drug regimen including drug storage, dose, route of administration, schedule, side effects, drug interactions and follow-up monitoring. Include the following:

    a. Treatment is for external use only. Avoid contact with eyes, inside nose and mouth. If contact occurs, rinse thoroughly with cool water.
    b. If using over-the-counter dandruff shampoo, follow manufacturer directions and leave shampoo on for the recommended amount of time. Allow shampoo suds onto affected facial areas when possible.
    c. Do not apply topical therapy to open wounds or weeping areas.
    d. Wash and dry area before applying topical creams.
    e. If using topical corticosteroid (e.g., hydrocortisone); avoid exposing treated area to direct sunlight, as it may become sunburned.
    f. Review patient's current allergies. Consult delegating physician if patient has experienced a severe allergic reaction (e.g., severe rash, hives, difficulty breathing, dizziness) to any ingredient in the topical preparations (OTC or prescription).
    g. Use products as ordered, and do not overuse. Counsel about potential adverse effects with prolonged corticosteroid cream use especially to the face (e.g., permanent telangiectasia and atrophy) and not to use corticosteroid creams ordered for conditions on trunk and intertriginous areas on the face.

2. Explain that seborrheic dermatitis is a chronic condition, which often recurs. Patients should keep their skin as clean and dry as possible, and watch for recurrences, particularly in winter due to dry heat.

3. At the earliest sign of recurrence, instruct patient to restart shampoo and/or topical therapy to prevent progression and secondary infection.

4. Instruct patient to inform provider if condition worsens or does not improve, or if he/she has signs of secondary infection.

5. Ask female patient to inform her provider if she is, or is planning to become, pregnant.

FOLLOW-UP

Routine appointments with provider as indicated, at least every 3-6 months.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Consult the delegating physician **or designated provider** of the following:

    a. Severe or recalcitrant episodes.
    b. Secondary infection is suspected.
    c. Abnormal lab values.
    d. Medication side effects and/or adverse events.

2. Refer pregnant patients to delegating physician.

3. Refer for uncontrolled HIV: Effective antiretroviral therapy should be considered to control the effects of HIV on the immune system and thereby decrease exacerbations and the severity of seborrheic dermatitis associated with immunosuppression.

4. Refer to delegating physician if symptoms persist beyond 4 weeks with therapy for reassessment and recommendations.

5. Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed, and HIV/AIDS nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

REFERENCES

1. American Society of Health-System Pharmacists, Inc., “Triamcinolone Topical,” *MedlinePlus*, **March 25, 2019**, <https://medlineplus.gov/druginfo/meds/a601124.html> (April **3**, 201**9**).

2. **Luis Borda and Tongyu Wikramanayake, Journal of Clinical and Investigative Dermatology, “Seborrheic Dermatitis and Dandruff: A Comprehensive Review”, December 2015, Vol 3, Issue 2,** http://www.avensonline.org/wp-content/uploads/JCID-2373-1044-03-0019.pdf**> (April 3, 2019).**

3. Lexi-Comp, Inc., “Lexi-Comp Online,” *Wolters Kluwer Health, Inc.*, **2019**, < **http://www.wolterskluwercdi.com/lexicomp-online**/> **(April 2, 2019)**.

4. Medscape, “Seborrheic Dermatitis,” *Drugs and Diseases, Dermatology,* **May5, 2018**, <http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/1108312-overview> (April 3, 201**9**).

5. **Pacific AIDS Education and Training Center, “HIV Essentials and Quick Clinical Guides”, November 2018, < http://paetc.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/12/PAETC_HIVEssentialsAndQuickClinicalGuides.pdf > (March 7, 2019).**

6. **Denis Sassesville,** UpToDate, “Seborrheic dermatitis in adolescents and adults,” *Wolters Kluwer*, **November 26, 2018**, < https://www.uptodate.com/contents/seborrheic-dermatitis-in-adolescents-and-adults > (April **3, 2019**).

7. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, “Table 3. Laboratory Testing Schedule for Monitoring HIV-Infected Patients Before and After Initiation of Antiretroviral Therapy,” *AIDSinfo Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in HIV-1-Infected Adults and Adolescents Laboratory Testing for Initial Assessment and Monitoring of HIV-Infected Patients on Antiretroviral Therapy*, **October 25, 2018**, <https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/1/adult-and-adolescent-arv-guidelines/3/tests-for-initial-assessment-and-follow-up> **(March 7, 2019).**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR ORAL CANDIDIASIS IN ADULTS LIVING WITH HIV

DEFINITION Oral candidiasis is the most common superficial fungal infection in persons **living with HIV**. There **are three** clinical presentations in people with HIV: pseudomembranous, erythematous (atrophic), and angular cheilitis.

ETIOLOGY Primarily caused by an overgrowth of *Candida albicans*, and less often by other **non-albicans** *Candida* species, e.g., **C. dubliniensis, C. glabrata, or C. tropicalis.**

SUBJECTIVE

1. May or may not be symptomatic.

2. May or may not complain of white patches **anywhere on the oral mucosal tissues**, smooth red areas on dorsal tongue **(erythematous)**, burning or painful mouth areas, changes in taste sensation, sensitivity to spicy foods and/or decreased appetite.

3. May or may not have a history of oral or esophageal candidiasis.

4. Absence of signs/symptoms of esophageal candidiasis (e.g., patient does not report painful **or difficulty** swallowing, retrosternal pain, and nausea).

5. Absence of allergies to antifungal agents.

7. Obtain a complete medication profile to determine whether there are any clinically significant drug-drug interactions with treatment.

   NOTE: Medication profiles should include over-the-counter medications, herbals, vitamins, and prescription medications (including prescribed medications from outside providers). If a release of information is available, then contact the pharmacy, if necessary, in obtaining an up to date medication list.

OBJECTIVE May have patches/lesions anywhere on the hard and soft palates, under the tongue, on the buccal mucosa or gums or extending back into the posterior pharynx. These lesions or forms of oral candidiasis can be further classified as follows:

1. Pseudomembranous candidiasis (thrush) appears as white

plaques, which can be scraped off with a tongue depressor, (unlike oral hairy leukoplakia) **at times** revealing a bleeding, macerated surface below them. Lesions may be as small as 1-2 mm in size, or extensive plaques covering the entire hard palate.

2. Erythematous candidiasis (atrophic candidiasis) is a red, flat lesion or **lesions that may present on any mucosal surface, but primarily is seen** on the palate and/or dorsal tongue surface. The tongue may have depapillated red mucosal areas on its dorsal surface.

3. Angular cheilitis (not exclusively due to *Candida*) presents with fissuring and redness at either one or both corners of the mouth and may appear alone or in conjunction with another form of oral Candida infection.

4. Recent CD4 count (**within 6** months).

ASSESSMENT Oral Candidiasis

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

1. If recent results not available (**within 6 months)**, order CBC with differential **and** comprehensive metabolic panel (assessing renal and hepatic function.

   NOTE: If indicated, repeat CD4 count and viral load.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Mild to moderate cases

   a. Clotrimazole one troche (10mg) dissolved in mouth 5 times/day for 7 to 14 days.

      NOTE: Allow troche to dissolve slowly in the mouth. Dissolution is complete in approximately 30 minutes. The patient should not take anything else orally for 30 minutes after using the above topical agent. Adherence to these regimens is often poor because of time requirements.

2. Severe Cases

a. Fluconazole 100mg PO once daily for 7 to 14 days.

NOTE: Treatment with fluconazole can result in selective growth of non-*Candida* species and should only be implemented when necessitated by more severe disease. Oral candidiasis can develop resistance to fluconazole. Fluconazole may interact with other medications. Review the patient's current medication list, including OTC drugs/products and nutritional or herbal supplements, and check for drug-drug interactions.

NOTE: Tipranavir: Fluconazole >200 mg daily is not recommended. If high-dose fluconazole is indicated, consider alternative ARV.

Nevirapine: Increased risk of hepatotoxicity possible with this combination. Monitor NVP toxicity or use alternative ARV agent.

Warfarin Interaction: Increased risk of severe bleeding. Warfarin dose adjustment may be necessary.

3. Maintenance Therapy (Frequent or Severe Recurrences) Oral Treatment:

a. Clotrimazole one troche 10mg dissolved in mouth 3 times/day,

OR

b. Fluconazole 100mg tablet by mouth daily,

OR

c. Fluconazole 100mg by mouth three times/week.

NOTE: Use fluconazole with caution when considering chronic maintenance therapy because it has been associated with refractory and azole-resistant candidiasis. Chronic suppressive therapy is usually not recommended unless patients have frequent or severe recurrences. Chemoprophylaxis, either chronic maintenance therapy or secondary prophylaxis, against oral candidiasis using systemically absorbed azoles should not be initiated during pregnancy.

Furthermore, prophylaxis with systemic azoles should be discontinued in women **living with HIV** who become pregnant.

4. Angular cheilitis

   Topical Treatment:

   a. 2% ketoconazole cream applied to affected angles on the mouth **four** times/day for 14 days,

   OR

   b. 1% clotrimazole cream applied to affected angles on the mouth **four** times/day for 14 days.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Instruct patient to maintain good oral hygiene and to avoid mouth trauma (e.g., use a soft toothbrush, don't eat food or drink liquids that are too hot in temperature or too spicy).

2. Rinse mouth of all food before using topical agents and take nothing by mouth for 30 minutes after using agents.

3. Explain reason for regimen. Review current drug regimen, including drug storage, dose, route of administration, schedule, side effects and follow-up monitoring.

4. Explain that he/she may need maintenance therapy because frequent relapse is common, and to notify his/her provider if condition worsens, does not improve or if relapse occurs.

5. For patients with oral candidiasis and dentures or partial denture plates, instruct to:

   a. Disinfect the denture, when outside the mouth by soaking in a 50/50 mix of 0.125% chlorhexidine mouth rinse and water. In addition, antifungal therapy is recommended (see antifungal treatment options above).
   b. Dentures should be cleaned daily by soaking and brushing with an effective, nonabrasive denture cleanser. Toothpaste should not be used to clean complete or partial dentures.
   c. Denture cleansers should ONLY be used to clean dentures outside of the mouth.

d. Dentures should always be thoroughly rinsed after soaking and brushing with denture-cleansing solutions prior to reinsertion into the oral cavity. Always follow the product usage instructions.
e. It is not recommended that dentures be worn continuously (24 hours per day) in an effort to reduce or minimize denture stomatitis. **Dentures/partials should be removed at night.**
f. Dentures should be stored immersed in a 50/50 mix of 0.125 chlorhexidine mouth rinse and water or a **water-based** solution, when not replaced in the oral cavity, to avoid warping.

6. Counsel tobacco users on cessation and refer to Georgia Tobacco Quit Line https://dph.georgia.gov/reahttps://dph.georgia.gov/ready-quitdy-quit.

7. Instruct patient to avoid high sugar content foods when candidiasis is present.

8. Ask female patient to inform her provider if she is, or is planning to become, pregnant. If taking fluconazole, instruct to stop taking this medication and notify provider.

9. If the patient is taking fluconazole, ask patient to check with his/her pharmacist or provider about interactions before taking a new medication, nutritional or herbal supplement or OTC drug/product.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Routine appointments with provider, as indicated, at least every 3-6 months.

2. For patients taking fluconazole maintenance therapy, monitor hepatic and renal function (**e.g.,** comprehensive metabolic panel) every 6-12 weeks.

3. Assess need for continued maintenance therapy during each visit with discontinuation of maintenance therapy if the patient is asymptomatic and the CD4 count is greater than 200 cells/mm^3, following initiation of ART.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Consult delegating physician **or designated provider** of the following:

    a. Severe or unresponsive candidiasis.
    b. Abnormal lab results, as indicated.
    c. Suspect esophageal candidiasis (e.g., patient reports painful swallowing, retrosternal pain, and nausea).
    d. Medication side effects and/or adverse events.

2. Refer pregnant patients to delegating physician.

3. Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed, and HIV/AIDS nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

REFERENCES

1. David Felton, et al., "Evidence-Based Guidelines for the Care and Maintenance of Complete Dentures: A Publication of the American College of Prosthodontists," *Journal of Prosthodontics,* 2011, Vol. 20, pp. S1-S12. (Current).

2. National HIV Curriculum, "Oral Manifestations', **2019**, <https://www.hiv.uw.edu/go/basic-primary-care/oral-manifestations/core-concept/all> **(March 7, 2019)**.

3. National Institutes of Health, U.S. National Library of Medicine, "DailyMed", <https://dailymed.nlm.nih.gov/dailymed/ > **(March 7, 2019).**

4. **Pacific AIDS Education and Training Center, "HIV Essentials and Quick Clinical Guides", November 2018, < http://paetc.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/12/PAETC_HIVEssentialsAndQuickClinicalGuides.pdf > (March 7, 2019).**

5. Panel on Opportunistic Infections in HIV-Infected Adults and Adolescents. "Guidelines for the prevention and treatment of opportunistic infections in HIV-infected adults and adolescents: recommendations from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, the National Institutes of Health, and the HIV Medicine Association of the Infectious Diseases Society of America," **February 15, 2019**, <http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/contentfiles/lvguidelines/adult_oi.pdf> **(March 7, 2019).**

6. Peter G. Pappas, et al., "Clinical Practice Guideline for the Management of Candidiasis: 2016 Update by the Infectious Diseases Society of America," *Clinical Infectious Diseases,* Vol. 62, No. 4, February 2016, pp. e1-50.

7. Surbhi Gupta, Medscape, "Mucosal Candidiasis," **September 24, 2018**, <http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/1075227-overview> **(March 7, 2019**).

8. UC San Diego Health, "Drug Interactions", **2019**, <https://health.ucsd.edu/specialties/anticoagulation/providers/warfarin/pages/druginteractions.aspx> **(March 7, 2019**).

9. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, "Table 3. Laboratory Testing Schedule for Monitoring HIV-Infected Patients Before and After Initiation of Antiretroviral Therapy," AIDSinfo Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in HIV-1-Infected Adults and Adolescents Laboratory Testing for Initial Assessment and Monitoring of HIV-Infected Patients on Antiretroviral Therapy, **October 25, 2018**, <https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/1/adult-and-adolescent-arv-guidelines/3/tests-for-initial-assessment-and-follow-up> (**March 7, 2019**).

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

PRE-EXPOSURE PROPHYLAXIS (PrEP) USE IN THE PREVENTION OF HIV

CLINICAL REVIEW TEAM

Gregory S. Felzien, MD, AAHIVS Medical Advisor, Division of Health Protection, HIV unit Georgia Department of Public Health	**Meshell McCloud, MS, APRN, WHNP-BC, RN** Deputy Chief Nurse Georgia Department of Public Health
Mark Elam, MD Medical Director Georgia Department of Public Health Districts 1-1 & 1-2	**Jeffery Dockery, M.D. DABFM, FAAFP, AAHIVS** Physician, Southeast Health District 9-1 Georgia Department of Public Health
Gay Campbell, R.Ph. ADAP Pharmacy Director Georgia Department of Public Health	**Brooke Mootry, MSW, CHES** HIV Prevention Manager, Office of HIV/AIDS Georgia Department of Public Health

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PRE-EXPOSURE PROPHYLAXIS (PrEP) USE IN THE PREVENTION OF HIV

DEFINITION Pre-exposure prophylaxis (PrEP) is a course of HIV drugs taken by HIV-negative individuals to reduce their risk of acquiring HIV infection. PrEP can virtually eliminate the risk of getting HIV if taken consistently and correctly. PrEP is not taken for life; it is only taken for short periods when a person may be at risk of HIV infection.

ETIOLOGY The anti-HIV drugs in PrEP stop the virus from replicating in the human body. If a person is exposed to HIV but has been taking PrEP correctly, there will be high enough levels of the drugs in the body to prevent the person from becoming HIV-infected.

ELIGIBILITY This PrEP protocol may only be offered to eligible persons who meet the following requirements:

1. In combination with safer sex practices for HIV-1 pre-exposure prophylaxis (PrEP) to reduce the risk of sexually acquired HIV-1 in at-risk adults and adolescents (13-17 years old) weighing at lease 35kg (77lbs).

   NOTE: The consent to the provision of medical or surgical care or services when such consent is given by a minor who is or professes to be afflicted with a venereal disease or at risk for HIV shall be as valid and binding if the minor had achieved his or her majority. O.C.G.A. §31-17-7(a).

2. Individuals with HIV uninfected documentation within 7 days of initiating or re-initiating PrEP (Appendix A). Documentation may include:

   a. Blood draw, such as routine HIV enzyme-linked immunoassay (EIA) OR

   b. Rapid, point-of-care, FDA-approved, fingerstick blood test.

      NOTE: Oral rapid tests should not be used to screen for HIV infection when considering PrEP use because they can be less sensitive than blood tests. Also, DO NOT accept patient-reported test results or documented anonymous test results.

   c. A preliminary positive HIV antibody test must be confirmed by 4th generation testing.

NOTE: Immediately link all positive patients to care https://www.gacapus.com/r/resource-directory-2/

3. Individuals at risk for HIV infection include:

    a. Men who have sex with men (MSM) or transgender (male to female (MTF)) individuals who have sex with men who are at ongoing, high risk for acquisition of HIV, as indicated by:

        i. Any male sex partners in the past 6 months who are not in a monogamous partnership with a recently tested, HIV negative man;

        AND at least one of the following:

        ii. Any anal sex without condoms (receptive or insertive) in the past 6 months.
        iii. Any STI diagnosed or reported in the past 6 months (syphilis, gonorrhea, chlamydia, etc.).
        iv. Is in an ongoing sexual relationship with an HIV positive male partner.
        v. Exchanges sex for money, gifts, or resources.
        vi. High-risk sex practices.
        Appendix B (table 1 and 2).

    b. Heterosexual women and men who report any sex with opposite sex partners in the last 6 months who are not in a monogamous partnership with a recently tested HIV negative partner

        AND meet at least one of the following criteria:

        i. Is a man who has sex with both women and men (evaluate MSM PrEP indications above).
        ii. Either does not use or infrequently uses condoms during sex with 1 or more partners of unknown HIV status who are known to be at high risk of HIV infection (injection drug use (IDU) or MSM).
        iii. Is in an ongoing sexual relationship with an HIV positive partner.
        iv. Any STI diagnosed or reported in the past 6 months (syphilis, gonorrhea, chlamydia, etc.).
        v. Exchanges sex for money, gifts, or resources.
        vi. High-risk sex practices.
        Appendix B (table 3).

vii. Lives in a high-HIV-prevalence area or network.

NOTE: A high-HIV-prevalence area can be defined as a setting with a high burden of HIV as evidenced by adult HIV prevalence at 1% or greater. For more information, please refer to http://www.who.int/hiv/pub/guidelines/arv2013/intro/keyterms/en/

c. Individuals who inject substances

AND meet at least one of the following criteria:

i. Any sharing of injection or drug preparation equipment in the past 6 months.
ii. In a methadone, buprenorphine, or suboxone treatment program in the past 6 months.
iii. Has an HIV-positive, injecting partner.
iv. Risk of sexual acquisition (assess 3a. and 3b. above).
v. Risk assessment. Appendix B (table 4).

INELIGIBILITY Persons are NOT eligible to receive PrEP if they:

1. Have evidence of confirmed HIV infection by laboratory testing.

2. Have clinical signs and symptoms consistent with possible acute HIV infection, such as: fever, chills, rash, night sweats, muscle aches, sore throat, fatigue, swollen lymph nodes, and/or mouth ulcers.

3. Have underlying renal disease (eGFR less than 60 ml/min, significant proteinuria for Truvada™ (TDF/FTC) **or Generic Emtricitabine and Tenofovir Disoproxil Fumarate (Generic FTC/TDF)** and eGFR less than 30ml/min, significant proteinuria for Descovy™ (TAF/FTC)) (see CONSULTATION/REFERRAL section below)

4. Have underlying bone disease (osteopenia/osteoporosis).

5. Are unwilling to adhere to daily Truvada™, **Generic FTC/TDF or** Descovy™ AND attend follow up visits every 3 months.

6. Have known chronic, active Hepatitis B infection.

7. Are pregnant or breastfeeding.

8. Will require further provider evaluation prior to initiating PrEP due to unstable comorbidities.

9. For Descovy™ at risk of HIV-1 from receptive vaginal sex because effectiveness in this population has not been evaluated

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient is eligible to receive PrEP according to the eligibility criteria listed above in the DEFINITION section.

2. Patient denies having flu-like symptoms within the past 2-4 weeks which resolved over a few days to several weeks.

3. Patient denies having fever, chills, rash, night sweats, muscle aches, sore throat, fatigue, swollen lymph nodes, and/or mouth ulcers.

4. Medical history negative for any medical, relative, or absolute contraindications to PrEP which may include complicated medical conditions or potential drug-drug interactions. Consult with Delegating Physician or Medical Director or visit www.gacapus.com for potential referral to PrEP clinic when assessing the safety of starting PrEP.

OBJECTIVE

1. Physical exam within normal limits.

ASSESSMENT

Patient eligible to receive PrEP.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

NOTE: All diagnostic studies should be obtained 7 days prior to date of the initial PrEP evaluation visit. Consult with Delegating Physician or Medical Director regarding any abnormal lab results. Do not initiate PrEP if patient has abnormal lab results without express approval of Delegating Physician or Medical Director.

1. HIV test. Routine HIV enzyme-linked immunoassay (EIA) or rapid, point-of-care, FDA-approved, fingerstick blood test. Nonreactive test result must be within 7 days of initiating and dispensing Truvada™, **Generic FTC/TDF** or Descovy ™.

2. Serum creatinine for creatinine clearance calculation (eGFR must be 60 ml/min or greater for Truvada™ or **Generic FTC/TDF** and 30ml/min or greater for Descovy™). Test result must be within 60 days of initiating and dispensing Truvada™, **Generic FTC/TDF** or Descovy™.

NOTE: Patients with an eGFR less than 60 mL/min if considering Truvada™ **or Generic FTC/TDF** or eGFR less than 30ml/min if considering Descovy™ should have the test repeated. Assess for use of potential nephrotoxic medications (e.g., NSAIDS, acyclovir, valacyclovir) and body building substances (e.g. creatinine, protein drinks). If repeated eGFR is 60 mL/min or greater for Truvada™or **Generic FTC/TDF** or 30ml/min or greater for Descovy™, the patient may initiate PrEP. If the repeated eGFR is less than 60 mL/min for Truvada™ **or Generic FTC/TDF** or less than 30ml/min for Descovy™, the patient may not begin PrEP. Patient will need to be referred to his/her primary care provider for assessment. Nephrology referral should also be considered.

3. Hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg), Hepatitis B surface antibody (HBsAb), and Hepatitis B total core antibody (HBcAb) if not currently documented. Hepatitis B vaccination should be offered, if indicated based on HBV laboratory studies. Please refer to the Immunization manual for further guidance.
NOTE: All persons who test positive for hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg) may not be treated with PrEP under this protocol; they should be evaluated by an infectious disease or hepatic disease specialist.

4. Hepatitis C antibody, if not previously documented. Appropriate referral to gastrointestinal, infectious disease, or a provider with HCV treatment experience for assessment should be made for individuals who are Hepatitis C virus positive.

5. Hepatitis A total antibody (HAV Ab), if not previously documented. Hepatitis A vaccination should be offered, if indicated based on HAV laboratory studies. Please refer to the Immunization manual for further guidance.

NOTE: The diagnosis of hepatitis A cannot be made on a clinical basis alone, but rather requires serologic testing. <u>The presence of IgM antibody to HAV is diagnostic of acute HAV infection</u>. A positive test for total anti-HAV indicates immunity to

HAV infection but does not differentiate current from previous HAV infection.

6. STI screening, if not conducted within the prior 3 months, the individual has signs or symptoms of an active STI, or the individual has risk factors for an acute STI (see STD Nurse Protocols). This screening should include gonorrhea/chlamydia (urine, rectal, and pharyngeal (GC only)) and syphilis (RPR or VDRL or reverse algorithm testing).

7. Pregnancy test for women of reproductive age, as appropriate. Women who are pregnant, planning to become pregnant, and/or breastfeeding may not begin PrEP under this protocol. Please refer them to the Delegating Physician, Medical Director, or Primary Care Provider for evaluation.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: As of March 15, 2018, the FDA approved Truvada™ as PrEP for adolescents at-risk for HIV, based on the ATN113 study. Recommended dosage in HIV-1 uninfected adults and adolescents weighing at least 35 kg (77 lbs) is one Truvada™ tablet once daily taken orally, with or without food.

On October 3, 2019, the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved Descovy™ (emtricitabine 200 mg and tenofovir alafenamide 25 mg) in at-risk adults and adolescents weighing at least 35kg for HIV-1 pre-exposure prophylaxis (PrEP) to reduce the risk of HIV-1 infection from sex, excluding those who have receptive vaginal sex. Descovy™ is not indicated in individuals at risk of HIV-1 infection from receptive vaginal sex because the effectiveness in this population has not been evaluated.

The dosage of Descovy™ for HIV-1 PrEP is one tablet (containing 200 mg of FTC and 25 mg of TAF) once daily taken orally with or without food in HIV-1 uninfected adults and adolescents weighing at least 35 kg and with a creatinine clearance greater than or

equal to 30 mL per minute, excluding individuals at risk from receptive vaginal sex.

1. Initial medication order:
   Tenofovir 300mg + Emtricitabine 200mg (Truvada™)

   OR

   Generic Emtricitabine 200mg + Tenofovir Disoproxil Fumarate 300mg (Generic FTC/TDF)

   OR

   Tenofovir Alafenamide 25mg + Emtricitabine 200mg (Descovy™)

   1 tablet orally daily for 30 days.

   In renally impaired HIV-uninfected individuals, Truvada™ **or Generic FTC/TDF** are not recommended if eGFR is below 60 mL/min.
   http://www.gilead.com/~/media/Files/pdfs/medicines/hiv/truvada/truvada_pi.pdf **and**
   https://www.tevahivgenerics.com/Truvada-generic/hcp

   In renally impaired HIV-uninfected individuals, Descovy™ is not recommended if eGFR is below 30 mL/min.
   https://www.gilead.com/~/media/Files/pdfs/medicines/hiv/descovy/descovy_pi.pdf

2. 1 month follow up for patients initiated or re-initiated on PrEP and dispensed an initial 30-day supply of Truvada™, **Generic FTC/TDF** or Descovy™. Only following documentation of adherence and no contraindications in continuing Truvada™, **Generic FTC/TDF** or Descovy™:

   Provide

   Tenofovir 300mg + Emtricitabine 200mg (Truvada™)

   OR

Generic Emtricitabine 200mg + Tenofovir Disoproxil Fumarate 300mg (Generic FTC/TDF)

OR

Tenofovir Alafenamide 25mg + Emtricitabine 200mg (Descovy™)

1 tablet orally daily for up to 60 days.

3. Following the initial dispense of Truvada™, **Generic FTC/TDF** or Descovy™ and 1 month follow up, schedule follow up every 3 months for patients only following documentation of adherence and no contraindications in continuing Truvada™, **Generic FTC/TDF** or Descovy™:

   Provide

   Tenofovir 300mg + Emtricitabine 200mg (Truvada™)

   OR

   Generic Emtricitabine 200mg + Tenofovir Disoproxil Fumarate 300mg (Generic FTC/TDF)

   OR

   Tenofovir Alafenamide 25mg + Emtricitabine 200mg (Descovy™)

   1 tablet orally daily for up to 90 days.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Counsel patient regarding the basics of PrEP.

2. Patients taking PrEP should be informed of side effects among HIV-uninfected participants in clinical trials. In these trials, side effects were uncommon and usually resolved within the first month of taking PrEP (“start-up syndrome”). Discuss the use of over-the-counter medications for headache, nausea, and flatulence should they occur. Patients should also be counseled about signs or symptoms that indicate a need for urgent

evaluation (e.g. those suggesting possible acute renal injury or acute HIV infection).

3. Provide patient centered risk reduction counseling, (e.g. partner(s) testing and referral to HIV care if at risk or HIV positive, serosorting, seropositioning, decreasing the number of partners, etc.), condoms, and medication adherence counseling.

4. Refer to package insert and U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (HHS) guidelines for details on possible changes to bone mineral density (BMD) on Truvada™ as appropriate.

   For more information, see:
   http://www.gilead.com/~/media/Files/pdfs/medicines/hiv/truvada/truvada_pi.pdf and
   https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/understanding-hiv-aids/fact-sheets/22/62/hiv-and-osteoporosis

5. The safety of PrEP with Truvada™, **Generic FTC/TDF** or Tenofovir disoproxil fumarate (TDF) alone for infants exposed during lactation has not been adequately studied. Therefore, women who choose to breastfeed may not be treated under this protocol.

6. Truvada™ or Generic FTC/TDF are not recommended in individuals with renal impairment (estimated creatinine clearance below 60 mL per minute). No dosage adjustment of Truvada™ **or Generic FTC/TDF** are recommended in individuals with estimated creatinine clearance greater than or equal to 60 ml per minute.

7. Descovy™ is not recommended in individuals with severe renal impairment (estimated creatinine clearance below 30 mL per minute). No dosage adjustment of Descovy™ is recommended in individuals with estimated creatinine clearance greater than or equal to 30 mL per minute.

8. The indication does not include use of Descovy™ in individuals at risk of HIV-1 from receptive vaginal sex because effectiveness in this population has not been evaluated.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Patient follow up:
    a. 1 month after initial PrEP initiation or re-initiation visit for adherence counseling and any required additional assessment (e.g. clinical and/or laboratory tests). During this visit confirm HIV-negative test status, assess for early side effects of medications, discuss any difficulties with medication adherence, and answer questions.

2. At least every 3 months the following diagnostic tests should be performed:

    a. HIV screening assay in assessing HIV status and verifying an HIV negative status prior to authorizing additional Truvada™, **Generic FTC/TDF** or Descovy™ refills. (Appendix A)

    b. Conduct STI screening for sexually active persons with signs or symptoms of infection and screening for asymptomatic MSM at high risk for recurrent bacterial STIs (e.g. those with syphilis, gonorrhea, or chlamydia at prior visits or multiple sex partners).

    c. Repeat pregnancy testing for women who may become pregnant, at least every 3 months.

3. At least every 6 months the following diagnostic tests should be performed:

    a. Serum creatinine for creatinine clearance calculation for eGFR. If other threats to renal safety are present (e.g. hypertension, diabetes, etc.), renal function may require more frequent monitoring or may need to include additional tests (e.g. urinalysis for proteinuria). A decrease in serum creatinine is not a reason to withhold treatment if eGFR remains 60 mL/min or greater for Truvada™ or **Generic FTC/TDF** and if eGFR remains 30ml/min or greater for Descovy™. If eGFR is declining steadily (but still 60 mL/min or greater for Truvada™ or **Generic FTC/TDF** and

still 30ml/min or greater for Descovy™), consult with a Delegating Physician or Medical Director.

b. Conduct STI testing (e.g. syphilis, gonorrhea, chlamydia). Testing may be indicated more often, e.g. every 3 months based on risk factors and exposures.

4. At least every 12 months evaluate the need to continue PrEP as a component of HIV prevention.

5. If a patient discontinues PrEP secondary to concern for possible acute retroviral syndrome, HIV viral load and HIV antibody testing should be conducted within 7 days prior to reinitiating PrEP.

6. If a patient discontinues PrEP by personal choice, non-adherence to laboratory follow-up, intolerance to Truvada ™, **Generic FTC/TDF** or Descovy ™ or reduction in HIV risk they should receive counseling on HIV risk reduction strategies, as well as education on safely restarting PrEP. If the patient has not yet stopped PrEP, yet is considering or wanting to stop PrEP, then discuss continuing PrEP for 28 days after the last high-risk exposure.

Recommended Laboratory Testing/Screening for Individuals Taking PrEP					
Test/Screening	Baseline	Every 3 months	At least every 6 months	At least every 12 months	Notes
Provider assessment	✓	✓			- Discuss adherence, side effects, barriers, etc.
Risk assessment	✓			✓	- Consider discussing continued risk and need of PrEP at each appointment
HIV screening assay	✓	✓			- Consider need for HIV RNA PCR for acute HIV
HAV, HBV, HCV screening	✓				- Offer HAV & HBV vaccination if not immune
Serum creatinine (eGFR)	✓		✓		- Avoid PrEP if eGFR less than 60 ml/min for Truvada™ or **Generic FTC/TDF and** if eGFR is less than 30ml/min for Descovy™
STI screening		✓			- STI testing for those who are symptomatic or at risk for an STI
STI testing	✓		✓		- Include oral/rectal screen for MSM at risk
Pregnancy test for women of childbearing age	✓	✓			- Safety of PrEP in pregnancy has not been established

Adapted from: https://www.hiv.uw.edu/go/prevention/preexposure-prophylaxis-prep/core-concept/all

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Refer to Delegating Physician, Medical Director and/or Primary Care Provider;

    a. If at any time patient's lab results are abnormal.

    b. If patient is experiencing side effects from PrEP.

    c. If a patient discontinues PrEP due to HIV seroconversion, they should be offered immediate linkage to care and antiretroviral therapy through the RAPID program. Linkage to care can be assisted through www.gacapus.com.

    d. Are HIV positive; also refer to infectious disease/HIV specialist. Linkage to care can be assisted through www.gacapus.com.

    e. Have signs and symptoms of acute HIV infection.

f. Have renal impairment (eGFR less than 60 mL/min for Truvada™ **or Generic FTC/TDF** and eGFR less than 30ml/min for Descovy™ Also refer to nephrologist, if able.

g. Are pregnant or breastfeeding.

   Mothers infected with HIV-1 should be instructed not to breastfeed, due to the potential for HIV transmission.

h. Have comorbidities and/or drug-drug interactions where PrEP is contraindicated.

i. Have underlying bone disease, e.g. osteopenia or osteoporosis.

j. Have chronic Hepatitis B or Hepatitis C infection. Also refer to infectious disease, hepatic disease specialist, or provider experienced in Hepatitis C treatment, if able.

k. Are repeatedly non-adherent despite intensive counseling.

REFERENCES

1. Grant RM, Lama JR, Anderson PL, et al. Preexposure chemoprophylaxis for HIV prevention in men who have sex with men. *N Engl J Med.* 2010;363(27):2587-2599.

2. Thigpen MC, Kebaabetswe PM, Paxton LA, et al. Antiretroviral preexposure prophylaxis for heterosexual HIV transmission in Botswana. *N Engl J Med.* 2012;367(5):423-434.

3. Baeten JM, Donnell D, Ndase P, et al. Antiretroviral prophylaxis for HIV prevention in heterosexual men and women. *N Engl J Med.* 2012;367(5):399-410.

4. Choopanya K, Martin M, Suntharasamai P, et al. Antiretroviral prophylaxis for HIV infection in injecting drug users in Bangkok, Thailand (the Bangkok Tenofovir Study): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled phase 3 trial. *Lancet.* 2013;381(9883):2083-2090.

5. Molina J-M, Capitant C, Charreau I, et al. On Demand PrEP with Oral TDF-FTC in MSM: Results of the ANRS Ipergay Trial. Conference on Retroviruses and Opportunistic Infections (CROI) 2015. Abstract 23LB.

6. McCormack S, Dunn D. Pragmatic Open-Label Randomised Trial of Preexposure Prophylaxis: The PROUD Study. Conference on Retroviruses and Opportunistic Infections (CROI) 2015. Abstract 22LB.

7. Grant RM, Anderson PL, McMahan V, et al. Uptake of pre-exposure prophylaxis, sexual practices, and HIV incidence in men and transgender women who have sex with men: a cohort study. *Lancet Infect Dis.* 2014.

8. Centers for Disease Control (CDC). New HIV Pre-Exposure Prophylaxis Guidelines. Press Release issued May 15, 2014. http://www.empr.com/cdc-new-hiv-pre-exposure-prophylaxis-guidelines/article/347053/ (Accessed August 25, 2014).

9. Liu A, Cohen S, Follansbee S, et al. Early experiences implementing pre-exposure prophylaxis (PrEP) for HIV prevention in San Francisco. *PLoS Med.* 2014;11(3): e1001613.

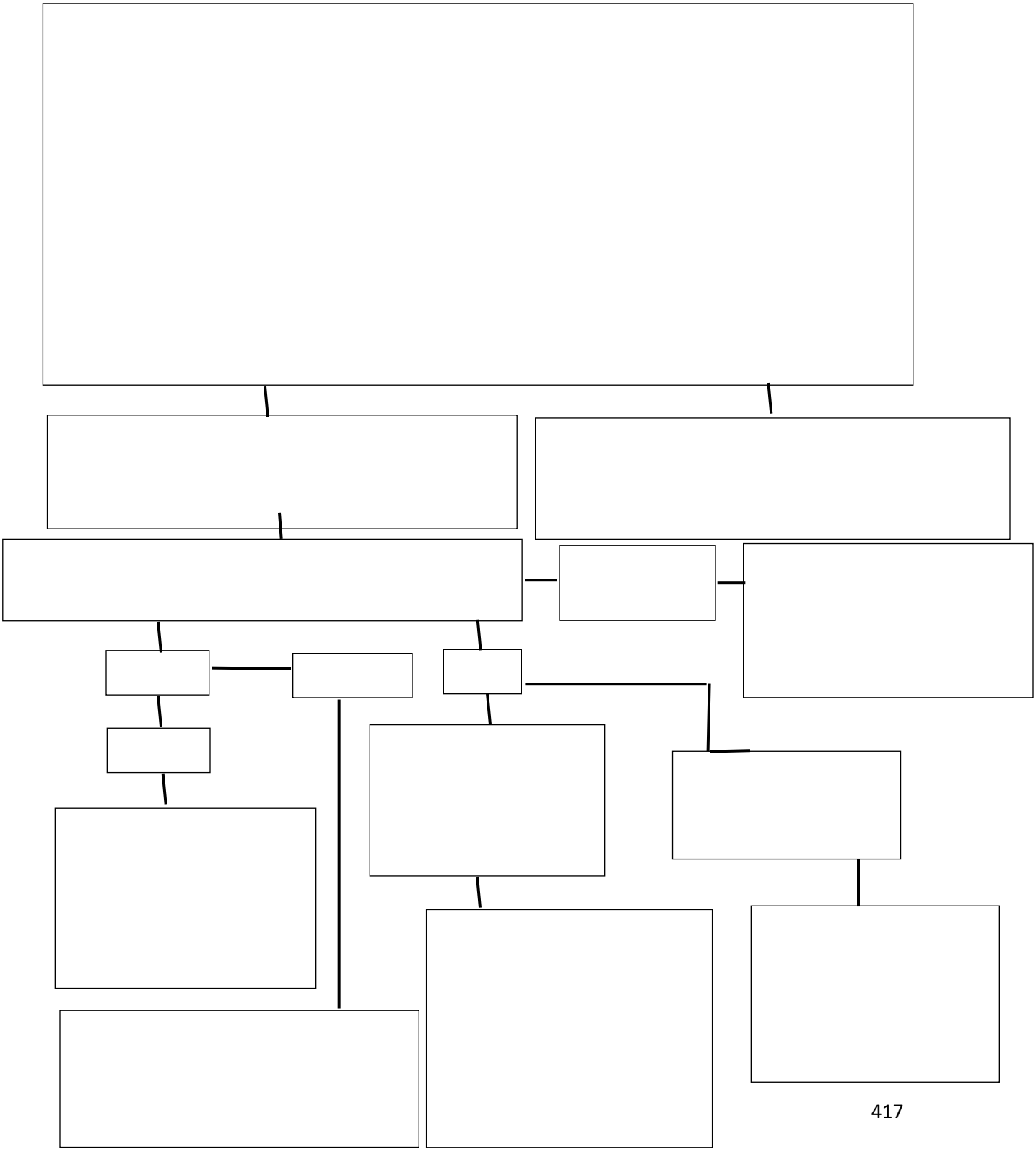
10. US Public Health Service. Pre-exposure Prophylaxis for the Prevention of HIV Infection in the United States – 2017 Update Clinical Practice Guideline. (page 41). Accessed August 2, 2018. https://www.cdc.gov/hiv/pdf/risk/prep/cdc-hiv-prep-guidelines-2017.pdf

11. US Public Health Service. Pre-exposure Prophylaxis for the Prevention of HIV Infection in the United States – 2017 Update Clinical Providers' Supplement. Accessed August 2, 2018. https://www.cdc.gov/hiv/pdf/risk/prep/cdc-hiv-prep-provider-supplement-2017.pdf

12. Clinician Consultation Center. University of California, San Francisco. Accessed August 13, 2018. http://nccc.ucsf.edu/.
13. DESCOVY™ Prescribing Information Leaflet, 2019. https://www.gilead.com/~/media/Files/pdfs/medicines/hiv/descovy/descovy_pi.pdf
14. **Generic Emtricitabine/Tenofovir Disoproxil Fumarate 300mg Prescribing information. Accessed December 30, 2020.** https://www.tevahivgenerics.com/Truvada-generic/hcp.

Appendix 1: Same Day PrEP

Definition: The prescribing of PrEP medication for the prevention of HIV in a documented HIV negative individual while awaiting test results drawn on the day of assessment.



NOTE: Maximum intracellular concentrations of TDF are reached in blood after approximately 20 days of daily oral dosing, in rectal tissue at approximately 7 days, and in cervicovaginal tissues at approximately 20 days. No data are available about intracellular drug concentrations in penile tissues susceptible to HIV infection to inform considerations of protection for male insertive sex partners.

NOTE: Descovy™ is not indicated for use in individuals at risk of HIV-1 from receptive vaginal sex because effectiveness in this population has not been evaluated.

NOTE: For individuals with active HBV infection (detectable HBsAg), discontinuation of TDF/FTC **or Generic FTC/TDF** PrEP could lead to acute HBV flares or hepatic decompensation, particularly for patients with hepatic cirrhosis. This may also occur with TAF/FTC **or Generic FTC/TDF** therefore, careful monitoring of HBV infection and liver function is recommended after discontinuation of TDF/FTC, **Generic FTC/TDF** or TAF/FTC. If appropriate, anti-hepatitis B therapy may be considered.

Acronyms:

- HBV: Hepatitis B
- sAg: surface antigen
- sAb: surface antibody
- TDF/FTC: Truvada™
- TAF/FTC: Descovy™
- TDF: Tenofovir disoproxil fumarate
- eGFR: estimated glomerular filtration rate in mL/min
- TGF: Transgender Female

References:

1. eGFR calculation for individuals less than 18 years of age: *https://www.ebmconsult.com/app/medical-calculators/pediatric-gfr-calculator-renal-function*
2. https://clincalc.com/Kinetics/CrCl.aspx
3. https://www.iasusa.org/wp-content/uploads/guidelines/arv/arv_2018.pdf
4. https://www.cdc.gov/hiv/pdf/risk/prep/cdc-hiv-prep-guidelines-2017.pdf
5. https://www.gilead.com/~/media/Files/pdfs/medicines/hiv/truvada/truvada_pi.pdf
6. https://www.gilead.com/~/media/Files/pdfs/medicines/hiv/descovy/descovy_pi.pdf

Appendix 2: PrEP On-demand

Definition: Pericoital Truvada ™ (TDF/FTC) PrEP, also known as on-demand, event-driven, or "2-1-1" dosing may be considered as an alternative to daily PrEP for MSM with infrequent sexual exposures.

Criteria: On-demand PrEP is only indicated for men who have sex with men (MSM)

Dosing: On-demand PrEP "2-1-1" dosing with TDF/FTC:
1st dose: (2) tablets by mouth once with food 2 to ideally 24 hours **before sex**
2nd dose: (1) tablet by mouth once with food 24 hours **after the 1st dose**
3rd dose: (1) tablet by mouth once with food 24 hours **after the 2nd dose**

If intercourse is planned in the context of 2-1-1 PrEP dosing, the first dose (2 tablets) of TDF/FTC should be taken closer to the 24-hour precoital time than the 2-hour time.

For consecutive sexual contacts, men should be instructed to take 1 tablet by mouth once daily with food until 2 days after the last sexual encounter.

Contraindications: This regimen is not recommended in other risk groups or in patients with active HBV infection because of the risk of hepatitis flare, hepatic decompensation and HBV resistance.

Lack of data among heterosexual men and women, transgender men and women, and people who inject drugs precludes recommendation of the "2-1-1" dosing in these populations.

Follow-up: Per PrEP protocol plus for individuals with 2 or more sexual encounters in a 30-day period, daily PrEP should be discussed.

References:

1. https://www.iasusa.org/wp-content/uploads/guidelines/arv/arv_2018.pdf
2. https://www.cdc.gov/hiv/pdf/risk/prep/cdc-hiv-prep-guidelines-2017.pdf
3.https://www.gilead.com/~/media/Files/pdfs/medicines/hiv/truvada/truvada_pi.pdf

Appendix 3: PrEP Management Checklist

PrEP MANAGEMENT CHECKLIST: PRE-PRESCRIPTION, FOLLOW-UP, AND MONITORING
Refer to GA-DPH Nurse PrEP protocol for additional details, clarification and for medical decision making

❑ PRE-PRESCRIPTION

- Discuss PrEP use; clarify inclusion/exclusion criteria (HIV risk, drug interactions, acute HIV etc.)
- Assess PrEP medication coverage, Appendix C PrEP protocol
- Perform baseline laboratory testing:
  - HIV test; immediately link all positive tests to care
  - Serum creatinine for eGFR.
  - STI testing (GC, Chlamydia, Syphilis) if not conducted in the previous 3 months

Note: MSM and TGF, 3-site testing (genital, rectal, pharyngeal) for GC and chlamydia regardless of sites of reported exposure

  - Pregnancy test; individuals of childbearing capacity
  - HAV serology: offer vaccine as indicated (HAV IgG or total)
  - HBV serologies: offer vaccine as indicated (HBsAg, anti-HBs, anti-HBc [IgG or total])
    If same day PrEP, then draw HBsAg with reflex to HBV DNA or separate HBV DNA depending on lab availability: Appendix 1
  - HCV antibody

❑ AFTER DRAWING APPROPRIATE TESTS

- Consult / Refer to delegating physician, medical director, PCP as directed by Nurse PrEP protocol
- Provide patient centered risk reduction counseling
- TDF/FTC (Truvada™) or **Generic FTC/TDF**: eGFR of greater than or equal to 60 mL/min
- TAF/FTC (Descovy™): for cisgender MSM and TGF only (eGFR of greater than or equal to 30 mL/min)
- Daily dosing is preferred, but On-demand PrEP is an acceptable alternative for cisgender MSM. See PrEP nurse protocol Appendix 2
- Assure HIV test results are available and acted upon within 7 days of initiation of PrEP
- Contact patient within 2 weeks to ensure:
  - Prescription filled and taken as prescribed
  - Problems with payment for PrEP are solved
  - Any side effects are addressed
- Instruct patient to report side effects immediately

❑ AT EVERY FOLLOW-UP VISIT

- Assess and discuss strategies for maintaining adherence; explore and address potential barriers to ongoing use of and adherence to PrEP
- Discuss risk reduction in the context of sexual health or injection drug use; offer condoms, syringe access, etc.
- Assess for possibility of pregnancy and offer birth control and pregnancy testing when appropriate
- Inquire about side effects and offer advice for management as needed
- Partner with providers in providing services; subspecialty medical care, mental health, substance use treatment, case management, navigation and linkage services, housing assistance, income/ benefits assessments, etc.
- Make every effort to avoid discontinuing PrEP or withholding it from a patient at risk of acquiring HIV, especially in Individuals with chronic active HBV
- Ask about symptoms suggestive of STIs and test those at risk
- Screen for symptoms of acute HIV and test as indicated

❑ TESTING / SCREENING: EVERY 3 MONTHS

- Test for HIV infection (see PrEP nurse protocol for details)
- Conduct STI screening and proceed with testing if indicated, i.e. symptomatic or risk of new infection (GC, Chlamydia, Syphilis)

Note:
  - Perform NAATs for gonococcal and chlamydial infections for all patients at all sites of reported exposure.
  - For all MSM and TGF, routinely perform 3-site testing (genital, rectal, and pharyngeal) for gonorrhea and chlamydia regardless of sites of reported exposure, unless declined

❑ EVERY 6 MONTHS

- Conduct STI testing (GC, Chlamydia, Syphilis; as above)
- Obtain serum creatinine and eGFR
  - Discontinue Truvada™ or **Generic FTC/TDF** if confirmed eGFR less than 60 mL/min.
  - Discontinue Descovy™ if confirmed eGFR less than 30 mL/min.
  - Consult / Refer clients with chronic active HBV prior to discontinuation

❑ AT LEAST ANNUALLY

- Assess need for PrEP

Note: anti-HBc, hepatitis B core antibody; anti-HBs, hepatitis B surface antibody; eGFR, estimated glomerular filtration rate; FTC, emtricitabine; GC, gonorrhea; HAV, hepatitis A virus; HBsAg, hepatitis B surface antigen; HBV, hepatitis B virus; HCV, hepatitis C virus; IgG, immunoglobulin G; MSM, men who have sex with men; NAAT, nucleic acid amplification test; PrEP, pre-exposure prophylaxis; STI, sexually transmitted infection; TAF, tenofovir alafenamide; TDF, tenofovir disoproxil fumarate; TGF, Transgender Female

References

1. GA-DPH PrEP nurse protocol. https://dph.georgia.gov/office-nursing/nurse-protocols-and-quality-assurancequality-improvement

2. US Public Health Service PREEXPOSURE PROPHYLAXIS FOR THE PREVENTION OF HIV INFECTION IN THE UNITED STATES – 2017 UPDATE A CLINICAL PRACTICE GUIDELINE. https://www.cdc.gov/hiv/pdf/risk/prep/cdc-hiv-prep-guidelines-2017.pdf

3. NEW YORK STATE DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AIDS INSTITUTE, Clinical Guidelines Program, Appendices: PrEP Checklists. https://www.hivguidelines.org/prep-for-prevention/prep/appendices/

Acknowledgments:

Gregory S. Felzien, MD, AAHIVS
Medical Advisor, Division of Health Protection, HIV unit
Georgia Department of Public Health
Rebekah Chance-Revels, MSN-RN, WHNP-BC
Deputy Chief Nurse--Education and Professional Development
Georgia Department of Public Health
Jeffery Dockery, M.D. DABFM, FAAFP, AAHIVS
Deputy District Director/Wellness and Infectious Disease Programs
Southeast Heath District
Brooke Mootry, MSW, CHES
HIV Prevention Manager, Office of HIV/AIDS
Georgia Department of Public Health
John A. Malone, EdD
MSM Coordinator, HIV/AIDS Unit
Georgia Department of Public Health
Mark Elam, MD
Medical Director
Georgia Department of Public Health Districts 1-1 & 1-2
Ellie Purdy, FNP-BC, AAHIVS
Advanced Practice RN 1
North Georgia Health District 1-2
Aimee Dickson, BSN, RN
Nurse Case Manager
North Georgia Health District 1-2

Appendix A: Clinician Determination of HIV Status for PrEP Provision

US Public Health Service. Pre-exposure Prophylaxis for the Prevention of HIV Infection in the United States – 2017 Update Clinical Practice Guideline. (page 41). Accessed August 2, 2018. https://www.cdc.gov/hiv/pdf/risk/prep/cdc-hiv-prep-guidelines-2017.pdf

Appendix B Risk Behavior Assessment Tables

Table 1: Risk Behavior Assessment for MSM or MTF transgender individuals

Table 2

MSM/MTF Transgender Individual Risk Index		
1. How old are you today?	If <18 years, score 0 If 18-28 years, score 8 If 29-40 years, score 5 If 41-48 years, score 2 If 49 years or more, score 0	Score:
2. In the last 6 months, how many men have you had sex with?	If >10 male partners, score 7 If 6-10 male partners, score 4 If 0-5 male partners, score 0	Score:
3. In the last 6 months, how many times did you have receptive anal sex (you were the bottom) with a man, when he did not use a condom?	If 1 or more times, score 10 If 0 times, score 0	Score:
4. In the last 6 months, how many of your male sex partners were HIV-positive?	If >1 positive partner, score 8 If 1 positive partner, score 4 If <1 positive partner, score 0	Score:
5. In the last 6 months, how many times did you have insertive anal sex (you were the top) with a man who was HIV-positive when you did not use a condom?	If 5 or more times, score 6 If 0-4 times, score 0	Score:
6. In the last 6 months, have you used methamphetamines such as crystal or speed?	If yes, score 6 If no, score 0	Score:
	Add down entries in right column to calculate total score	Total:

If score is 10 or greater, evaluate for intensive HIV prevention services including PrEP.
If score is below 10, provide indicated standard HIV prevention services.
https://www.cdc.gov/hiv/pdf/risk/prep-cdc-hiv-prep-provider-supplement-2017.pdf pg.22

Table 3: Risk Behavior Assessment for Heterosexual Men and Women

https://www.cdc.gov/hiv/pdf/risk/prep/cdc-hiv-prep-guidelines-2017.pdf (pg. 34)

Table 4

People who Inject Drugs (PWID) / Injection Drug Users (IDU) Risk Index					
1	How old are you today (in years)?	If <30 years, score 38 If 30-39 years, score 24 If 40-49 years, score 7 If ≥50 years, score 0			Score:
2	In the last 6 months, were you in a methadone maintenance program?	If yes, score 0 If no, score 31			Score:
3	In the last 6 months, how often did you inject heroin?	If 1 or more times, If 0 times,	Injection sub-score 1 Injection sub-score 0	Score:	
	In the last 6 months, how often did you inject cocaine?	If 1 or more times, If 0 times,	Injection sub-score 1 Injection sub-score 0	Score:	
	In the last 6 months, how often did you share a cooker?	If 1 or more times, If 0 times,	Injection sub-score 1 Injection sub-score 0	Score:	
	In the last 6 months, how often did you share needles?	If 1 or more times, If 0 times,	Injection sub-score 1 Injection sub-score 0	Score:	
	In the last 6 months, how often did you visit a shooting gallery?	If 1 or more times, If 0 times,	Injection sub-score 1 Injection sub-score 0	Score:	
Add the five injection subscores (section 3) to obtain a Composite Injection Score		If sum of 5 injection subscores is; 0 1 2 3 4 5	then Composite Score is: 0 7 21 24 24 31		Score:
Add the scores for age (1) and methadone use (2) to the Composite Injection Subscore (3) to yield a Total Score					Total:

If the total score is 46 or greater, evaluate for PrEP or other intensive HIV prevention services for PWID. If score is 45 or less, provide indicated standard HIV prevention services for PWID. To identify active PWID in a clinician's practice, we recommend asking all their patients a routine question: "Have you ever injected drugs that were not prescribed for you by a physician?" If yes, ask, "When was the last time you injected any drugs?" Only complete PWID risk index if they have injected any nonprescription drug during the past 6 months.
https://www.cdc.gov/hiv/pdf/risk/prep-cdc-hiv-prep-provider-supplement-2017.pdf pg.29

Appendix C: Paying for PrEP Patient Insurance

Paying for PrEP Patient Insurance	PrEP Access
Uninsured and less than 500% Federal Poverty Level (FPL)	Gilead will provide PrEP through patient assistance (see below). May need to pay for office visit and labs.
Uninsured and more than 500% FPL	$1250/month for PrEP alone, without office visits and lab costs. Gilead offers $300/month co-pay assistance (see below).
Medicare	Most plans cover, some require prior authorization Plans tend to have higher co-pays; can't use Gilead co-pay card. Contact specific plan for more information May use Patient Access Network if less than 500% FPL (see below).
Employer-sponsored health insurance	Most cover, some require prior authorization, cost sharing varies. Gilead offers $300/month co-pay assistance (see below). May use Patient Access Network if less than 500% FPL (see below).
NOTE:	Gilead co-pay coupon card covers up to **$7200** per year for Descovy™, with no monthly limit for eligible patients.

- Gilead patient assistance (for patients without insurance):
  - The Gilead PrEP patient assistance program will provide (Truvada™ or **Descovy** at no cost for those who are uninsured and meet income guidelines
  - Fax application and proof of income to the program:
    - **Application:**
    - **https://services.gileadhiv.com/content/pdf/gilead_enrollment_form.pdf**
    - **Fax number: 1-800-216-6857**
    - **Phone number: 1-800-226-2056**

- **TEVA patient assistance for Generic FTC/TDF:**
  https://www.tevahivgenerics.com/Truvada-generic/support

- Gilead co-pay assistance (for patients with non-government insurance):
  - Patients sign up through website: http://www.gileadcopay.com/

- Website generates co-pay card and patients take card to pharmacy when picking up PrEP
- Phone number: 1-877-505-6986

The Gilead Advancing Access® program is committed to helping eligible patients afford their Gilead medication whether they are insured, uninsured, or underinsured

***Co-pay support is available for commercially insured eligible patients only. Subject to change; for full terms and conditions, visit www.gileadadvancingaccess.com/copay-coupon-card. This is not health insurance. Only accepted at participating pharmacies.**

Enroll patients at:

GileadAdvancingAccess.com/hcp

-OR-

1-800-226-2056 (Monday-Friday | 9 AM to 8 PM ET)

- Patient Access Network Foundation (for patients with insurance and less than 500% FPL)
  - Patients sign up through website: www.panfoundation.org/hiv-treatment-and-prevention
  - Phone number: 1-866-316-7263
  - Patients can sign up on their own or be enrolled by a healthcare provider

- Prior Authorization Language to Justify PrEP

  - Patient is high risk because [LIST PATIENT SPECIFIC RISK FACTORS]. Truvada™ **or Descovy™** for HIV pre-exposure prophylaxis is indicated. Lab evaluation shows a negative HIV test from [DATE] and normal kidney function from [DATE]. The patient is regularly followed at [NAME OF CLINIC] clinic and will be scheduled for counseling visits and ongoing monitoring of HIV status, kidney function, and STI screening every 3 months.

- Other resources for patients to access PrEP

  - My Prep Experience: http://myprepexperience.blogspot.com/p/truvada-track.html. Patients can e-mail problems in gaining access to myprepexperience@gmail.com. They have an online community that can work to help patient gain access to PrEP and report it on the website.
  - Clinical Trials: http://www.avac.org/trial-summary-table/prep. Patients can enroll in ongoing clinical trials and access PrEP for free

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR NON-OCCUPATIONAL POST-EXPOSURE PROPHYLAXIS (nPEP) USE IN THE PREVENTION OF SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED DISEASES (HIV, SYPHILIS, GONORRHEA, CHLAMYDIA, TRICHOMONAS) AND BLOODBORNE PATHOGENS

CLINICAL REVIEW TEAM

Gregory S. Felzien, MD, AAHIVS Medical Advisor, Division of Health Protection, HIV unit Georgia Department of Public Health	**Meshell McCloud, MS, APRN, WHNP-BC, RN** Deputy Chief Nurse Georgia Department of Public Health
Mark Elam, MD Medical Director Georgia Department of Public Health Districts 1-1 & 1-2	**Jeffery Dockery, M.D. DABFM, FAAFP, AAHIVS** Physician, Southeast Health District 9-1 Georgia Department of Public Health
Gay Campbell, R.Ph. ADAP Pharmacy Director Georgia Department of Public Health	**Brooke Mootry, MSW, CHES** HIV Prevention Manager, Office of HIV/AIDS Georgia Department of Public Health
John Nelson, PhD, CNS, CPNP *AETC NCRC, Program Director* *Rutgers School of Nursing*	**Carolyn Chu, MD, AAHIVS** *Clinical Director* *National Clinician Consultation Center | UCSF*
Gillian Greer, MD, AAHIVS *Physician, Coastal Health District 9-1* *Georgia Department of Public Health*	**Kristin Miller** *Chief Legal Officer* *Georgia Department of Public Health*
Andrea Gaines, BSN, RN *PH RN Supervisor* *Hall County Health Department* *District 2*	

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR NON-OCCUPATIONAL POST-EXPOSURE PROPHYLAXIS (nPEP) USE IN THE PREVENTION OF SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED DISEASES (HIV, SYPHILIS, GONORRHEA, CHLAMYDIA, TRICHOMONAS) AND BLOODBORNE PATHOGENS

DEFINITION Non-occupational post-exposure prophylaxis (nPEP) is a course of prophylactic sexually transmitted infection (STI) therapy that may include human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) drugs taken by HIV-negative individuals to reduce their risk of acquiring HIV infection. nPEP and other aspects of case management are utilized for persons with isolated exposure(s) outside health care settings to blood, genital secretions, or other potentially infectious body fluids that might contain STIs (i.e., HIV, syphilis, gonorrhea, chlamydia, trichomonas, hepatitis B, etc.) and/or other bloodborne pathogens. nPEP may include treatment of bacterial STIs and/or other bloodborne pathogens and virtually eliminate the risk of getting HIV if anti-retroviral medications (ARVs) are taken timely (within 72 hours) consistently and correctly. nPEP is not taken for life; it is only taken for short periods when a person has had a substantial risk exposure to STIs and/or other bloodborne pathogens through sexual or injection drug use behavior.

ETIOLOGY Immediate treatment, prophylaxis and vaccines can prevent long-term complications (PID, infertility, acquiring HIV, etc.). If HIV 3-drug antiretroviral medication nPEP is ordered, data supports that nPEP initiated as soon as possible within 72 hours after exposure and continued for 28 days with high medication adherence can reduce the risk for acquiring HIV infection after nonoccupational exposures. The nPEP antiretrovirals (ARVs) stop the virus from replicating in the human body. If a person is exposed to HIV, initiates HIV nPEP within 72 hours of the exposure and is taking nPEP correctly then nPEP can prevent the person from becoming HIV-infected.

ELIGIBILITY This nPEP protocol may only be offered to eligible persons who meet the following requirements:

1. Individuals 13 years of age and older who weigh at least 35kg (77lbs)

2. Exposure occurred within 72 hours of the nPEP assessment

3. Reported exposure presents a substantial risk for transmission; Appendix 1: Exposure is based on sexual behavior, assault and/or injection drug use

4. If HIV nPEP is considered, eligibility is only for individuals who are HIV negative

NOTE: The consent to the provision of medical or surgical care or services when such consent is given by a minor who is or professes to be afflicted with a venereal disease or at risk for HIV shall be as valid and binding if the minor had achieved his or her majority. O.C.G.A. § 31-17-7(a).

NOTE: Pregnant women may obtain nPEP following the same assessment for a non-pregnant woman following any of the above noted eligibilities.

NOTE: Current guidelines recommend that nPEP is provided for infrequent exposures. Individuals presenting for nPEP more than once a month should undergo further education on exposures prevention and should undergo assessment for PrEP per the PrEP nurse protocol.

NOTE: Facilities should be aware of sexual assault organizations available in their area. https://www.gnesa.org/

INELIGIBILITY This nPEP protocol may not be offered in the following situations:

1. Exposure occurred beyond 72 hours of the nPEP assessment

2. Individual with a baseline reactive rapid HIV test or is identified as having HIV

3. Index patient tests HIV negative after the exposure, if testing/results are available

4. Patient is already ordered, taking and adherent to pre-exposure prophylaxis (PrEP)

5. Reported exposure presents no substantial risk of HIV transmission; Appendix 1

6. Post-natal exposure of infants born to mothers with HIV

7. Acute HIV is suspected:
   fever, fatigue, myalgia, skin rash, headache, pharyngitis, cervical adenopathy, arthralgias, night sweats, diarrhea

8. Persons who engage in behaviors that result in frequent, recurrent exposures that would require sequential or near-continuous courses of

antiretroviral medication. See PrEP protocol and Appendix for same day PrEP.

9. Clinical staff being assessed for occupational postexposure prophylaxis (oPEP)

NOTE: If the most recent recurring exposure is within the 72 hours prior to an evaluation, nPEP may be indicated with transition of the patient to PrEP after completion of 28 days of nPEP medication

NOTE: If the exposure was beyond 72 hours, then evaluate symptomatically – see STD, Immunization and HIV nurse protocols.

NOTE: Discontinue HIV nPEP if the source is determined not to have HIV infection.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient is eligible to receive nPEP according to the eligibility criteria listed above.

2. Patient denies acute HIV signs and symptoms (i.e., fever, fatigue, myalgia, skin rash, headache, pharyngitis, cervical adenopathy, arthralgias, night sweats, diarrhea) that started within the past 2-4 weeks and may have resolved over the last 1 to 3 month or is ongoing.

   Note: Individuals eligible for nPEP who present with the common cold and influenza, influenza-like symptoms, COVID-19, etc. should undergo assessment as per this protocol, be started on nPEP and assessed in follow-up as outlined below.

3. Medical history negative for any medical, relative, or absolute contraindications to nPEP which may include complicated medical conditions or potential drug-drug interactions. Consult with Delegating Physician or Medical Director when assessing the safety of starting nPEP.

OBJECTIVE Targeted physical exam based on exposure, i.e., skin, oral, genital, rectal exam

ASSESSMENT Patient eligible to receive nPEP.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

NOTE: All diagnostic studies should be followed-up within 72 hours of results being reported. Consult with Delegating Physician or Medical Director regarding any abnormal lab results. Unless a severe reaction is occurring (i.e., Toxic epidermal necrolysis [TEN], Stevens-Johnson syndrome [SJS], Drug Rash with Eosinophilia and Systemic Symptoms [DRESS]), do not discontinue nPEP without express approval of Delegating Physician or Medical Director.

1. Initial/baseline nPEP Evaluation; Appendix 3

    a. Obtain history of potential exposure event
        i. HIV, hepatitis B virus (HBV), Hepatitis C virus (HCV) and other STI status of exposed person and source person, if available
        ii. Timing of most recent potential exposure
        iii. Type of exposure event and risk for HIV acquisition
        iv. Make determination if nPEP is indicated; Appendix 1

    b. If nPEP is indicated, then
        i. Conduct baseline laboratory testing
            1. HIV 1/2 blood test: rapid combined Ag/Ab test: Preferably a rapid 4th generation (Ag/Ab) test should be done, but if not available, non-rapid HIV testing should be done. If non-rapid HIV testing is done, START nPEP immediately and arrange follow-up in 1-2 days for HIV results.
            2. Initial RPR or TPA with reflex to confirmatory syphilis test for assessment of syphilis
                a. Initial RPR reflexed to TPA or
                b. Initial TPA reflexed to RPR
            3. Gonorrhea at site of exposure: Test all sites of sexual contact including oropharyngeal, rectal, and genital; urine testing may be considered in place of genital testing.
            4. Chlamydia at site of exposure: Test all sites of sexual contact including oropharyngeal, rectal, and genital; urine testing may be considered in place of genital testing.

5. Trichomonas for women
6. HBV; Appendix 4:
    a. Surface antigen (sAg) with reflex to HBV DNA if sAg positive
    b. Surface antibody (sAb)
    c. Total and IgM core Ab
7. HCV (both IgM [for acute infection] + Total Ab [for chronic infection]) with reflex to HCV RNA if total Ab positive
8. Urine Pregnancy test for women of childbearing capacity
9. Complete Blood Count (CBC)
10. Complete Metabolic Panel (CMP)

NOTE: Follow-up on laboratory studies within 72 hours of results.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

Adults and adolescents aged greater than 12 years of age (weighing at least 35kg [77lbs]), including pregnant women and women of childbearing capacity, with normal renal function (creatinine clearance ≥ 60 mL/min) and time between exposure and assessment having occurred within 72 hours.

Preferred (all components ordered as a 28-day course):

A 3-drug regimen consisting of:

Tenofovir DF 300 mg / Emtricitabine 200 mg (Truvada™) 1 tablet orally once daily

PLUS

Raltegravir 400 mg (Isentress™) 1 tablet orally **twice** daily

Or

Tenofovir DF 300 mg / Emtricitabine 200 mg (Truvada™) 1 tablet orally once daily

PLUS

Dolutegravir 50 mg (Tivicay™) 1 tablet orally once daily

Alternate (all components ordered as a 28-day course):

A 3-drug regimen consisting of:

Tenofovir DF 300 mg / Emtricitabine 200 mg (Truvada™) 1 tablet orally once daily

PLUS

Darunavir 800 mg 1 tablet orally once daily

PLUS

Ritonavir 100 mg 1 tablet orally once daily

NOTE: The latest data on neural tube defects (NTDs) in infants born to women who received dolutegravir (DTG) around the time of conception have shown that the prevalence of NTDs is lower than initially reported (the rate has been reduced from 0.9% to 0.3%). However, this rate is still higher than the rate reported for infants born to individuals who received ART that did not contain DTG (0.1%).

Based on the new data, the Panel has revised these recommendations:

- Providers should discuss the benefits of using DTG and the risk of NTDs with the person of childbearing potential, to allow the person to make informed decisions about care.
- DTG may be used as an alternative antiretroviral (ARV) drug for individuals who are of childbearing potential and trying to conceive and those who are sexually active and not using contraception.
- For individuals who are using effective contraception, DTG may be used as a recommended option.

NOTE: nPEP is <u>not</u> contraindicated for pregnant women, plus pregnancy has been demonstrated to increase susceptibility to sexual HIV acquisition. However, the delegating physician should choose the nPEP regimen recommended for pregnancy.

NOTE: If nPEP is ordered for a woman who is pregnant at the time of exposure or becomes pregnant while on nPEP, health care providers should enter the patient's information (anonymously) into the Antiretroviral Pregnancy Registry (http://www.apregistry.com).

NOTE: Women who are breastfeeding should be advised to continue to pump but discard the milk until the completion of nPEP.

NOTE: There is an increased risk of drug interactions if a nPEP regimen using a boosting agent (i.e. ritonavir) is administered. Darunavir should generally be avoided in patients with a documented sulfonamide allergy.

Prophylaxis for other STIs and Hepatitis

All adults and adolescents with exposures by sexual assault should be provided with prophylaxis routinely for other STIs, HBV and HPV

For gonorrhea: male and female adults and adolescents (also see STD nurse protocol)

Ceftriaxone 250 mg intermuscular, single dose

PLUS

Azithromycin 1 g orally as a single dose

For chlamydia: male and female adults and adolescents (also see STD nurse protocol)

Azithromycin 1 g orally as a single dose

OR

Doxycycline 100 mg orally twice a day for 7 days

For trichomonas: female adults and adolescents (also see STD nurse protocol)

Metronidazole 2 g orally as a single dose

OR

Tinidazole 2 g orally as a single dose

Vaccines (also see immunization nurse protocol):

HBV: All persons not known to be previously vaccinated against HBV, should receive hepatitis B vaccination (without hepatitis B immune globulin), with the first dose administered

during the initial examination. If the exposure source is available for testing and is HBsAg-positive, unvaccinated nPEP patients should receive both hepatitis B vaccine and hepatitis B immune globulin during the initial evaluation. Follow-up vaccine doses should be administered as per current package inserts. (also see immunization nurse protocol)

NOTE: Previously vaccinated sexually exposed persons who did not receive postvaccination testing should receive a single vaccine booster dose.

HPV: Recommended at age 11–12 years (can start at age 9 years) and catch-up HPV vaccination recommended for all persons through age 18 years if not adequately vaccinate.

AND

Recommended for all adults through age 26 years.

Emergency contraception (Also see Women's Health Nurse Protocol)

For women of childbearing capacity who have had genital exposure to semen and a negative pregnancy test when evaluated for possible nPEP, current contraception use should be assessed, and if a risk for pregnancy exists, emergency contraception should be discussed with the patient.

PATIENT EDUCATION / COUNSELING

9. Counsel patient regarding the basics of nPEP, including the importance of adherence, minimizing any gaps in therapy and stress the need to take all medications as ordered.

10. Review nPEP drug regimen with patient, including, drug storage, dose, route of administration, schedule, potential side effects, clinically significant drug interactions and follow-up monitoring.

NOTE: Any unusual or severe toxicities from antiretroviral drugs should be reported to the manufacturer or FDA. 1-800-FDA-1088 [1-800-332-1088] or http://www.accessdata.fda.gov/scripts/medwatch/medwatch-online.htm)

11. When necessary, assist patients with obtaining nPEP medication through a medication assistance program for the ordered regimen. See resource section below.

12. Provide counseling related to STI prevention strategies, as appropriate.

13. The safety of nPEP with Truvada™ or Tenofovir disoproxil fumarate (TDF) alone for infants exposed during lactation has not been adequately studied. Therefore, women who are breastfeeding will need to continue to pump and discard until patient has completed HIV nPEP medications.

14. Counsel patient on the importance of adherence to the prescribed regimen, but if a dose of medication is late or missed, then;
    a. Daily dosing (depending on the time of original scheduled dose):
        i. Take the missed dose of medication as soon as remembered and adjust the timing of the next dose to that same time moving forward as long as the adjusted time is convenient for patient compliance for future daily doses
        ii. If the missed dose time is not convenient for patient compliance of future daily doses, then take the next dose as early as convenient for the patient and adjust timing of the next daily dose to that same time moving forward unless the adjusted time is within 4 hours of the scheduled dose, then skip the missed dose and take the scheduled dose when it is due.
    b. Twice daily dosing (depending on the time of original scheduled dose):
        i. Take the missed dose of medication as soon as it is remembered, unless it is more than 2 hours beyond the original time of the missed dose. Schedule the next dose 12 hours after the missed dose is taken and continue this time schedule moving forward. The patient may need to adjust dosing time if exactly 12 hours is not convenient for patient compliance (i.e. from midnight-to 5AM).
    c. Counsel patient to not take a double dose to make up for any missed dose. This may increase the chance of unwanted adverse effects. Also, assist the patient to establish dosing times that are convenient for their lifestyle and daily reminders to help with compliance and adherence.

FOLLOW-UP: see also Appendix 3

7. Initial patient follow-up:
   Schedule first follow-up to occur 72 hours following the initial assessment. This assessment should focus on answering questions, assessing early side effects of medications, discuss any difficulties with medication adherence and follow-up, review initial lab work, etc. Face-to-face is the best option, but the patient may be contacted via other means, based on the clinics policies and procedures, in minimizing gaps in services.

8. Four to 6 weeks after the exposure:
   a. HIV 1/2 blood test: rapid combined Ag/Ab test, if the baseline test was negative
      i. Preferably a rapid 4th generation (Ag/Ab) test should be done, but if not available, non-rapid HIV testing should be done.
   b. RPR or TPA with reflex to confirmatory syphilis test for assessment of syphilis, if the baseline test was negative
      i. RPR reflexed to TPA or
      ii. TPA reflexed to RPR
   c. Gonorrhea at site of exposure, if not provided presumptive treatment at baseline, or if symptomatic at follow-up
      i. Test all sites of sexual contact including oropharyngeal, rectal, and genital; urine testing may be considered in place of genital testing.
   d. Chlamydia at site of exposure, if not provided presumptive treatment at baseline, or if symptomatic at follow-up
      i. Test all sites of sexual contact including oropharyngeal, rectal, and genital; urine testing may be considered in place of genital testing.
   e. Urine Pregnancy test
      i. If woman of childbearing capacity, not using effective contraception, and with vaginal exposure to semen
   f. Complete Blood Count (CBC)
   g. Complete Metabolic Panel (CMP)

9. Three months after exposure
   a. HIV 1/2 blood test: rapid combined Ag/Ab test, if the 4 to 6-week test was negative
      i. Preferably a rapid 4th generation (Ag/Ab) test should be done, but if not available, non-rapid HIV testing should be done

10. Six months after exposure:
    a. HIV 1/2 blood test: rapid combined Ag/Ab test, if the 3-month test was negative and only if hepatitis C infection was acquired during the original exposure; delayed HIV seroconversion has been seen in persons who simultaneously acquire HIV and hepatitis C infection.
        i. Preferably a rapid 4th generation (Ag/Ab) test should be done, but if not available, non-rapid HIV testing should be done.
    b. Hepatitis B virus (HBV): if exposed person susceptible to HBV at baseline: Appendix 4
        i. Surface antigen (sAg) with reflex to HBV DNA if sAg positive
        ii. Surface antibody (sAb)
        iii. Total and IgM core Ab
    c. Hepatitis C virus (HCV) (both IgM [for acute infection] + Total Ab [for chronic infection]) with reflex to HCV RNA if total Ab positive; if exposed person susceptible to HCV at baseline
    d. RPR or TPA with reflex to confirmatory syphilis test for assessment of syphilis, if the 4 to 6-week test was negative
        i. RPR reflexed to TPA
            OR
        ii. TPA reflexed to RPR

11. If the patient discontinues nPEP secondary to concerns of side effects, personal choice or acute retroviral syndrome, then continue testing as noted above.

12. All persons who report behaviors or situations that place them at risk for frequently recurring HIV exposures (e.g., injection drug use, or sex without condoms) or who report receipt of greater than or equal to 1 course of nPEP in the past year should be provided risk-reduction counseling and intervention services, including consideration of preexposure prophylaxis. See PrEP nurse protocol.

    NOTE: Persons who engage in behaviors that result in frequent, recurrent exposures that would require sequential or near-continuous courses of nPEP should be offered PrEP. A gap is unnecessary between ending nPEP and beginning PrEP.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

Consult with the Delegating Physician or Medical Director:

a. If at any time patient's lab results are abnormal

b. If patient is experiencing side effects from nPEP

c. If patient has signs and symptoms of acute HIV infection

d. If patient has renal impairment (eGFR less than 60 mL/min for Truvada™) Also refer to nephrologist, if able.

e. If patient has comorbidities and/or drug-drug interactions where nPEP is contraindicated

f. If patient is repeatedly non-adherent despite intensive counseling

g. Wants restart of HIV nPEP following discontinuation beyond 72 hours of last dose

h. If index patient is HIV positive and records demonstrate ARV treatment experienced with or without documented ARV resistance

   NOTE: If available, all resistance testing (genotypes, phenotypes tropisms ever completed) should be reviewed in assessing viable nPEP options for the exposed individual. A highly recommended resource for interpretation of ART mutations is the Stanford HIV Database (https://hivdb.stanford.edu/hivdb/by-mutations/)

i. HBV sAg positive: do not stop nPEP; immediately refer to Delegating Physician or Medical Director

j. HCV Total Ab positive: Appropriate referral to gastrointestinal, infectious disease, or a provider with HCV treatment experience for assessment should be made for individuals who are Hepatitis C virus positive.

k. If the initial/baseline exposed HIV test is reactive/positive, the patient should NOT be given HIV nPEP, but be provided supportive counseling and connected to an HIV primary care or specialty care (HIV/Infectious Disease specialist) provider immediately, i.e. before being discharged from care.

   NOTE: All HIV indeterminate/positive tests should be immediately assessed or referred to a local HIV expert (https://www.gacapus.com/r/resource-directory-2/)

l. If the exposed follow-up HIV test is reactive/positive, stop nPEP immediately, provide supportive counseling and connect the patient to an HIV primary care or specialty care (HIV/Infectious Disease specialist) provider.

NOTE: All HIV indeterminate/positive tests should be immediately assessed or referred to a local HIV expert (https://www.gacapus.com/r/resource-directory-2/)

m. Patient requests HIV nPEP when presenting outside of the 72-hour window period

n. Individuals less than 13 years of age who are requesting nPEP

o. Individuals greater than or equal to 13 years of age who weigh less then 35kg (77lbs)

p. Use of antiretroviral regimens for nPEP other than those listed in this protocol as preferred or alternative

q. Individual requesting HPV vaccine series between the ages of 27 through 45, plus refer to the immunization nurse protocol.:

Resources for Drug Assistance Plans:

1. Information for specific medications and manufacturers is available at:
   https://medicineassistancetool.org/
   https://www.rxassist.org/

2. Persons being ordered nPEP after sexual assault can be reimbursed for medications and clinical care costs through state Crime Victim's Compensation Programs funded by the U.S. Department of Justice. Contact information for each state is available at http://www.ojp.usdoj.gov/ovc/map.html or http://www.nacvcb.org/index.asp?bid=16

REFERENCES

1. Updated guidelines for antiretroviral postexposure prophylaxis after sexual, injection drug use, or other nonoccupational exposure to HIV—United States, 2016. Published Date: April 18, 2016, Updated May 23, 2018 https://stacks.cdc.gov/view/cdc/38856 accessed May 1, 2020

2. Non-Occupational Post-Exposure Prophylaxis (nPEP) Toolkit. Publish date: January 26, 2018. Review date: November 29, 2019 https://aidsetc.org/npep accessed May 1, 2020

3. PEPline at the National Clinician's Consultation Center at 888-448- 4911 or http://nccc.ucsf.edu/clinician-consultation/pep-post-exposureprophylaxis/ accessed May 1, 2020

4. Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in Adults and Adolescents with HIV. https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/1/adult-and-adolescent-arv/0 accessed May 1, 2020

5. Truvada™ HIGHLIGHTS OF PRESCRIBING INFORMATION. Revised May 2018. https://www.gilead.com/~/media/Files/pdfs/medicines/hiv/truvada/truvada_pi.pdf accessed May 1, 2020

6. Isentress™ HIGHLIGHTS OF PRESCRIBING INFORMATION. Revised May 2017. https://www.accessdata.fda.gov/drugsatfda_docs/label/2017/022145s036,203045s013,205786s004lbl.pdf accessed May 1, 2020

7. Tivicay™ HIGHLIGHTS OF PRESCRIBING INFORMATION. Revised March 2020. https://www.gsksource.com/pharma/content/dam/GlaxoSmithKline/US/en/Prescribing_Information/Tivicay/pdf/TIVICAY-PI-PIL.PDF accessed May 1, 2020

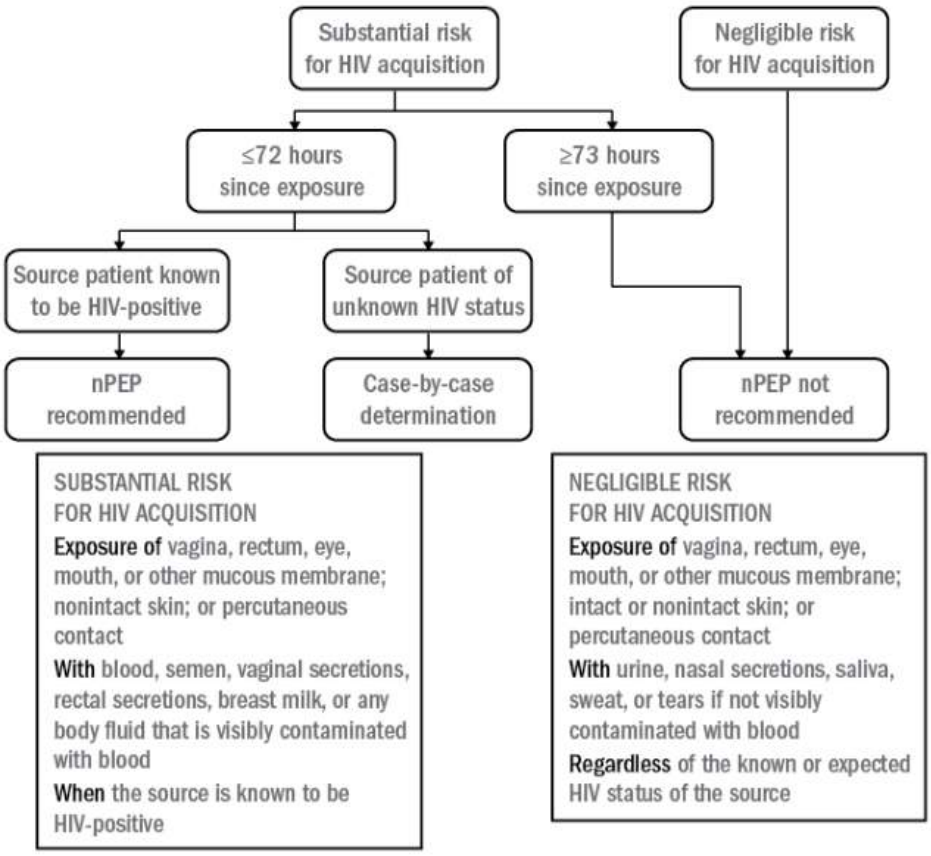
8. Prezista™ HIGHLIGHTS OF PRESCRIBING INFORMATION. Revised May 2019. http://www.janssenlabels.com/package-insert/product-monograph/prescribing-information/PREZISTA-pi.pdf accessed May 1, 2020

9. Recommended Child and Adolescent Immunization Schedule for ages 18 years or younger, United States, 2020. https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/schedules/hcp/imz/child-adolescent.html#note-hpv. accessed May 1, 2020

10. Recommended Adult Immunization Schedule for ages 19 years or older, United States, 2020. https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/schedules/hcp/imz/adult.html#note-hpv accessed May 1, 2020

APPENDIX 1

Algorithm for evaluation and treatment of possible nonoccupational HIV exposures



Note: The HIV status of the index should be classified as HIV-negative, HIV-positive or unknown at the time of the initial evaluation. Thus, treatment decisions should be made based upon the nature of the exposure and when the exposure occurred. Once the need for nPEP has been identified, the patient should receive a dose as soon as possible (MUST be within 72 hours of the exposure), even if HIV testing of the exposed patient and index have not yet been performed. After the initial dose has been administered, HIV testing and a more detailed history can be obtained. At that time, patients should also be assessed for hepatitis B and C virus, sexually transmitted infections (depending upon the type of exposure) and pregnancy for women.

SEE DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES SECTION ABOVE.

APPENDIX 2:
Estimated per-act risk for acquiring human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) from an infected source, by exposure act[a]

Exposure type	Rate for HIV acquisition per 10,000 exposures
Parenteral	
Blood transfusion	9,250
Needle sharing during injection drug use	63
Percutaneous (needlestick)	23
Sexual	
Receptive anal intercourse	138
Receptive penile-vaginal intercourse	8
Insertive anal intercourse	11
Insertive penile-vaginal intercourse	4
Receptive oral intercourse	Low
Insertive oral intercourse	Low
Other[b]	
Biting	Negligible
Spitting	Negligible
Throwing body fluids (including semen or saliva)	Negligible
Sharing sex toys	Negligible

Source: http://www.cdc.gov/hiv/policies/law/risk.html

[a] Factors that may increase the risk of HIV transmission include sexually transmitted diseases, acute and late-stage HIV infection, and high viral load. Factors that may decrease the risk include condom use, male circumcision, antiretroviral treatment, and preexposure prophylaxis. None of these factors are accounted for in the estimates presented in the table.

[b] HIV transmission through these exposure routes is technically possible but unlikely and not well documented.

NOTE: A history should be taken of the specific sexual, injection drug use, or other exposure events that can lead to acquiring HIV infection. Eliciting a complete description of the exposure and information about the HIV status of the partner(s) can substantially lower (e.g., if the patient was exclusively the insertive partner or a condom was used) or increase (e.g., if the partner is known to be HIV-positive) the estimate of risk for HIV transmission resulting from a specific exposure.

Percutaneous injuries from needles discarded in public settings (e.g., parks and buses) sometimes result in requests for nPEP. Although no HIV infections from such injuries have been documented, concern exists that syringes discarded by PWID might pose a substantial risk. However, such injuries typically involve small-bore needles that contain only limited amounts of blood, and the infectiousness of any virus present might be low. Saliva that is not contaminated with blood contains HIV in much lower titers and constitutes a negligible exposure risk, but saliva that is

contaminated with HIV-infected blood poses a substantial exposure risk. HIV transmission by this route has been reported in greater than 3 cases.

APPENDIX 3:
nPEP recommended schedule of laboratory evaluations of index and exposed persons

Test	Source	Exposed persons			
	Baseline	Baseline	4–6 weeks after exposure	3 months after exposure	6 months after exposure
		For all persons considered for or prescribed nPEP for any exposure			
HIV Ag/Ab testing[a] (or antibody testing if Ag/Ab test unavailable)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓[b]
Hepatitis B serology, including: hepatitis B surface antigen hepatitis B surface antibody hepatitis B core antibody	✓	✓	—	—	✓[c]
Hepatitis C antibody test	✓	✓	—	—	✓[d]
		For all persons considered for or prescribed nPEP for sexual exposure			
Syphilis serology[e]	✓	✓	✓	—	✓
Gonorrhea[f]	✓	✓	✓[g]	—	—
Chlamydia[f]	✓	✓	✓[g]	—	—
Pregnancy[h]	—	✓	✓	—	—
		For persons prescribed tenofovir DF+ emtricitabine + raltegravir or tenofovir DF+ emtricitabine + dolutegravir			
Serum creatinine (for calculating estimated creatinine clearance[i])		✓	✓	—	—
Alanine transaminase, aspartate aminotranferase		✓	✓	—	—
	For all persons with HIV infection confirmed at any visit				
HIV viral load	✓	✓[j]			
HIV genotypic resistance	✓	✓[j]			

Abbreviations: Ag/Ab, antigen/antibody combination test; HIV, human immunodeficiency virus; nPEP, nonoccupational postexposure prophylaxis; tenofovir DF, tenofovir disoproxil fumarate.

[a] Any positive or indeterminate HIV antibody test should undergo confirmatory testing of HIV infection status.

[b] Only if hepatitis C infection was acquired during the original exposure; delayed HIV seroconversion has been seen in persons who simultaneously acquire HIV and hepatitis C infection.

[c] If exposed person susceptible to hepatitis B at baseline.

[d] If exposed person susceptible to hepatitis C at baseline.

[e] If determined to be infected with syphilis and treated, should undergo serologic syphilis testing 6 months after treatment

[f] Testing for chlamydia and gonorrhea should be performed using nucleic acid amplification tests. For patients diagnosed with a chlamydia or gonorrhea infection, retesting 3 months after treatment is recommended.

- For men reporting insertive vaginal, anal, or oral sex, a urine specimen should be tested for chlamydia and gonorrhea.
- For women reporting receptive vaginal sex, a vaginal (preferred) or endocervical swab or urine specimen should be tested for chlamydia and gonorrhea.
- For men and women reporting receptive anal sex, a rectal swab specimen should be tested for chlamydia and gonorrhea.
- For men and women reporting receptive oral sex, an oropharyngeal swab should be tested for gonorrhea. (http://www.cdc.gov/std/tg2015/tg-2015-print.pdf)

[g] If not provided presumptive treatment at baseline, or if symptomatic at follow-up visit.

[h] If woman of reproductive age, not using effective contraception, and with vaginal exposure to semen.

[i] eCrCl = estimated creatinine clearance calculated by the Cockcroft-Gault formula; eCrClCG = [(140 − age) x ideal body weight] ÷ (serum creatinine x 72) (x 0.85 for females).

[j] At first visit where determined to have HIV infection.

Source: https://stacks.cdc.gov/view/cdc/38856

APPENDIX 4:
Hepatitis B virus screening serology

HBsAg	Anti-HBc	Anti-HBs	IgM Anti-HBc	Interpretation	Action
Negative	Negative	Negative	—	Susceptible	Vaccinate
Negative	Positive	Positive	—	Immune (natural infection)	Document
Negative	Negative	Positive	—	Immune (prior vaccination)	Document
Positive	Positive	Negative	Negative	Chronic hepatitis B virus infection	Evaluate for treatment
Positive	Positive	Negative	Positive	Acute hepatitis B virus infection	Follow and evaluate for treatment
Negative	Positive	Negative	—	Unclear—might be: • resolved infection (most common) • false-positive anti-HBc; susceptible • "low level" chronic infection • resolving acute infection	Case-by-case evaluation

Abbreviations: HBsAg, hepatitis B surface antigen; anti-HBc, hepatitis B core antibody; anti-HBs, hepatitis B surface antibody.

Source: https://stacks.cdc.gov/view/cdc/38856

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOLS FOR PRIMARY HYPERTENSION IN ADULTS

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOLS FOR PRIMARY HYPERTENSION IN ADULTS
CLINICAL REVIEW TEAM

Stephen Goggans, MD, MPH District Health Director East Central Health District	**William R. Grow, MD, FACP** District Health Director South Health District Medical Consultant
Lawton C. Davis, MD District Health Director Coastal Health District	**Kelly Knight, RN, BSN** Clinical Nursing Coordinator South Central Health District
Tammy Burdeaux, RN, BSN, CRNI District Nursing and Clinical Coordinator East Central Health District	**Tracy Dabbs, Pharm D** Pharmacist Department of Public Health
Donna P. Cook, R.Ph Pharmacy Director Southwest Health District	**Natalie Keadle, RN, MSN** Adult Health Coordinator Northeast Health District
Shana M. Scott, JD, MPH Health System Lead Chronic Disease Prevention Georgia Department of Public Health	**Latronda Davis, MPH, RN, BSN** Diabetes and Hypertension Nurse Program Manager Georgia Department of Public Health

This protocol update was developed with funding through the Association of State and Territorial Health Officials Million Hearts Learning Collaborative from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. The clinical review team acknowledges the contributions to the protocol of Department of Public Health staff Jean O'Connor, JD, DrPH, Portia Buchongo, MPH, RN, BSN, Kia Padgett, RN, MPH, Brittany Taylor, MPH, Kenneth Ray, MPH, Yvette Daniels, JD, Patricia Jones RN, Kimberley Hazelwood PharmD and J. Patrick O'Neal, MD, MPH.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PRIMARY HYPERTENSION IN ADULTS

Disclaimer: The Department of Public Health recognizes the implications of the most recent changes to hypertension treatment proposed by the American Heart Association and American College of Cardiology. Based on the non-endorsement of these guidelines by the American Academy of Family Physicians and considering the populations we serve across the state of Georgia; the following hypertension treatment guidelines (JNC8) align with those of the American Academy of Family Physicians.

DEFINITION

Primary (Essential) Hypertension is defined as systolic blood pressure (SBP) equal to or greater than 140 mmHg or diastolic blood pressure (DBP) equal to or greater than 90 mmHg on at least two subsequent occasions or taking antihypertensive medication with goal of maintaining a normal blood pressure (BP). Secondary hypertension is a type of hypertension with an underlying, potentially correctable cause.

NOTE: This protocol is for Primary Hypertension and does not include treatment for patients with impaired kidney function or Chronic Kidney Disease, heart failure**, pregnant or lactating women, suspected secondary hypertension, evidence of end organ damage, history of stroke,** or other complicated factors.

ETIOLOGY

1. Primary hypertension/high blood pressure (HBP) appears to be a multi-factorial disease/disorder in which several genes interact with each other and with the environment.

2. Contributing Risk Factors for Hypertension include:

   a. Family history of premature cardiovascular disease (men aged less than 55 and women aged less than 65).
   b. Age
   d. Race or ethnicity (African American)
   e. Overweight/obesity **(**BMI greater than 24.5**)**
   f. Habitual high salt intake
   g. Sedentary lifestyle **(**little to no moderate to vigorous activity in the past 30 days**)**
   h. Alcohol intake greater than moderate drinking (more than one drink per day for women and more than 2 drinks per day for men)

i. Any tobacco or nicotine use
j. Diabetes mellitus
k. Microalbuminuria
l. Renal disease

SUBJECTIVE

1. Normally no symptoms. (Headaches, dizziness, or nosebleeds do not occur more often in persons with hypertension.)

2. May or may not have personal or family history of hypertension.

3. The following medical history should be elicited:

   a. Known duration/levels of elevated blood pressure.
   b. Past or current symptoms of coronary heart disease, heart failure, cerebrovascular disease, peripheral vascular disease, renal disease, diabetes mellitus, dyslipidemia, sleep apnea or sexual dysfunction.
   c. History of symptoms of gout.
   d. Recent changes in weight, leisure-time activity, smoking or other tobacco use, or recreational drug use including stimulants, cocaine, amphetamines, marijuana, prescribed and non-prescribed opioids.
   e. Current and Past Medication History including:
      1) Current use of antihypertensive medications including reasons for use, length of use, and any adverse effects.
      2) Previous antihypertensive therapy including impact on BP and adverse effects.
      3) Other prescription medications.
      4) OTC medications.
      5) Alternative therapies, herbs or supplements.
      6) Homeopathies.

   f. Family history of hypertension.

   g. Family history of cardiovascular disease, diabetes, elevated lipids (high blood cholesterol).

   h. Family History of secondary hypertension

   i. Results of previous medical assessments of possible causes of hypertension (e.g., labile hypertension or paroxysms of hypertension accompanied by

headache, palpitations, pallor and perspiration; abdominal bruits or abdominal or flank masses; delayed or absent femoral artery pulses or decreased blood BP in the lower extremities; hypokalemia; hypercalcemia; elevated creatinine).

j. Physical activity history and diet history, including intake of sodium chloride, alcohol, saturated fat and caffeine.

k. Psychosocial and environmental factors (e.g., family situation, employment status, working conditions, educational level).

2. May have one or more of the following symptoms suggestive of target organ damage and/or clinical cardiovascular disease (e.g., left ventricular hypertrophy [LVH], angina, prior myocardial infarction [MI] or coronary revascularization, heart failure, stroke or transient ischemic attack [TIA], neuropathy, peripheral arterial disease, chronic kidney disease, retinopathy):

   a. Visual disturbances.
   b. Chest pain.
   c. Shortness of breath.
   d. Edema.
   e. Dizziness.
   f. Headache.
   g. Confusion or other neurological symptoms (e.g., difficulty with speech or movement, facial or one-sided numbness).
   h. Nocturia, urinary frequency, urinary incontinence.

OBJECTIVE

1. SBP equal to or greater than 140 mmHg and/or DBP equal to or greater than 90 mmHg (based on the average of at least two measurements separated by 2 minutes).

   Note: For SBP between 120-140mmHg and/or DBP 80-90 with no cardiovascular risk, recommendations for lifestyle modifications should be provided as a preventative measure.

   Note: For BP measurement, be sure to indicate in the patient's record the arm with the higher reading. The arm

with the higher reading is to be used for ongoing evaluation on subsequent visits.

2. When HBP is identified early before target organ damage occurs, the physical examination is usually normal for the patient's age and sex.

ASSESSMENT **Primary (Essential) Hypertension**

NOTE: If subjective and objective findings do not indicate a cause of the hypertension **and/or** if secondary hypertension is suspected, refer to delegating physician and/or out for care.

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

For baseline evaluation:

1. Complete blood count (CBC)
2. **Basic Metabolic Panel (BMP)/** Comprehensive metabolic panel (CMP) which includes serum potassium, creatinine, sodium and calcium)
3. Fasting Blood Glucose or Hemoglobin A1C (if diabetes mellitus is known or suspected)
4. Fasting Total Cholesterol and Lipid Profile
5. Dipstick urinalysis including microalbumin, full urinalysis by laboratory for any positive results
6. ECG/EKG
7. **TSH**
8. **Albumin to Creatinine Ratio**

NOTE: If the hypertension is identified early, diagnostic studies should be within normal limits. They may be abnormal if the BP has been elevated for a long time or is high to the point that it can cause target organ damage.

THERAPEUTIC

The goal of therapy for hypertension is to minimize end-organ damage by lowering blood pressure. This may be accomplished with only lifestyle modification, or a combination of lifestyle changes and medications.

PHARMACOLOGIC

The general principles of drug therapy in the treatment of primary hypertension are based on 2014 Joint National Committee Recommendations.

Pharmacologic treatment should be initiated:

a. **In the general population, less than 60 years of age, initiate pharmacologic therapy to lower BP to a SBP goal less than 140 mmHg and to lower BP to a DBP goal less than 90 mmHg.**

b. **In the general population, aged 60 years and older, initiate pharmacologic therapy to lower BP to a SBP goal less than 150 mmHg and to lower BP to a DBP goal less than 90 mmHg.**

NOTE: For those drugs listed with once or twice daily dosing, the antihypertensive effect may diminish toward the end of the dosing interval especially with the lower dosing. An increased dosing may aid in extending the duration of antihypertensive effect or the need to divide the dose for twice-daily dosing should be assessed by monitoring peak and trough responses.

NOTE: If goal BP cannot be reached using the drugs included in this protocol or due to any contraindication or the need to use more than 3 drugs to reach goal BP, refer to delegating physician and/or out for care.

NOTE: If medications are not available due to shortage or recall, please refer to another medication in that class and/or consult with your delegating physician or pharmacist.

1. Thiazide-type Diuretics – RECOMMENDED FIRST LINE DRUG THERAPY

NOTE: Do not give to patients with a known sensitivity to thiazide-type diuretics, any component of the formulation or sulfonamide-derived drugs or anuria. Be sure to read package insert for all side/adverse effects. Appendix B (page 11.29) lists some side effects of anti-hypertensive medications.

a. Hydrochlorothiazide (HCTZ)

Initial dose: HCTZ 12.5mg - 25mg PO once daily. For older patients (aged 65 years or over), consider starting with a lower initial dose of 12.5mg and titrating based on BP response.

Usual dose: HCTZ 25mg to 50mg PO once daily in 1-2 divided doses. Maximum dose 50mg/day

OR

b. Indapamide

Initial dose**:** Indapamide 1.25mg PO once daily. If inadequate BP response (no control of BP or BP does not steadily decrease after 3-4 weeks of use), dosage may increase to 2.5mg PO daily.

Usual dose: 1.25mg to 2.5mg PO daily. Maximum dose 5 mg/day

NOTE: If BP remains uncontrolled after titration to highest dose, add a second (or third) drug from another appropriate class based on patient's assessment. If a drug from another class besides a diuretic was chosen initially, the second drug should almost always be a diuretic. Up to a total of 3 drugs can be used, each from a different class to control BP.

c. Potassium Supplementation

Potassium loss associated with diuretic therapy in not commonly resolved with increasing dietary potassium. This is because dietary potassium is almost entirely coupled with phosphate and diuretic therapy is mostly associated with chloride depletion. Also consuming the amount needed in potassium-rich foods to increase serum potassium may be costly and may lead to weight gain.

Potassium chloride has been shown to be the most effective means of replacing acute loss. Strategies to minimize the risk of potassium depletion include minimizing the dosage of or discontinue the non–potassium-sparing diuretics and restricting sodium intake. A high salt diet often results in excessive urinary potassium loss.

Use of diuretics for hypertension may result in hypokalemia. (This is generally counterbalanced by the potassium-raising effect of **ACEI** or **ARB** if they are used concomitantly). Normal serum potassium ranges from 3.5-5.5mEq/L in most labs. A value of 4mEq/L should be targeted in most patients. If a patient develops low potassium during therapy for hypertension, management depends on the severity of the potassium level.

1) **MILD Hypokalemia**-For potassium values of 3.0-3.4 mEq/L, a high-potassium diet should be provided. Potassium chloride supplementation should be considered. Potassium Chloride 10 to 20 mEq given BID (10-40 mEq/day). Potassium levels should be checked regularly, approximately every 2 weeks, until the value becomes normal.

2) MODERATE to SERVE Hypokalemia-For potassium values of 2.9 and below mEq/L, please consult with delegating physician, refer to appropriate office, or direct to nearest emergency room for immediate evaluation as appropriate based off potassium value.

3) Oral potassium supplementation should consist of Potassium Chloride (KCl) 20 mEq BID to QID (40 to 80 mEq/day**)**. Limit single dose to 20mEq to avoid GI discomfort. Take with 6 to 8 ounces of water to minimize GI irritation. This management should be reassessed if a potassium raising medication is added later or if the inciting diuretic is changed. Potassium supplements should not be used to elevate the serum potassium over 4.5 mEq/L.

2. Angiotensin Converting Enzyme Inhibitor (ACEI)

NOTE: Avoiding the combined use of ACEI and ARB. Do not give the following ACEI to patients with a known hypersensitivity to ACEIs or any component of the formulation.

NOTE: For patients who are diabetic and are also taking an ACEI, they should not take Aliskiren if GFR is estimated to be below 60 mL/min (mild loss of kidney function) because the combination may enhance the nephrotoxic effect of the ACEI. Other patients should be monitored for serum potassium, serum creatinine, and blood pressure periodically.

a. Lisinopril

Initial Dose: Lisinopril 10mg tablet PO once daily if patient not maintained on a diuretic. Lisinopril 5mg PO once daily if patient maintained on a diuretic or if patient is volume depleted. For older patients (aged 65 years or over),

consider starting with a lower initial dose and titrating to BP response.

Usual dose: Lisinopril 10mg to 40mg PO once daily. Maximum dose 40mg/day

OR

b. Enalapril Maleate

Initial Dose: Enalapril Maleate 5mg PO once daily if patient is not maintained on a diuretic. Enalapril Maleate 2.5mg PO once daily if patient is maintained on a diuretic or if patient is volume depleted. For older patients (aged 65 years or over), consider starting with a lower initial dose and titrating to BP response. May titrate at 1 to 2-week intervals based on patient response

Usual dose: Enalapril Maleate 10-20mg PO daily in 1 or 2 divided doses. Maximum dose 40mg/day

OR

c. Benazepril HCL

Initial Dose: Benazepril HCl 10mg PO once daily if patient is not maintained on a diuretic. Benazepril HCl 5mg PO once daily if patient is maintained on a diuretic or if patient is volume depleted. For older patients (aged 65 years or over), consider starting with a lower initial dose and titrating to BP response.

Usual dose: Benazepril HCl 10-40mg PO daily in 1 or 2 divided doses. If patient is compliant after 2-3 weeks but BP is not decreasing, increase dosage until control is gained, side effects become intolerable, or maximum dosage is reached. Maximum dose 40mg/day.

3. Angiotensin Receptor Blockers (ARBs)

NOTE: Avoid the combined use of ACEI and ARB. Do not give the following ARBs to patients with a known hypersensitivity to ARBs or any component of the formulation.

a. Losartan Potassium

Initial dose: Losartan Potassium 25mg PO once daily if patient is maintained on a diuretic or volume depleted. Losartan Potassium 50mg PO daily if patient is not maintained on a diuretic.

Usual dose: Losartan Potassium 50-100mg PO daily in 1 or 2 divided doses. Maximum dose 100mg/day

OR

b. Valsartan

Initial dose: Valsartan 80mg PO daily if patient is not maintained on a diuretic or if Valsartan is used as monotherapy. Valsartan 40mg PO once daily if patient is maintained on a diuretic or volume depleted. Dose may be increased to achieve desired BP effect.

Usual dose: Valsartan 80-320mg PO daily. Maximum dose 320mg/day

OR

c. Irbesartan

Initial dose: Irbesartan 150mg PO once daily if patient is not maintained on a diuretic. Irbesartan 75mg PO once daily, if patient is maintained on a diuretic or if patient is volume depleted.

Usual dose: Ibesartan150-300mg PO daily. If patient is compliant after 2-3 weeks but BP is not decreasing, increase dosage until control is gained, side effects become intolerable, or maximum dosage is reached. Maximum dose 300mg/day.

4. Calcium Channel Blockers (CCBs)

a. Amlodipine Besylate (Dihydropyridine)

Initial dose: Amlodipine Besylate 2.5mg PO once daily may be used when adding amlodipine to other antihypertensive therapy. If used as monotherapy, can initiate Amlodipine Besylate 5mg PO once daily. Older patients (aged 65 years or over), should be initiated at Amlodipine Besylate 2.5mg PO once daily. In general, titrate in 2.5mg increments, wait 7 to 14 days between titration steps.

Usual dose: Amlodipine Besylate 5-10mg PO once daily. Maximum dose 10mg/day

OR

Non-dihydropyridines

NOTE: Non-dihydropyridine calcium channel blockers (e.g., diltiazem, verapamil) offer a small protective effect on proteinuria in diabetic nephropathy beyond their anti-hypertensive action. There is a small additional benefit on proteinuria from addition of non-dihydropyridine CCBs to ACEIs.

NOTE: Concomitant use of non-dihydropyridine calcium channel agents (e.g., verapamil, diltiazem) and beta-adrenergic blocking agents can have additive negative effects on myocardium contractility, heart rate, and AV conduction and they may inhibit the metabolism of certain beta-blockers.

b. Diltiazem Extended Release

Initial Dose: Diltiazem Extended Release 120-180mg PO once daily (24-hour formulation) or 60mg PO twice daily (12 hour formulation) For older patients, consider starting with 120mg as an initial daily dose and titrating to BP response.

Usual dose: Diltiazem Extended Release 240-360mg PO once daily (24-hour formulation) or **120-180 PO** twice daily (12 hour formulation) Anti-hypertensive effects usually are evident within the first week. If patient is compliant after 2 weeks but BP is not decreasing, increase dosage until control is gained, side effects become intolerable, or maximum dose is reached. May not see any benefit in doses higher than 360mg/day.

Various formulation exists with different dosing. For treatment of HTN use extended release capsules and tablets only.

Extended-Release 24-hour capsules:

A. Cardizem CD, Cartia XT: max 360mg/day
   Dilt-XR, Tiazac, Taztia XT: Max 360mg/day

Extended Release 24-hour tablets:

A. Cardizem LA, Matzim LA: Max 360mg/day
   Capsule, 12 hours: Diltiazem HCL ER (generic Cardizem SR): Check Max dose Max 360mg/day

OR

c. Verapamil HCl Sustained-Release (SR)

Initial Dose: Verapamil HCl 180mg PO given in the morning. Lower initial dosages of 120mg daily may be warranted in patients who may have an increased response (e.g., elderly patients, patients of small stature.)

If adequate BP response is not obtained with Verapamil HCl 180mg, the dosage may be titrated upward in the following manner at weekly intervals until appropriate BP response achieved:

Verapamil HCl 240mg PO each morning. THEN if needed, either Verapamil HCl 180mg PO each morning, plus Verapamil HCl 180mg PO each evening.

OR

Verapamil HCl 240mg PO each morning plus Verapamil HCl 120mg PO each evening.

Usual dose: Verapamil HCl 240-360mg PO daily. Verapamil HCl sustained release 120-360mg PO daily.

B. Beta-Blockers

NOTE: Beta-Blockers should only be added after all other appropriate classes of anti-hypertensive agents have been given and titrated to their tolerated dose.

a. Metoprolol (ALERT: US Boxed Warning for Ischemic heart disease. When discontinuing chronically administered metoprolol, particularly in patients with ischemic heart disease, gradually reduce the dosage over a period of 1 to 2 weeks and carefully monitor the patient)

Metoprolol (tartrate) is very commonly used and safe. Although it is available in a once daily formulation (metoprolol succinate, Toprol XL, etc.), its twice per day version is often utilized because it is very affordable for patients.

Initial dose: Metoprolol 25mg BID. Titrate by doubling the dose every one to two weeks.
Recommended maximum dose is 100mg BID or as tolerated.

b. Bisoprolol

Bisoprolol is less commonly used than other beta-blockers but is affordable and has the advantage of being dosed once daily.

Initial dose: Bisoprolol 5mg PO once daily and increase if needed to its maximum dose of 10mg daily in 1-2 weeks. It is available as a combination with HCTZ.

c. Carvedilol

Carvedilol is a different type of beta blocker from the others in this protocol because it provides some blockade of alpha-adrenergic receptors in addition to beta-adrenergic receptors. This causes additional vasodilation, which may be beneficial in hypertension and other conditions. It may also result in a slightly higher incidence of some side effects such as dizziness and syncope.

Carvedilol is indicated for patients with hypertension who also have diabetes mellitus, and possibly for those with pre-diabetes in whom a small increase in blood glucose would be significant. Carvedilol may not be a good choice for those patients at risk of falls or for whom a BID medication would be difficult to maintain.

Although carvedilol is available in a once-daily extended release form, its twice per day version is often utilized because it is very affordable for patients.

Initial dose: **Carvedilo**l 6.25mg BID and then titrated by doubling the dose every two weeks to a maximum dose of 25mg BID or as tolerated.

NOTE: Public health nurses may encounter patients who are already receiving atenolol, possibly having been treated under older protocols or from outside clinicians. Please see the section 'Patients Already Receiving Hypertensive Therapy' for guidance about managing these patients.

CHOLESTEROL MANAGEMENT-HIGHLY RECOMMENDED ADDITIONAL TREATMENT THERAPY

An important component of the 2013 AHA guidelines was eliminating the use of specific cholesterol level targets (goal-directed therapy). So, those guidelines did not include any LDL level to be achieved by treatment. In its place, the aim of therapy was recommended to be treating each patient with a potent enough drug given at the correct dose. Based on clinical trials, using an appropriate dose of a strong enough drug will achieve the maximum reduction of CV risk, while avoiding unnecessary testing and dose titration. This approach was adopted in the 2017 American Diabetes Association (ADA) Standards of Care for Patients with Diabetes.

Hyperlipidemia is classified as:

e. Total cholesterol is 200mg**/**dL or higher
f. LDL is 130mg/dL or higher (higher than 100mg/dL in persons with diabetes)
g. HDL is 40mg/dL or lower
h. Triglyceride is 200mg/dL higher (higher than 150mg/dL in persons with diabetes)

NOTE: Provide nutrition counseling and promote adherence to a low cholesterol/low fat diet to decrease cholesterol level.

Initiate pharmacologic treatment based on patient's age and the following guidelines:

1. For patients between 40-75 years of age, if they have known cardiovascular disease or any listed risk factor,

treat with a high potency statin; if they have no known cardiovascular disease or listed risk factors, treat with a medium potency statin.

2. For patients less than 40 years of age, if they have known cardiovascular disease, treat with a high potency statin; if they have any listed cardiovascular risk factor, treat with a medium potency statin; if they have no listed cardiovascular risk factors, continue annual monitoring as listed below in FOLLOW-UP section.

3. The clinical judgement to lower LDL-C in adults 75 years of age and older should be based on patient characteristics and should occur after a full discussion of the potential benefits and costs. Consider comorbidities, safety considerations, and priorities of care. Shared decision making is important in this setting. Data does support the continuation of use of statins beyond 75 years of age in persons who are already taking and tolerating the drug. Also, some data supports use of moderate intensity statin for secondary prevention. Data is less supportive for use in primary prevention.

If therapy is elected for patients older than 75 years, treat with a medium potency statin.

NOTE: If a patient has difficulty obtaining a recommended agent due to cost, patient assistance or similar programs, Medicaid eligibility and any community programs should be explored to attempt to get the preferred agent. If no assistance is available, a less potent but more affordable agent can be substituted.

PHARMACOLOGIC

High Potency Statins and Therapeutic Doses	Medium Potency Statins and Therapeutic Doses	Low Potency Statins and Therapeutic Doses
Atorvastatin 40-80mg daily	Atorvastatin 10-20mg daily	Simvastatin 10mg daily
Rosuvastatin 20-40mg daily	Rosuvastatin 5-10mg daily	Pravastatin 10-20mg daily

	Simvastatin 20-40mg daily	**Lovastatin 20mg daily**
	Pravastatin 40-80mg daily	
	Lovastatin 40mg daily	
NOTE: Initial doses are listed below, then double doses as discussed below.		

1. When initiating statin medications, reasonable starting doses are:

f. **Rosuvastatin 10mg daily**

g. **Atorvastatin 20mg daily,**

h. **Simvastatin 20mg daily,**

i. **Pravastatin 20mg daily,**

j. **Lovastatin 20mg daily.**

Doses can be doubled every 2-4 weeks until the target dose is achieved. If a patient has difficulty tolerating an agent, consult with the delegating physician.

NOTE: If a patient has known or suspected liver disease, a statin should not be initiated without physician consultation. If a patient on statins develops elevated liver enzymes or muscle pain, the drug should be stopped immediately and notify delegating physician immediately. Statins are not to be used in pregnant or lactating women, consult with delegating physician.

PATIENTS ALREADY RECEIVING HYPERTENSIVE THERAPY

Patients seeking care for their blood pressure may already be receiving anti-hypertensive medications from other providers or may be receiving medications initiated under an older version of the DPH hypertension nurse protocol.

This section clarifies how those individuals should be managed:

a. If a patient is on medications for hypertension, the exact details of their regimen should be obtained.

b. It is preferable to base the patient's medication list on actual medications/bottles brought to the clinic rather than on patient report or a written list.

c. Please also ask the patient if they are taking any herbs or supplements for managing their blood pressure or for any other reason.

d. The evaluation of a hypertensive patient already on medication should be completed as described by other sections of the protocol

NOTE: Any clinical questions not fully addressed here should be discussed with the designated hypertension program consultant, the District Health Director (DHD), or someone designated by the DHD.

No medication changes, either of the older regimen or new agents, should be done except as listed here:

1. For patients receiving **any** medication initiated by a non-DPH provider (including those which may appear in the DPH hypertension protocol):
    a. All patients receiving medication initiated by a non-DPH provider should be reviewed with the DPH delegating provider, the District Health Director (DHD), or someone designated by the DHD to develop a medication management plan.
        1) The plan developed with that provider can be implemented by the treating nurse under protocol.
        2) A plan for ongoing communication and follow-up between the nurse and consulting provider should be established.
        3) All discussions and plans should be fully documented in the medical record.

2. For patients receiving medications originally initiated under DPH hypertension nurse protocol:
    a. In general, all patients being treated by public health nurses should meet the standards of the **current** DPH hypertension protocol.
    b. If a patient is stable and controlled on a regimen previously allowed under protocol, and the treating nurse wishes for them to remain on the regimen despite it not being congruent with the current protocol, the patient should be reviewed with the designated hypertension program consultant, the District Health Director (DHD), or someone designated by the DHD to develop a medication management plan.

1) The plan developed with that provider can be implemented by the treating nurse under protocol.
2) A plan for ongoing communication and follow-up between the nurse and consulting provider should be established.
3) All discussions and plans should be fully documented in the medical record.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING (NONPHARMACOLOGICAL INTERVENTIONS)

Lifestyle Modifications:

NOTE: Review the following lifestyle modifications with all patients, as applicable

a. Counsel regarding the Dietary Approaches to Stop Hypertension (DASH), Reduced Sodium Diet. For specific recommendations: http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/health/public/heart/hbp/dash/index.htm

b. Achieve/maintain desirable body weight or BMI of 18.5-24.9 kg/m^2.

c. Reduce daily sodium intake to less than 2,300mg. Reduce intake less than 1,500mg among persons who are 51 or older, African American or have hypertension, diabetes, or chronic kidney disease.

d. Reduction of dietary fats and cholesterol to meet DASH recommendations.

e. Moderation of alcohol intake (less than 1 oz. [30mL] ethanol/day for men and less than 0.5 oz. [15mL] for women). One ounce of ethanol equals 24 oz. beer, 10 oz. wine, or 3 oz. 80-proof whiskey.

f. Adequate dietary potassium intake (if renal function is normal and not taking drugs known to raise potassium, such as ACE Inhibitors) of 3500-5000mg/day. Foods that are high in potassium include bananas, potatoes, beans and yogurt.

g. Adequate intake of calcium, 1000-1500mg/day based on age.

h. Choose foods that provide more potassium for patients who are not hyperkalemic, dietary fiber, calcium, and vitamin D. These foods

include vegetables, fruits, whole grains, and skim or low-fat milk and milk products.

i. Regular aerobic physical activity at least 30 minutes per day, most days of the week.

j. Smokers and tobacco users should receive cessation counseling and be referred to the Georgia Quit Line 1-877-270-STOP (7867).

Treatment Regime and Plan of Care:

1. Emphasize the importance of adherence with all aspects of the treatment plan: diet, lifestyle changes, medications and importance of keeping follow-up appointments.

a. Establish BP goals and review readings during each visit.
b. Ask patient what he/she has been doing since the last visit to control their BP.
c. Ask patient specifically what he/she would like to work on to improve his/her BP.
d. Ask patient what he/she thinks would make it easier to control his/her BP.
e. Ask patient to tell you how he/she has been taking his/her medication(s) – *i.e. morning versus evening, with meals versus on an empty stomach*.
f. Ask if patient sometimes forgets to take his/her medication(s).
g. Ask if patient has had any side effects and if he/she has concerns about side effects.
h. Advise patient when and how to contact the healthcare team with questions or problems.
i. Ask patients to bring their BP machines to all appointments scheduled for BP checks.
j. Ask patients to keep a log of their BPs and bring the log to all visits to discuss their BP readings.
k. Ask patient to bring their medications for a *brown bag medication review* to determine understanding of the recommended medication treatment and adherence. Patients should bring their medication bag any time they go to see any health care provider (physician, nurse, pharmacist, or dietician/nutritionist).

2. Nurses are to provide counseling on DASH Eating Plan if no Registered Dietitian or Public Health Nutritionist is available and reinforce counseling on follow-up visits.

3. Counsel the patient about the signs and symptoms of stroke and heart attack. Stress that both conditions are medical emergencies and to call 911 (or for an ambulance where 911 is not locally available).

    a. Signs and symptoms of stroke may include: sudden numbness or weakness in the face, arm or leg, especially on one side of the body; sudden confusion or trouble speaking or understanding; sudden trouble seeing in one or both eyes; sudden trouble walking, dizziness, loss of balance or coordination; sudden severe headache with no known cause
    b. Signs and symptoms of heart attack may include: uncomfortable pressure, fullness, squeezing or pain in the center of the chest lasting more than a few minutes; pain spreading to the shoulders, neck or arms; chest discomfort with lightheadedness, increased sweating, profound weakness, fainting, nausea or shortness of breath.

4. Assess and administer vaccines indicated per the current Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP) childhood or adult immunization schedule (i.e., those recommended for persons with chronic medical conditions). See the Georgia Immunization Program Manual, Recommended Schedule and Guidelines, for current ACIP schedules and administration guidelines for each vaccine. The Georgia Immunization Manual may be accessed on line at http://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-publications.

FOLLOW-UP CARE:

1. Clinic Appointments

    a. When beginning anti-hypertensive therapy, patients should be seen about every 2-4 weeks until BP goal is achieved.
    b. After BP goal is reached and maintained and patient is adjusting to the treatment regimen for 3-4 visits, may move appointments to 4-6-week intervals.
    c. When the patient has reached, and maintained BP goals, less frequent (3-6 month) appointment intervals may be sufficient.

    NOTE: Some patients may need and/or want closer supervision. Keeping them on a 4-week appointment interval may be necessary.

2. Triage assessment of the patient is performed at each visit and includes the information components listed below:

a. Chief complaint.
b. Physical examination includes:
    i. Weight, Body Mass Index, and waist circumference.
    ii. Sitting and standing BP (particularly for patients with diabetes or complaints suggestive of orthostatic hypotension, the elderly and patients taking diuretics). A drop in BP without an increase in pulse rate is suggestive of autonomic neuropathy in patients with diabetes, and of volume depletion in patients taking diuretics.
    iii. Temperature and pulse rate.
    iv. Heart and lung sounds.
    v. Assessment of extremities.
    vi. Assess, advise and refer tobacco and nicotine users.
c. Adherence to the treatment regimen, including lifestyle modifications and pharmacologic treatment. Note any side effects to medications. See Patient Education/Counseling section for assessment components.

d. ER/Hospital visits or change in medical history since the last visit.

3. Do routine follow-up lab studies to determine the effect of therapy and/or when patient complains of concerning signs/symptoms:

a. **Thiazide-type diuretics/ACEIs/ARBS**:
    1) Obtain **BMP**, serum potassium, BUN and creatinine 3 months after initiation of treatment.
    2) Then obtain serum potassium, BUN and creatinine every 6 months thereafter.
    3) Monitor abnormal serum potassium levels as described in the PHARMACOLOGIC section.
    4) If serum creatinine is elevated (1.4 mg/dL or greater for women and 1.5 mg/dL or greater for men) consult with physician for recommendation.

b. All patients receiving anti-hypertensive therapy should have annual total cholesterol, **fasting** lipid profile, hemoglobin/hematocrit, blood glucose, uric

acid, creatinine, calcium and dipstick urinalysis**.**

c**.** For patients with diabetes mellitus, obtain HgbA1C and microalbumin annually.

d. ECG once every 5 years unless patient develops new signs and/or symptoms of heart disease (e.g., chest pain or abnormal heartbeats) or evidence of congestive heart failure (e.g., peripheral edema, shortness of breath).

REFERRAL/CONSULTATION:

2. Refer patient to delegating physician if:
    a. Goal BP cannot be reached using the drugs included in this protocol.
    b. Any contraindication to medications.
    c. The need to use more than 3 drugs to reach goal BP.
    d. If secondary hypertension is suspected because subjective and/or objective findings indicate target organ damage (heart, brain, renal disease, peripheral artery disease or retinopathy), coarctation, Cushing's syndrome, or pheochromocytoma, refer the patient to a physician for further evaluation. Symptoms and findings include:
        i. Bruits in the carotid, abdominal, or femoral areas
        ii. Palpable kidneys
        iii. Episodes of sweating, tachycardia, and headache
        iv. Absence of femoral pulses
        v. Unequal blood pressure in right and left arms
        vi. Palpitations and paroxysmal symptoms
        vii. Cushingoid-like appearance (i.e., moon face, buffalo hump, truncal obesity, striae)
        viii. Hypo/hyperkalemia
        ix. Sleep apnea, such as excessive daytime sleepiness
    e. Complications/side effects of therapy occur
    f. Patients less than 18 years old
    g. Patient has 6 PVCs or more per minute, couplets (bigeminy), multifocal PVCs, or irregular heart rate (other than premature atrial contractions)
    h. Patient has bradycardia (heart rate 56 beats per minute or less and is not taking a beta-blocker) or tachycardia (heart rate 100 beats per minute or greater).

i. ECG is abnormal.

3. Consult with delegating physician if:
    a. Patient presents with SBP equal to or greater than 200mmHg and/or DBP is equal to or greater than 110mmHg.
    b. Patient currently on an anti-hypertension regimen that is not included in this protocol.
    c. Any abnormal lab results, such as**:**
        a. Serum creatinine is 1.4mg/dL or higher for women, 1.5mg/dL or higher for men
        b. Serum potassium is 3.5mEq or less, 5.5mEq or greater
        c. Microalbuminuria

    d. If the BP has been elevated long enough, or if the elevation has been high enough to cause damage or complications, physical examination findings may include:

        a. Optic Fundi - Narrowing, copper-wiring, or A.V. nicking; hemorrhages, exudates or papilledema.
        b. Chest & Lungs - Rales or congestion.
        c. Heart - LVH, PVCs, a gallop, unequal BP in both arms, and/or a displaced point of maximal impulse.
        d. Arterial Pulses – Bruits auscultated over the carotid
        arteries or abdominal aorta; distended neck veins, femoral arteries and/or renal arteries.
        e. Extremities – Edema and/or venous pooling, abnormal peripheral arterial pulsations, intermittent claudication.
        f. Neurologic - One-sided weakness, cranial nerve
        weakness, or hyperactive reflexes on the side of an old stroke

4. Refer patients with confirmed or suspected diabetes (fasting plasma glucose is 126mg/dL or higher and/or Hemoglobin A1C is 6.5% or higher) to PCP for management.

5. Refer all patients to a Registered Dietitian or Public Health Nutritionist for a nutritional evaluation and development of an appropriate meal plan or DASH Eating Plan counseling, if available.

6. Refer all women that are pregnant, planning to become pregnant, or breast-feeding to an obstetrician for management of hypertension.

7. Utilize AAR model to provide smoking/nicotine use cessation counseling. Refer to the Georgia Quit Line 1-8777-270-STOP (7867). Use the Quit Line Fax Back Form as appropriate.

8. Where available, refer to a pharmacist and/or health educator, as needed for education and counseling.

9. Call 911 if patient presents with complaints of chest pain, shortness of breath, severe headache, sudden numbness or weakness of face, arm, or leg on one side, visual disturbances, trouble speaking or understanding, dizziness, loss of balance or coordination.

REFERENCES

1. James PA, Oparil S, Carter BL, Cushman WC, Dennison-Himmelfarb V, Handler J, et al, 2014 Evidence-Based Guideline for the Management of High Blood Pressure in Adults: Report from the Panel Members Appointed to the Eighth Joint National Committee (JNC8). JAMA, 2013[PMID:24352797]. (**Current**)

2. *Grundy SM, Stone NJ, Bailey AL, Beam C, Birtcher KK, Blumenthal RS, Braun LT, Braun LT, de Ferranti S, Faiella-Tommasino J, Forman DE, Goldberg R, Heidenreich PA, Hlatky MA, Jones DW, Lloyd-Jones D, Lopez-Pajares N, Ndumele CE, Orringer CE, Peralta CA, Saseen JJ, Smith Jr SC, Sperling L, Virani SS, Yeboah J, 2018 AHA/ACC/AACVPR/AAPA/ABC/ACPM/ADA/ AGS/APhA/ASPC/NLA/PCNA Guideline on the Management of Blood Cholesterol: Executive Summary, Journal of the American College of Cardiology (2018), doi: https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacc.2018.11.002.*

3. U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. *Final Recommendation Statement: High Blood Pressure in Adults: Screening*. September 2017. https://www.uspreventiveservicestaskforce.org/Page/Document/RecommendationStatementFinal/high-blood-pressure-in-adults-screening

4. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. Physical Activity Guidelines for Americans, 2nd edition. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services; 2018.

5. **Wolters Kluwer, *Lexi Comp Online*. (2019, March 01). Anti-Hypertensives. Retrieved March 19, 2019, from** https://online.lexi.com/crlsql/servlet/crlonline

6. Whelton PK, Carey RM, Aronow WS, Casey DE Jr, Collins KJ, Dennison Himmelfarb C, DePalma SM, Gidding S, Jamerson KA, Jones DW, MacLaughlin EJ, Muntner P, Ovbiagele B, Smith SC Jr, Spencer CC, Stafford RS, Taler SJ, Thomas RJ, Williams KA Sr, Williamson JD, Wright JT Jr. *ACC/AHA/AAPA/ABC/ACPM/AGS/APhA/ASH/ASPC/NMA/PCNA Guideline for the Prevention, Detection, Evaluation, and Management of high blood pressure in adults: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Clinical Practice Guidelines. Hypertension. 2017*

7. Cohn JN, Kowey PR, Whelton PK, Prisant LM. New Guidelines for Potassium Replacement in Clinical Practice A Contemporary Review by the National

Council on Potassium in Clinical Practice. *Arch Intern Med.*2000;160(16):2429–2436. doi:10.1001/archinte.160.16.2429 **(Current)**

8. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services and U.S. Department of Agriculture. 2015–2020 Dietary Guidelines for Americans. 8th Edition. December 2015. Available at http://health.gov/dietaryguidelines/2015/guidelines/. **(Current)**

IMMUNIZATION

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHILDHOOD AND ADULT IMMUNIZATION PROGRAM

All Public Health locations that provide vaccine services will utilize the current edition of the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program (GIP) Manual, which is developed based on the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices Recommendations and the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention's (CDC) Epidemiology and Prevention of Vaccine Preventable Diseases' (Pink Book), for administering vaccines to children and adults. The GIP Manual contains detailed standards for vaccine administration, mandatory use of Vaccine Information Statements (VIS), recommendations and forms specific to the childhood and adult immunization schedules, recommended screening questionnaires for identifying possible contraindications and precautions to vaccines, and requirements for entering all vaccines into the Georgia Registry for Immunization Transactions and Services (GRITS). Go to https://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-publications for the GIP Manual.

Registered Professional Nurses (RNs) and Advanced Practice Registered Nurses (APRNs) will administer vaccines in accordance with the current edition of the GIP Manual and in accordance with the Nurse Protocol statute (O.C.G.A. § 43-34-23). Licensed Practical Nurses (LPNs) will administer immunizations under the supervision of either an RN, APRN or physician, in accordance with the Georgia Practical Nurses Practice Act [O.C.G.A. § 43-26-32(7)].

Training: All RNs and APRNs must complete the required training for administration of vaccines, as delineated in the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual, Quality Assurance and Quality Improvement for Public Health Nursing Practice Manual, which may be found at http://dph.georgia.gov/resourcesformsmanuals before they may administer vaccines.

All LPNs must complete the required training for administration of vaccines, as delineated in Chapter 13 of the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program (GIP) Manual. Go to https://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-publications for the GIP Manual.

All RNs, APRNs, and LPNs who administer vaccines will hold current certification in Basic Cardiac Life Support (BCLS).

All RNs, APRNs and LPNs who administer vaccines should also follow the GIP Manual guidelines regarding asking the patient to wait at least 15 minutes in a designated area post-vaccination before they leave the clinic site.

All RNs, APRNs, and LPNs who administer vaccines will provide the patient with written confirmation of all vaccines administered. This may be in the form of a print-out of vaccines administered or an immunization card.

Planning Mass Vaccinations:

Nursing staff will work with district Public Health Emergency Preparedness and Strategic National Stockpile staff to develop campaigns within the framework of functional and/or full-scale exercises that test current Medical Countermeasure (MCM) Dispensing Plans within the district. Exercises must include predetermined objectives, documented evaluation, and an After-Action Report with an Improvement Plan.

OTHER INFECTIOUS DISEASES

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

OTHER INFECTIOUS DISEASES
CLINICAL REVIEW TEAM

Gregory S. Felzien, MD, AAHIVS Medical Advisor Division of Health Protection, IDI-HIV Georgia Department of Public Health	**Melissa Tobin D'Angelo, MD** Physician Consultant Acute Disease Epidemiology Section Georgia Department of Public Health
Dyna Cross Infectious Disease Coordinator Northeast Health District (District 10) District 10	**Olugbenga O. Obasanjo, MD, Ph.D.** District Health Director LaGrange Health District (District 4)
Andrea Gaines, BSN, RN North Health District (District 2)	**Sherry Gregory, BSN, RN** Infectious Disease Director North Georgia Health District (District 1-2)
Melissa Hunter District Epidemiologist Director Northwest Health District (District 1-1)	**Kristy Smith, RN** West Central Health District (District 7)
Wendy LeVan, BSN, RN District Nursing and Clinical Director LaGrange Health District (District 4)	**Rebekah Chance-Revels, MSN, RN WHNP-BC** Deputy Chief Nurse, Office of Nursing Georgia Department of Public Health
Ebony Thomas Epidemiologist Georgia Department of Public Health	**Stacey Upshaw, MSN, RN** Assistant Nursing Director South Central Health District (District 5-1)
Tonia Parrott, PhD, MT (ASCP) Clinical Microbiology Services Director Georgia Public Health Laboratory Georgia Department of Public Health	**Tracy Dabbs, PharmD** Emergency Preparedness Pharmacist Department of Emergency Preparedness Georgia Department of Health

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR AMEBIASIS, UNCOMPLICATED (Amebic Colitis)

DEFINITION

Infection of the intestinal tract by certain species of the genus *Entamoeba*. Extraintestinal disease occasionally occurs, with the liver as the most common site.

Symptoms are typically mild and include loose stools with stomach pain and/or cramping. More severe disease is associated with immunosuppression, malnutrition, young and old age, pregnancy, **residence in institutions, men who have sex with men**, and residence in or travel to tropical countries with poor sanitary conditions. **Symptoms of severe disease include fever, severe abdominal pain, and bloody stools.**

Complications may include toxic megacolon, colon or perianal ulceration, **intestinal** perforation, and **(rare) invasion of the liver, lungs, and brain.** Progression to **amebic dysentery** may occur if other causes of colitis are suspected and infected persons are inappropriately treated with corticosteroids and/or antimotility drugs.

ETIOLOGY

Entamoeba histolytica causes invasive disease. *Entamoeba dispar, Entaoeba hartmann*i and *Entamoebamoshkovskii* are noninvasive parasites and do not cause disease and do not require treatment. The organisms are excreted as cysts or trophozoites in the feces of infected persons.

Transmission occurs when cysts are ingested. Transmission has occasionally been associated with contaminated surfaces, food or water, and may occur sexually by oral-anal contact. In addition, men who have sex with men are at increased risk for amebiasis. The incubation period is usually 2-4 weeks, though in some instances it can take longer. If untreated, an infected person can excrete cysts intermittently and transmit infection for years. Most cyst passers are asymptomatic, with approximately 10-20% of people who are infected with E. histolytica becoming sick from the infection.

SUBJECTIVE

1. May be asymptomatic.

2. If history of mild, chronic symptoms (abdominal discomfort with loose stools containing blood or mucus alternating with periods of constipation or no symptoms), refer patient to the **delegating** physician **or consult a GI specialist.**

3. If history of acute symptoms that have progressively increased over 1-3 weeks (grossly bloody or mucoid stools accompanied by lower abdominal pain, tenesmus, fever, chills and weight loss), refer patient to a physician.

OBJECTIVE Patient does not appear acutely ill; no extensive weight loss or fever.

ASSESSMENT Amebiasis, asymptomatic.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Obtain **a minimum of three stool samples on separate days** for microscopic identification of trophozoites or cysts in feces, if necessary. **Use a collection kit designed for detection of ova and parasites (e.g., Para-Pak)**

NOTE: Trophozoites containing red blood cells are more likely to be Entamoeba histolytica than *E. dispar*, *Entamoeba moshkovskii*, and *E. hartmanni*.

2. Assess whether patient has a history of liver and/or kidney disease. **Perform** Comprehensive Metabolic Panel **if one has not been performed within previous three months**. If results are abnormal or patient reports history of liver/kidney disease, consult with delegating physician before beginning treatment.

3. Assess last menstrual period if woman is of child bearing age (approximately 15-45 years of age) or with menstrual cycle and not using contraceptives. If possibly pregnant, refer to delegating physician for care.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Consult an online drug information resource (e.g. https://www.drugs.com/drug_interactions.html **or** https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/login**) to assess for drug-drug interactions**

NOTE: Discuss the importance of compliance with the medication regimen and of completing the full course of treatment. **Stress the importance of chemoprophylaxis even if the patient is**

asymptomatic to prevent transmission of the condition to others and/or progression to disease. Assist the patient/caretaker to develop a written plan for taking, or administering, the medication so coverage is as close to around-the-clock as possible.

For asymptomatic (cyst-passing) patients who are not pregnant or breastfeeding, have no history of renal and/or liver disease, and **do not have** hypersensitivity to paromomycin or components:

1. Adults (18 years and older): Paromomycin sulfate 25-35mg/kg PO, divided into 3 equal doses; give single dose with each meal, for 7 days. **See dosage chart below.**

2. Children and adolescents (2 years old through 17 years old) preferred regimen: Paromomycin sulfate 25-35mg/kg PO, divided into 3 equal doses; give single dose with each meal, for 7 days. **See dosage chart below.**

Weight (kg)	**Dosage (mg)**
≤ 21 kg	**Consult with delegating physician for dosing requirements and referral compounding pharmacy**
22 kg to 30 kg	**250 mg three times daily for 7 days**
31 kg to 42 kg	**Consult with delegating physician for dosing requirements and referral compounding pharmacy**
43 kg to 60 kg	**500 mg three times daily for 7 days**
61 kg to 64 kg	**Consult with delegating physician for dosing requirements and referral to compounding pharmacy**
65 kg to 88 kg	**750 mg three times daily for 7 days**
89 kg to 120 kg	**1,000 mg three times daily for 7 days**
121 kg to 150 kg	**1,250 mg three times daily for 7 days**
≥ 151 kg	**Consult with delegating physician for dosing requirements and referral compounding pharmacy**

NOTE: When paromomycin therapy is being considered, adverse reactions may include (1% to 10%): Gastrointestinal (abdominal cramps, diarrhea, heartburn, nausea, and vomiting). Post marketing, and/or case reports occurring in less than 1% include secondary enterocolitis, eosinophilia, headache, ototoxicity, pruritus, steatorrhea, vertigo. Consult with delegating physician regarding any abnormal results or concerns of hearing impairment.

NOTE: Long term use of paromomycin may cause secondary infection.

NOTE: If patient is allergic to paromomycin or cannot tolerate paromomycin, consult with delegating physician for alternative chemoprophylaxis regimens.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Discuss the importance of compliance with the medication regimen and of completing the full course of treatment. **Stress that asymptomatic patients infected with E. histolytica should receive chemoprophylaxis as they can infect others and 4%–10% develop disease within a year if left untreated.** Assist the patient/caretaker to develop a written plan for taking, or administering, the medication so coverage is as close to around-the-clock as possible. Immediately report if a rash occurs.

2. If taking paromomycin, promptly report any ringing in the ears, hearing loss or dizziness.

3. Careful hand-washing with soap and water following defecation.

4. Sanitary disposal of feces.

5. Keep nails clean and trim weekly. Avoid nail biting.

6. Treatment of drinking water or use of sealed bottled water or carbonated drinks if traveling in areas without chlorination.

7. If traveling to an endemic area, avoidance of food or drinks sold by street vendors, fountain drinks or any drinks with ice cubes, unpasteurized milk, cheese, or dairy products, or fresh fruit or vegetables not peeled by the traveler.

8. Avoidance of oral-anal sexual practices or use of barrier protection during oral-anal sexual practices.

9. Advise patient to discuss any concerns regarding ability to return to work with their occupational health representative. The GA DPH manual can also be used as a reference: https://dph.georgia.gov/sites/dph.georgia.gov/files/EnvHealth/Food/Misc/EnvHealthFoodDPHEmployeeRedBook2016.pdf

10. Advise patient to report any signs/symptoms of foodborne illness (vomiting, diarrhea, jaundice, sore throat with fever and/or infected wounds).

FOLLOW-UP

1. Repeat stool microscopic exam x3, collected on separate days, starting three to four weeks following completion of **medication regime.**

2. Household and **sexual** contacts should have stool microscopic studies x3 performed **within four weeks of index case being identified**. If household contacts and/or **sexual** contacts present with symptoms of the disease, stool studies should be done immediately.

REFERRAL/CONSULTATION

1. If history of mild, chronic symptoms (abdominal discomfort with loose stools containing blood or mucus alternating with periods of constipation or no symptoms), refer patient to **delegating** physician or **GI specialist.**

2. If history of acute symptoms that have progressively increased over 1-3 weeks (grossly bloody or mucoid stools accompanied by lower abdominal pain, tenesmus, fever, chills and weight loss), refer patient to **delegating** physician or **GI specialist.**

3. Refer patients with contraindications to listed treatments or who are pregnant or breastfeeding to **delegating** physician or **GI specialist.**

4. Refer any patient who develops worsening abdominal symptoms on treatment, or who experiences any liver, eye, thyroid, or peripheral neuropathy symptoms while on iodoquinol to **delegating** physician or **GI specialist.**

5. Refer any patient whose follow-up stool exams show persistent infection to **delegating** physician or **GI specialist.**

6. Consult with **delegating** physician regarding any abnormal lab/hearing screen results prior to treatment initiation.

7. Consult with **delegating** physician prior to beginning treatment for patients with history of kidney/liver disease or abnormal lab results.

REFERENCES

1. **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention Amebiasis. (2015). Retrieved from** https://www.cdc.gov/parasites/amebiasis/general-info.html (Current)

2. **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention Chapter 4: Travel-related infectious diseases. (2019). Retrieved from** https://wwwnc.cdc.gov/travel/yellowbook/2020/travel-related-infectious-diseases/amebiasis

3. **David L. Heymann, *Control of Communicable Diseases Manual*, *20th ed*., Washington, DC: American Public Health Association. (2014).** (Current)

4. **Eric Houpt, Hung Chien-Ching, H & William Petri, Entamoeba histolytica Amebiasis. (2016).** http://antimicrobe.org/new/b137.asp

5. **David Kimberlin, *Red Book: 2018-2021 Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases*, *31st ed*. Washington, DC: American Academy of Pediatrics. (2018).**

6. **"Lexi-Drugs Online," *Lexi-Comp Database™*, Lexi-Comp, Inc., Hudson, Ohio (February 20, 2019). Retrieved from** https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/login

7. **Mahmud Abdulkader Mahmud, Mark Spigt, Afework Bezabih, Ignacio Pavon, Geert Jan Dinant, & Roman Blanco Velasco, Efficacy of Handwashing with Soap and Nail Clipping on Intestinal Parasitic Infections in School-Aged Children: A Factorial Cluster Randomized Controlled Trial. (2015). Retrieved from** https://journals.plos.org/plosmedicine/article?id=10.1371/journal.pmed.1001837

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR CHEMOPROPHYLAXIS OF *HAEMOPHILUS INFLUENZAE* TYPE b (Hib) DISEASE CONTACTS

NOTE: Public health nurses must work closely with the local communicable or infectious disease coordinator (or other designated official) who monitors and investigates reported Haemophilus influenzae and Haemophilus influenzae type b cases and contacts, to ensure that complete vaccination and medical history is obtained for the index case, that household and childcare contacts have been identified, and eligible contacts have been treated when appropriate. In addition, this protocol emphasizes the need for prompt serotyping of *H. influenzae* isolates. Public health personnel should ensure the isolate is serotyped and forwarded to the Georgia Public Health Laboratory (GPHL) for confirmation.

DEFINITION

Haemophilus influenzae type b (Hib) is a particularly virulent strain of the bacterium *H. influenzae*. *H. influenzae* can cause invasive infections including meningitis (an inflammation of the membranes and fluid that surround the brain and spinal cord), bacteremia, pneumonia, cellulitis, epiglottitis, septic arthritis and other invasive infections.

Although there are many strains of *H. influenzae*, including typeable and non-typeable strains, any strain may cause invasive disease. Guidelines for **chemoprophylaxis** are written only for infections caused by Hib. When an index case of Hib disease is identified, post-exposure **chemoprophylaxis** should be offered to close contacts (defined below) as soon as possible (preferably within 24 hours). Studies have shown that **chemoprophylaxis** with rifampin eradicates greater than 95% of Hib carriage in contacts of primary Hib cases. **In Georgia, from 2000-2018, 44 Hib cases were confirmed; 13 occurred among children.**

Empirical vs. Delayed **chemoprophylaxis** of *H. influenzae* cases not known to be Hib: Widespread use of the Hib vaccine has made Hib a rare cause of disease and offering **chemoprophylaxis** to all patients with invasive *H. influenzae* could result in significant overtreatment. However, a delay in c**hemoprophylaxis** while waiting for serotype information to determine if *H. influenzae* isolates are serotype b may result in unnecessary spread of disease. A proposed approach to optimize early decision-making regarding **chemoprophylaxis** is based on epidemiologic findings below, and includes:

1. Promptly obtaining immunization records and medical history for any child with invasive *H. influenzae* disease.

Empirical, early **chemoprophylaxis** of contacts (without waiting for serotype information) if the child with invasive *H. influenzae* disease is unimmunized OR incompletely immunized against Hib (defined below in 1a), OR is immunologically compromised (i.e. HIV, asplenia) regardless of vaccination status.

2. Delaying **chemoprophylaxis** of contacts until after the isolate is serotyped as Hib is appropriate **when** the index case is a fully immunized, immunologically normal child or an adult.

3. Consultation is available at 404-657-2588 (Acute Disease Epidemiology Section, GA Department of Public Health), if needed.

Serotyping of *H. influenzae* isolates is available at the Georgia Public Health Laboratory and some hospital and reference laboratories. All invasive *H. influenzae* isolates should be promptly sent to the GPHL for confirmatory serotyping.

Indications and guidelines for **chemoprophylaxis** of Hib disease contacts are:

1. Chemoprophylaxis recommended for:

a. All household contacts (except pregnant women), irrespective of age, when at least 1 of the contacts is younger than 4 years old and unimmunized or incompletely immunized.

NOTE: Household contacts are persons residing with the index case, or persons who spent 4 hours or longer with the index case for at least 5 of the 7 days preceding the day of hospital admission.

NOTE: Complete immunization means having had at least 1 dose of conjugate vaccine at 15 months of age or older; 2 doses between 12 and 14 months of age; or a 2- or 3-dose primary series when younger than 12 months with a booster dose at 12 months of age or older. See the Georgia Immunization Program Manual, Recommended Schedules and Guidelines, for vaccine information and vaccine administration guidelines at **http://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-schedules**

b. All household contacts with a child younger than 12 months of age who has not completed the primary Hib series.

c. All household contacts with an immuno-compromised child, irrespective of the child's Hib immunization status.

d. Nursery and child care center contacts (all attendees and child care providers)**,** irrespective of age or immunization status, when 2 or more cases of invasive disease have occurred within 60 days.

e. Index case, if treated with regimens other than cefotaxime or ceftriaxone. **Chemoprophylaxis** usually is provided just before hospital discharge.

2. Chemoprophylaxis not recommended for:

a. Household contacts with no children younger than 4 years of age other than the index patient and no one who is immunocompromised.

b. Household contacts when all household contacts younger than 48 months of age have completed their Hib immunization series. See the previous page for definition of complete immunization.

c. Pregnant women.

ETIOLOGY The bacteria *Haemophilus influenzae*, type b (Hib).

SUBJECTIVE

1. History of household or day-care contact as defined above under "**Chemoprophylaxis** recommended."

2.History of incomplete or no Hib immunization/vaccination.

3. Absence of prodromal meningitis
symptoms, i.e., respiratory illness or sore throat. Absence of meningitis disease symptoms, i.e., fever, headache, stiff neck or vomiting.

4.No history of hypersensitivity to any of the rifamycins or of liver function impairment.

OBJECTIVE No signs of respiratory illness or meningitis.

ASSESSMENT Candidate for **Chemoprophylaxis** for *H. influenzae* type b disease exposure.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Assess whether patient has a history of liver and/or kidney disease. **Perform a Comprehensive Metabolic Panel if one has not been performed within the previous three months**. If results are abnormal or patient reports history of liver/kidney disease, consult with delegating physician before beginning treatment.

2. Assess last menstrual period if woman is of child bearing age (approximately 15-45 years of age) or with menstrual cycle and not using contraceptives. If possibly pregnant,
refer to **delegating** physician for care.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Consult an online drug information resource (e.g. https://www.drugs.com/drug_interactions.html **or** https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/login**) to assess for drug-drug interactions**

NOTE: Discuss the importance of compliance with the medication regimen and of completing the full course of treatment. Assist the patient/caretaker to develop a written plan for taking, or administering, the medication so coverage is as close to around-the-clock as possible.

NOTE: Most people can take Rifampin without difficulty. However, any of the following signs or symptoms should be **reported as soon as possible** to the delegation physician: fever, nausea, vomiting, loss of appetite, dark coffee or tea-colored urine, white/gray/light tan bowel movement, tiredness, weakness, yellow skin or sclera, bruising easily, rash/itching, and/or painful menstruation.

1. Rifampin **chemoprophylaxis**

(Pediatric Drug Chart – see Appendix A)

Begin **chemoprophylaxis** as soon as possible. If more than 14 days have passed since the last contact with the index case, the benefit of **chemoprophylaxis** is likely to be decreased.

a. Infants less than 1 month old: Rifampin 10mg/kg/day PO once a day for 4 days (max 600mg/24 hours).

b. Infants over 1 month old and children/adolescents younger than 18 years old: Rifampin 20mg/kg (max 600mg) PO once a day for 4 days.

c. Nonpregnant adults: Rifampin 600mg PO once a day for 4 days.

NOTE: Rifampin as a dry powder may be mixed with applesauce. **PHARMACIST INFORMATION FOR COMPOUNDING:** Rifampin oral suspension, compounded 10 mg/mL with simple or wild cherry syrup, is stable for 4 weeks at room temperature, or in refrigerator, when stored in an amber glass prescription bottle. **Rifampin interacts with many drugs. Check the Rifampin product package insert for a complete list of drug interactions.**

2. Evaluate status of all vaccinations and bring up-to-date by administration of the currently recommended doses for each disease. Children who have had Hib disease still need vaccination against Hib. See the Georgia Immunization Program Manual at **http://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-schedules**

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Discuss the importance of compliance with the medication regimen and of completing the full course of treatment. Assist the patient/caretaker to develop a written plan for taking, or administering, the medication so coverage is as close to around-the-clock as possible.

2. Avoid drinking alcohol while taking Rifampin due to increased risk of hepatotoxicity.

3. Rifampin is present in breast milk. Due to the potential for serious adverse reactions in the breastfeeding infant, the manufacturer recommends discontinuing breastfeeding while taking Rifampin**.**

4. Rifampin may cause the urine, feces, saliva, sputum, sweat and tears to temporarily turn red-orange.

5. Do not use soft contact lenses when on Rifampin; permanent discoloration may occur.

6. Since Rifampin has been reported to cross the placental barrier and appear in cord blood and in maternal milk, neonates and newborns of rifampin-treated mothers should be carefully observed for any evidence of side effects.

7. Rifampin may decrease the effectiveness of oral contraceptives. Consideration should be given to using alternative contraceptive measures during, and immediately following, Rifampin therapy, until the next cycle. The rationale for using an alternative or back-up method of birth control (i.e., copper-bearing IUD such as ParaGard, condoms, diaphragm) is that when Rifampin is prescribed, it reduces effectiveness (degree depending on method) of combined oral contraceptives, progestin-only oral contraceptives, Levonorgestrel implants, Depo-Provera, patch and ring. Advise condom back-up.

9. It is important to have all children receive Hib vaccine, starting at 2 months of age.

REFERRAL/CONSULTATION

1. Patients with adverse reactions to **chemoprophylaxis** should be referred to a delegating physician.

2. Patients with signs/symptoms of meningitis should be referred immediately to the nearest emergency room.

3. Refer pregnant patients to OB health care provider.

4. Consult with delegating physician prior to beginning treatment for patients with history of kidney/liver disease or abnormal lab results.

5. If there is an absolute contraindication to use of rifampin, consult delegating physician regarding use of an alternative **chemoprophylaxis**.

REFERENCES

1. Prevention and control of haemophilus influenzae type b disease: recommendations of the advisory committee on immunization practices (ACIP) MMWR Recommendations. 2014 Feb *28;63*(RR-01):1-14 (Current)

2. Georgia Immunization Program, Department of Public Health "Surveillance and Reporting: *Haemophilus influenzae* Invasive Disease Fact Sheet," (2017). *Immunization Program Manual*: https://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-publications

3. Thomas W. Hale, *Medications & Mother's Milk.* New York, NY: Springer Publishing Company, LLC, pp 839-840. (2017).

4. David L. Heymann *Control of Communicable Diseases Manual*, *20th ed.,* Washington, D.C.: American Public Health Association. (2014). (Current)

5. David W. Kimberlin, *Red Book: 2018-2021 Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases*, *31st ed.* Washington, D.C.: American Academy of Pediatrics. (2018).

6. Lexi-Drugs Online," *Lexi-Comp Database™*, Lexi-Comp, Inc., Hudson, Ohio (February 20, 2019). https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/login

.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR CHEMOPROPHYLAXIS OF INVASIVE MENINGOCOCCAL DISEASE CONTACTS, INCLUDING MENINGITIS

NOTE: Public health nurses must work closely with the local communicable or infectious disease coordinator (or other designated **o**fficial) who is monitoring reported meningococcal disease cases and contacts, to ensure that all eligible contacts have been identified and provided with **chemoprophylaxis**.

DEFINITION

Invasive meningococcal disease includes meningitis (an inflammation of the membranes and fluid that surround the brain and spinal cord), bloodstream infections, or sepsis (often associated with a petechial or purpuric rash or pneumonia). Rarely, other sterile sites (such as joint fluid) may be infected.

When an index case of invasive meningococcal disease is identified, **Chemoprophylaxis** should be offered to high-risk household, day-care, and preschool contacts as soon as possible (preferably within 24 hours). **Chemoprophylaxis** administered more than 14 days after onset of illness in the index patient is probably of limited or no value. Persons in some institutional settings also may require **chemoprophylaxis**.

Indications and guidelines for **chemoprophylaxis** of contacts are:

1. High risk - **Chemoprophylaxis** recommended (close contact)

    a. All household contacts: especially children less than 2 years old.

    b. Childcare or preschool contact(s) during the 7 days prior to index case's onset of illness.

    c. Direct exposure to the index case's oral secretions through kissing, mouth-to-mouth resuscitation or unprotected contact during endotracheal intubation during the 7 days prior to index case's onset of illness.

    d. Frequently slept or ate in the same dwelling as the index case during the 7 days prior to index case's onset of illness.

    e. Passengers seated directly next to index case during flight lasting more than 8 hours.

2. Low risk - **Chemoprophylaxis** not recommended

a. Casual contact: no history of direct exposure to index case's oral secretions, i.e., schoolmate or workmate.

b. Indirect contact: only contact is with a high-risk contact, no direct contact with the index case.

c. Health care personnel without direct exposure to the case's oral secretions.

3. In outbreak or cluster:

Chemoprophylaxis for persons other than those at high risk should be given only after consultation with local public health authorities.

4. Non-invasive (i.e. respiratory cultures positive for *N. meningitidis*)

Chemoprophylaxis is NOT recommended for close contacts of patients with *N. meningitidis* cultured from non-sterile sites.

ETIOLOGY Meningococcal disease is caused by *Neisseria meningitidis,* a Gram-negative diplococcus (bacteria) with 13 serogroups. Strains belonging to groups A, B, C, Y, and W-135 are implicated most frequently in systemic disease. Asymptomatic colonization of the upper respiratory tract provides the focus from which the organism is spread.

SUBJECTIVE 1.History of contact as defined above under "High risk: **Chemoprophylaxis** recommended."

2.Absence of prodromal meningitis symptoms (respiratory illness or sore throat.) Absence of meningitis disease symptoms (fever, headache, stiff neck or vomiting).

OBJECTIVE No signs of respiratory illness or meningitis.

ASSESSMENT Candidate for **chemoprophylaxis** for meningococcal meningitis.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Assess whether patient has a history of liver and/or kidney disease. Also, attempt to review previous (within past 3 months) Comprehensive Metabolic Panel results. If results are abnormal or patient reports history of liver/kidney disease, consult with delegating physician before beginning **chemoprophylaxis**.

2. Assess last menstrual period if woman is of child bearing age (approximately 15-45 years of age) or with menstrual cycle and not using contraceptives. If possibly pregnant, refer to **delegating** physician for care.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Consult an online drug information resource (e.g. https://www.drugs.com/drug_interactions.html **or** https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/login**) to assess for drug-drug interactions**

NOTE: Discuss the importance of compliance with the medication regimen and of completing the full course of **chemoprophylaxis**. Assist the patient/caretaker to develop a plan for taking, or administering, the medication so coverage is as close to around-the-clock as possible.

1. Chemoprophylaxis

Rifampin, Ciprofloxacin, and Ceftriaxone are 90-95% effective in reducing nasopharyngeal carriage of *N. meningitidis* and are all acceptable for **Chemoprophylaxis**.

a. Rifampin

1. Infants 1 month and younger: Rifampin 5mg/kg PO every 12 hours for **2 days**. (Pediatric Drug Chart – See Appendix A)

2. Infants over 1 month old and children**/**adolescents (younger than 18 years old): Rifampin 10mg/kg (maximum 600mg/dose) PO every 12 hours for **2 days**. (Pediatric Drug Chart – see Appendix A)

3. Nonpregnant adults: Rifampin 600mg PO every 12 hours for **2 days**.

NOTE: Rifampin interacts with many drugs. Check the Rifampin product package insert for a complete list of drugs interactions.

OR

b. Ceftriaxone

NOTE: Give only if the patient cannot take Rifampin due to previous history of liver impairment, elevated liver function tests, or adverse/allergic reaction to Rifampin AND consult with **delegating** physician prior to ordering.

1. Children under 15 years old: Ceftriaxone 125mg IM **single dose**.

2. **Non-pregnant** Adolescents (15 years and older**)** and Adults (including those with liver disease and/or, abnormal liver function tests): Ceftriaxone 250mg IM **single dose**.

OR

3**.** Non-pregnant adults (18 years old and older): Ciprofloxacin 500mg PO **single dose**.

NOTE: If the patient is diabetic while receiving Ceftriaxone **Chemoprophylaxis**, the ACCU-CHEK Compact Plus system may provide incorrect (low) glucose results. Therefore, patients should stop using the ACCU-CHEK Compact Plus system and begin using an alternate blood glucose monitoring system for the duration of Ceftriaxone therapy and two full days (48 hours) after the last Ceftriaxone injection.

NOTE: Ceftriaxone can cause a false-positive reaction for urine glucose with Benedict's solution, Fehling's solution or with Clinitest tablets, but not with enzyme-based tests such as Clinistix and Tes-Tape.

NOTE: Do not give Ciprofloxacin to children or pregnant women. Ciprofloxacin has been associated with an increased rate of adverse reactions involving the joints and surrounding tissue structures (like tendons) in

children/adolescents (younger than 18 years old). Ciprofloxacin can be given to adults with elevated liver function tests or history of chronic liver disease.

2. **Immunizations**: Since secondary cases can occur several weeks or more after onset of disease, meningococcal vaccine is a possible adjunct to **Chemoprophylaxis** during an outbreak caused by a serogroup covered by the vaccine. Adults at risk because of a meningococcal disease outbreak should receive 1 dose of MenACWY if the outbreak is attributable to serogroup A, C, W, or Y, or either a 2-dose series of MenB-4C at least 1 month apart or a 3-dose series of MenB-FHbp at 0, 1–2, and 6 months if the outbreak is attributable to serogroup B.

See the Georgia Immunization Program Manual, Recommended Schedule and Guidelines, for vaccine information and administration guidelines at http://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-schedules

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Meningococcal meningitis is not highly contagious. Even close family members of a patient with meningitis have only a 1 in 250 chance of developing disease from the infected person.

2. The bacteria that causes meningococcal meningitis is spread through intimate, prolonged contact, such as "deep" kissing with exchange of saliva, or exposure to oral secretions with mouth-to-mouth resuscitation or by day-care contacts. The bacteria cannot live outside the human body, and animals do not carry the bacteria.

3. Review Rifampin product package insert for complete listing of interactions. If taking Rifampin:

a. Avoid drinking alcohol while taking rifampin due to increased risk of hepatotoxicity.

b. Rifampin is present in breast milk. Due to the potential for serious adverse reactions in the breastfeeding infant, the manufacturer recommends discontinuing breastfeeding while taking Rifampin.

c. Rifampin may cause the urine, feces, saliva, sputum, sweat and tears to temporarily turn red-orange.

d. Do not use soft contact lenses when taking Rifampin because permanent discoloration may occur.

e. Rifampin may decrease the effectiveness of oral contraceptives. Consideration should be given to using alternative contraceptive measures during, and immediately following, rifampin therapy, until the next cycle. The rationale for using an alternative or back-up method of birth control (i.e., copper-bearing IUD such as ParaGard, condoms, diaphragm) is that when Rifampin is prescribed, it reduces effectiveness (degree depending on method) of combined oral contraceptives, progestin-only oral contraceptives, Levonorgestrel implants, Depo-Provera, patch and ring. Advise condom back-up.

f. Most people can take Rifampin without difficulty. However, any of the following signs or symptoms should be reported, as soon as possible: fever, nausea, vomiting, loss of appetite, dark coffee or tea-colored urine, white/gray/light tan bowel movement, tiredness, weakness, yellow skin or sclera, bruising easily, rash/itching, and/or painful menstruation.

4. The effect of Ciprofloxacin can be decreased by calcium-rich foods such as dairy products, antacids, or calcium supplements. Ciprofloxacin should be taken 2 hours before or 6 hours after eating calcium-rich foods unless they are part of a larger meal that contains other non-calcium rich foods.

5. The manufacturer does not recommend use of Ciprofloxacin in breastfeeding women due to concerns of potential articular damage; however, this risk is considered low even in children in receiving high therapeutic doses.

6. If the patient is diabetic while receiving Ceftriaxone **chemoprophylaxis**, the ACCU-CHEK Compact Plus system may provide incorrect (low) glucose results. Therefore, patients should stop using the ACCU-CHEK Compact Plus system and begin using an alternate blood glucose monitoring system for the duration of Ceftriaxone therapy and two full days (48 hours) after the last Ceftriaxone injection.

7. In general, antibiotics that are present in breast milk may cause non-dose related modification of bowel flora. Infants should be monitored for gastrointestinal disturbances. Ceftriaxone is considered compatible with breastfeeding when used in

recommended doses. The manufacturer recommends that caution be exercised when administered Ceftriaxone to nursing women.

8. Routine immunization of adolescents and persons at risk for meningococcal disease is recommended. Immunization of college students is recommended by the American College Health Association and is an actual requirement for admission to public schools. See the Georgia Immunization Program Manual, "Recommended Schedule and Guidelines," for vaccine information and administration guidelines at **http://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-schedules**

9. Discuss the importance of compliance with the medication regimen and of completing the full course of treatment. Assist the patient/caretaker to develop a written plan for taking, or administering, the medication so coverage is as close to around-the-clock as possible.

REFERRAL/CONSULTATION

1. Patients with adverse reactions to treatment should be referred to the delegating physician.

2. Patients with signs/symptoms of meningitis should be referred immediately to the nearest emergency room.

3. Refer pregnant patients to OB health care provider.

4. Consult with delegating physician prior to beginning treatment for patients with history of kidney/liver disease or abnormal lab results.

5. If there is an absolute contraindication to use any of the above listed medications, such as allergy, warnings on the package insert, etc. consult the delegating physician for alternative recommendations.

REFERENCES

1. American Society of Health-Systems Pharmacists. *American Hospital Formulary Services Drug Information, 2019.*Bethesda, MD*:* ASHP.

2. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, *Antimicrobial Chemoprophylaxis*. (2013). Retrieved from https://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/rr6202a2.htm?s_cid=rr6202a2_w (Current)

3. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, *Epidemiology and Prevention of Vaccine-Preventable Diseases.* Hamborsky J., Kroger A., & Wolfe S. (eds.) 13th ed. Washington D.C.: Public Health Foundation, pp. 231-244. (2015). (Current)

4. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, *Guidance for the Evaluation and Public Health Management of Suspected Outbreaks of Meningococcal Disease*. (2017). Retrieved from https://www.cdc.gov/meningococcal/downloads/meningococcal-outbreak-guidance.pdf

5. David L. Heymann, *Control of Communicable Diseases Manual*, *20th ed.,* Washington, D.C.: American Public Health Association. (2014). (Current)

6. David Kimberlin, *Red Book: 2018-2021 Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases*, *31st ed*. Washington, D.C.: American Academy of Pediatrics. (2018).

7. "Lexi Drugs Online", *Lexi-Comp Database™*, Lexi-Comp, Inc., Hudson, Ohio (February 20, 2019). Retrieved from https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/login

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PREVENTATIVE TREATMENT OF PERTUSSIS CONTACTS

NOTE: Public health nurses must work closely with the District Epidemiologists/ Communicable/Infectious Disease Coordinator (or other designated official) who is monitoring reported pertussis cases and contacts to ensure that all contacts have been identified and received prophylaxis.

DEFINITION

Pertussis is a bacterial infection of the upper respiratory tract that can progress to severe paroxysms of coughing, with or without an inspiratory whoop, followed by vomiting. Fever is absent or minimal.

Transmission of pertussis is by close contact with respiratory tract secretions of an infected person, who is most contagious before onset of the paroxysmal cough. Macrolide (a type of antibiotic) therapy for cases decreases infectivity and may limit spread.

Up to 90% of non-immune household contacts acquire the disease. Immunity wanes over time and adolescents and adults become an important reservoir of infectious organisms. They are often the source of infection for infants, who are at the greatest risk of complications, including death.

ETIOLOGY

The bacillus *Bordetella pertussis*. A whooping cough syndrome may also be caused by other Bordetella species, with *Bordetella parapertussis* occasionally the cause of milder cases. In some cases, both organisms may be present.

SUBJECTIVE

1. States history of recent close contact (i.e., household, day care) with:

a. A probable case of pertussis i.e., a person with cough illness lasting 2 weeks or more, with at least one of the following symptoms: paroxysms of coughing, inspiratory “whoop”, post-tussive vomiting; AND absence of lab confirmation

OR

b. An infant less than 1 year old with a cough illness of any duration, with at least one of the following symptoms: paroxysms of coughing, inspiratory “whoop”, post-tussive vomiting, or apnea, with or without cyanosis; AND absence of lab confirmation.

OR

2. A confirmed case of pertussis defined by a positive culture; or a positive PCR test in association with clinical symptoms as outlined in "a" above. May or may not have a history of adequate immunization against pertussis.

3. Denies upper respiratory symptoms.

4. Denies history of allergy or other contraindications to taking the medications.

OBJECTIVE

1. No signs of upper respiratory illness.

NOTE: If patient with upper respiratory signs**/**symptoms, care for patient using the Standard Nurse Protocol for Identification and Treatment of Probable Pertussis

2. Denies having liver disease or hepatic dysfunction.

ASSESSMENT

Candidate for **Chemoprophylaxis** of pertussis

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Assess whether patient has a history of liver and/or kidney disease. Also, attempt to review previous (within past 3 months) Comprehensive Metabolic Panel results. If results are abnormal or patient reports history of liver/kidney disease, consult with delegating physician before beginning **Chemoprophylaxis**.

2. Assess last menstrual period if woman is of child bearing age (approximately 15-45 years of age) or with menstrual cycle and not using contraceptives. If possibly pregnant, refer to **delegating** physician for care.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Consult an online drug information resource (e.g. https://www.drugs.com/drug_interactions.html **or** https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/login**) to assess for drug-drug interactions**

NOTE: Discuss the importance of compliance with the medication regimen and of completing the full course of **chemoprophylaxis.** Assist the patient/caretaker to develop a written plan for taking, or administering, the medication so coverage is as close to around-the-clock as possible.

1. Chemoprophylaxis

a. Azithromycin

1. Children less than 6 months of age: Azithromycin 10mg/kg PO once daily for 5 days.

2. Children 6 months **–** 12 years old: Azithromycin 10mg/kg (maximum of 500mg) PO once on day 1, then 5 mg/kg (maximum 250mg/day) PO once on days 2 through 5.

3. Adolescents (at least 13 years old) and Adults (including patients who are pregnant): Azithromycin 500mg PO once on day 1, then 250mg PO once on days 2 through 5.

b. Erythromycin (preferably the estolate form):

NOTE: Do not give in hepatic dysfunction or pre-existing liver disease.

1. Infants (at least 1 month old) and children (younger than 13 years old): Erythromycin estolate 40mg/kg divided in 4 equal doses; give 1 dose every 6 hours PO for 14 days (maximum of 2 grams total daily).

NOTE: Erythromycin estolate not preferred agent for infants less than 1 month due to increased risk of infantile hypertrophic pyloric stenosis).

2. Adolescents (at least 13 years old) and Adults: Erythromycin 500mg PO every six hours for 14 days.

OR

c. Sulfamethoxazole/trimethoprim (SMZ/TMP)

NOTE: Give only if patient cannot take other medication listed. Do not give if pregnant, breastfeeding, pre-existing

liver disease, allergic to sulfa drugs or infant less than 2 months old.

1. Infants 2 months of age and older children (younger than 13 years old):
SMZ/TMP (**40mg/8mg**)/kg, divided into 2 equal doses; give 1 dose every 12 hours for 14 days.

2. Adolescents (at least 13 years old) and Adults: **SMZ/TMP 800 mg/160 mg** PO every 12 hours for 14 days.

2. Immunizations

Initiate or continue the pertussis immunization schedule for contacts. See the *ACIP Recommended Immunization Schedules* for vaccine information and vaccine administration guidelines at **http://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-schedules**

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. All close contacts need to take the medication, regardless of age or immunization status, because pertussis immunity is not absolute and may not prevent infection.

2. Discuss the importance of compliance with the medication regimen and of completing the full course of chemoprophylaxis. Assist the patient/caretaker to develop a written plan for taking, or administering, the medication so coverage is as close to around-the-clock as possible.

3. Report as soon as possible if apparent side effects to the medication develop (i.e., if nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, severe abdominal pain, or symptoms of hepatitis occur during erythromycin therapy).

4. Seek medical care if the contact develops symptoms of respiratory illness within 21 days (maximum incubation period) of the last exposure to the infected person.

5. Assure that unimmunized or incompletely immunized children under age 7 complete the vaccine series. Review current recommendations for individuals over age 7 years. See ACIP Recommended Immunization Schedules for vaccine information

and vaccine administration guidelines
at https://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-schedules

6. Avoid aluminum or magnesium containing antacids 2 hours before and up to 2 hours after taking azithromycin.

7. Educate patients who receive Azithromycin about adverse effects (QT prolongation, torsades de pointes, etc.) and document patient's understanding. https://www.fda.gov/drugs/drug-safety-and-availability/fda-drug-safety-communication-azithromycin-zithromax-or-zmax-and-risk-potentially-fatal-heart

8. Consult local school board concerning policy of returning to school. If no policy exists the recommendation is for children who develop symptoms consistent with pertussis to be excluded from school or day care until they have completed five days of effective antimicrobial therapy, or, if they are not treated, 21 days after the onset of symptoms.

REFERRAL/CONSULTATION

1. Refer all exposed infants less than 6 months of age to a **delegating** physician or **pediatrician.**

2. Manage care of all contacts with respiratory signs/symptoms using the Standard Nurse Protocol for Identification and Treatment of Probable Pertussis Cases.

3. Ensure all pregnant women have an OB providing prenatal care. Notify her OB that patient is receiving preventative treatment for pertussis.

4. Ensure all children have a Primary Care Provider. Notify the child's provider that patient is receiving preventative treatment for pertussis.

5. Consult with **delegating** physician **(or refer to pediatrician)** patients who are immunocompromised, unable to take any of the above medications, or who have experience serious adverse medication effects.

6. Consult with physician prior to beginning **chemoprophylaxis** for patients with history of kidney/liver disease or abnormal lab results.

REFERENCES

1. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, "Recommended Antimicrobial Agents for the Treatment and Postexposure Chemoprophylaxis of Pertussis," *MMWR*, December 2005. (Current)

2. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, *Epidemiology & Prevention of Vaccine-Preventable Diseases*, *13th ed.* Hamborsky J., Kroger A, Wolfe S. eds. Washington DC: Public Health Foundation (2015). (Current)

3. Council of State and Territorial Epidemiologists. Revision of the pertussis surveillance case definition to more accurately capture the burden of disease among infants <1 year of age. (2013). Retrieved from https://c.ymcdn.com/sites/www.cste.org/resource/resmgr/PS/13-ID-15.pdf (Current)

4. Georgia Department of Public Health Notifiable disease reporting, (2019). Retrieved from https://dph.georgia.gov/disease-reporting

5. David L. Heymann, *Control of Communicable Diseases Manual, 20th ed*., Washington, D.C.: American Public Health Association. (2014). (Current)

6. David W. Kimberlin, *Red Book: 2018-2021 Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases*, *31st ed.* Washington, D.C.: American Academy of Pediatrics. (2018).

7. Robert Kliegman & Joseph St. Geme, *Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics*, *21st ed*., San Diego, CA: Elsevier. (2019).

8. "Lexi-Drugs Online," *Lexi-Comp Database*, Lexi-Comp, Inc., Hudson, Ohio (February 20, 2019). Retrieved from https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/login

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR IDENTIFICATION AND CHEMOPHYLAXIS OF PROBABLE PERTUSSIS CASES

NOTE: Public health nurses must work closely with the District Epidemiologists/ Communicable/ Infectious Disease Coordinator (or another designated official) who is monitoring reported pertussis cases and contacts to ensure that all contacts have been identified and **given chemophylaxis.**

DEFINITION

Pertussis is a bacterial infection of the upper respiratory tract that can progress to severe paroxysms of coughing, with or without an inspiratory whoop, followed by vomiting. Fever is absent or minimal.

Transmission of pertussis is by close contact with respiratory tract secretions of an infected person, who is most contagious before onset of the paroxysmal cough, although infectivity continues through the first 3 weeks of cough onset. Appropriate antibiotic therapy for cases decreases infectivity and may limit spread.

Up to 90% of non-immune household contacts acquire the disease. Immunity wanes over time and adolescents and adults become an important reservoir of infectious organisms. They are often the source of infection for infants, who are at the greatest risk of complications with permanent sequelae.

ETIOLOGY

The bacillus *Bordetella pertussis*. A whooping cough syndrome may also be caused by other Bordetella species, with *Bordetella parapertussis* occasionally the cause of milder cases. In some cases, both organisms may be present.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Cough illness of 2 weeks or more with one of the following: paroxysms of coughing, inspiratory “whoop,” or post-tussive vomiting, without other apparent cause. A high degree of suspicion should apply to infants (less than 1 year old) who may have atypical symptoms including gagging, difficulty feeding and/or apnea instead of or in addition to cough. Infant cough can be less than 2 weeks in duration.

2. Upper respiratory symptoms of coryza (runny nose)**,** sneezing, low-grade fever, and a mild, occasional cough that preceded the prolonged cough.

3. May or may not have a history of adequate immunization against pertussis.

4. No history of allergy or other contraindications to the medications recommended for treatment.

OBJECTIVE A cough illness with at least one of the following:

1. coughing fits (paroxysms)

2. inspiratory whoop

3. post-tussive vomiting

4. apnea, with or without cyanosis (infants less than 1 year old)

LABORATORY FINDINGS

May or may not have positive culture results. Serology is not a valid test for the identification of pertussis. If the case meets the clinical definition, PCR can be used to confirm a diagnosis. Consult with the District Epidemiologist or State Vaccine-Preventable Disease Epidemiology Unit (404-657-2588) for questions about case confirmation, lab testing, and results.

ASSESSMENT Candidate for pertussis treatment.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1.Assess whether patient has a history of liver and/or kidney disease. **Perform Comprehensive Metabolic Panel if one has not been performed within previous three months.** If results are abnormal or patient reports history of liver/kidney disease, consult with delegating physician before beginning treatment.

2.Collect a nasopharyngeal swab specimen for polymerase chain reaction (PCR) testing and/or culture for B. pertussis. PCR testing has a more rapid turnaround time than culture. Both tests are available through the Georgia Public Health Laboratory. Contact the State Vaccine-Preventable Diseases Unit at (404-657-2588) for further information.

NOTE: All suspect pertussis cases should be laboratory tested for confirmation. Consult with the District Epidemiologist or State Vaccine-Preventable Disease Unit (404-657-2588) to report a suspect case of pertussis and for further guidance. All specimens should be submitted to the Georgia Public Health Laboratory and

approval is required through the epidemiologist. Information regarding the collection and transport of specimens can be found at

http://dph.georgia.gov/sites/dph.georgia.gov/files/related_files/site_page/ADES_Pertussis_Specimen_Collection_Submission-Guidelines.pdf

To view how to collect a nasopharyngeal swab refer to https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=zqX56LGItgQ

Culture media and nasopharyngeal swabs are available from the District Epidemiology Office. Specimen collection is of limited usefulness if done more than 3 weeks after symptom onset.

THERAPEUTIC

NOTE: Do not wait for test results to initiate therapy when there is a high suspicion of disease. Studies have shown that treatment is most effective when administered in the early stages of disease. **Therefore,** patients should begin treatment for pertussis immediately after presumptive diagnosis.

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Consult an online drug information resource (e.g. https://www.drugs.com/drug_interactions.html **or** https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/login**) to assess for drug-drug interactions**

NOTE: Discuss the importance of compliance with the medication regimen and of completing the full course of treatment. Assist the patient/caretaker to develop a written plan for taking, or administering, the medication so coverage is as close to around-the-clock as possible.

1. Azithromycin:

    a. Infants less than 6 months old: Azithromycin 10mg/kg PO daily for 5 days

    b. Children 6 months of age through 12 years old: Azithromycin 10mg/kg (maximum of 500mg) PO once on day 1, then 5mg/kg (maximum 250mg/day) PO once on days 2 through 5.

c. Adolescents (at least 13 years old) and adults (including patients who are pregnant): Azithromycin 500mg PO once on day 1, then 250mg PO once on days 2 through 5.

OR

2. Erythromycin (preferably the estolate form):

NOTE: Do not give in hepatic dysfunction or pre-existing liver disease. Also, do not give to infants less than 1 month old due to infantile hypertrophic pyloric stenosis.

a. Children 1 month of age through 12 years old: Erythromycin 40mg/kg (maximum of 2 grams) PO divided into 4 equal doses; give 1 dose every six hours for 14 days.

c. Adolescents (at least 13 years old) and adults: Erythromycin 500mg PO every six hours for 14 days.

OR, if cannot take others listed,

3. **Sulfamethoxazole/ Trimethoprim (SMZ/TMP)**

NOTE: Give only if patient cannot take other medications listed. Do not give if patient is pregnant, breastfeeding, has pre-existing liver disease, **is** allergic to sulfa drugs or **is** younger than 2 months old.

a. Children 2 months of age through 12 years of age: **SMZ/TMP** (**40**mg/**8**mg)/kg divided in 2 equal doses; give 1 dose PO every 12 hours for 14 days.

b. Adolescents (at least 13 years old) and adults: **SMZ/TMP** (**800**mg/**160**mg) PO every 12 hours for 14 days.

4. Immunization:

Initiate or continue the pertussis immunization schedule for cases. See the ACIP Recommended Immunization Schedules, for vaccine information and vaccine administration guidelines at http://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-schedules

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Identify all close contacts (household contacts and possibly others – particularly persons who are pregnant or caring for an infant, immunocompromised, or have an underlying medical condition that would be exacerbated by pertussis such as severe asthma or cystic fibrosis) and advise them to seek medical care for **chemoprophylaxis** regardless of age or immunization status, because pertussis immunity is not absolute and may not prevent infection.

2. Counsel patient about the importance of compliance with the medication regimen and completing the full course of treatment. A minimum of five days of treatment must be completed before returning to school or work.

3. Assist the patient/caretaker to develop a written plan for taking, or administering, the medication so coverage is as close to around-the-clock as possible. Report as soon as possible if side effects of the medication develop (i.e., if nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, severe abdominal pain, or symptoms of hepatitis occur during erythromycin therapy).

4. Assure that unimmunized or incompletely immunized children under age 7 complete the vaccine series. Review current recommendations for individuals over age 7 years. See the Georgia Immunization Program Manual, Recommended Schedules and Guidelines, for vaccine information and vaccine administration guidelines at
http://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-schedules

5. Avoid aluminum or magnesium containing antacids 2 hours before and up to 2 hours after taking Erythromycin.

6. Erythromycin enteric-coated tablets or an ester derivative (i.e., estolate, ethylsuccinate) may be taken with food to minimize gastrointestinal irritation.

7. If patient is presumptively diagnosed and treated in third trimester of pregnancy, instruct patient to inform primary care and/or obstetrical provider of presumptive diagnosis (possible risk of transmission to newborn infant). Patient should be counseled to have family members and others who will be in close contact with the newborn vaccinated with Tdap as a protective measure. Go to https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/schedules/index.html for more information.

8. All close contacts of newborns should be advised to update their pertussis immunization status with Tdap per CDC guidelines. The CDC recommends pregnant women get the whooping cough vaccine between 27 and 36 weeks of each pregnancy, preferably during the earlier part of this time period.
https://www.cdc.gov/features/tdap-in-pregnancy/index.html

9. Educate patients who receive Azithromycin about adverse effects (QT prolongation, torsades de pointes, etc.) and document patient's understanding.
http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/DrugSafety/UCM343347.pdf

REFERRAL/CONSULTATION

1. Refer all infants less than 6 months of age with respiratory signs/symptoms to **delegating** physician or **pediatrician.** If child has a Primary Care Provider, notify PCP that patient is receiving treatment for pertussis.

2. Ensure all pregnant women have an OB providing prenatal care. Notify OB that patient is receiving treatment for pertussis. If patient is presumptively diagnosed and treated in third trimester of pregnancy, inform primary care provider and/or obstetrical provider of presumptive diagnosis due to possible risk of transmission to newborn infant.

3. Consult with **delegating** physician or refer to **specialist** any patients who are immunocompromised, unable to take any of the above medications or who experience adverse effects from medication.

4. Consult with **delegating** physician regarding any patient that may have a history of liver/kidney disease or abnormal lab results.

REFERENCES

1. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Updated Recommendations for Use of Tetanus Toxoid, Reduced Diptheria Toxoid and Acellular Pertussis (Tdap) Vaccine from the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices, 2010. *MMWR* 2011, *60*(1): 13-15. (2011). (Current)

2. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Updated Recommendations for Use of Tetanus Toxoid, Reduced Diphtheria, and Acellular Pertussis Vaccine (Tdap) in Pregnant Women – Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP), 2012. *MMWR*. *62*(7):131-135. (2013). (Current)

3. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, *Epidemiology & Prevention of Vaccine-Preventable Diseases*, *13th ed.* Hamborsky J., Kroger A, Wolfe S. eds. Washington DC: Public Health Foundation. (2015). (Current)

4. Council of State and Territorial Epidemiologists, Revision of the pertussis surveillance case definition to more accurately capture the burden of disease among infants <1 year of age. (2013). Retrieved from https://c.ymcdn.com/sites/www.cste.org/resource/resmgr/PS/13-ID-15.pdf (Current)

5. David L. Heymann, *Control of Communicable Diseases Manual, 20th ed.,* Washington, D.C.: American Public Health Association. (2014). (Current)

6. David Kimberlin, *Red Book: 2018-2021 Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases*, *31st ed.* Washington, D.C.: American Academy of Pediatrics. (2018).

7. "Lexi-Drugs Online," *Lexi-Comp Database*, Lexi-Comp, Inc., Hudson, Ohio (February 20, 2019). Retrieved from https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/login

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR CHEMOPROPHYLAXIS OF RHEUMATIC FEVER

DEFINITION

Patients with history of acute rheumatic fever are at high risk for recurrence if they develop a streptococcal group A upper respiratory tract infection. Because both asymptomatic and symptomatic infections can trigger a recurrence, the most effective protection from recurrences is continuous antibiotic **chemoprophylaxis**, perhaps for life.

Acute Rheumatic Fever is an inflammatory, multisystem disease that occurs 1-5 weeks to 6 months after infection with group A hemolytic streptococci. It is characterized by focal inflammatory lesions of the connective tissue structures (especially of the heart, blood vessels, and joints) and by the presence of Aschoff bodies in the myocardium and skin. Typically, the onset is signaled by the sudden occurrence of fever and major manifestations such as joint pain (arthritis), possibly followed by heart and pericardial disease (carditis may be clinical or subclinical), skin changes (erythema marginatum, subcutaneous nodules), and/or chorea. Minor manifestations can include clinical findings (fever and arthralgias), laboratory findings (elevated erythrocyte sedimentation rate, abnormal C-reactive protein) and/or electrocardiographic (prolonged PR interval) alterations. Diagnosis requires 2 major criteria or 1 major and 2 minor criteria with supporting evidence of antecedent group A streptococcal infection.

ETIOLOGY

Certain M Serotypes of Group A Beta hemolytic *Streptococcus pyogenes*

SUBJECTIVE

1.Documented history of acute rheumatic fever.

2.No history of allergic reaction to any **chemoprophylaxis** being considered.

OBJECTIVE

Displays signs and symptoms of acute rheumatic fever:

1. Fever

2. Painful and tender joints — most often in the knees, ankles, elbows and wrists

3. Pain in one joint that migrates to another joint

4. Red, hot or swollen joints

5. Small, painless bumps (nodules) beneath the skin

6. Chest pain

7. Heart murmur

8. Fatigue

9. Flat or slightly raised, painless rash with a ragged edge (erythema marginatum)

10. Jerky, uncontrollable body movements (Sydenham chorea, or St. Vitus' dance) — most often in the hands, feet and face

11. Outbursts of unusual behavior, such as crying or inappropriate laughing, that accompanies Sydenham chorea

ASSESSMENT Candidate for secondary **chemoprophylaxis** of acute rheumatic fever and no contraindication to medication selected.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Assess whether patient has a history of liver and/or kidney disease. Also, attempt to review previous (within past 3 months) Comprehensive Metabolic Panel results. If results are abnormal or patient reports history of liver/kidney disease, consult with delegating physician before beginning **chemoprophylaxis.**

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Consult an online drug information resource (e.g. https://www.drugs.com/drug_interactions.html **or** https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/login**) to assess for drug-drug interactions**

NOTE: Discuss the importance of compliance with the medication regimen and of completing the full course of treatment. Assist the patient/caretaker to develop a written plan for taking, or administering, the medication so coverage is as close to around-the-clock as possible.

1. Penicillin G benzathine (Bicillin L-A)

a. Adults and children (greater than 60lbs [27 kg]): Bicillin L-A 1.2 million units IM every 3-4 weeks. Administration every 3 weeks is recommended in certain high-risk situations. High risk situations are listed at http://www.aafp.org/afp/2010/0201/p346.html

b. Patients weighing 60 lbs. (27 kg) or less: Bicillin L-A 600,000 units/kg IM every 3-4 weeks. Administration every 3 weeks is recommended in certain high-risk situations. High **risk** situations are listed at **http://www.aafp.org/afp/2010/0201/p346.html**

NOTE: IM injections are recommended until late adolescence or young adulthood AND free of rheumatic attacks for at least 5 years; if there is risk of noncompliance with injections, then a change to oral **chemoprophylaxis** is recommended.

OR

2. Penicillin V tablets

    a. Children **≤ 27 kg**: Penicillin V 250mg PO every 12 hours for 10 days.

    b. Children 2-3 years old that have sickle cell disease or anatomically asplenic: Penicillin V 125mg PO every 12 hours for 10 days

    c. Children **> 27 kg** and Adults: Penicillin V 500 mg PO every 12 hours for 10 days.

NOTE: There are alternative regiments for patients with penicillin allergy (listed below). However, skin testing and penicillin desensitization for immediate hypersensitivity type reaction may also be an option.

OR

3. If allergic to penicillin and sulfonamide drugs, give Erythromycin. Susceptibility testing should be pursued prior to use of this drug class (macrolides).

    a. Children > than 20 kg and adults: 250 mg PO every 6 hours for 10 days

b. Children ≤ 20 kg: 40 mg/kg/day PO in 4 divided doses for 10 days.

OR

4. Azithromycin is more expensive than Erythromycin, but it has fewer adverse effects and permits once daily dosing. Susceptibility testing should be pursued prior to use of this drug class (macrolides).

    a. Adults: 500 mg PO once **daily for 5 days**

    b. Children: 12 mg/kg (maximum 500 mg) PO once daily for 5 days

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Patient is under medical supervision.

2. Monitoring of medication compliance is jointly managed by public health and primary care providers, **including cardiologist.** Efforts will be made to ensure access to care and medications.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Review importance of preventing recurrences of Acute Rheumatic Fever.

2. Counsel patient on medications, directions for taking them, potential side effects and management.

REFERRAL/CONSULTATION

Consult with primary care provider **and/or cardiologist** or if patient is non-adherent with treatment or displays the following signs or symptoms of recurrence of Acute Rheumatic Fever:

1. Fever

2. Painful and tender joints — most often in the knees, ankles, elbows and wrists

3. Pain in one joint that migrates to another joint

4. Red, hot or swollen joints

5. Small, painless bumps (nodules) beneath the skin

6. Chest pain

7. Heart murmur

8. Fatigue

9. Flat or slightly raised, painless rash with a ragged edge (erythema marginatum)

10. Jerky, uncontrollable body movements (Sydenham chorea, or St. Vitus' dance) — most often in the hands, feet and face

11. Outbursts of unusual behavior, such as crying or inappropriate laughing, that accompanies Sydenham chorea

REFERENCES

1. A. Al-Jazari, R. Al-Jaser, Z. Al-Halees, M.M. Al-Jufan, S. Al-Mayou, A. Al-Raihi, & S. Al-Hajjar, Guidelines for the secondary prevention of rheumatic heart disease: Endorsed by Saudi Pediatric Infectious Diseases Society. (2017). Retrieved from https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S2352646717300327

2. C. Armstrong, "AHA Guidelines on Prevention of Rheumatic Fever and Diagnosis and Treatment of Acute Streptococcal Pharyngitis." (2010). Retrieved from https://www.aafp.org/afp/2010/0201/p346.html (Current)

3. P. Auwaerter, *Acute rheumatic fever.* (2018). Retrieved from https://www.hopkinsguides.com/hopkins/view/Johns_Hopkins_ABX_Guide/540006/all/Acute_Rheumatic_Fever

4. D. Bach, Revised Jones Criteria for Acute Rheumatic Fever | Ten Points to Remember. (2015). Retrieved from http://www.acc.org/latest-in-cardiology/ten-points-to-remember/2015/05/08/15/22/revision-of-the-jones-criteria-for-the-diagnosis-of-acute-rheumatic-fever (Current)

5. Firestein, G., Budd, R., Gabriel, S., McInnes, I., & O'Dell, J. *Kelley's Textbook of Rheumatology*, 10th ed., Elsevier. (2017).

6. M.A. Gerber, Robert Baltimore, C.B. Eaton, M. Gerwitz, A.H. Rowley, S.T. Shulman, & K.A. Taubert, Prevention of rheumatic fever and diagnosis and treatment of acute Streptococcal pharyngitis. (2009). Retrieved from https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19246689 (Current)

7. Michael Gewitz, Robert Baltimore, Lloyd Y. Tani, Craig A. Sable, Stanford Shulman, Jonathan Carapetis, Bo Remenyi, Kathryn Taubert, Ann F. Bolger, Lee Beerman, Bongani Mayosi, Andrea Beaton, Natesa Pandian, & Edward Kaplan, Revision of the Jones Criteria for the Diagnosis of Acute Rheumatic Fever in the Era of Doppler Echocardiography. (2015). Retrieved from http://circ.ahajournals.org/content/early/2015/04/23/CIR.0000000000000205 (Current)

8. David Heymann, *Control of Communicable Diseases Manual*, *20th ed*., Washington, D.C.: American Public Health Association. (2014). (Current)

9. David Kimberlin, *Red Book: 2018-2021 Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases*, *31st ed*. Washington, D.C.: American Academy of Pediatrics. (2018).

10. "Lexi-Drugs Online," *Lexi-Comp Database™*, Lexi-Comp, Inc., Hudson, Ohio (February 20, 2019). Retrieved from https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/login

11. Product Information: ERYC(R) oral capsules, erythromycin delayed release oral capsules. Rockaway, NJ: Warner Chilcott, Inc. (2007). (Current)

12. C. Uphold & M. Graham, *Clinical Guidelines in Family Practice, 5th ed.,* Gainesville, FL: Barmarrae Books, Inc. (2013). (Current)

13. M. Wallace, Rheumatic fever. (2019). Retrieved from http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/236582-overview

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PREVENTION OF MOSQUITO RELATED ZIKA INFECTION

DEFINITION

Zika virus was first discovered in 1947 and is named after the Zika Forest in Uganda. The first human cases of Zika were detected in 1952 and since then, outbreaks of Zika have been reported in tropical Africa, Southeast Asia, the Americas, and the Pacific Islands.

ETIOLOGY

Zika is spread primarily by the bite of an infected *Aedes* species mosquito (*Ae. Aegypti*, while *Ae. Albopictus* is also a competent vector). The species are aggressive daytime biters and can also bite at night.

Zika can also be transmitted during sexual contact from a person who has been infected with Zika to his or her partners, even if the infected person is asymptomatic. In this case, sexual contact includes vaginal sex, anal sex, oral sex, and the sharing of sex toys. Zika can remain in semen up to 6 months, longer than in other body fluids including vaginal fluids, urine and blood.

Zika can be passed from a pregnant woman to her fetus during pregnancy. Infection with Zika during pregnancy can cause a pattern of birth defects called “Congenital Zika syndrome”. Congenital Zika syndrome can include severe microcephaly with partially collapsed skull, thin cerebral cortices with subcortical calcifications, ocular abnormalities, and congenital contractures (arthrogryposis).

There is no vaccine or medicine currently available specifically to prevent or treat Zika. Therefore, the focus for persons traveling to Zika affected areas is prevention of mosquito bites.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient asymptomatic and states intent to travel to area known to have ongoing Zika transmission. See list of affected areas at: https://wwwnc.cdc.gov/travel/page/world-map-areas-with-zika.

2. Patient states he/she has traveled to area known to have ongoing Zika transmission or had sexual contact with a person exposed to Zika and complaining of fever, maculopapular rash, joint pain, and conjunctivitis. Symptoms can last for several days to a week. Current CDC research suggests that Guillain-Barre syndrome (GBS) is strongly associated with Zika, although only a small proportion of people with recent Zika virus infection get GBS. See list of affected areas at: https://wwwnc.cdc.gov/travel/page/world-map-areas-with-zika

NOTE: If patient is symptomatic for Zika infection but not pregnant, refer to their medical provider for evaluation and follow-up.

NOTE: If patient is pregnant with potential Zika exposure either through travel or sexual contact with someone with Zika exposure she should be referred to her medical provider regardless of symptoms.

OBJECTIVE

1. Asymptomatic
2. Fever for several days to a week
3. Maculopapular rash for several days to a week
4. Conjunctivitis for several days to a week.
5. Patient verbalizes pain in joints for several days to a week.
6. Guillain-Barre syndrome (GBS)

ASSESSMENT Candidate for Preventive therapy of Zika infection

PLAN

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

Mosquito repellent product that is 20-30% N, N-Diethyl-3-methylbenzamide (DEET). **Some DEET-containing products are covered by Medicaid. Consult each CMO's drug formulary for more information.**

NOTE: Using DEET containing products per manufacturer's direction has been proven safe and effective for pregnant and breastfeeding women.

NOTE: DEET is approved for use on children older than two months of age.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Take steps to control mosquitoes inside and outside.

2. When spending time indoors, patients should ensure that doors and windows are kept closed and that there are no holes in door and window screens.

3. When spending time outdoors patients should wear long-sleeved shirts and pants in addition to using EPA-approved mosquito repellent containing 20-30% DEET on exposed skin.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. **Practice mosquito avoidance by wearing long sleeves and long pants, using 20-30% DEET insect repellent and staying indoors when possible. Guidelines regarding the safe and effective use of insect repellents in order to maximize effectiveness and minimize side effects were issued by the United States Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). These are particularly important when using DEET-based repellents:**

    a. **Use just enough repellent to lightly cover but not saturate the skin.**

    b. **Repellents should be applied to exposed skin, clothing, or both but not under clothing.**

    c. **A thin layer can be applied to the face by dispensing repellent into the palms, rubbing hands together, and then applying to the face.**

    d. **Repellent should be washed from the palms after application to prevent contact with the eyes, mouth, and genitals.**

    e. **Do not use repellents over cuts and wounds or inflamed, irritated, or eczematous skin.**

    f. **Do not inhale aerosols, spray them in enclosed spaces or near food, or get them into the eyes.**

    g. **Do not apply insect repellent to the hands of small children, as it will inevitably be rubbed into the eyes.**

    h. **Frequent reapplication of repellent is unnecessary.**

    i. **The areas treated with repellent should be washed**

with soap and water once the repellent is no longer needed.

j. If both sunscreen and repellent are being applied, sunscreen should be applied first, and repellent should be applied after. It is better to use separate sunscreen and repellent products, as sunscreen generally needs to be reapplied more frequently than repellent.

k. Protection is shortened by swimming, washing, sweating, wiping, exercise, and rainfall

2. Men and women with possible Zika exposure should use condoms consistently and correctly or abstain from sex for at least 6 months after symptom onset or last possible exposure to prevent Zika virus infection through sexual transmission. Condom usage applies to vaginal, anal, oral sex, as well as the sharing of sex toys.

3. Men with partners who are pregnant should use condoms or abstain from sex for the duration of pregnancy, whichever is longer. The World Health Organization (WHO) recommends women with possible Zika exposure should use condoms consistently and correctly or abstain from sex for at least 6 months after symptom onset or last possible exposure; Centers for Disease Control & Prevention (CDC) recommends 8 weeks. DPH Epidemiology follows WHO guidelines with consistent recommendations of 6 months or the duration of pregnancy for both men and women to prevent Zika virus infection through sexual transmission. Condom usage applies to vaginal, anal, oral sex, as well as the sharing of sex toys.

4. Pregnant women should avoid travel to areas with ongoing Zika transmission (https://wwwnc.cdc.gov/travel/page/world-map-areas-with-zika) and use condoms consistently and correctly if their partner has traveled to those areas to prevent Zika virus infection through sexual transmission. Condom usage applies to vaginal, anal, oral sex, as well as the sharing of sex toys.

5. If a pregnant woman must travel, advise her to talk to her prenatal provider or other healthcare provider before traveling and take appropriate precautions including checking Zika related travel notices and mosquito avoidance.

6. Women planning to become pregnant and their partners should avoid travel to Zika affected areas. If either have traveled to an area with ongoing Zika transmission, they should discuss plans for pregnancy with a health care provider including guidance to delay pregnancy for at least 6 months after travel regardless of symptoms or Zika test results. During those 6 months, they should use condoms consistently and correctly or abstain from sex to prevent Zika virus infection through sexual transmission. Condom usage applies to vaginal, anal, oral sex, as well as the sharing of sex toys.

REFERRAL/CONSULTATION

1. Refer non-pregnant patients who are symptomatic for Zika infection to their medical provider for evaluation and follow-up.

2. Refer pregnant patients with potential Zika exposure, either through travel or sexual contact should be referred to their medical provider regardless of symptoms.

   NOTE: Triage for testing is done through DPH Epidemiology, the patient should be given contact information to share with their physician: DPH Epidemiology Zika Team 404-657-2588 Monday through Friday, 8am until 5pm. A medical epidemiologist can be reached for emergencies after hours at 1-866-PUB-HLTH (782-4584).

REFERENCES

1. N. Breisch, Prevention of arthropod and insect bites: Repellents and other measures. (2019). Retrieved from https://www.uptodate.com/contents/prevention-of-arthropod-and-insect-bites-repellents-and-other-measures?search=zika%20treatment&topicRef=106169&source=see_link

2. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Zika Virus. (2019). Retrieved from http://www.cdc.gov/zika/index.html

3. "Lexi-Drugs Online", Lexi-Comp Database, Lexi-Comp, Inc., Hudson, Ohio (February 20, 2019). Retrieved from https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/login

4. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. (2017). Using Insect Repellents Safely and Effectively. Retrieved from https://www.epa.gov/insect-repellents/using-insect-repellents-safely-and-effectively

5. World Health Organization (2016). Prevention of sexual transmission of ZIKA virus. Retrieved from http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/204421/1/WHO_ZIKV_MOC_16.1_eng.pdf?ua=1

APPENDIX A RIFAMPIN PEDIATRIC DRUG CHART

Rifampin 5mg/kg (do not exceed 600 mg/dose)

Weight (kg)	Rifampin Dose (mg)
1kg	5mg
2kg	10mg
3kg	15mg
4kg	20mg
5kg	25mg
6kg	30mg
7kg	35mg
8kg	40mg
9kg	45mg

Rifampin 10mg/kg (do not exceed 600mg/dose)

Weight (kg)	Rifampin Dose (mg)
1kg	10mg
2kg	20mg
3kg	30mg
4kg	40mg
5kg	50mg
6kg	60mg
7kg	70mg
8kg	80mg
9kg	90mg

Rifampin 20mg/kg (do not exceed 600mg/dose)

Weight (kg)	Rifampin Dose (mg)
1kg	20mg
2kg	40mg
3kg	60mg
4kg	80mg
5kg	100mg
6kg	120mg
7kg	140mg
8kg	160mg
9kg	180mg
10kg	200mg
11kg	220mg
12kg	240mg
13kg	260mg
14kg	280mg
15kg	300mg
16kg	320mg
17kg	340mg
18kg	360mg
19kg	380mg
20kg	400mg
21kg	420mg
22kg	440mg
23kg	460mg
24kg	480mg
25kg	500mg
26kg	520mg
27kg	540mg
28kg	560mg
29kg	580mg
30kg and above	600mg

Source: Payam Nahid, Susan E. Dorman, et. al., *Executive Summary: Official American Thoracic Society/Centers for Disease Control and Prevention/Infectious Diseases Society of America Clinical Practice Guidelines: Treatment of Drug-Susceptible Tuberculosis, Clinical Infectious Diseases*, Volume 63, Issue 7, 1 October 2016, Pages 853–867, https://doi.org/10.1093/cid/ciw566

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

PERINATAL HEPATITIS B PREVENTION

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

PERINATAL HEPATITIS B PREVENTION

Public Health staff will utilize the current edition of the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program (GIP) Manual's Perinatal Hepatitis B Prevention Program Guidelines as their policy to provide required management of infants born to hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg)-positive women.

The goals of the Georgia Perinatal Hepatitis B Prevention Program are to:

1. Ensure that all pregnant women are screened for HBsAg as part of the initial prenatal screening panel.

2. Assure that all local health departments perform case investigations on all positive HBsAg-positive pregnant women reported to their jurisdiction.

3. Confirm that infants born to HBsAg-positive women receive HBIG and the first dose of hepatitis B vaccine within twelve (12) hours of birth.

4. Ensure that infants born to HBsAg-positive women receive the second dose of vaccine at 1-2 months of age and the third dose of vaccine at six (6) months of age.

5. Ensure that infants born to HBsAg-positive women in the U.S. and residing in Georgia are tested at nine (9) months to twelve (12) months of age for HBsAg and hepatitis B surface antibody (anti-HBs) after completing the hepatitis B vaccination series. It is the responsibility of each health district to establish a process to ensure that required lab tests are available to infants born to HBsAg-positive women.

Go to https://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-publications for the GIP Manual.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED DISEASES

SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED DISEASES
CLINICAL REVIEW TEAM

Gregory S. Felzien, MD, AAHIVS Medical Advisor Division of Health Protection/IDI-HIV Georgia Department of Public Health	**Olugbenga O. Obasanjo, MD** Health Director District 4, Georgia Department of Public Health
Andrea Gaines, RN, BSN Public Health Nurse Specialist, Hall County Health Department	**Kimberly Brown, MSN, RN** STD Nurse Consultant Georgia Department of Public Health
Donelle Humphrey-Franklin, RPh, MBA Assistant Pharmacy Director Georgia Department of Public Health	**Kimberley Hazelwood, PharmD** Pharmacy Director Georgia Department of Public Health
Tonia Parrott, Ph.D., M.T. (ASCP) Clinical Microbiology Services Director Georgia Department of Public Health	**Latasha Terry, MPA** STD Director Georgia Department of Public Health
Michelle Allen, BA Infectious Disease Section Director Georgia Department of Public Health	**Tisa DuPree Bright, RN, BSN** County Nurse Manager Henry County Health Department
Dawn Krahwinkel MSN, RN Deputy Director, Center for Clinical Services Women's Health, STI and BCCP Program Manager Cobb & Douglas Public Health	**Rebekah Chance-Revels, MSN-RN, WHNP-BC** Deputy Chief Nurse Georgia Department of Public Health
Jennifer Sapp, MS, APRN, WHNP-BC Women's Health, STD, & BCCP Coordinator-District 6	**Karen Schrepple, PharmD.** Director of Pharmacy Gwinnett, Newton, & Rockdale County Health Department
Shalander Howard, RN Toombs County Health Department	**Melissa Green, RN** Adult Health Supervisor Cobb & Douglas Public Health

GENERAL INFORMATION REGARDING STD EVALUATION & SCREENING

The completion of a sexual history and health assessment is to be conducted on all patients who are referred to the health department by an epidemiologist, communicable disease specialist, or disease investigative specialist, hospital or private provider referred, or a contact to an established patient of the HD that is infected with an STD. Assessments will vary per each patient's circumstance. Documentation is required to validate rationale for treatment.

SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED DISEASE PRESENTATIONS:

Lesions: Primary Syphilis, Genital Herpes (HSV), Lymphogranuloma Venereum (LGV)

Discharge: Bacterial Vaginosis (BV), Vulvovaginal Candidiasis, Gonorrhea (GC), Chlamydia (CT), Pelvic Inflammatory Disease (PID), Epididymitis, Urethritis/Nongonococcal Urethritis (NGU), Cervicitis, Trichomoniasis

Rashes: Secondary Syphilis, Scabies, Pediculosis Pubis, Gonorrhea (Disseminated Gonococcal Infection), Genital Herpes

All STD patients must be tested for gonorrhea, chlamydia, syphilis and HIV. Pregnancy test if pregnancy status is not known.

STD Patient Definition

STD patient is a patient requesting sexual and reproductive healthcare services. There are certain requirements that must be met to provide services to patients.

A patient requesting sexual and reproductive healthcare services must complete a health assessment. The completion of a health assessment is to be conducted on any and all patients who are referred to a public health department by an epidemiologist (EPI), communicable disease specialist (CDS), or disease investigative specialist (DIS), hospital or private provider referral, or a contact to an established, public health, infected patient. Assessments will vary according to each patient's circumstances. Documentation is required to validate rationale for provided treatment.

All health services must be documented before the dispensing of any STD 340B drugs.

The diagnostic tests included in the reproductive health assessment are:

a. Gonorrhea and chlamydia testing (e.g. NAAT, Agar plate culture, Gram-stain) according to the *Georgia STD Program Screening Criteria for Chlamydia and Gonorrhea*

b. HIV testing is recommended annually or according to sexual risk*

c. Syphilis testing (nontreponemal and/or treponemal) completed based upon health history and physical assessment findings

d. Vaginitis testing (wet mount/saline preparation, KOH).

e. **Pregnancy test if pregnancy status is not known.**

All health services must be documented before the dispensing of any STD 340B drugs.

STD screening is defined as obtaining a health history, physical assessment and laboratory studies to make a diagnosis of a sexually transmitted infection. STD screening is performed only by appropriately trained and licensed physicians (MD or DO), physician extenders (e.g. a trained healthcare worker, PA), or public health nurses and extended role nurses.

NOTE: CDC recommends that everyone between the ages of 13 and 64 get tested for HIV at least once as part of routine health care. A general rule for those with risk is to get tested annually. Additionally, sexually active gay and bisexual men may benefit from getting an HIV test more often, perhaps every 3 to 6 months.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR GONORRHEA Uncomplicated Urethral, Endocervical, Rectal or Pharyngeal

DEFINITION

Gonorrhea is a sexually transmitted infection caused by *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* bacterium. *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* **can** infect the mucous membranes of the reproductive tract, anorectal, ocular or pharyngeal that may be symptomatic or asymptomatic in both men and women. **Occasionally, the periurethral or Bartholin glands may also show signs of being infected.** Gonorrhea is the 2nd most commonly reported communicable disease. Georgia ranks **9**th nationally for most reported cases.

Incubation of gonorrhea is between 1-14 days. Generally, symptoms develop in men within 2-5 days and in women within 10 days. However, men and women may be asymptomatic.

ETIOLOGY

Neisseria gonorrhoeae is an intracellular Gram-negative diplococcus bacteria. Infections caused by antibiotic resistant strains are clinically indistinguishable from drug-sensitive infections.

SUBJECTIVE

1. May be asymptomatic at infected site, especially in females.
2. Males frequently have purulent urethral discharge (generally within 24 hours of exposure) followed by dysuria.
3. Females may notice increased discharge from the vagina, intermenstrual bleeding and dysuria.
4. Rectal discharge, pain, pruritis and/or scant bleeding may be present in those with history of rectal sex.
5. Sore throat may be present in those with history of oral sex.
6. Exposure, oral, anal, or vaginal, with a sex partner who has been recently diagnosed with an STD.
7. **Other symptoms: lymphadenopathy, testicular pain or swelling, lower abdominal pain, swollen penis or labia.**

OBJECTIVE

1. Females commonly have no clinical signs.
2. Mucoid, mucopurulent or purulent discharge from the infected site in both females and males.
3. Erythema and edema of the cervix and/or intermenstrual bleeding in females or urethral meatus in males.

4. Anorectal infections are commonly asymptomatic. Symptoms can include but not limited to: erythema, mucopurulent discharge, and/or scant bleeding.

5. Pharyngeal inflammation (mostly asymptomatic).

ASSESSMENT Gonorrhea [specify exposed site(s): by clinical assessment].

PLAN The desired outcomes of treatment are: biologic cure, prevention of transmission to sex partners, prevention of pelvic inflammatory disease (PID) and resulting ectopic pregnancy or infertility, and, for pregnant women, prevention of transmission to infants during birth. Treatment of sex partners helps to prevent reinfection of the index patient and infection of other partners.

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

NOTE: Nonculture, nonamplified probe tests should not be used for diagnosing preadolescent minors. GC culture or amplified DNA Probe remains the preferred method for diagnosis. Consult with delegating physician or refer to primary care provider prior to treatment.

1. Adult Endocervical, Urethral, Rectal, or Pharyngeal Infection

   a. Nonculture detection of N. gonorrhoeae (e.g.) DNA probe, nucleic acid amplification test). NAAT should be performed at the anatomical site of exposure and/or symptoms (rectal, vaginal, urethra, oropharynx): nucleic acid amplification test (NAAT), culture or DNA probe.

   b. Culture positive for N. gonorrhoeae, with or without confirmatory tests when indicated. Examples are:
      1) Suspected therapeutic failure after adequate gonorrhea treatment.
      2) Minors with suspected sexual abuse, perform oral and rectal cultures regardless of exposure history.
      3) As requested by a physician or supervisor when a Nucleic Hybridization test is not available.

c. Gram-negative intracellular diplococci seen on a smear of male urethral discharge. Gram stains are to be done in-house on symptomatic male patients in an effort to make a diagnosis and treat the patient on the same day.

NOTE: You must perform either “a” or “b” in female patients. In male patients, you must perform “a” or “b” and when available “c”.

NOTE: If suspected therapeutic failure after GC treatment, a culture plate must be used for specimen collection.

NOTE: Any patients who test positive for gonorrhea should be tested for chlamydia, syphilis, and HIV.

NOTE: Subgroups of MSM are at high risk for gonorrhea infection and should be screened at sites of exposure.

Rectal gonorrhea infections, especially those that are recurrent, have been associated with increased risk for HIV seroconversion among MSM.

NOTE: If the criteria for gonorrhea are not present, treatment should be deferred pending the results of the diagnostic studies. Empiric treatment for gonorrhea should be given in the following cases:

- Contact to Gonorrhea
- Documented or contact to PID
- Documented or contact to Epididymitis
- Symptoms of discharge in males with visible discharge in males on examination (in cases where Gram stain is not available).

2. Genital Infection in a child with positive culture for N. gonorrhea, confirmed by two different acceptable methods.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

Empiric treatment for gonorrhea must be given in the following cases:

a. Contact to Gonorrhea

b. Documented or contact to PID

c. Documented or contact to Epididymitis

d. Symptoms of discharge in males with visible discharge on examination (in cases where Gram stain is not available).

NOTE: If self-reported allergy to cephalosporins or penicillins, refer to PCN allergy algorithm to rule out allergy in Appendix A.

1. Uncomplicated urogenital, rectal, or pharyngeal infection for persons weighing less than or equal to 135.624kg/299lbs when chlamydia has been excluded:

Ceftriaxone 500mg IM, single dose

2. Uncomplicated urogenital, rectal, or pharyngeal infection of persons weighing equal to or more than 136.078kg/300lbs when chlamydia has been excluded:

Ceftriaxone 1g IM, single dose

3. If chlamydial infection has not been excluded and uncomplicated urogenital, rectal, or pharyngeal infection for persons weighing less than or equal to 135.624kg/299lbs when chlamydia has NOT been excluded:

Ceftriaxone 500mg IM, single dose plus doxycycline 100mg po twice a day for 7 days

NOTE: Do not give Doxycycline to pregnant women or lactating patient(s). Patient(s) must be advised to discontinue breastfeeding or receive alternative regimen. Breastfeeding can be restarted 2 days after completion of treatment. **Patient(s) who are nursing should be informed to use caution while nursing since treatment may be excreted in human breast milk in small amounts.**

4. If chlamydial infection has not been excluded and uncomplicated urogenital, rectal, or pharyngeal infection of persons weighing more than or equal to

136.078kg/300lbs:

Ceftriaxone 1g IM, single dose plus doxycycline 100mg po twice a day for 7 days

NOTE: HIV infected patients should receive the same treatment regimen as those who are HIV negative.

ALTERNATIVE REGIMEN

1. **If chlamydia infection has been excluded and uncomplicated urogenital, rectal, or pharyngeal infection:**

   Cefixime 800 mg po single dose

2. **If chlamydia infection has NOT been excluded and uncomplicated urogenital, rectal, or pharyngeal infection:**

   Cefixime 800 mg po single dose plus doxycycline 100 mg po twice day for 7 days

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts)

1. The name/significance of the infection. Educate for sequelae and complications of untreated infection. **https://www.cdc.gov/std/gonorrhea/stdfact-gonorrhea.htm**

2. Directions for taking medication and management of potential side effects.

3. All sex partners 60 days prior to the onset of symptoms or positive test should be referred for examination and treatment. Avoid sex with partner(s) until partner(s) has/have been treated. Refer the last known sex partner if the last sexual contact was greater than 60 days before onset of symptoms or diagnosis. Provide patient with written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them to HD for examination and treatment.

4. Education and counseling **regarding** the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).

5. Assist patient(s) in developing a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan and document patient(s) plan. Abstain from sex until all the symptoms are resolved, and partner(s) are tested and treated.

6. Abstain from intercourse until 7 days after taking azithromycin or until the 7 days Doxycycline regimen has been completed. Abstain from sex until sex partner(s) have been treated.

7. If patient is of childbearing age, counsel on the use of contraceptives to reduce the risk of unintended pregnancy.

8. Advise the patient to return to clinic for all lab results even if presumptively treated at initial visit. Inform patient if lab results are positive additional treatment may be needed.

9. Advise patient to return to clinic in 7 days or less if symptoms do not resolve.

10. Inform patient if additional lab(s) is/are positive, partner(s) will also need additional treatment.

11. If the patient is diabetic, receiving ceftriaxone therapy, and using the ACCU-CHEK Compact Plus system, they should stop using the ACCU-CHEK Compact Plus system. Advise patient to begin using an alternate blood glucose monitoring system for the duration of therapy and 2 full days (48 hours) after the last treatment because ceftriaxone may lead to incorrect low glucose results.

12. Avoidance of breastfeeding has been and continues to be a standard, strong recommendation for HIV-infected women in the United States, because maternal ART dramatically reduces but does not eliminate breastmilk transmission. Further, safe infant feeding alternatives are readily available in the United States. In addition, there are concerns about other potential risks, including toxicity for the neonate or increased risk of development of ARV drug resistance, should transmission occur, due to variable passage of drugs into breastmilk.

13. Women who are breastfeeding should not receive Doxycycline. If Doxycycline is given to breastfeeding women, they should discontinue breastfeeding throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment. If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment.

14. **Patient(s) who are nursing should be informed to use caution while nursing since treatment may be excreted in human breast milk in small amounts.**

15. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown.

16. For additional information and psychological support, refer to: **National STD Hotline 1-800-227-8922 available 8am-5pm Mon-Fri (eastern time), in English and Spanish. National Herpes Hotline 919-361-8488 available 9:00 a.m. to 7:00 p.m. Mon-Fri (eastern time) or http://www.ashasexualhealth.org/stdsstis/hpv/support-groups/**

17. Refer to the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for immunization recommendations for Hepatitis A, B and HPV (https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/index.html) and the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual.

MANAGEMENT OF SEX PARTNERS

1. All sex partners 60 days prior to the onset of symptoms or positive test should be referred for examination and treatment. Avoid sex with partner(s) until partner(s) has/have been treated. Refer the last known sex partner if the last sexual contact was greater than 60 days before onset of symptoms or diagnosis. Provide patient with written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them to HD for exam and treatment.

2. All identified sex partners, as defined above, should be examined and promptly treated with one of the aforementioned regimens for gonorrhea.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Patients who have uncomplicated gonorrhea and are treated with the treatment regimen need not return for test of cure unless symptoms are unresolved. If test of cure is positive for gonorrhea and reinfection is ruled out, consult with delegating physician and contact DPH STD Nurse Consultant.

2. Test-of-cure is not routinely recommended unless therapeutic failure is suspected. Question carefully about the possibility of reinfection if there is suspected treatment or therapeutic failure. A patient with symptoms that persist after treatment and reinfection is ruled out, should have a gonorrhea culture done with anti-microbial sensitivity testing on positive cultures. If gonorrhea culture is not available, a second NAAT test can be performed 7 days after treatment. The Hologic APTIMA 2 test is a dual performance test but GC results should be the only results assessed if the test was done within two weeks of adequate treatment for positive Chlamydia. When a patient is adequately treated for chlamydia and a second test is conducted within two weeks of treatment, the Gen-Probe APTIMA 2 chlamydia lab results may return positive.

3. **Patients with pharyngeal gonorrhea who are treated with recommended regimen should return 7-14 days after treatment for a test-of cure using either culture or NAAT. If the NAAT is positive, effort should be made to perform a confirmatory culture before retreatment. All positive cultures for test-of-cure should undergo antimicrobial susceptibility testing.**

4. *N. gonorrhoeae* infection is prevalent among patients who have been diagnosed with and treated for gonorrhea in the previous several months. Most infections result from reinfection rather than treatment failure, indicating a need for improved patient education and referral of sex partners. Clinicians should recommend patients with gonorrhea be retested 3 months after treatment. If patients do not seek medical care for retesting in 3 months, providers are encouraged to test these patients whenever they next seek medical care within the following 12 months, regardless of whether the patient(s) believe that their sex partner(s) were treated. Retesting is distinct from test-of-cure; the latter detects therapeutic failure, which is not recommended if the patient receives first line treatment.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Consult with delegating physician if:

    a. Signs of Bartholin's gland or Skene's gland abscess or cyst are present.

    b. Patient cannot tolerate cephalosporins or penicillins.

    c. Minors allergic to cephalosporins or penicillins for desensitization or alternate treatment.

    d. Further medical guidance is needed, and STD nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

2. If cephalosporin resistant gonorrhea is suspected, consult with delegating physician and contact the DPH STD Nurse Consultant. Treatment failure due to cephalosporin resistant gonorrhea should be considered in:

    a. Persons whose symptoms do not resolve within 3-5 days after appropriate treatment and report no sexual contact during the post treatment follow-up period.

    b. Persons with a positive test-of-cure when no sexual contact is reported during the post-treatment follow-up period.

    c. Persons with a positive *N. gonorrhoeae* culture within 30-60 days (but greater than 72 hours) after treatment for gonorrhea regardless of whether sexual contact is reported during the post-treatment follow-up period.

3. PCN allergy algorithm should be completed on all patients who report penicillin allergy in Appendix A.

4. Refer patient to a District Communicable Disease Specialist for prevention counseling and assistance with partner referral.

5. Hospitalization and consultation with an infectious disease specialist is recommended for initial therapy, of patients

diagnosed with disseminated gonococcal infection (DGI). DGI occurs when gonorrhea is not treated and spreads to distant parts of the body beyond the portal of entry. DGI can manifest as rash, arthritis, or flu-like symptoms.

6. Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for reporting possible sexual or physical abuse of minors, if encountered, through history or physical. All suspected sexual or physical abuse of minors must be reported to the county Department of Family and Children Services office as per Guidelines for Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel ***https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf#search=sexual%20and%20physical%20abuse***

7. Gram stains are inadequate to evaluate prepubertal minors for gonorrhea and should not be used to diagnose or exclude gonorrhea. Specimens from the vagina, urethra, pharynx, or rectum should be streaked onto selective media for isolation of *N. gonorrhoeae*.

8. Infants exposed to mothers infected with *N. gonorrhea* during vaginal delivery must be referred to pediatrician for evaluation and possible treatment.

9. Patients with acute arthritis, skin pustules, meningitis or eye infection should be referred to ER immediately for emergency evaluation, treatment and follow up. Delegating physician should be notified of referral.

REFERENCES

1. Centers for Disease Control and *Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015, Vo*l. 64, No. RR-3, **Retrieved February 28, 2019**.

2. GUIDELINES FOR MANDATORY REPORTING OF SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE for PUBLIC HEALTH PERSONNEL. (2017, April 1). Retrieved May 12, 2017, from https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf.

3. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Update to CDC's Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines, 2010: Oral Cephalosporins No Longer a Recommended Treatment for Gonococcal Infections, MMWR, Vol. 61(31), 590-594, August 10, 2012.(Current)

4. Medscape: Dr. Robert Kircaldy, M.D., MPH, New Treatment Guidelines for Gonorrhea Antibiotic Change: CDC Expert commentary 2012 08-13 (Current)

5. Holmes, K. K. (2008). *Sexually transmitted diseases*. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical. (Current)

6. **American Academy of Pediatrics. In: Kimberlin DW, Brady MT, Jackson MA, Long SS, eds. RedBook:2018 Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases. 31sted. Itasca, IL: American Academy of Pediatrics, 2018.**

7. Al-Khatib SM, LaPointe NMA, Kramer JM, Califf RM. What Clinicians Should Know About the QT Interval. *JAMA.* 2003; 289(16):2120-2127. doi:10.1001/jama.289.16.2120 (Current)

8. University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine. (2017). Clinical Skin Disease Images. Retrieved from https://medicine.uiowa.edu/dermatology/education/clinical-skin-disease-images.

9. **Ghanem, Khalil G, MD, PhD. Clinical manifestations and diagnosis of Neisseria gonorrhoeae infection in adults and adolescents. Post TW, ed. UpToDate. Waltham, MA: UpToDate Inc. https://www.uptodate.com (Accessed on February 13, 2020.)**

10. **St. Cyr S, Barbee L, Workowski KA, et al. Update to CDC's Treatment Guidelines for Gonococcal Infection, 2020. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2020;69:1911–1916.**
DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.15585/mmwr.mm6950a6external icon.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR CHLAMYDIA

DEFINITION Chlamydia is a common sexually transmitted disease caused by bacteria that is often asymptomatic in both males and females. Chlamydia is the most commonly reported STD in the United States. Georgia ranks 6th nationally for most reported cases.

ETIOLOGY *Chlamydia trachomatis* is an obligate intracellular bacterial agent with at least 18 serologic variants (serovars), which includes Lymphogranuloma Venereum. Chlamydia generally infects the columnar epithelial cells and often becomes chronic, lasting months to more than a year if untreated. Incubation is poorly defined but usually at least 1 week. The life cycle of chlamydia is 72 hours.

SUBJECTIVE known as

1. Frequently asymptomatic in both men and women, also the “silent infection”.
2. Females may report a history of:
    a. Abnormal discharge from vagina.
    b. Bleeding after intercourse.
    c. Dysuria, pyuria, urinary frequency.
3. Males may report a history of:
    a. Mucoid or watery urethral discharge.
    b. Itching of urethral meatus.
    c. Dysuria.
    d. Pain or swelling of testicles.
    e. Pyuria or urinary frequency.
4. Anal symptoms
    a. Rectal pain.
    b. Discharge or bleeding.

OBJECTIVE

1. Many show no clinical signs.

2. Females may present with:

    a. Mucoid to mucopurulent endocervical discharge.

    b. Cervical ectopy/friability.

3. Males may present with:

    a. Mucoid to mucopurulent urethral discharge.

    b. Redness at urethral meatus.

4. Anal symptoms

    a. Pain.

    b. Discharge or bleeding from rectum.

5. Sexually acquired chlamydial conjunctivitis can occur through contact with infected genital secretions.

ASSESSMENT Chlamydia

PLAN The desired outcomes of treatment of infected patients are: biologic cure, prevention of pelvic inflammatory disease (PID), ectopic pregnancy and infertility, prevention of transmission to sex partners, and prevention of transmission from infected females to infants during birth. Treatment of sex partners helps to prevent reinfection and sequelae of Chlamydia in the index patient as well as infection of other partners.

Chlamydia screening of sexually active women less than 26 years of age is recommended. The primary focus of screening is to detect the infection and prevent complications.

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

NOTE: NAAT testing should be performed at the anatomical site of exposure and/or symptoms (rectal, vaginal, urethra, oropharynx).

NOTE: Any patients who test positive for chlamydia should be tested for gonorrhea, syphilis, and HIV.

1. Chlamydia test NAAT or DNA probe.

2. Gonorrhea test NAAT, culture, or DNA probe should always

be performed when chlamydia is suspected.

3. Positive urethral, endocervical, anal, oral, or urine test (amplification, culture, DNA probe) for Chlamydia trachomatis.

NOTE: Nonculture, nonamplified probe tests should not be used for diagnosing preadolescent minors.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: If Azithromycin is given it should be given via DOT (direct observation therapy) to increase adherence to therapy. If self-reported allergy to azithromycin consult with delegating physician.

1. Recommended regimen for nonpregnant adults and minors who are at least 8 years old:

   a. Azithromycin 1g PO, single dose,

   OR

   b. Doxycycline 100mg PO, **every** 12 hours for 7 days.

NOTE: Do not give Doxycycline to lactating patient(s); patient(s) must be advised to discontinue breastfeeding throughout treatment or receive alternative regimen. If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment. Do not give Doxycycline to minors under the age of 8. **Patient(s) who are nursing should be informed to use caution while nursing since treatment may be excreted in human breast milk in small amounts.**

2. Alternative regimen for nonpregnant adults and minors who are at least 8 years old:

   a. Erythromycin base 500mg PO, 4 times a day for 7 days,

   OR

b. Erythromycin Ethylsuccinate 800mg PO, 4 times a day for 7 days,

OR

c. Levofloxacin 500 mg once daily for 7 days,

OR

d. Ofloxacin 300 mg twice daily for 7 days.

3. Recommended regimen for pregnant women:

a. Azithromycin 1g PO, single dose,

OR

b. Amoxicillin 500mg PO, 3 times a day for 7 days.

4. Alternative regimen for pregnant women:

a. Erythromycin base 500mg PO, 4 times a day for 7 days,

OR

b. Erythromycin base 250mg PO, 4 times a day for 14 days,

OR

c. Erythromycin Ethylsuccinate 800mg PO, 4 times a day for 7 days,

OR

d. Erythromycin Ethylsuccinate 400mg PO, 4 times a day for 14 days.

NOTE: The frequent gastrointestinal side effects associated with erythromycin can result in non-adherence with the alternative regimens. The lower dose 14-day erythromycin regimens can be considered if gastrointestinal tolerance is a concern.

NOTE: Prior to the treatment of minors less than 45kg/99 lbs consult with delegating physician or refer to primary care provider.

5. Treatment of minors under 8 years of age that weigh less than 45kg/99lbs:

   Erythromycin base or ethylsuccinate 50mg/kg/day PO divided into 4 doses daily for 14 days.

6. Treatment of minors under 8 years of age that weigh 45kg/99lbs or more:

   Azithromycin 1g PO in a single dose.

7. HIV infected patients should receive the same treatment regimen as those who are HIV negative.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING
(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts)

1. The name of the infection and its significance. Educate for sequelae and complications of the untreated infection. (**https://www.cdc.gov/std/chlamydia/stdfact-chlamydia.htm**).

2. Directions for taking medication and management of potential side effects.

3. All sex partners 60 days prior to the onset of symptoms or positive test should be referred for examination and treatment. Avoid sex with partner(s) until partner(s) has/have been treated. Refer the last known sex partner if the last sexual contact was greater than 60 days before onset of symptoms or diagnosis. Provide patient with written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them to HD for exam and treatment.

4. Avoidance of breastfeeding has been and continues to be a standard, strong recommendation for HIV-infected women in the United States, because maternal ART dramatically reduces but does not eliminate breastmilk transmission. Further, safe infant feeding alternatives are readily available in the United States. In addition, there are concerns about

other potential risks, including toxicity for the neonate or increased risk of development of ARV drug resistance, should transmission occur, due to variable passage of drugs into breastmilk.

5. Women who are breastfeeding should not receive Doxycycline. If Doxycycline is given to breastfeeding women, they should discontinue breastfeeding throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment. If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment. **Patient(s) who are nursing should be informed to use caution while nursing since treatment may be excreted in human breast milk in small amounts.**

6. Counsel the patient about high risk of reinfection if patient's partner(s) is/are not tested and treated. The usages of protective barriers (diaphragm, condoms, etc.) are not a substitute for protection during sexual intercourse for any untreated partner(s). Education and counseling on the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).

7. Educate patients who receive Azithromycin about adverse effects (QT Prolongation, torsades de pointes, etc.) and document the patient's understanding. **http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/DrugSafety/UCM343347.pdf, http://www.nhs.uk/conditions/long-QT-syndrome/Documents/Acquired-LQT-Brochure06.pdf, https://www.crediblemeds.org/pdftemp/pdf/CompositeList.pdf**

8. Abstain from intercourse until 7 days after taking azithromycin or until the 7 days Doxycycline regimen has been completed. Abstain from sex until sex partner(s) have been treated.

9. Advise the patient(s) to return to clinic for all lab results. Inform patient(s) if lab results are positive additional treatment may be needed.

10. Education and counseling on the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).

11. If patient is of childbearing age, counsel on the use of

contraceptives to reduce the risk of unintended pregnancy.

12. Assist patient in developing a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan and document patients plan. Abstain from sex until all the symptoms are resolved, and partner(s) are tested and treated.

13. Refer to the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for immunization recommendations for Hepatitis A, B and HPV (https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/index.html) and the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual.

14. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown.

15. For additional information and psychological support, refer to: **National STD Hotline 1-800-227-8922 available 8am-5pm Mon-Fri (eastern time), in English and Spanish. National Herpes Hotline 919-361-8488 available 9:00 a.m. to 7:00 p.m. Mon-Fri (eastern time) or http://www.ashasexualhealth.org/stdsstis/hpv/support-groups/**

16. Advise patient to return to clinic in 7 days if symptoms do not resolve.

17. Inform patient if additional lab(s) is/are positive, partner(s) will also need additional treatment.

MANAGEMENT OF SEX PARTNERS

1. All sex partners 60 days prior to the onset of symptoms or positive test should be referred for examination and treatment. Avoid sex with partner(s) until partner(s) has/have been treated. Refer the last known sex partner if the last sexual contact was greater than 60 days before onset of symptoms or diagnosis. Provide patient with written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them to HD for exam and treatment.

2. All identified sex partners, as defined above, should be examined and promptly treated with one of the aforementioned regimens for chlamydia**. If index patient is eligible, Expedited Partner Therapy would be indicated**.

3. Provide written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them in for exam and treatment.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Non-pregnant patients do not require a test-of-cure unless therapeutic compliance is in question, symptoms persist, or reinfection is suspected.

2. Preadolescent minors should receive follow-up cultures to ensure that treatment has been effective.

3. Pregnant females should be retested 3-4 weeks after completing therapy and rescreened near time of delivery.

4. Chlamydia infected women (nonpregnant or pregnant) and men are recommended to be retested approximately 3 months after treatment, regardless of whether they believe their sex partners were treated. If retesting at 3 months is not possible, clinicians should retest the next time the patient(s) presents for medical care in the 12 months following initial treatment.

5. If patient vomits within thirty minutes of taking Azithromycin, the dose may be repeated.

6. A NAAT test should not be used less than 3 weeks following completion of treatment with Azithromycin due to possible false positive results.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Consult with delegating physician if:

    a. Signs of Bartholin's gland or Skene's gland abscess or cyst are present.

    b. Signs and symptoms of prostatitis (blood in the urine, painful ejaculation or sexual dysfunction).

    c. Signs and symptoms of conjunctivitis (redness, itching, tearing of the eyes, discharge or crusting around the eyes, pink eye, irritation or inflammation of the conjunctiva).

    d. Signs and symptoms of reactive arthritis. People who

have chlamydia are at higher risk of developing reactive arthritis, formerly known as Reiter's syndrome. This condition typically affects the joints, eyes and urethra.

e. Further medical guidance is needed, and STD nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

2. If pregnant patient cannot tolerate medication, refer to OB/GYN or OB provider.

3. Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for reporting possible sexual or physical abuse of minors if encountered through history or physical. All suspected sexual or physical abuse of minors must be reported to the county Department of Family and Children Services office as per Guidelines for Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel, which may be viewed on the Public Health Information Library (PHIL) at https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf#search=sexual%20and%20physical%20abuse

REFERENCES

1. **Centers for Disease Control and *Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015, Vo*l. 64, No. RR-3, Retrieved February 28, 2019.**

2. GUIDELINES FOR MANDATORY REPORTING OF SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE for PUBLIC HEALTH PERSONNEL. (2017, April 1). Retrieved May 12, 2017, from https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf**.**

3. Holmes, K. K. (2008). Sexually transmitted diseases. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical. (Current)

4. **American Academy of Pediatrics. In: Kimberlin DW, Brady MT, Jackson MA, Long SS, eds. RedBook:2018 Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases. 31sted.Itasca,IL: American Academy of Pediatrics 2018.**

5. University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine. (2017). Clinical Skin Disease Images. Retrieved from https://medicine.uiowa.edu/dermatology/education/clinical-skin-disease-images.

6. **Hsu, Katherine, MD, MPH, FAAP. Clinical manifestations and diagnosis of Chlamydia trachomatis infections. Post TW, ed. UpToDate. Waltham, MA: UpToDate Inc. https://www.uptodate.com (Accessed on February 13, 2020.)**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR EXPEDITED PARTNER THERAPY (EPT) FOR CHLAMYDIA

DEFINITION **Expedited Partner Therapy (EPT) is the clinical practice of treating the sex partners of patients diagnosed with chlamydia by providing medications to the patient to take to his/her partner without any medical evaluation intervention or professional prevention counseling.**

ELIGIBILITY **EPT can be provided in the following cases:**

1. **Partner(s) of index patients who are diagnosed through laboratory confirmation with chlamydia infection.**

2. **Health care provider may identify sex partner(s) within past 60 days or may give EPT to most recent sex partner(s) if no partner(s) within the past 60 days.**

3. **Partner(s) who are pregnant or may be pregnant.**

4. **Partner(s) who are unable or unlikely to seek timely clinical services.**

INELIGIBILITY **EPT should not be provided in the following cases:**

1. **It is not recommended that partner(s) of index patients co-infected with gonococcal infections, syphilis, or HIV at the time of chlamydia diagnosis receive EPT due to concerns regarding antibiotic resistance and the need for additional medical treatment.**

Special populations NOT recommended to receive EPT:

1. **Male patients known to have sex with other men (MSM): Not recommended for EPT due to the lack of data to demonstrate the effectiveness of EPT in the MSM population and the risk of missing STD/HIV co-infections.**

2. **Index patients 19 years of age and younger: The preferred approach to managing the treatment of sex partner(s) of adolescents is for partner notification to be carried out by health department staff where feasible. If health department partner notification is not available and providers choose to use EPT for individuals 19 years of age and younger, EPT should be offered as dispensed medication, not a prescription.**

3. **Victims of sexual assault/abuse: Suspected or confirmed child abuse, sexual abuse/assault, or in cases where the patient's safety may be at risk, EPT should not be offered.**

SUBJECTIVE **Patient is eligible to receive EPT according to the eligibility criteria listed above.**

Index patient is negative for gonorrhea, syphilis, and HIV.

OBJECTIVE **Index patient has positive chlamydia result and has received adequate treatment and counseling.**

ASSESSMENT **Patient eligible to receive EPT.**

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

1. **Index patient has chlamydia positive test.**

2. **Negative HIV, Syphilis, and Gonorrhea test.**

NOTE: Any index patient who tests positive for chlamydia should be tested for gonorrhea, syphilis, and HIV.

THERAPEUTIC

NOTE: For treatment and care of index patient refer to the Standard Nurse Protocol for Chlamydia.

NOTE: Sex partner(s) with allergies to Azithromycin should seek medical care for an alternative treatment.

PHARMACOLOGIC

Azithromycin 1g PO, single dose

a. Dispense doses separately for each of the partner index patient.

b. The product may be given to the index patient but must be labeled separately for each partner. If the partner's name is unknown, dispensation can occur using the index patient's name. However, when either the patient or partner is unnamed, the dispenser may create a unique identifier and use that instead of a name for

both labeling and record keeping purposes.
All doses must be documented as part of therapy for index patient when using 340B medications.

c. The EPT drug shall be dispensed with a written warning that contains, at a minimum, the following information contained in Appendix B):

i. The drug should be taken as soon as possible and in accordance with the directions.

ii. The partner should consult a physician or the local health department before taking EPT drug if the partner is already taking any medications, is allergic to any drug, is pregnant, or has a serious health condition.

iii. The partner should seek testing after three months to ensure that the infection has been successfully treated.

NOTE: The patient should be given enough doses to treat each sex partner in the past 60 days whom the patient feels confident contacting. If the patient reports no sex partners in the past 60 days, provide one dose for the most recent sex partner.

NOTE: If EPT order is called in to a Pharmacy, the Delegating Physician must be consulted. The order must contain the words, "Expedited Partner Therapy" or "EPT". It must include the wording "Do not fill after 30 days from the date written. Refills are not allowed.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING TO PROVIDE TO PARTNER

1. **Counsel patient regarding the basics of EPT.**
2. **Patient should be given an EPT information sheet (in an appropriate language) for each partner who will receive EPT (Appendix B).**

3. **Patients are encouraged to advise all partners who were exposed during the previous 60 days or last known partner to seek clinical evaluation.**

4. **Patients and partners should abstain from sex for at least seven days after treatment and until seven days after all partners have been treated, to decrease the risk of re-infecting the index patient.**

5. **Nursing mothers are to use caution since treatment may be excreted in human breast milk in small amounts.**

6. **Side effects of medication that require immediate evaluation.**

7. **Allergy information advising patient not to take the medication if allergic.**

8. **Telephone numbers of providers to contact for answers to their questions.**

9. **Follow-up information.**

FOLLOW-UP

1. **Test-of-cure or repeat testing 3-4 weeks after completion of drug therapy to determine the effectiveness of treatment is not recommended by CDC for persons treated with recommended or alternative regimens, unless therapeutic compliance is in question, symptoms persist, or re-infection is suspected.**

2. **Chlamydia infected women (nonpregnant or pregnant) and men are recommended to be retested approximately 3 months after treatment, regardless of whether they believe their sex partners were treated. If retesting at 3 months is not possible, clinicians should retest the next time the patient(s) presents for medical care in the 12 months following initial treatment.**

3. **If medication is vomited within thirty minutes of taking Azithromycin, the dose may be repeated, if medication is available. If medication not available, patient should seek medical attention evaluation.**

4. **A NAAT test should not be used less than 3 weeks following completion of treatment with Azithromycin due to possible false positive results.**

5. **Pregnant females should be retested 3-4 weeks after completing therapy and rescreened near time of delivery.**

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for reporting possible sexual or physical abuse of minors if encountered through history or physical. All suspected sexual or physical abuse of minors must be reported to the county Department of Family and Children services office as per Guidelines for Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel, which may be viewed on the Public Health Information Library (PHIL).

REFERENCES

1. **Centers for Disease Control and *Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015, Vo*l. 64, No. RR-3, May 12, 2017.**

2. **Holmes, K. K. (2008). Sexually transmitted diseases. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical.**

3. **"Lexi-Drugs Online," Lexi-Comp Database, Lexi-Comp Inc., Hudson, Ohio (July 19, 2017).**

4. **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Expedited partner therapy in the management of sexually transmitted diseases. Atlanta, GA: US Department of Health and Human Services, 2006.**

5. **Golden, M.R., Expedited Partner Therapy for Sexually Transmitted Diseases.**

6. **Bauer, H.M., Wohlfeiler, M.J., Klausner, J.D., Guerry, S., Gunn, R.A., Bolan, G., and The California STD Controllers Association, "California Guidelines for Expedited Partner Therapy for Chlamydia trachomatis and Neisseria gonorrhoeae."**

7. **U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, "Dear Colleague Letter 2005." http://www.cdc.gov/std/DearColleagueEPT5-10-05.pdf**

8. **U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. http://www.cdc.gov/std/chlamydia/STDfact-chlamydia.htm.**

9. **Official Code of Georgia Annotated 31-17-7.1 Expedited Partner Therapy**

Appendix A

COACHING PATIENTS ABOUT PARTNER NOTIFICATION

Patients may experience anger, embarrassment, fear, and discomfort upon learning that they have an STD. This may be exacerbated when they realize they need to disclose this information to partners and see that they receive treatment. To help patients better understand the importance of partner treatment, providers can discuss the following:

• If the partner does not receive treatment, and they have sex again, there is a great likelihood that the patient will become re-infected.

• If people are unaware they have the infection and/or do not get treated, they can develop serious health complications.

• If a partner does not get treated, he/she can spread the infection to other partners, now or in the future.

Providers can coach their patients on the most successful ways to initiate this difficult conversation. Whenever possible, offer patients the opportunity to talk through how to best approach their partners before leaving the exam room when the option of EPT has been decided.

There are additional key messages that should be conveyed to patients and their partner(s) when EPT is prescribed:

• Partners should read the informational material very carefully before taking the medication.

• Partners who have a known allergy to Azithromycin, have signs or symptoms of sexually transmitted infections (HIV, Syphilis, Gonorrhea, Chlamydia, etc.) or other contraindications (impaired hepatic function, severe renal disease (eGFR of less than 10mL/min), underlying myasthenia gravis, symptoms of more serious infection (see below)) should see their healthcare provider prior to taking Azithromycin for additional assessment.

Note: Adverse reaction to Azithromycin is rare.

• Partners should seek a complete STD evaluation as soon as possible, regardless of whether they take the medication.

• Partners who have symptoms of a more serious infection (e.g., pelvic pain in women, testicular pain in men, fever in women or men) should not take the EPT medications and should seek care as soon as possible.

• Partners who are or could be pregnant should seek care as soon as possible.

• Patients and partners should abstain from sex for at least seven days after treatment and until seven days after all partners have been treated, in order to decrease the risk of recurrent infection.

• Partners should be advised to seek clinical services for re-testing three months after treatment.

Appendix B

URGENT AND PRIVATE IMPORTANT INFORMATION ABOUT YOUR HEALTH:

DIRECTIONS FOR SEX PARTNERS OF PERSONS WITH CHLAMYDIA
PLEASE READ THIS VERY CAREFULLY

Your sex partner has recently been treated for chlamydia. Chlamydia is a sexually transmitted disease (STD) that you can get from having any kind of sex (oral, vaginal, or anal) with a person who already has it. You may have been exposed. The good news is that it's easily treated. You are being given a medicine called azithromycin (sometimes known as "Zithromax") to treat your chlamydia.

The best way to take care of this infection is to see your own doctor or clinic provider right away. If you can't get to a doctor in the next several days, you should take the azithromycin. Even if you decide to take the medicine, it is very important to see a doctor as soon as you can, to get tested for other STDs. People can have more than one STD at the same time. Azithromycin will not cure other sexually transmitted infections. Having STDs can increase your risk of getting HIV, so make sure to also get an HIV test.

SYMPTOMS

Some people with chlamydia have symptoms, but most do not. Symptoms may include pain in your testicles, pelvis, or lower part of your belly. You may also have pain when you urinate or when having sex. Many people with chlamydia do not know they are infected because they feel fine.

BEFORE TAKING THE MEDICINE

The medicine is very safe. DO NOT TAKE if any of the following are true:

- **You are female have lower belly pain; pain during sex; vomiting; or fever.**
- **You are male and have pain or swelling in the testicles or fever.**
- **You have ever had a bad reaction, rash, breathing problems, or allergic reaction after taking azithromycin or other antibiotics. People who are allergic to some antibiotics may be allergic to other types. If you do have allergies to antibiotics, you should check with your doctor before taking this medicine.**
- **You have a serious long-term illness, such as kidney, heart, or liver disease.**
- **If you are currently taking another prescription medication, including medicine**

for diabetes, consult your pharmacist before taking the medication to ask about drug interactions.

If any of these circumstances exist, or if you are not sure, do not take the azithromycin. Instead, you should talk to your doctor as soon as possible. Your doctor will find the best treatment for you.

WARNINGS

- **If you do not take medicine to cure chlamydia, you can get very sick. If you are a woman, you might not be able to have children.**
- **If you are pregnant, seek medical evaluation before taking the medicines.**

HOW TO TAKE THE MEDICINE

- **You can take these pills with or without food. However, taking these pills with food decreases the likelihood of having an upset stomach and will increase the amount of medicine your body absorbs.**
- **You need to take all the pills you were given to be cured in accordance with the directions.**
- **Do NOT take antacids (such as Tums, Rolaids, or Maalox) for one hour before or two hours after taking the azithromycin pills.**
- **Do NOT share or give this medication to anyone else.**

SIDE EFFECTS

Very few people experience any of these problems. Possible side effects include:

- **Slightly upset stomach;**
- **Diarrhea;**
- **Dizziness;**
- **Vaginal yeast infection.**

These are well-known side effects and are not serious.

ALLERGIC REACTIONS

Allergic reactions are rare. If you have ever had a bad reaction, rash, breathing problems or other allergic reactions with azithromycin or other antibiotics,

consult your doctor or pharmacy before taking.

Possible serious allergic reactions include:

- **Difficulty breathing/tightness in the chest;**
- **Closing of your throat;**
- **Swelling of your lips or tongue;**
- **Hives (bumps or welts on your skin that itch intensely).**

NEXT STEPS

- **Now that you have taken your azithromycin, do not have sex for the next seven days, even with a condom. It takes seven days for the medicine to cure chlamydia.**

- **If you have sex with or without a condom during those first seven days, if you are infected, you can still pass on the infection to your sex partners.**

- **If you have any other sex partners, tell them you are getting treated for chlamydia, so they can get tested and potentially treated too.**

- **People who are infected with chlamydia once are very likely to get it again. It is a good idea to get tested for chlamydia and other STDs three months from now to be sure you did not get another infection.**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOLS FOR BACTERIAL VAGINOSIS (BV)

DEFINITION

Bacterial vaginosis (BV) is an infection caused when too much of certain bacteria change the normal pH balance of bacteria in the vagina. The clinical result of replacement of the normal *Lactobacillus* species in the vagina with high concentrations of anaerobic bacteria. This polymicrobial clinical syndrome is the most prevalent cause of vaginal discharge or malodor. However, half of the women whose illnesses meet the clinical criteria for BV are asymptomatic. Though associated with having multiple sex partners (male or female), it is unclear whether BV results from acquisition of a sexually transmitted pathogen. In addition, BV is associated with having a new sex partner, douching, lack of condom use, and lack of vaginal lactobacilli; women who have never been sexually active are rarely affected. Treatment of male sex partners has not been beneficial in preventing recurrences.

Women with BV are at increased risk for the acquisition of some STDs (e.g., HIV, *N. gonorrhoeae*, C. trachomatis, and HSV- 2), complications after gynecologic surgery, and recurrence of BV. In addition, BV has been associated with adverse pregnancy outcomes (e.g., premature rupture of membranes, preterm labor, and preterm birth). Some specialists recommend screening high-risk pregnant women (e.g., those who have previously delivered a premature infant) for BV at the first prenatal visit.

ETIOLOGY

High concentrations of anaerobic bacteria (e.g., *Prevotella* species and *Mobiluncus* species), *Gardnerella vaginalis*, and *Mycoplasma hominus*, *Ureaplasma* species, and anaerobic bacteria and decrease in concentration of *Lactobacillus* species. Incubation period is unknown.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Frequently asymptomatic.
2. White or gray vaginal discharge.
3. A strong, offensive, fish-like odor that is often most noticeable after intercourse.
4. Pain, itching, or burning in the vagina may occur.
5. Dysuria.

OBJECTIVE

1. Homogeneous, white, non-inflammatory discharge that

smoothly coats the vaginal walls.

2. The pH of vaginal secretions is higher than 4.5.

3. A "fishy" odor of vaginal discharge, before or after mixing it with 10% KOH (positive "whiff" test).

4. "Clue cells" (epithelial cells with a granular appearance caused by adherent bacteria) on microscopic wet mount of vaginal discharge.

ASSESSMENT Bacterial Vaginosis

PLAN The desired outcomes of treatment of non-pregnant females with BV are: relief of vaginal signs/symptoms of infection, reducing the risk for infectious complications after abortion or hysterectomy, and reducing the risk of acquiring a STD.

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Amsel's Diagnostic Criteria (observation for classic discharge, clue cells, "whiff" test and vaginal pH). At least 3 of the following 4 are present (Amsel's Diagnostic Criteria):
    a) Homogeneous, white, non-inflammatory discharge that smoothly coats the vaginal walls.
    b) The pH of vaginal secretions is higher than 4.5.
    c) A "fishy" odor of vaginal discharge, before or after mixing it with 10% KOH (positive "whiff" test).
    d) "Clue cells" (epithelial cells with a granular appearance caused by adherent bacteria) on microscopic wet mount of vaginal discharge.
2. Check history for possible pregnancy.

THERAPEUTIC

Treatment is only recommended for women with symptoms.

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Recommended regimen for women that are not pregnant:

    a. Metronidazole 500mg PO, every 12 hours for 7 days

OR

b. Metronidazole gel 0.75% one full applicator (5g), intravaginally, once a day for 5 days

OR

c. Clindamycin cream 2% one full applicator (5g), intravaginally at bedtime for 7 days,

NOTE: Clindamycin cream is preferred in case of allergy or intolerance to metronidazole.

2.Alternative regimen for women that are not pregnant:

Clindamycin 300mg PO every 12 hours for 7 days

3. Recommended regimen for pregnant women in their 2nd or 3rd trimester of pregnancy only:

NOTE: Refer pregnant women in their 1st trimester to their OB/GYN or OB provider for treatment for BV.

Metronidazole 250mg PO every 8 hours for 7 days

NOTE: Metronidazole is an FDA Category B drug. Metronidazole should only be used in confirmed 2nd and 3rd trimester of pregnancy. Lactating women taking metronidazole should withhold breastfeeding during treatment and for 24 hours after last dose to reduce infant's exposure to drug. Alternatively, a nursing mother may choose to pump and discard human milk for the duration of metronidazole therapy, and for 24 hours after therapy ends and feed her infant stored human milk or formula.

4.Alternative regimen for pregnant women in their 2nd or 3rd trimester of pregnancy only:

a. Clindamycin 300mg PO every 12 hours for 7 days Clindamycin is distributed into milk following systemic administration; it is not known if it is distributed into milk following intravaginal application but, because of the potential for adverse effects/reactions to clindamycin in nursing infants, a decision

should be made whether to discontinue breastfeeding or to discontinue the drug, taking into account the importance of the drug to the woman.

NOTE: Avoidance of breastfeeding has been and continues to be a standard, strong recommendation for HIV-infected women in the United States, because maternal ART dramatically reduces but does not eliminate breastmilk transmission. Further, safe infant feeding alternatives are readily available in the United States. In addition, there are concerns about other potential risks, including toxicity for the neonate or increased risk of development of ARV drug resistance, should transmission occur, due to variable passage of drugs into breastmilk.

NOTE: HIV infected patients who are diagnosed with BV should receive the same treatment regimen as those who are not HIV infected.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING
(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts)

1. The name/significance of the infection. Educate for sequelae and complications of the untreated infection **https://www.cdc.gov/std/bv/stdfact-bacterial-vaginosis.htm)**.

2. Directions for taking medication and management of potential side effects (e.g., to avoid alcoholic beverages and other alcohol- containing products until 24 hours following completion of metronidazole therapy).

3. The infection is generally not considered to be sexually ttransmitted, so sex partners should be referred for examination only if they are symptomatic of possible STD. Otherwise no treatment is necessary for sex partners.

4. Education and counseling of the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).

5. BV is associated with high recurrence placing women at higher risk of other STDs (e.g., *HIV, N. gonorrhoeae, C. trachomatis, and HSV- 2*).

6. Advise the patient to return to clinic for all lab results. Inform patient if lab results are positive additional treatment may be needed. Inform patient if additional lab(s) is/are positive, partner(s) will also need additional treatment.

7. Instruct patient to return for reevaluation if symptoms persist.

8. Assist patient in developing a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan and document patient's plan. Abstain from sex until all the symptoms are resolved.

9. Abstain from sex for the duration of treatment and/or until all lab results are obtained.

10. Advise patient to return to clinic 7 days after completion of treatment if symptoms do not resolve.

11. If patient is of childbearing age, counsel on the use of contraceptives to reduce the risk of unintended pregnancy.

12. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown.

13. For additional information and psychological support, refer to: **National STD Hotline 1-800-227-8922 available 8am-5pm Mon-Fri (eastern time), in English and Spanish. National Herpes Hotline 919-361-8488 available 9:00 a.m. to 7:00 p.m. Mon-Fri (eastern time) or http://www.ashasexualhealth.org/stdsstis/hpv/support-groups/.**

14. Refer to the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for immunization recommendations for Hepatitis A, B and HPV (https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/index.html) and the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual.

FOLLOW-UP

Patient should return only if symptoms persist after treatment or recur. Use an alternative treatment regimen for recurrent disease.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Consult delegating physician if:

a. Patient would benefit from long term therapy for BV

b. Further medical guidance is needed, and STD nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

2. Refer to OB/GYN or OB provider if (three or more) recurrences within 6 months that do not respond to alternative treatment regimens. Suppressive therapy is recommended.

3. Refer pregnant women in their 1st trimester to OB/GYN for treatment of BV.

4. Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for reporting of possible sexual abuse of minors if encountered through history, physical.

5. All suspected sexual abuse of minors must be reported to the county Department of Family and Children Services office as per Guidelines for Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel, which may be viewed on the Public Health Information Library (PHIL) at ***https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf***

REFERENCES

1. **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015, Vol. 64, No. RR-3, Retrieved February 28, 2019.**

2. **GUIDELINES FOR MANDATORY REPORTING OF SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE for PUBLIC HEALTH PERSONNEL. (2017, April 1). Retrieved February 28, 2019, from https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf.**

3. U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. Screening for bacterial vaginosis in pregnancy to prevent preterm delivery: recommendation statement. Ann Intern Med 2008; 148:214–9. (Current)

4. Myer L, Kuhn L, Stein ZA, et al. Intravaginal practices, bacterial vaginosis, and women's susceptibility to HIV infection: epidemiological evidence and biological mechanisms. Lancet Infect Disease 2005; 5:786–94. (Current)

5. Guidelines Burke A. Cunha, M.D., *Antibiotic Essentials*, 8th edition, Physician's Press, Royal Oak, Michigan, 2009. (Current)

6. Holmes, K. K. (2008). Sexually transmitted diseases. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical. (Current)

7. **American Academy of Pediatrics. In: Kimberlin DW, Brady MT, Jackson MA, Long SS, eds. RedBook:2018 Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases. 31st ed. Itasca, IL: American Academy of Pediatrics 2018.**

8. University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine. (2017). Clinical Skin Disease Images. Retrieved from https://medicine.uiowa.edu/dermatology/education/clinical-skin-disease-images.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR TRICHOMONIASIS

DEFINITION

Trichomoniasis is the most prevalent non-viral sexually transmitted infection in the United States, affecting an estimated 3.7 million persons. Trichomoniasis is a sexually transmitted infection of the urogenital tract, most commonly found in the urethra and vagina in women. Trichomoniasis is considered the most common curable STD.

Vaginal trichomonas has been associated with adverse pregnancy outcomes, particularly premature rupture of the membranes, preterm delivery, and low birthweight. High risk populations include those with multiple sex partners, those with a history of STDs, and those that exchange sex for payment and use injecting drugs**.** Douching is not recommended because it might increase the risk for vaginal trichomoniasis.

ETIOLOGY

Trichomonas vaginalis is a flagellated protozoan with an undulating membrane and flagella. The incubation period averages one week but ranges from 5 to 28 days.

SUBJECTIVE

1. May be asymptomatic, especially in males. In males, may present as non-gonococcal urethritis (See Standard Nurse Protocol for non-gonococcal urethritis).

2. Male symptoms may include:

   b. Itching and irritation inside the penis.

   c. Dysuria or burning after ejaculation.

   c. Penile discharge.

3. Female symptoms may include:

   a. Itching, soreness and burning in vaginal area.

   b. Dysuria

   c. Discharge with an offensive odor.

   d. Vulvar irritation.

OBJECTIVE

1. May be asymptomatic in both females and males.

2. Females may present with:

a. Profuse yellow**ish**-green**,** malodorous vaginal discharge.

b. Vulvar inflammation with edema or excoriations.

c. Cervix may have a granular appearance with punctate hemorrhages ("strawberry cervix").

3. Males may present with urethritis, epididymitis, or prostatitis.

ASSESSMENT Trichomoniasis

PLAN The desired outcomes of treatment are: relief of symptoms, microbiologic cure, and reduction of transmission and potential infection with other STDs.

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES (with or without objective findings)

1. Typical motile trichomonas seen on wet mount of vaginal discharge. (wet mount sensitivity: 51% to 65%)

OR

2. Identification of *T. vaginalis* on culture.

OR

3. **Acid Amplification Test (NAAT)**

OR

4. Identification of Trichomonas on Pap smear.

NOTE: Males who have been circumcised might have a somewhat reduced risk of trichomoniasis.

NOTE: If Trichomonas is identified on Pap smear, may treat presumptively or refer to delegating physician.

NOTE: When using a wet mount, slides should be evaluated immediately because the sensitivity declines as evaluation is delayed.

THERAPEUTIC

NOTE: Any patients who test positive for trichomoniasis should be tested for gonorrhea, chlamydia, syphilis, and HIV.

NOTE: Untreated infections might last for months to years with associated two-to threefold increased risk for HIV acquisition.

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. If patient is not pregnant:

    a. Metronidazole 2g PO in a single dose.

    OR

    b. Metronidazole 500mg PO every 12 hours for 7 days **(preferred treatment unless adherence is an issue)**.

2. Alternative regimen for non-pregnant patients:

    Tinidazole 2g PO in a single dose.

3. Recommended regimen for pregnant patients in 2nd and 3rd trimester only:

    Metronidazole 2g PO in a single dose.

4. Recommended treatment if patient is HIV infected:

    Metronidazole 500mg PO every 12 hours for 7 days.

NOTE: Metronidazole is an FDA Category B drug. Metronidazole should only be used in confirmed 2nd and 3rd trimester of pregnancy (see Consultation/Referral). Lactating women taking metronidazole should withhold breastfeeding during treatment and for 12-24 hours after the last dose to reduce infant's exposure to the drug. Alternatively, a nursing mother may choose to pump and discard human milk for the duration of metronidazole therapy, and for 24 hours after therapy ends and feed her infant stored human milk or formula.

NOTE: Avoidance of breastfeeding has been and continues to be a standard, strong recommendation for HIV-infected

women in the United States, because maternal ART dramatically reduces but does not eliminate breastmilk transmission. Further, safe infant feeding alternatives are readily available in the United States. In addition, there are concerns about other potential risks, including toxicity for the neonate or increased risk of development of ARV drug resistance, should transmission occur, due to variable passage of drugs into breastmilk.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING
(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts)

1. The name/significance of the infection. Educate for sequelae and complications of the untreated infection (**https://www.cdc.gov/std/trichomonas/stdfact-trichomoniasis.htm).**

2. Directions for taking medication and management of potential side effects (e.g., to avoid alcoholic beverages and other alcohol- containing products until 24 hours following completion of metronidazole therapy).

3. All sex partners 60 days prior to the onset of symptoms or positive test should be referred for examination and treatment. Avoid sex with partner(s) until partner(s) has/have been treated. Refer the last known sex partner if the last sexual contact was greater than 60 days before onset of symptoms or diagnosis. Provide patient with written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them to HD for exam and treatment.

4. Advise the patient to return to clinic for all lab results even if presumptively treated at initial visit. Inform patient if lab results are positive additional treatment may be needed.

5. Education and counseling of the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).

6. If patient is of childbearing age, counsel on the use of contraceptives to reduce the risk of unintended pregnancy.

7. Advise patient to return to clinic 7 days after completion of treatment if symptoms do not resolve.

8. Inform patient if additional lab(s) is/are positive, partner(s)

will also need additional treatment.

9. Abstain from sex for 7 days after therapy is begun and/or until all lab results are obtained.

10. Assist patient(s) in developing a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan and document patient(s) plan. Abstain from sex until all the symptoms are resolved, and partner(s) are tested and treated.

11. Women who are breastfeeding should withhold breastfeeding during treatment and for 24 hours after the last dose to reduce child's exposure to the drug**.** Alternatively, a nursing mother may choose to pump and discard human milk for the duration of metronidazole therapy and for 24 hours after therapy ends. She may feed her infant stored human milk or formula.

12. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown.

13. For additional information and psychological support, refer to: **National STD Hotline 1-800-227-8922 available 8am-5pm Mon-Fri (eastern time), in English and Spanish. National Herpes Hotline 919-361-8488 available 9:00 a.m. to 7:00 p.m. Mon-Fri (eastern time) or http://www.ashasexualhealth.org/stdsstis/hpv/support-groups/.**

14. Refer to the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for immunization recommendations for Hepatitis A, B and HPV (https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/index.html) and the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual.

MANAGEMENT OF SEX PARTNERS

1. All sex partners 60 days prior to the onset of symptoms or positive test should be referred for examination and treatment. Avoid sex with partner(s) until partner(s) has/have been treated. Refer the last known sex partner if the last sexual contact was greater than 60 days before onset of symptoms or diagnosis. Provide patient with written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them to HD for examination and treatment.

2. All identified sex partners, as defined above, should be

examined and promptly treated with one of the above regimens for trichomoniasis.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Patient should return only if symptoms persist after treatment, or recur. Re-treat with the 7-day regimen of metronidazole if 4-6 weeks has elapsed since previous treatment and presence of trichomoniasis has been reconfirmed (see medication package insert).

2. **Recommendation to retest** women who are sexually active and high-risk within 3 months following initial treatment regardless of whether they believe their sex partners were treated.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Consult with delegating physician if:

    a. Patient is allergic to nitroimidazoles for desensitization referral.

    b. Repeated treatment failure. (Assure that partner(s) have been treated to rule out reinfection).

    c. Further medical guidance is needed, and STD nursing protocol is not applicable to treat patient.

2. Refer pregnant patients in first trimester who have tested positive for trichomoniasis to their OB/GYN or OB provider.

3. Antimicrobial resistance occurs in 4%-10% of vaginal trichomoniasis cases. If resistance is suspected after adequate treatment with recommended regimen or alternative regimen and reinfection is excluded susceptibility testing should be done. Contact DPH STD Nurse Consultant for susceptibility testing kit.

4. Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for reporting possible sexual or physical abuse of minors, if encountered, through history or physical. All suspected sexual or physical abuse of minors must be reported to the county Department of Family and Children Services office as per Guidelines for Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel

https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf .

REFERENCES

1. Centers for Disease Control and *Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015, Vo*l. 64, No. RR-3, **Retrieved February 28, 2019**.

2. GUIDELINES FOR MANDATORY REPORTING OF SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE for PUBLIC HEALTH PERSONNEL. (2017, April 1). **Retrieved February 28, 2019**., from https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf.

3. Holmes, K. K. (2008). *Sexually transmitted diseases*. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical.(Current)

4. **American Academy of Pediatrics. In: Kimberlin DW, Brady MT, Jackson MA, Long SS, eds. RedBook:2018 Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases. 31st ed.Itasca,IL: American Academy of Pediatrics 2018.**

5. University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine. (2017). Clinical Skin Disease Images. Retrieved from https://medicine.uiowa.edu/dermatology/education/clinical-skin-disease-images.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR UNCOMPLICATED VULVOVAGINAL CANDIDIASIS (VVC) (Yeast infection)

DEFINITION Uncomplicated vulvovaginal candidiasis (VVC) is a common infection (yeast infection) that may occasionally also cause cutaneous penile lesions in male sex partners (e.g. *Candidal* balanitis), but is not always considered to be an STD. An estimated 75% of women will experience at least one episode of VVC during their life-time, and 40**%**-45% will have two or more episodes.

ETIOLOGY Most infections are caused by *Candida albicans* which grows as oval budding yeast cells**,** hyphae**,** and pseudohyphae and thrives best when the vaginal pH is 4.5 to 5. Other *Candida* species or yeasts may occasionally cause similar symptoms. The incubation period is unknown.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Vulvovaginal itching.
2. Thick, curdy vaginal discharge.
3. May have vaginal soreness, pain with intercourse, vulvar burning and external dysuria.
4. Redness and swelling of the vulva.

OBJECTIVE

NOTE: Many women are asymptomatic. Symptoms are caused by overgrowth of normally occurring yeast forms. Contributing factors, which disrupt the normally protective vaginal flora include: medications, diabetes, HIV, pregnancy, and other immuno-suppressive conditions.

1. Pruritis and erythema in the vulvovaginal area. A thick white, cottage cheese like vaginal discharge may be present.
2. Identification of typical budding yeast, **hyphae**, or pseudohyphae on microscopic exam of vaginal discharge, by saline or adding 10% KOH solution to wet mount.
3. Vaginal pH less than 4.5.

ASSESSMENT Vulvovaginal Candidiasis (VVC)

PLAN The desired outcome of treatment is the relief of symptoms, microbiologic cure, and reduction of transmission and potential

infection with other STDs**.**

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

NOTE: Vulvovaginal candidiasis is an important concern for women with HIV infection. The colonization rates of candida have shown to be higher in HIV-infected women than HIV negative women, although the relationship of vulvovaginal candidiasis to HIV infection remains unclear. Therapy for uncomplicated and complicated VVC in women with HIV infection should not differ from that for seronegative women.

Wet preparation (10% KOH, saline)

a. Pruritis and erythema in the vulvovaginal area. A thick white, cottage cheese like vaginal discharge may be present.

AND

b. Identification of typical budding yeast, hyphae, or pseudohyphae on microscopic exam of vaginal discharge, by saline or adding 10% KOH solution to wet mount.

AND/OR

c. Vaginal pH less than 4.5

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Intravaginal agents (*Available without a prescription)

Non-pregnant patients:

a. *Butoconazole 2% cream 5g, one applicatorful intravaginally for 3 days,

OR

b. *Clotrimazole 1% cream 5g, one applicatorful intravaginally for 7-14 days,

OR

c. *Miconazole 100mg vaginal suppository, one suppository for 7 days,

OR

d. *Miconazole 200mg vaginal suppository, one suppository for 3 days,

OR

e. *Miconazole 2% cream 5g, one applicatorful intravaginally for 7 days,

OR

f. *Tioconazole 6.5% ointment 5g, intravaginally in a single application,

OR

g. Terconazole 0.4% cream 5g, one applicatorful intravaginally for 7 days,

OR

h. Terconazole 80mg vaginal suppository, one suppository for 3 day,

OR

i. Terconazole 0.8% cream 5g, one applicatorful, intravaginally for 3 days.

OR

2. Oral agent for non-pregnant patients:

a. Fluconazole (Diflucan) 150mg PO once.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC

Keep irritated vulvovaginal area as clean and dry as possible.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING
(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts)

1. The name/significance of the infection. Educate for sequelae and complications of untreated infection: **http://www.cdc.gov/fungal/diseases/candidiasis/genital/index.html**

2. Directions for taking medication and management of potential side effects.

3. Although many preparations of intravaginal agents are available without a prescription, self-medication is advised only for women who have been previously diagnosed with VVC and who experience a recurrence of the same symptoms.

4. Butoconazole and clotrimazole cream, tioconazole ointment, and miconazole creams and suppositories are oil-based and may weaken latex condoms and diaphragms, therefore other methods of contraception should be used.

5. If taking fluconazole (Diflucan), noticeable improvement in symptoms may not occur for a few days. Even with a single dose, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, abdominal pain and headache may occur.

6. Education and counseling of the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).

7. If patient is of childbearing age, counsel on the use of contraceptives to reduce the risk of unintended pregnancy.

8. Assist patient(s) in developing a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan and document patient(s) plan. Abstain from sex until all the symptoms are resolved.

9. Abstain from sex for the duration of treatment and/or until all lab results are obtained.

10. Advise the patient to return to clinic for all lab results even if presumptively treated at initial visit.

11. Inform patient if lab results are positive additional treatment may be needed.
12. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown.

13. For additional information and psychological support, refer to: **National STD Hotline 1-800-227-8922 available 8am-**

5pm Mon-Fri (eastern time), in English and Spanish. National Herpes Hotline 919-361-8488 available 9:00 a.m. to 7:00 p.m. Mon-Fri (eastern time) or http://www.ashasexualhealth.org/stdsstis/hpv/support-groups/

14. Refer to the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for immunization recommendations for Hepatitis A, B and HPV (https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/index.html) and the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual.

MANAGEMENT OF SEX PARTNERS

No routine exam and/or treatment is necessary but may be considered in females with recurrent infections. A minority of male sex partners who have balanitis, characterized by erythematous areas on the glans of the penis in conjunction with pruritus or irritation, can benefit from treatment with over-the-counter topical antifungal agents to relieve symptoms.

FOLLOW-UP

Only if symptoms persist or recur within 2 months of the initial symptoms.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Consult delegating physician for referral of patients with frequent recurrent episodes not responding to usual therapy. Women who experience 4 or more episodes of VVC within a year are described as having Recurrent Vulvovaginal Candidiasis (RVVC). Risk factors include uncontrolled diabetes mellitus, immunosuppression, and corticosteroid use most women who have RVVC have no apparent predisposing conditions. HIV status of the patient, if known needs to be provided to the consulting delegating physician.

2. Refer pregnant women to their OB/GYN or OB provider for treatment.

3. Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for reporting possible sexual or physical abuse of minors, if

encountered, through history or physical. All suspected sexual or physical abuse of minors must be reported to the county Department of Family and Children Services office as per Guidelines for Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf.

4. Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed, and STD nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

REFERENCES

1. **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015, Vol. 64, No. RR-3, Retrieved February 28, 2019.**

2. GUIDELINES FOR MANDATORY REPORTING OF SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE for PUBLIC HEALTH PERSONNEL. (2017, April 1). **Retrieved February 28, 2019**, from https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf .

3. Holmes, K. K. (2008). Sexually transmitted diseases. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical. (Current)

4. **American Academy of Pediatrics. In: Kimberlin DW, Brady MT, Jackson MA, Long SS, eds. RedBook:2018 Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases. 31st ed.Itasca,IL: American Academy of Pediatrics 2018.**

5. University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine. (2017). Clinical Skin Disease Images. Retrieved from https://medicine.uiowa.edu/dermatology/education/clinical-skin-disease-images.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PELVIC INFLAMMATORY DISEASE (PID)

DEFINITION

Pelvic inflammatory disease (PID) is an infection of a woman's reproductive organs and a complication caused by untreated STDs, like chlamydia and gonorrhea. The clinical syndrome is due to the ascending spread of microorganisms from the vagina and endocervix to the endometrium, the fallopian tubes or to contiguous structures.

If untreated, acute infections may result in peritonitis caused by rupture of a tubo-ovarian abscess. And acute or subclinical infections may result in chronic pain, pelvic adhesions, involuntary infertility or ectopic pregnancy.

The intensity of symptoms may vary widely, from mild to acute. Many episodes of PID go unrecognized. Although some women may have asymptomatic PID, many have mild or non-specific symptoms or signs such as abnormal bleeding, dyspareunia or vaginal discharge. Experts recommend that providers maintain a low threshold of diagnosis for PID and recognize when PID should be suspected.

ETIOLOGY

Sexually transmitted organisms, especially *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* and *Chlamydia trachomatis* are implicated in cases of PID. However, organisms not usually associated with sexual transmission, such as anaerobes **G. vaginalis, Haemophilus influenzae, enteric Gram-negative rods, and Streptococcus agalactiae, U. urealyticum, and M. genitalium might be associated with some PID cases.** The incubation period for PID is undefined.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Mild to moderate lower abdominal pain or tenderness.

5. Vaginal discharge with or without a bad odor.

6. Dyspareunia and/or bleeding after sex.

7. Fever and chills.

8. Anorexia.

9. Nausea.

10. Bleeding between periods**.**

11. May have a history of exposure to gonorrhea or chlamydia.

12. May have a history of previous PID, recent insertion of an IUD, or onset of symptoms during the first 5-10 days of the menstrual cycle.

OBJECTIVE

The following criteria are used to diagnose pelvic inflammatory disease:

1. A high index of suspicion must be kept in sexually active females. Minimum criteria to institute empiric treatment in sexually active young females and other females at risk for STDs:

   Cervical motion tenderness and/or uterine/adnexal tenderness.

2. Additional criteria that support a diagnosis of PID include:

a. Abnormal cervical or vaginal mucopurulent discharge.

b. Presence of white blood cells (WBCs) on saline microscopy of vaginal secretions.

c. Laboratory documentation of cervical infection with *N. gonorrhoeae* or *C. trachomatis.*

d. Oral temperature may be 101° F (38.3° C) or higher.

NOTE: If the cervical discharge appears normal and no white blood cells are found on the wet prep, the diagnosis of PID is unlikely and an alternative diagnosis needs to be considered.

3. Wet prep of vaginal fluid to detect presence of concomitant infection (e.g., BV and Trichomonas).

ASSESSMENT

Pelvic Inflammatory Disease

PLAN

The desired outcome of treatment is to demonstrate substantial clinical improvement within 3 days after initiation of therapy, with subsequent resolution of all signs and symptoms, prevention of formation of scar tissue both outside and inside the fallopian tubes that can lead to tubal blockage, ectopic pregnancy, infertility and long-term pelvic/abdominal pain.

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Tests for gonorrhea and chlamydia.

2. Pelvic examination for cervical motion tenderness **(chandelier sign)**, uterine tenderness, or adnexal tenderness; also, evaluate for cervical exudates or cervical friability.

3. Wet Preparation (saline, 10% KOH).

4. Pregnancy test if there is a possibility that patient may be pregnant (see Consultation/Referral section for more information).

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Any patients who test positive for gonorrhea or chlamydia should be tested for syphilis and HIV.

NOTE: Women with HIV infection responded equally well to recommended parenteral and IM/oral antibiotic regimens as women without HIV infection.

1. Recommended regimen for non-pregnant or HIV-infected adult/minor:

Ceftriaxone 250mg IM single dose,

AND

Doxycycline 100mg PO every 12 hours for 14 days (only if at least 8 years old),

AND

Metronidazole 500mg PO every 12 hours for 14 days

NOTE: Do not give Doxycycline to lactating patient(s); patient(s) must be advised to discontinue breastfeeding or receive alternative regimen. If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment. Breastfeeding can be

restarted 2 days after completion of treatment. Do not give to minors under the age of 8.

NOTE: Avoidance of breastfeeding has been and continues to be a standard, strong recommendation for HIV-infected women in the United States, because maternal ART dramatically reduces but does not eliminate breastmilk transmission. Further, safe infant feeding alternatives are readily available in the United States. In addition, there are concerns about other potential risks, including toxicity for the neonate or increased risk of development of ARV drug resistance, should transmission occur, due to variable passage of drugs into breastmilk.

2. Alternative regimen for non-pregnant or HIV infected adults/minor (at least 8 years old):

   a. Cefoxitin 2g IM and Probenecid 1g PO single dose

   AND

   Doxycycline 100mg PO every 12 hours for 14 days

   AND

   Metronidazole 500mg PO every 12 hours for 14 days

   b. Ceftriaxone 250mg IM single dose

   AND

   Azithromycin 1g PO once and repeat Azithromycin 1g in 1 week

   AND

   Metronidazole 500mg PO every 12 hours for 14 days.

   NOTE: Metronidazole is an FDA Category B drug. Metronidazole should only be used in confirmed 2nd and 3rd trimester of pregnancy. Metronidazole should not be used for treatment during the first trimester of pregnancy. If metronidazole is given to breastfeeding women, they should discontinue breastfeeding until two days after treatment is completed. If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant

throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment to reduce child's exposure to metronidazole and Doxycycline. **Patient(s) who are nursing should be informed to use caution while nursing since treatment may be excreted in human breast milk in small amounts.**

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING
(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts)

1. The name/significance of the infection. Educate for sequelae and complications of the untreated infection (**https://www.cdc.gov/std/pid/stdfact-pid.htm**).

2. Directions for taking medication and what to do about potential side effects.

3. Return appointment for evaluation in 3 days.

4. All sex partners 60 days prior to the onset of symptoms or positive test should be referred for examination and treatment. Avoid sex with partner(s) until partner(s) has/have been treated. Refer the last known sex partner if the last sexual contact was greater than 60 days before onset of symptoms or diagnosis. Provide patient with written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them to HD for exam and treatment.

5. Counsel to avoid sex with untreated partners.

6. Women who are breastfeeding should not receive Doxycycline. If Doxycycline is given to breastfeeding women, they should discontinue breastfeeding throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment.
If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment.
Patient(s) who are nursing should be informed to use caution while nursing since treatment may be excreted in human breast milk in small amounts.

7. If the patient is diabetic receiving ceftriaxone therapy, and using the ACCU-CHEK Compact Plus system, they should stop using the ACCU-CHEK Compact Plus system and begin using an alternate blood glucose monitoring system for

the duration of this therapy and for 2 full days (48 hours) after the last treatment. Ceftriaxone may lead to incorrect low glucose results.

8. Assist patient in developing a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan and document patients plan. Abstain from sex until all the symptoms are resolved, and partner(s) are tested and treated.

9. Education and counseling of the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).

10. If patient is of childbearing age, counsel on the use of contraceptives to reduce the risk of unintended pregnancy.

11. Instruct patient to go to Emergency Room if symptoms worsen.

12. Advise the patient to return to clinic for all lab results even if presumptively treated at initial visit. Inform patient if lab results are positive additional treatment may be needed.

13. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown.

14. For additional information and psychological support, refer to: **National STD Hotline 1-800-227-8922 available 8am-5pm Mon-Fri (eastern time), in English and Spanish. National Herpes Hotline 919-361-8488 available 9:00 a.m. to 7:00 p.m. Mon-Fri (eastern time) or http://www.ashasexualhealth.org/stdsstis/hpv/support-groups/.**

15. Refer to the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for immunization recommendations for Hepatitis A, B and HPV (https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/index.html) and the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual.

MANAGEMENT OF SEX PARTNERS

All sex partners from 60 days prior to the onset of symptoms or diagnosis should be examined for STDs and promptly treated with a regimen effective against both gonorrhea and chlamydia, regardless of symptoms or Gram stain or other test results. Male sex partners of females with PID caused by chlamydia or

gonorrhea often are asymptomatic. Avoid sex with partner(s) until partner(s) has/have been treated. Refer the last known sex partner if the last sexual contact was greater than 60 days before onset of symptoms or diagnosis. Provide patient with written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them to HD for exam and treatment.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Evaluation, by bimanual examination, within 72 hours after initiation of therapy for symptomatic improvement. Also, discuss medication compliance and stress importance of completing therapy.

2. Suggest repeat examination, and rescreening tests for patients diagnosed with gonorrhea and chlamydia, 3-6 months after completing therapy.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Treatment must be initiated as soon as possible. If a referral is made to an APRN or physician to confirm the diagnosis, begin treatment before the referral is made, unless the APRN or physician is on-site and can see the patient immediately**.**

2. Consult with delegating physician immediately, for possible hospitalization and/or parenteral treatment when:

    a. Surgical emergencies such as appendicitis cannot be excluded.

    b. The patient is pregnant.

    c. The patient has failed to respond clinically to oral therapy.

    d. The patient is unable to follow or tolerate an outpatient oral regimen.

    e. The patient has signs of a severe illness, nausea and vomiting, or a high fever.

3. If a patient with an IUD does not respond to treatment with clinical improvement within 48-72 hours of initiating treatment

consult with delegating physician for possible IUD removal and contraceptive counseling.

4. Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for reporting possible sexual or physical abuse of minors, if encountered, through history or physical. All suspected sexual or physical abuse of minors must be reported to the county Department of Family and Children Services office as per Guidelines for Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel *https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf*

5. Chlamydia and/or gonorrhea infected women (nonpregnant or pregnant) and men are recommended to be retested approximately 3 months after treatment, regardless of whether they believe that their sex partners were treated. If retesting at 3 months is not possible, clinicians should retest the next time the patient(s) presents for medical care in the 12 months following initial treatment.

6. Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed, and STD nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

REFERENCES

1. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015, Vol. 64, No. RR-3, **Retrieved February 28, 2019**.

2. GUIDELINES FOR MANDATORY REPORTING OF SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE for PUBLIC HEALTH PERSONNEL. (2017, April 1). **Retrieved February 28, 2019**, from https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf

3. Holmes, K. K. (2008). Sexually transmitted diseases. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical.(Current)

4. **American Academy of Pediatrics. In: Kimberlin DW, Brady MT, Jackson MA, Long SS, eds. RedBook:2018 Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases. 31st ed. Itasca, IL: American Academy of Pediatrics 2018.**

5. University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine. (2017). Clinical Skin Disease Images. Retrieved from https://medicine.uiowa.edu/dermatology/education/clinical-skin-disease-images.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR EPIDIDYMITIS, SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED

DEFINITION

Epididymitis is a clinical syndrome characterized by inflammation of the epididymis causing pain and tenderness **that lasts less than 6 weeks**, associated with urethritis that may be asymptomatic, usually occurring in men less than 35 years of age. Epididymitis occurring in men over 35 years of age is usually nonsexual and may be associated with urinary tract infections, systemic disease and immunosuppression. In addition, in older men, non-sexually transmitted acute epididymitis is also associated with prostate biopsy, urinary tract instrumentation or surgery, systemic disease, and/or immunosuppression.

ETIOLOGY

Common causes are *Chlamydia trachomatis* or *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*, *Escherichia coli* and *Pseudomonas spp.* Infection can occur in males who are the insertive partners during anal intercourse. Sexually transmitted acute epididymitis usually is accompanied by urethritis, which frequently is asymptomatic.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Scrotal pain, **tenderness** and swelling, usually unilateral.
2. May have dysuria and/or urethral discharge.
3. No history of trauma to the area.

OBJECTIVE

1. Scrotal tenderness and swelling observed during assessment. Inability to differentiate epididymis from testicle during palpation (see consultation and referral section)
2. Gram-stain smear is positive for urethritis (e.g., smear contains 2 or more polymorphonuclear leukocytes per oil immersion field). The smear may or may not be positive for *Neisseria gonorrhoeae.*
3. Microscope examination of first-void urine sediment demonstrating 10 or more polymorphonuclear leukocytes per high power field,
4. Positive leukocyte esterase test on first-void urine.

ASSESSMENT

Epididymitis, sexually transmitted

PLAN

The desired outcomes of treatment are microbiologic cure, alleviation of signs and symptoms, prevention of transmission of infection to others, and prevention of potential complications (e.g., infertility or chronic pain).

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. **Scrotal tenderness and swelling observed during assessment. Inability to differentiate epididymis from testicle during palpation (see consultation and referral section)**

AND

2. **Gram-stain smear is positive for urethritis (e.g., smear contains 2 or more polymorphonuclear leukocytes per oil immersion field). The smear may or may not be positive for Neisseria gonorrhoeae.**

OR

3. **Microscope examination of first-void urine sediment demonstrating 10 or more polymorphonuclear leukocytes per high power field,**

OR

4. **Positive leukocyte esterase test on first-void urine.**

5. Laboratory tests for gonorrhea and chlamydia, Nucleic Acid hybridization tests and/or gonorrhea culture.

6. **Cremasteric reflex (lightly stroking the superior and medial part of the thigh to make the cremaster muscle contract and pull up the ipsilateral testis) should be assessed.**

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Any patients who test positive for gonorrhea or chlamydia should be tested for syphilis and HIV.

NOTE: HIV infected patients with uncomplicated epididymitis can receive the same treatment regimen as those who are not HIV infected.

1. Recommended treatment if epididymitis is most likely due to gonococcal or chlamydial infection:

   Ceftriaxone 250mg IM, single dose,

   AND

   Doxycycline 100mg PO every 12 hours for 10 days, (if patient is 8 years of age or older).

   NOTE: PCN allergy algorithm should be completed on all patients who self-report penicillin allergy. If a true PCN allergy is identified refer to allergist for desensitization with subsequent treatment.

   NOTE: Do not give Doxycycline to minors under the age of 8**.**

2. Recommended treatment if epididymitis is if most likely due to gonococcal or chlamydial infection and enteric organisms (men who practice insertive anal sex):

   a. Ceftriaxone 250mg IM single dose,

   AND

   Levofloxacin 500mg PO, once daily for 10 days (if patient is 18 years old).

   OR

   b. Ofloxacin 300mg PO **every** 12 hours for 10 days (if patient is 18 years old).

3. If most likely due to enteric organisms (men who practice insertive anal sex) or with negative gonococcal culture or nucleic acid amplification test:

   a. Levofloxacin 500mg PO once daily for 10 days (if patient is 18 years old).

   OR

   b. Ofloxacin 300mg PO **every** 12 hours for 10 days (if patient is 18 years old).

4. Over-the-counter oral analgesics as needed for pain.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

Patient recommended bed rest, scrotal elevation and support to relieve swelling and pain.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts)

1. The name/significance of the infection. Educate for sequelae and complications of the untreated infection (**https://www.mayoclinic.org/diseases-conditions/epididymitis/symptoms-causes/syc-20363853**).

2. Directions for taking medication and potential side effects and what to do about them.

3. Counsel patient about comfort measures (e.g. over-the-counter oral analgesics for pain, bed rest, scrotal elevation and support to relieve swelling and pain).

4. Advise patient to seek emergency medical care promptly if symptoms do not improve or worsen. Patient's symptoms should start improving within 48 hours of the initiation of treatment.

5. If infection with gonorrhea and/or chlamydia is known or suspected, refer sex partners for examination and treatment. Avoid sex until treatment is completed and patient and partner(s) no longer have symptoms.

6. If the patient is diabetic, receiving ceftriaxone therapy and using the ACCU-CHEK Compact Plus system, they should stop using the ACCU-CHEK Compact Plus system and begin using an alternate blood glucose monitoring system for the duration of this therapy and for 2 full days (48 hours) after the last treatment. Ceftriaxone may lead to incorrect low glucose results.

7. Assist patient in developing a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan and document patients plan. Abstain from sex until all the symptoms are resolved, and partner(s) are tested

and treated.

8. Education and counseling on the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).

9. Emphasize patient follow up in 3 days for re-evaluation (if date of follow up falls on a weekend, have patient return for re-evaluation the next open clinic day).

10. Emphasize the importance for patient to return to clinic for all lab results even if presumptively treated at initial visit. Inform patient if lab results are positive and additional treatment will be needed.

11. If additional laboratory tests are positive for STI (e.g., gonorrhea), partners also need treatment.

12. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown.

13. **For additional information and psychological support, refer to: National STD Hotline 1-800-227-8922 available 8am-5pm Mon-Fri (eastern time), in English and Spanish. National Herpes Hotline 919-361-8488 available 9:00 a.m. to 7:00 p.m. Mon-Fri (eastern time) or http://www.ashasexualhealth.org/stdsstis/hpv/support-groups/.**

14. Refer to the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for immunization recommendations for Hepatitis A, B and HPV (https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/index.html) and the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual**.**

MANAGEMENT OF SEX PARTNERS

If gonorrhea and/or chlamydial infection is known, or suspected, in the index patient, all sex partners from 60 days prior to the onset of symptoms or diagnosis should be examined and receive appropriate treatment for gonorrhea and chlamydia.

FOLLOW-UP

Re-evaluate patient for improvement of symptoms in 2-3 days. Failure to improve means the diagnosis and therapy should be

reevaluated and hospitalization may be necessary.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Immediately consult the delegating physician if unable to perform the necessary diagnostic testing or patient cannot be treated with recommended drugs.

2. Refer immediately for emergency evaluation if testicular torsion is suspected.

3. If the diagnosis is questionable refer to a urologist. If the patient has intense pain, refer immediately for emergency evaluation even when urethritis is documented by gram stain.

4. If patient shows no improvement of signs/symptoms in 3 days refer to a urologist or primary care physician.

5. Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for reporting possible sexual or physical abuse of minors, if encountered, through history or physical. All suspected sexual or physical abuse of minors must be reported to the county Department of Family and Children Services office as per Guidelines for Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf

REFERENCES

1. **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015, Vol. 64, No. RR-3, Retrieved February 28, 2019.**

2. GUIDELINES FOR MANDATORY REPORTING OF SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE for PUBLIC HEALTH PERSONNEL. (2017, April 1). Retrieved **February 28, 2019**, from https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf .

3. Holmes, K. K. (2008). Sexually transmitted diseases. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical. (Current)

4. **American Academy of Pediatrics., In Pickering, L. K., In Baker, C. J., In Kimberlin, D. W., In Long, S. S., & American Academy of Pediatrics. (2012). Red book: 2012 report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases. (Current)**

5. University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine. (2017). Clinical Skin Disease Images. Retrieved from https://medicine.uiowa.edu/dermatology/education/clinical-skin-disease-images.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR CERVICITIS

DEFINITION Cervicitis is a clinical syndrome characterized by yellow or green mucopurulent exudate visible in the endocervical canal or an endocervical swab specimen and/or easily induced endocervical bleeding.

ETIOLOGY *Chlamydia trachomatis* and *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* may cause cervicitis, but can also be due to trichomoniasis, genital herpes, *M. genitalium* or Bacterial Vaginitis. In most cases, neither organism can be isolated. In some cases, the condition persists despite repeated courses of antimicrobial therapy; therefore, alternative diagnoses should be considered.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Frequently asymptomatic.
2. Discharge from the vagina.
3. Abnormal vaginal bleeding (e.g., after intercourse).

OBJECTIVE

1. Presence of a purulent or mucopurulent exudate visible in the endocervical canal or in an endocervical swab specimen (positive swab test).

AND/OR

2. Easily-induced bleeding occurs with insertion of the first endocervical swab (cervical friability).

ASSESSMENT Cervicitis

PLAN The desired outcomes of treatment are microbiologic cure, alleviation of signs and symptoms, prevention of transmission of infection to others, and treatment of sex partners.

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Gonorrhea, chlamydia, and trichomoniasis tests.

OR

Gonorrhea and chlamydia tests

2. Presence of a purulent or mucopurulent exudate visible in the endocervical canal or an endocervical swab specimen (positive swab test).

AND/OR

Easily-induced bleeding occurs with insertion of the first endocervical swab (cervical friability).

3. Wet Preparation (saline, 10%KOH).

THERAPEUTIC

NOTE: Any patients who test positive for gonorrhea or chlamydia should be tested for syphilis and HIV.

NOTE: Women with cervicitis and HIV infection should receive the same treatment regimen as those who are HIV negative. Cervicitis increases cervical HIV shedding and treatment in women with HIV infection reduces HIV shedding from the cervix and might reduce HIV transmission to susceptible sex partners.

1. The results of the chlamydia and gonorrhea tests should be used to determine the need for treatment, unless the patient is unlikely to be located for treatment when test results are available.

2. If the patient is unlikely to be easily located for treatment when the test results are available, empiric treatment to cover gonorrhea and/or chlamydia may be given. See gonorrhea and chlamydia protocols for treatment choices.

3. BV, candidiasis, or trichomoniasis should be treated if detected on microscopy.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts)

1. The name/significance of the syndrome. Educate for sequelae and complications of the untreated infection **(https://medlineplus.gov/ency/article/001495.htm).**

2. Advise the patient to return to clinic for all lab results even if presumptively treated at initial visit. Inform patient if lab results are positive additional treatment may be needed. Inform patient if additional lab(s) is/are positive, partner(s) will also need additional treatment.

3. Directions for taking medication and what to do about potential side effects.

4. Encourage self-referral of recent sex partner(s) for examination and possible treatment. Avoid sex until partner(s) has been treated.

5. Abstain from sex for 7 days after therapy is started and/or until all lab results are obtained.

6. Assist patient in developing a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan and document patients plan. Abstain from sex until all the symptoms are resolved and partner(s) are tested and treated.

7. Education and counseling of the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).

8. If patient is of childbearing age, counsel on the use of contraceptives to reduce the risk of unintended pregnancy.

9. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown.

10. Refer to the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for immunization recommendations for Hepatitis A, B and HPV (https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/index.html) and the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual.

11. All sex partners 60 days prior to the onset of symptoms or positive test should be referred for examination and treatment. Avoid sex with partner(s) until partner(s) has/have been treated. Refer the last known sex partner if the last sexual contact was greater than 60 days before onset of symptoms or diagnosis. Provide patient with written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them to HD for exam and treatment.

12. Advise patient to return to clinic in 7 days or less if symptoms do not resolve.

13. **For additional information and psychological support, refer to: National STD Hotline 1-800-227-8922 available 8am-5pm Mon-Fri (eastern time), in English and Spanish. National Herpes Hotline 919-361-8488 available 9:00 a.m. to 7:00 p.m. Mon-Fri (eastern time) or http://www.ashasexualhealth.org/stdsstis/hpv/support-groups/.**

14. Inform patient if additional lab(s) is/are positive, partner(s) will also need additional treatment.

MANAGEMENT OF SEX PARTNERS

1. Self-referred sex partner(s) should be treated based on their examination and test results, or the test results of the index patient.

2. Partners of females who are treated for cervicitis before test results are available should receive treatment for the same suspected infection(s) as the female partner.

3. Provide patient with written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them to HD for examination and treatment.

FOLLOW-UP

1. If symptoms persist, patients should return for re-evaluation. However, after the possibilities of relapse and reinfection have been excluded, management of persistent cervicitis is unclear.

2. If the chlamydia or gonorrhea test is positive, it is recommended to retest patient approximately 3 months after treatment, regardless of whether they believe that their sex partners were treated. If retesting at 3 months is not possible, clinicians should retest whenever patient next present for medical care in the 12 months following initial treatment.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Consult with or refer to primary care provider for additional evaluation if symptoms persist after relapse and reinfection have been excluded.

2. Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for reporting possible sexual or physical abuse of minors, if encountered, through history or physical. All suspected sexual or physical abuse of minors must be reported to the county Department of Family and Children Services office as per Guidelines for Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel *https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf* .

3. Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed, and STD nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

REFERENCES

1. **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015, Vol. 64, No. RR-3, Retrieved February 28, 2019.**

2. **GUIDELINES FOR MANDATORY REPORTING OF SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE for PUBLIC HEALTH PERSONNEL. (2017, April 1). Retrieved February 28, 2019, from https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf .**

3. Holmes, K. K. (2008). Sexually transmitted diseases. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical.(Current)

4. **American Academy of Pediatrics., In Pickering, L. K., In Baker, C. J., In Kimberlin, D. W., In Long, S. S., & American Academy of Pediatrics. (2012). Red book: 2012 report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases. (Current)**

5. University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine. (2017). Clinical Skin Disease Images. Retrieved from https://medicine.uiowa.edu/dermatology/education/clinical-skin-disease-images.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR URETHRITIS/NONGONOCOCCAL URETHRITIS (NGU)

DEFINITION **Urethritis, as characterized by urethral inflammation, can result from infectious and noninfectious conditions.** Non-gonococcal urethritis (NGU) is a sexually transmitted clinical syndrome in men, usually characterized by a mucoid-to-purulent urethral discharge and often accompanied by dysuria or urethral itching. **NGU** is diagnosed if urethritis is present and Gram-negative intracellular organisms cannot be identified on Gram stains. May progress to epididymitis, prostatitis or reactive arthritis if untreated.

ETIOLOGY *Chlamydia trachomatis* causes 15%-40% of cases, with lower prevalence occurring in older men. The etiology of many cases of nonchlamydial NGU is unknown. *Ureaplasma urealyticum* and possibly *Mycoplasma genitalium* are implicated in as many as 15%-25% of NGU cases. Trichomonas vaginalis and *herpes simplex virus* occasionally cause NGU. **NGU can be acquired by fellatio, sometimes because of specific pathogens such as HSV, Epstein Barr Virus, and adenovirus. Incubation is variable due to the underlying cause.**

SUBJECTIVE

1. Urethral discharge, especially in the morning.
2. Itching or burning of the urethra.

OBJECTIVE

1. Mucopurulent or purulent discharge,
2. Gram stain of urethral secretions demonstrating 2 or more WBC per oil immersion field.
3. Positive leukocyte esterase (dipstick) test in a first **morning** void urine or sediment demonstrating 10 **or greater** WBC per high power field.
4. When available a Gram stain that is negative for Gram-negative intracellular diplococci.

ASSESSMENT **Urethritis**/Nongonococcal Urethritis (NGU)

PLAN The desired outcome of treatment is alleviation of symptoms and microbiologic cure of infection.

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. **Gonorrhea and chlamydia tests.**

2. Documentation of urethritis by:

   a. Mucopurulent or purulent discharge,

      OR

   b. Gram stain of urethral secretions demonstrating 2 or more WBCs per oil immersion field.

      OR

   c. Positive leukocyte esterase test in a first **morning** void urine sediment demonstrating 10 or more WBCs per high power field.
      AND/OR

   d. Gram stain that is negative for Gram-negative intracellular diplococci, when available

NOTE: If gram stain urethral secretion specimens have less than 5 WBCs per HPF and patient urinated within 2 hours prior to specimen collection, collect another sample 2 hours after void and/or prior to next void.

NOTE: If the criteria for urethritis are not present, treatment should be deferred pending the results of the diagnostic studies. Empiric treatment of symptoms without documentation of urethritis is recommended only for patients at high risk for infection who are unlikely to return for a follow-up evaluation (e.g. minors who have multiple partners, non-compliance for follow up of previous positive results, etc.).

THERAPEUTIC

NOTE: Any patients who test positive for gonorrhea or chlamydia should be tested for syphilis and HIV.

NOTE: HIV infected patients with NGU can receive the same treatment regimen as those who are not HIV infected. In addition, NGU might facilitate HIV transmission.

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Recommended regimens **when Gram Stain is available and negative:**

   a. Azithromycin 1g PO single dose,

   OR

   b. Doxycycline 100mg PO every 12 hours for 7 days if patient is at least 8 years old.

   NOTE: Do not give Doxycycline to lactating patient(s); patient(s) must be advised to discontinue breastfeeding throughout treatment or receive alternative regimen. If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment. Do not give Doxycycline to minors under the age of 8. **Patient(s) who are nursing should be informed to use caution while nursing since treatment may be excreted in human breast milk in small amounts.**

2. **Alternative regimens:**

   a. Erythromycin base 500mg PO every 6 hours a day for 7 days,

   OR

   b. Erythromycin ethylsuccinate 800mg PO every 6 hours a day for 7 days,

   OR

   c. Levofloxacin 500mg PO, once daily for 7 days (if patient is at least age 18),

   OR

   d. Ofloxacin 300mg PO, every 12 hours for 7 days (if patient is at least age 18).

3. **Recommended regimen when Gram Stain is NOT available and at least one of the criteria for Urethritis are met:**

Ceftriaxone 250mg IM, single dose,
AND

Azithromycin 1g PO once. Both are to be administered on the same day, preferably under direct observation.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING
(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts)

1. The name/significance of the syndrome. Educate for sequelae and complications of untreated infection **(http://www.ashasexualhealth.org/stdsstis/ngu/).**

2. Directions for taking medication and what to do about potential side effects.

3. Women who are breastfeeding should not receive Doxycycline. If Doxycycline is given to breastfeeding women, they should discontinue breastfeeding throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment. If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment. **Patient(s) who are nursing should be informed to use caution while nursing since treatment may be excreted in human breast milk in small amounts.**

4. All sex partners from 60 days prior to the onset of symptoms or positive test should be referred for examination and treatment. Avoid sex with partner(s) until partner(s) has been treated. Refer the last known sex partner if the last sexual contact was greater than 60 days before onset of symptoms or diagnosis. Provide written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them in for exam and treatment.

5. Education and counseling of the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).

6. Educate patients who receive Azithromycin about adverse effects (QT Prolongation, torsades de pointes, etc.) and document the patient's understanding. **http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/DrugSafety/UCM343347.pdf or http://www.nhs.uk/conditions/long-QT-syndrome/Documents/Acquired-LQT-Brochure06.pdf**

7. Advise the patient to return to clinic for all lab results even if presumptively treated at initial visit. Inform patient if lab results are positive additional treatment may be needed.

8. Assist patient in developing a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan and document patients plan. Abstain from sex until all the symptoms are resolved, and partner(s) are tested and treated.

9. Instruct patient to abstain from sexual intercourse until at least 7 days after therapy has started and/or until all lab results are obtained. The partner(s) must be adequately treated, and the treated patient's symptoms completely resolved, and sex partners have been adequately treated.

10. Refer to the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for immunization recommendations for Hepatitis A, B and HPV (https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/index.html) and the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual.

11. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown.

12. For additional information and psychological support, refer to: **National STD Hotline 1-800-227-8922 available 8am-5pm Mon-Fri (eastern time), in English and Spanish. National Herpes Hotline 919-361-8488 available 9:00 a.m. to 7:00 p.m. Mon-Fri (eastern time) or http://www.ashasexualhealth.org/stdsstis/hpv/support-groups/.**

13. Advise patient to return to clinic in 7 days if symptoms do not resolve.

MANAGEMENT OF SEX PARTNERS

1. All identified sex partners, as defined above, should be examined and promptly treated with one of the above regimens for **Urethritis**/NGU.

2. Provide written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them in for exam and treatment.

3. All sex partners from the 60 days prior to the onset of

symptoms or diagnosis should be examined and promptly treated with one of the recommended regimens.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Advise the patient to return to clinic for all lab results even if presumptively treated at initial visit. Inform patient if lab results are positive additional treatment will be needed.

2. Inform patient if additional lab(s) is/are positive, partner(s) will need additional treatment also.

3. The patient should return if symptoms persist or return within three months of treatment. Patient(s) with persistent or recurrent urethritis should be retreated with the initial regimen if they have failed to comply with the regimen, or if they have been re-exposed to an untreated sex partner. Otherwise, refer to delegating physician.

4. If the chlamydia or gonorrhea test is positive, recommended to retest patient approximately 3 months after treatment, regardless of whether they believe that their sex partners were treated. If retesting at 3 months is not possible, clinicians should retest whenever patient next present for medical care in the 12 months following initial treatment.

5. If patient vomits within thirty minutes of taking Azithromycin, the dose may be repeated.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Refer to urologist or primary care physician for evaluation and treatment of 3 or more recurrent urethritis within three months. Referral should also be considered if patient is experiencing pain for more than 3 months within a 6-month period.

2. Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for reporting possible sexual or physical abuse of minors, if encountered, through history or physical. All suspected sexual or physical abuse of minors must be reported to the county Department of Family and Children Services office as per Guidelines for Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel *https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAn*

dPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf

3. Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed, and STD nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

REFERENCES

1. Centers for Disease Control and *Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015, Vo*l. 64, No. RR-3, **Retrieved February 28, 2019**.

2. GUIDELINES FOR MANDATORY REPORTING OF SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE for PUBLIC HEALTH PERSONNEL. (2017, April 1). **Retrieved February 28, 2019**, from https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf

3. Holmes, K. K. (2008). Sexually transmitted diseases. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical.(Current)

4. American Academy of Pediatrics., In Pickering, L. K., In Baker, C. J., In Kimberlin, D. W., In Long, S. S., & American Academy of Pediatrics. (2012). Red book: 2012 report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases.(Current)

5. University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine. (2017). Clinical Skin Disease Images. Retrieved from https://medicine.uiowa.edu/dermatology/education/clinical-skin-disease-images.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR LYMPHOGRANULOMA VENEREUM (LGV)

DEFINITION Lymphogranuloma Venereum (LGV) is a systemic, sexually transmitted disease (STD) or infection caused by a type of Chlamydia trachomatis (serovars L1, L2, L3). It is rarely diagnosed in the United States or other industrialized countries. LGV is more common in men who have sex with men than women or heterosexual men. Incubation period ranges between 3-12 days. LGV has three clinical stages:

1. First stage: Often unrecognized due to rapid healing. A painless papule at the site of infection, which ulcerates and then heals rapidly. Mild urethritis may also occur. The patient rarely presents for examination at this stage.

2. Secondary Stage: Usually occurring 14-45 days after the first stage, it is characterized by painful increasing inguinal lymphadenopathy or, in patients exposed by receptive anal intercourse, acute hemorrhagic proctitis. The lymphadenopathy is usually unilateral; less than 20% have the “groove sign” showing involvement of the femoral nodes. Diagnosis and treatment during this stage can have the desired outcome of curing infection and prevention of ongoing tissue destruction.

3. Third stage: This stage can occur years after denoted by chronic inflammation of the lymph nodes, ulceration and fistula formation, genital elephantiasis, or infertility. Patients, especially those who have engaged in unprotected anal sex, may present with an atypical presentation. Symptoms could include proctitis or proctocolitis with rectal discharge, bleeding, pain on defecation or tenesmus.

ETIOLOGY Chlamydia trachomatis is an obligate intracellular bacterial agent with at least 18 serologic variants divided between biologic variants. LGV is serologic variant (serovars) L1, L2, and/or L3.

SUBJECTIVE

1. With or without tender, (typically) unilateral, swollen glands (lymph nodes/bubo) in the groin.

2. May have history of briefly occurring painless papule/ulcer in the genital area.

3. Proctitis or proctocolitis with rectal discharge, tenderness and bleeding, with history of rectal sex. May complain of constipation, pain on defecation and tenesmus.

OBJECTIVE

Diagnosis of LGV can be complicated. Diagnosis should be made considering a thorough sexual history, travel history, clinical findings and several laboratory tests including Chlamydia serology and Chlamydia serotyping of specimens.

1. Patient history and clinical findings consistent with LGV. One or more tender, progressively enlarging, fluctuant inguinal lymph nodes,

OR

2. Characteristic signs of hemorrhagic proctitis in a patient with history of rectal sex. May be accompanied by fever, malaise and myalgias.

AND

3. Positive microimmunofluorescent (MIF) serologic test titer more than 1:**256 or positive complement fixation serologic test titer more than 1:64**, for a lymphogranuloma venereum strain of *Chlamydia trachomatis* (serum).

OR

4. Isolation/culture of *Chlamydia trachomatis* from clinical specimen (**genital lesions, rectal specimens, and lymph node specimens.**)

ASSESSMENT

Lymphogranuloma Venereum (LGV)

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

NOTE: MIF and LGV serotype are to be submitted to a private laboratory for processing. Georgia Public Health Laboratory does not conduct testing to diagnose LGV. **Chlamydia trachomatis LGV Molecular Detection specimens can be submitted to the CDC Infectious Diseases Laboratory https://www.cdc.gov/laboratory/specimen-submission/detail.html?CDCTestCode=CDC-10523.**

1. Gonorrhea and chlamydia testing**.**

2. **Chlamydia serology:** Positive microimmunofluroscent (MIF) (titer more than 1:**256**) **or positive complement fixation (titer more than 1:64)** serologic test for a lymphogranuloma

venereum strain of *Chlamydia trachomatis* (serum).

3. Isolation/culture of *Chlamydia trachomatis* from a clinical specimen **(genital lesions, rectal specimens, and lymph node specimens).**

4. Serology for HIV and for syphilis (RPR).

5. **Herpes serology** and**/or** herpes culture.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Any patients who test positive for LGV should be tested for syphilis and HIV**.**

NOTE: Persons with both LGV and HIV infection should receive the same regimens as those who are HIV negative. Prolonged therapy might be required, and delay in resolution of symptoms might occur.

1. If patient is not pregnant and 8 years of age or older:

   a. Doxycycline 100mg PO every 12 hours a day for 21 days.

   NOTE: Do not give Doxycycline to lactating patient(s); patient(s) must be advised to discontinue breastfeeding throughout treatment and for two days after treatment is completed or receive alternative regimen. If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment. Do not give to minors under the age of 8.

   OR

   b. If patient cannot take Doxycycline, Erythromycin base 500mg PO, every 6 hours for 21 days.

2. If patient is pregnant and/or lactating: Erythromycin base 500mg PO every 6 hours for 21 days.

3. Patients with both LGV and HIV infection should receive the same regimens as those who are HIV-negative.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts)

1. The name/significance of the infection. Educate for sequelae and complications of the untreated infection: **(https://medlineplus.gov/ency/article/000634.htm)**

2. Give directions for taking the medication and potential side effects and what to do about them. Stress the importance of finishing medications. Advise to abstain from sexual contact until treatment is completed and until partners have finished all their medication.

3. Women who are breastfeeding should not receive Doxycycline. If Doxycycline is given to breastfeeding women, they should discontinue breastfeeding throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment. If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment.

4. All sex partners from 60 days prior to the onset of symptoms or positive test should be referred for examination and treatment. Avoid sex with partner(s) until partner(s) has been treated. Refer the last known sex partner if the last sexual contact was greater than 60 days before onset of symptoms or diagnosis. Provide written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them in for exam and treatment.

5. Abstain from sex for 7 days after therapy is begun and/or until all lab results are obtained.

6. Advise patient to return to clinic in 7 days or less if symptoms do not resolve.

7. Stress safe sex practices among men who have sex with men (MSM) and bisexual men. Emphasize the importance of using condoms and avoiding penetrating sex. Limiting the number of sex partners and regular use of protective barriers can also reduce risk.

8. Counsel patient on individualized STD/HIV risk reductions and incorporate reduction plan.

   NOTE: LGV can facilitate the spread of other STDs including HIV because of the disease's ulcers. Keep acute HIV infection and syphilis in mind as well as LGV when patients present with symptoms. HIV and syphilis are more prevalent than LGV in Georgia and patients should be screened for all STDs.

9. Advise the patient to return to clinic for all lab results even if presumptively treated at initial visit. Inform patient if lab results are positive additional treatment may be needed. Inform patient if additional lab(s) is/are positive, partner(s) will also need additional treatment.

10. Education and counseling of the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).

11. If patient is of childbearing age, counsel on the use of contraceptives to reduce the risk of unintended pregnancy.

12. Assist patient in developing a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan and document patients plan. Abstain from sex until all the symptoms are resolved, and partner(s) are tested and treated.

13. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown.

14. Emphasize the importance of regular health screenings among high-risk populations.

15. For additional information and psychological support, refer to: **National STD Hotline 1-800-227-8922 available 8am-5pm Mon-Fri (eastern time), in English and Spanish. National Herpes Hotline 919-361-8488 available 9:00 a.m. to 7:00 p.m. Mon-Fri (eastern time) or http://www.ashasexualhealth.org/stdsstis/hpv/support-groups/**

16. Refer to the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for immunization recommendations for Hepatitis A, B and HPV (https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/index.html) and the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual.

MANAGEMENT OF SEX PARTNERS

1. All identified sex partners, as defined above, should be examined and promptly treated with one of the above regimens for Lymphogranuloma Venereum.

2. Provide written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them in for exam and treatment.

3. All sex partners from 60 days prior to the onset of symptoms or positive test should be referred for examination (tested at the anatomic site of exposure) and treatment. Avoid sex with partner(s) until partner(s) has been treated. Refer the last known sex partner if the last sexual contact was greater than 60 days before onset of symptoms or diagnosis. Provide written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them in for exam and treatment.

FOLLOW UP

1. Assess patient every 1-2 weeks until all lesions have healed. Clinical response is the best gauge of therapy effectiveness.

2. **If** the chlamydia or gonorrhea test is positive, recommended to retest patient approximately 3 months after treatment, regardless of whether they believe that their sex partners were treated. If retesting at 3 months is not possible, clinicians should retest whenever patient next present for medical care in the 12 months following initial treatment.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Consult with delegating physician if:

    a. Inadequate response to treatment (continued signs and symptoms of LGV in the absence of possible reinfection).

    b. Lymph node enlargement continues to the point where rupture seems possible (blue color of overlying skin shows that rupture is imminent); refer for

aspiration or incision and drainage.

c. Patient presents to the HD with history and signs/symptoms that are suggestive of LGV consult with the delegating physician. Notify DPH STD Nurse Consultant of suspected or confirmed LGV case.

d. Further medical guidance is needed, and STD nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

2. Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for reporting possible sexual or physical abuse of minors, if encountered, through history or physical. All suspected sexual or physical abuse of minors must be reported to the county Department of Family and Children Services office as per Guidelines for Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf .

3. Refer to a District Communicable Disease Specialist for prevention counseling and assistance with partner referral.

REFERENCES

1. Centers for Disease Control and *Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015, Vo*l. 64, No. RR-3, **Retrieved February 28, 2019**.

2. GUIDELINES FOR MANDATORY REPORTING OF SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE for PUBLIC HEALTH PERSONNEL. (2017, April 1). **Retrieved February 28, 2019**, from https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf .

3. *CDC, "MMWR Weekly", Lymphogranuloma Venereum Among Men Who Have Sex with Men-Netherlands, A*rticle, 53 (42) pp. 985-988 October 29, 2004.(Current)

4. Holmes, K. K. (2008). Sexually transmitted diseases. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical.(Current)

5. American Academy of Pediatrics., In Pickering, L. K., In Baker, C. J., In Kimberlin, D. W., In Long, S. S., & American Academy of Pediatrics. (2012). Red book: 2012 report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases.(Current)

6. University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine. (2017). Clinical Skin Disease Images. Retrieved from https://medicine.uiowa.edu/dermatology/education/clinical-skin-disease-images.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR GENITAL/PERIANAL WARTS

DEFINITION Infection of the genital and/or anal areas with the *human papillomavirus* (HPV) which results in genital/perianal warts. It is usually sexually transmitted, and the viral strains causing anogenital warts are not usually found on other areas of the body. Asymptomatic genital HPV infection is common and usually self-limited. While intra-anal warts are seen predominately in patients who have receptive anal intercourse, perianal warts can occur in males and females who do not give a history of anal sex. **Most HPV infections, including those with carcinogenic HPV genotypes, typically resolve within 12 months. HPV infections that persist beyond 12 months increase the likelihood of precancerous or cancerous lesions, although not all persistent infections progress.**

ETIOLOGY Genital/perianal warts are members of the Papillomavirus family and are DNA virus. There are more than 100 types identified. More than 40 HPV types can infect the genital tract. The larger, fleshy warts are usually caused by HPV types 6 or 11 (90%), they have been associated with conjunctival, nasal, oral, and laryngeal warts. HPV types 16, 18, 31, 33 and 35 are usually flat, papular, or pedunculated growths on the genital mucosa. HPV 16 and 18 are the cause of cervical cancers. The higher-numbered types are the ones associated with cervical and other anogenital cancers. Regardless of type, most HPV infections are subclinical. However, depending on the size and anatomic location, genital warts can be painful, friable and pruritic. Incubation period is unknown but is estimated to range from 3 months to several years.

SUBJECTIVE

1. May have no noticeable symptoms.
2. Bumps/growths in the genital or anal areas.
3. Bumps/growths may be painful or pruritic.
4. **Dyspareunia and burning discomfort.**

OBJECTIVE The following criteria are used to diagnose genital/perianal warts:

1. Single or multiple typical soft, fleshy growths on the skin or mucous membranes around the vulvovaginal area, anal area, penis, urethra or perineum. They may be like cauliflower, with a stalk-like base, or have a broad base.
2. Demonstration of typical cytologic changes on a Pap smear

is suggestive of subclinical HPV infection. HPV is associated with higher grade intraepithelial neoplasia.

ASSESSMENT Genital and/or Perianal Warts (specify site)

PLAN The desired outcome of treatment is the removal of symptomatic warts. Treatment can induce wart-free periods in most patients.

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Visual inspection.

2. RPR titer with confirmatory, if not already done.

3. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown.

4. A biopsy referral may be indicated if the wart(s) does not respond to therapy or gets worse during treatment.

THERAPEUTIC

Recommended regimens for external anogenital warts (i.e., penis, groin, scrotum, vulva, perineum, external anus, and perianus*).

NOTE: Treatment of genital warts is optional, and the warts may spontaneously regress. Many patients will require a course of therapy rather than a single treatment. Treatment is not indicated in the absence of lesions. **Selection of specific therapies is based on lesion location, provider experience, availability, and patient preference.**

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Any patient who is positive for HPV should be tested for gonorrhea, chlamydia, syphilis and HIV.

NOTE: HIV infected patients can receive the same treatment regimen as those who are not HIV infected Persons with HIV infection or who are otherwise immunosuppressed are more likely to develop anogenital warts than those who do not have HIV infection. Moreover, such persons can have larger or more numerous lesions, might not respond to therapy as well as those who are immunocompetent, and might have more frequent recurrences after treatment.

NOTE: For patient-applied therapy, clinicians must educate and demonstrate, to the patient, proper application technique of the initial treatment before dispensing medication to the patient.

1. Patient-Applied:

   NOTE: For genital warts only. Patient must be able to identify and reach warts to be treated; the first application is to be applied by the clinician in order to demonstrate the proper application technique and identify which warts should be treated.

   a. Podofilox 0.5% solution or gel. Apply solution with a cotton swab, or gel with a finger or swab, twice a day for 3 days, followed by 4 days of no therapy. Wash hands after applying medication.

      This cycle may be repeated, as necessary, for a total of 4 cycles. The total area treated should not exceed 10 cm^2, and no more than 0.5 mL of podofilox used per day. Nurse should apply the initial treatment to demonstrate to patient proper application technique.

      OR

   b. Imiquimod 5% cream (e.g., Aldara) if 12 years of age or older. , Apply cream with a finger or cotton swab at bedtime, three times a week until warts are cleared, for up to 16 weeks. Wash hands after applying the medication. Wash the treatment area with mild soap and water 6-10 hours after the application. Educate patient about local inflammatory reaction.

      NOTE: Podofilox or Imiquimod should not be used in pregnant or nursing patients.

2. Provider-Administered

   NOTE: Trichloroacetic acid or bichloroacetic acid should not be used in pregnant or nursing patients.

Treatment outlined is not for individuals with lesions in the urethra, vagina, anal, or cervical areas.

NOTE: Refer to the product package insertion prior to administration.

Trichloroacetic acid (TCA) or bichloroacetic acid (BCA) 80-90% solution applied sparingly to warts and allowed to dry to a white "frosting" before the patient sits or stands. If an excess amount is applied, powder the treated area with liquid soap preparation, talc or sodium bicarbonate to remove unreacted acid. May repeat weekly as necessary.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING
(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts)

1. The name/significance of the infection. Educate for sequelae and complications of the untreated infection: **https://www.cdc.gov/std/hpv/stdfact-hpv.htm, https://www.cdc.gov/std/hpv/stdfact-hpv-and-men.htm and https://www.cdc.gov/std/hpv/stdfact-hpv-vaccine-young-women.htm**

2. For the fleshy warts, stress that these are not usually caused by the same strains that are associated with cancer, but it is possible that other strains are also present. Treatment of external warts is not likely to influence the development of cervical cancer.

3. Directions of how to apply the medication and care of the treated area.

4. No treatment, even laser or liquid nitrogen (cryotherapy), is known to eradicate the virus, and recurrences are common. Recurrences occur most frequently during the first 3 months and are usually due to reactivation of latent virus rather than reinfection by a sex partner.

5. Most HPV infections can clear spontaneously. However, some infections do get worse.

6. Infected females should undergo regular cervical Pap screening as recommended for females without genital

warts.

7. Partners may be infected with HPV even if they have no visible warts. The use of condoms may reduce transmission to new partners. Correct and consistent condoms use may lower transmission and contact of HPV but may not provide full protection based upon location(s) of HPV not covered by condom.

8. HPV infection may persist lifelong in a dormant state and become infectious intermittently.

9. Vaccination should be administered to eligible patients or refer patients to another facility equipped to provide the vaccine.

10. For patient-applied treatment:

    a. Do not use more often than directed or on any other area of the body. Wash hands immediately after applying medication.

    b. Report problems with application or side-effects, such as bleeding or severe swelling of tissue. Mild to moderate pain or local irritation is common with podofilox.

    c. Mild to moderate local inflammatory reactions (e.g. irritation, ulceration/erosions, vesicles, hypopigmentation) are common with imiquimod.

    d. Do not share the medication with anyone else.

    e. Do not have intercourse during the days when warts are being treated with podofilox or when imiquimod cream is on the skin.

    f. Females should avoid getting pregnant. Advise provider if she may be or intends to become pregnant.

11. Abstain from sex until treatment is completed or until obvious warts are no longer present to reduce transmission risk to partner(s).

12. Advise the patient to return to clinic for all lab results even if presumptively treated at initial visit. Inform patient if lab results are positive additional treatment may be needed.

13. Inform patient if additional lab(s) is/are positive, partner(s) will also need additional treatment.

14. Assist patient in developing a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan and document patients plan. Abstain from sex until all the symptoms are resolved, and partner(s) are tested and treated.

15. Education and counseling of the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).

16. If patient is of childbearing age, counsel on the use of contraceptives to reduce the risk of unintended pregnancy.

17. Pregnant women should be educated and counseled concerning the low risk for warts on the larynx of their infants or minors (http://www.nidcd.nih.gov/health/voice/pages/laryngeal.aspx/#3 or http://www.rrpf.org/whatisRRP.html).

18. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown.

19. For additional information and psychological support, refer to: **National STD Hotline 1-800-227-8922 available 8am-5pm Mon-Fri (eastern time), in English and Spanish. National Herpes Hotline 919-361-8488 available 9:00 a.m. to 7:00 p.m. Mon-Fri (eastern time) or http://www.ashasexualhealth.org/stdsstis/hpv/support-groups/.**

20. Refer to the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for immunization recommendations for Hepatitis A, B and HPV (https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/index.html) and the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual.

MANAGEMENT OF SEX PARTNERS

1. Recommend a Pap smear for female partners who have not had one in the past year.

2. All identified sex partners should be examined and promptly treated according to findings.

3. Provide written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them for exam and treatment.

FOLLOW-UP

1. If desired, patients using self-administered treatment may return in a few weeks for assessment of treatment response.

2. For provider-administered topical treatment, apply weekly as needed. If no significant improvement in four weeks, or if warts have not completely cleared after six weeks, alternative therapy should be used**.**

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Refer patient(s) to a dermatologist or primary care provider if requests are made for treatment of lesions not located in the vulvovaginal area, anal area, penis, urethra or perineum. In addition, refer patient(s) who may require or request cryotherapy or surgical removal.

2. For Pap smear recommendations follow Georgia Breast and Cervical Cancer Program Cervical Screening Guidelines.

3. If patient is pregnant, consult with delegating physician for possible referral to OB/GYN or OB provider.

4. For additional information and psychological support, refer to: **National STD Hotline 1-800-227-8922 available 8am-5pm Mon-Fri (eastern time), in English and Spanish. National Herpes Hotline 919-361-8488 available 9:00 a.m. to 7:00 p.m. Mon-Fri (eastern time) or http://www.ashasexualhealth.org/stdsstis/hpv/support-groups/.**

5. Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for reporting possible sexual or physical abuse of minors, if encountered, through history or physical. All suspected sexual or physical abuse of minors must be reported to the county Department of Family and Children Services office as

per Guidelines for Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf .

6. Consult with or refer to primary care provider if warts are not responding to treatment.

7. Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed, and STD nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

REFERENCES

1. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015, Vol. 64, No. RR-3, **Retrieved February 28, 2019**.

2. GUIDELINES FOR MANDATORY REPORTING OF SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE for PUBLIC HEALTH PERSONNEL. (2017, April 1). **Retrieved February 28, 2019**, from https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf .

3. Holmes, K. K. (2008). Sexually transmitted diseases. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical. Current)

4. American Academy of Pediatrics., In Pickering, L. K., In Baker, C. J., In Kimberlin, D. W., In Long, S. S., & American Academy of Pediatrics. (2012). Red book: 2012 report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases.(Current)

5. University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine. (2017). Clinical Skin Disease Images. Retrieved from https://medicine.uiowa.edu/dermatology/education/clinical-skin-disease-images.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR GENITAL HERPES

DEFINITION

Genital herpes (HSV) is a sexually transmissible viral infection characterized by recurring vesicular blisters resulting in ulcerative lesions on the genitals or adjacent areas that heal spontaneously without scarring. However, typical lesions are absent in many infected patients.

Some severe cases of first episode infection last an average of 12 days and aseptic meningitis or generalized symptoms due to viremia may occur. Subsequent milder recurrent infections do not last as long. During latency between clinical episodes, viral shedding occurs intermittently, and individuals may transmit the virus to partners with asymptomatic viral shedding.

Most people with HSV-II (genital herpes infection) do not know they have it. Most infected patients never recognize signs suggestive of genital herpes; some will have symptoms shortly after infection and then never again. Many cases are acquired from patients who do not know that they are infected.

Persistent infection (lesions more than 4 weeks) or extensive anogenital ulceration and proctitis occur in immunocompromised patients. Lesions caused by HSV are common among HIV-infected patients. These individuals may experience increased viral shedding, have more prolonged episodes, and may experience more severe and atypical symptoms. HSV is an AIDS defining illness with: chronic ulcers (greater than1 month's duration) or bronchitis, pneumonitis, or esophagitis (onset at age greater than 1 month).

ETIOLOGY

HSVs are enveloped, double-stranded, DNA viruses. Herpes simplex virus (HSV), type 1 or type 2. HSV-I usually involve the face and skin above the waist and HSV-II usually involves the skin below the waist. However at least 20% of genital herpes are caused by HSV-I. Most genital infections are with HSV-II, which is most apt to cause recurrences. Presence of HSV II antibodies implies anogenital infection. Incubation period **is, on average, 4 days but** ranges from 2 days to 2 weeks.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Single or multiple blisters and/or shallow ulcers, usually painful, anywhere on the genitals.

2. May have swollen tender lymph nodes in the groin.

3. Fever, headache, or malaise or myalgias.

4. Pruritic lesions.

5. Dysuria.

6. Vaginal or urethral discharge**.**

OBJECTIVE

1. Typical vesicular lesions and/or shallow ulcers.

2. May have atypical papular lesions and no ulcers**.**

3. May have enlarged, tender inguinal lymph nodes.

4. Suspicious genital papules, vesicles or ulcers, with a history of episode(s) of similar symptoms or sexual exposure to a patient with HSV are suggestive.

5. In the setting of HIV infected patient, a large non-healing genital ulceration may be HSV.

ASSESSMENT Genital Herpes

PLAN The desired outcome of treatment with systemic antiviral drugs is to minimize the signs and symptoms of herpes episodes**.**

NOTE: Screening for HSV-I and HSV-II in the general population is not indicated.

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

NOTE: Sensitivity of viral culture is low and as healing begins culture sensitivity declines rapidly. Sensitivity of PCR is high with less likely false positives. Positive culture and PCR gives a definitive diagnosis. However, absence of a positive culture or PCR does not mean the patient does not have herpes. The virus may not always be cultured from the lesion if it is not present in adequate amounts.

NOTE: Herpes culture or PCR should be performed first when noticeable symptoms are present.

1. A clinical diagnosis is made based on the presence of characteristic single or multiple blisters and/or shallow painful ulcers that are typical for herpes, but not for syphilis or chancroid. Herpetic lesions are darkfield

negative unless a co-existing syphilis lesion is present.

AND

Herpes culture or PCR to confirm diagnosis of typical lesions, if lesion(s) are present.

AND/OR

Type-specific HSV serologic assays in conjunction with herpes culture, might be useful in the following scenarios:

a. If patient has a history of recurring genital or atypical lesions but, if obtaining an adequate specimen for a culture is not possible, order type-specific serologic antibody tests for HSV 1 and 2.

b. A clinical diagnosis of genital herpes without laboratory confirmation.

c. A partner with genital herpes.

d. A patient with a history of multiple sex partners.

e. Patients with HIV infection.

f. MSM at increased risk for HIV acquisition.

NOTE: Primary infection may be diagnosed in patients who are HSV antibody-negative but have positive viral cultures with evidence of acute infection. Pending serology testing or repeat serology after primary infection may result in more accurate HSV antibody positive result.

2. RPR plus confirmatory and/or, if available, darkfield exam of lesion fluid to rule out syphilis.

OR

3. **Recommendation**: Identification of HSV I and/or HSV II in lesion scrapings by cell culture.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Any patients who test positive for HSV should be tested for gonorrhea, chlamydia, syphilis and HIV.

Systemic antiviral drugs partially control the signs/symptoms of herpes episodes when used to treat first clinical episodes, recurrent episodes or daily suppressive therapy. However, these drugs neither eradicate latent virus nor affect subsequent risk, frequency, or severity of recurrences after the drug is discontinued.

NOTE: Pregnant females must be referred to an OB/GYN or OB provider for treatment. Lactating patients must discontinue breastfeeding while receiving treatment.

1. First genital episode

NOTE: Treatment may be extended if healing is incomplete after 10 days of therapy.

a. Acyclovir (Zovirax) 400mg PO **every** 8 hours for 7-10 days,

OR

b. Acyclovir (Zovirax) 200mg PO, 5 times a day for 7-10 days,

OR

c. Famciclovir (Famvir) 250mg PO q 8 hours for 7-10 days,

OR

d. Valacyclovir (Valtrex**)** 1g PO **every** 12 hours for 7-10 days.

NOTE: Valacyclovir has enhanced absorption after oral administration.

2. Episodic recurrent episodes

a. Acyclovir 400mg PO every 8 hours for 5 days,

OR

b. Acyclovir 800mg PO every 12 hours for 5 days,

OR

c. Acyclovir 800mg PO every 8 hours for 2 days,

OR

d. Famciclovir 125mg PO every 12 hours for 5 days,

OR

e. Famciclovir 500mg PO once followed by 250mg PO every 12 hours for 2 days,

OR

f. Famciclovir 1000mg PO every 12 hours for 1 day,

OR

g. Valacyclovir 500mg PO, every 12 hours for 3 days,

OR

h. Valacyclovir 1g PO once a day for 5 days.

NOTE: Effective episodic treatment of recurrent herpes requires initiation of therapy within 1 day of lesion onset, or during the prodrome that precedes some outbreaks, if not on daily suppressive therapy. The patient should be provided with 1 cycle worth of medication with instructions to self-initiate treatment immediately when symptoms begin**. If a cycle worth of medication is not provided to the patient for prodromal stage, when patient present with a**

recurrent episode the patient should be screened for STDs.

3. Daily suppressive therapy

NOTE: It is a patient/clinician decision to determine whether a patient should receive daily suppressive therapy or episodic therapy.

a. Acyclovir 400mg PO every 12 hours a day,

OR

b. Famciclovir 250mg PO every 12 hours a day,

OR

c. Valacyclovir 500mg PO once a day, use only if 9 or fewer recurrences per year

OR

d. Valacyclovir 1g PO once a day.

NOTE: The use of Valacyclovir may be less effective than other dosing regimens in patients who have more than 9 episodes per year.

NOTE: Baseline kidney (BUN, Albumin, GFR, Potassium, Creatinine Clearance, etc.) and liver (ALP, ALT, AST, Bilirubin, Lipase, Protein, etc.) function test recommended prior to the start of daily suppressive therapy and then annually or as needed based on symptoms, drug-drug interactions, etc. Consult with and report abnormal findings to delegating physician for guidance of patient care.

NOTE: If daily suppressive therapy has been initiated, at the completion of annual therapy the patient can:

a. Continue daily suppressive therapy.

b. Discontinue daily suppressive therapy. If or when the patient has an outbreak, after reassessment, daily suppressive therapy can

be restarted, if indicated versus a trial of episodic treatment.

4. HIV-infected patients:

   a. Episodic treatment:
      1) Acyclovir 400mg PO every 8 hours a day, for 5-10 days,
         OR
      2) Famciclovir 500mg PO every 12 hours a day for 5-10 days,
         OR
      3) Valacyclovir 1g PO every 12 hours a day for 5-10 days.

   b. Daily suppressive therapy:
      1) Acyclovir 400 - 800mg PO 2-3 times a day,
         OR
      2) Famciclovir 500mg PO every 12 hours a day,
         OR
      3) Valacyclovir 500mg PO every 12 hours a day.

   NOTE: Suppressive therapy with oral acyclovir, valacyclovir, or famciclovir is effective in preventing recurrences and is preferred for patients who have severe or frequent HSV recurrences or who want to minimize the frequency of recurrences. Suppressive therapy for HSV may be continued indefinitely, without regard for improved CD4 cell count, although need for continuation should be addressed on an annual basis, particularly if immune reconstitution has occurred.

5. Over-the-counter oral analgesic of patient's choice (e.g., acetaminophen or ibuprofen) as needed for pain related to outbreak and prodrome syndrome.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Keep affected areas as clean and dry as possible. Pat lesions dry; avoid rubbing the area. (The use of ointments will retain moisture and may delay healing.)

2. Encourage increased intake of fluids (e.g., water) to dilute urine if it burns the affected area.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING
(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts)

1. The name/significance of the infection. Educate for sequelae and complications of the untreated infection. **https://www.cdc.gov/std/herpes/stdfact-herpes.htm**

2. Counseling of infected patients and their sex partners is critical to help the patient cope with the infection and to prevent sexual and perinatal transmission.

3. Although initial counseling is important, many patients benefit more from counseling about the chronic aspects of the disease after the acute illness subsides.

4. Educate about the natural history of the disease, the potential for recurrent episodes, and the risks of asymptomatic viral shedding etween episodes.

5. Give clear directions for taking medication and management of potential side effects.

6. Advise patients experiencing a first episode that suppressive and episodic antiviral therapy is available to prevent or shorten the duration of recurrent episodes.

7. Discuss comfort and pain-relieving measures.

8. Encourage patients to inform their current sex partner(s) about the infection and inform future partner(s) before initiating a sexual relationship. Encourage patients to inform sex partner(s) of infected patients that they might be infected even if they have no symptoms.

9. Sexual transmission can occur during asymptomatic periods. Prodrome occurs before recurring episodes. A day or two before an outbreak occurs; the genital skin gets sensations such as itching, tingling or pain. This period is called prodrome phase. The skin also sheds virus during this phase. Therefore, it is important to have no sexual relation during this period. If your partner has herpes, ask them to keep you informed about their prodrome phase.

10. Avoid sexual activity with uninfected partners when lesions or prodromal symptoms are present. At other times, correctly-used latex condoms may reduce the risk of transmission when the infected areas are covered.

11. Explain the risk for neonatal infection to all patients, including men. Advise infected women of child-bearing age to inform health-care providers who care for them during pregnancy and those who will care for their newborn infant.

12. Patients should refer all symptomatic sex partner(s) for evaluation. Asymptomatic sex partners may be referred for evaluation and counseling. Sex partners of infected person should be advised that they may be infected even if they have no symptoms.

13. Discuss resources available for further information and psychological support including availability of latex condoms.

14. Risk of neonatal HSV should be discussed with females and males.

15. Refer all pregnant patients who are infected or exposed to herpes to obstetrician.

16. Episodic treatment does not reduce risk of transmission.

17. Recurrence of lesions does not mean that the patient has been re-exposed.

18. Recurrences and subclinical shedding are much more frequent for genital HSV-II then for genital HSV-I infection.

19. When exposed to HIV, HSV-II seropositive persons are at increased risk for HIV acquisition.

20. Pregnant women or women who conceive while taking daily suppressive should consult with their OB/GYN or OB provider for treatment regimen guidance.

21. Education and counseling of the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).

22. If patient is of childbearing age, counsel on the use of contraceptives to reduce the risk of unintended pregnancy.

23. Assist patient(s) in developing a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan and document patient(s) plan. Abstain from sex until all the symptoms are resolved, and partner(s) are tested and treated.

24. All sex partners 60 days prior to the onset of symptoms or positive test should be referred for examination and treatment. Avoid sex with partner(s) until partner(s) has/have been treated. Refer the last known sex partner if the last sexual contact was greater than 60 days before onset of symptoms or diagnosis. Provide patient with written note(s) to give to partner(s) to refer them to HD for exam and treatment.

25. Refer to the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for immunization recommendations for Hepatitis A, B and HPV (https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/index.html) and the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual.

26. Women without symptoms or signs of genital herpes or prodrome can deliver vaginally. Women with recurrent genital herpetic lesions near or at the onset of delivery should deliver by C-section to prevent transmission to infant during vaginal delivery.

27. Advise the patient to return to clinic for all lab results even if presumptively treated at initial visit. Inform patient if lab results are positive additional treatment may be needed.

28. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown**.**

MANAGEMENT OF SEX PARTNERS

1. Symptomatic sex partners should be managed the same as any patient with genital lesions. Educate to understand the natural history of HSV including possibility of asymptomatic shedding of virus and lesions reappearing without sexual re-exposure.

2. Ask asymptomatic partners about a history of typical or atypical genital lesions and encourage examining themselves for lesions in the future. Counsel about the possibility of being infected even if they have never been

symptomatic. Order type-specific serologic antibody testing to determine whether the risk for HSV acquisition exists.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Schedule an appointment with the patient when culture results are available. Individualize counseling according to clinical progress and apparent emotional impact where further education and counseling for patient and sex partners may be indicated. Assist patient to develop a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan.

2. If the patient did not have a positive herpes culture, order type-specific serologic antibody testing to confirm the clinical diagnosis of genital herpes and determine the type of antibodies present. This has important counseling implications, since HSV-I genital infection is less likely to cause asymptomatic shedding or to recur than HSV-II.

3. For patients on continuous daily suppressive therapy, discuss therapy after one year, to assess the patient's psychological adjustment to genital herpes, rate of recurrent episodes, and the need to continue or discontinue therapy.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Consult with delegating physician for referral of the following types of patients:

    a. Pregnant women. OB/GYN or OB provider must be given full information including copy of laboratory slips to ensure that the patient is treated adequately.

    b. History of renal impairment.

    c. Persistent lesions.

2. Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed, and STD nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

3. If signs or symptoms of meningitis present refer immediately for emergency evaluation. Consult delegating physician If symptoms of meningitis (e.g., headache, nausea, vomiting,

stiff neck) during first or with recurrent episode(s).

4. Refer all pregnant patients who are infected or exposed to herpes to OB/GYN for treatment.

5. Pregnant women or women who conceive while taking daily suppressive should consult with their OB/GYN or OB provider for treatment regimen guidance.

6. For additional information and psychological support, refer to: National STD Hotline 1-800-227-8922 available 8am-5pm Mon-Fri (Eastern time), in English and Spanish. National Herpes Hotline 919-361-8488 available 9:00 a.m. to 7:00 p.m. (EST, Monday through Friday) http://www.ashasexualhealth.org/stdsstis/herpes/.

7. In HIV infected patients, if receiving antiviral treatment and lesions persist or recur refer to Infectious Disease specialist and/or HIV specialist for evaluation of possible resistance.

8. Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for reporting possible sexual or physical abuse of minors, if encountered, through history or physical. All suspected sexual or physical abuse of minors must be reported to the county Department of Family and Children Services office as per Guidelines for Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf

REFERENCES

1. **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015, Vol. 64, No. RR-3, Retrieved February 28, 2019.**

2. **GUIDELINES FOR MANDATORY REPORTING OF SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE for PUBLIC HEALTH PERSONNEL. (2017, April 1). Retrieved February 28, 2019, from https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf**

3. Holmes, K. K. (2008). Sexually transmitted diseases. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical. (Current)

4. American Academy of Pediatrics., In Pickering, L. K., In Baker, C. J., In Kimberlin, D. W., In Long, S. S., & American Academy of Pediatrics. (2012). Red book: 2012 report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases. (Current)

5. University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine. (2017). Clinical Skin Disease Images. Retrieved from https://medicine.uiowa.edu/dermatology/education/clinical-skin-disease-images.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SYPHILIS, EARLY SYMPTOMATIC (PRIMARY and SECONDARY)

DEFINITION

Early symptomatic syphilis is the symptomatic stages occurring during the first year of untreated syphilis infection.

The primary stage is characterized by a painless, indurated ulcer (chancre) that appears at the site(s) of sexual exposure in about 21 days (range of 10-90 days) and lasts from 1 to 5 weeks before spontaneously healing.

The secondary stage, which usually appears 1 to 5 weeks after the primary chancre is healed, is characterized by a variety of skin or mucous membrane rashes or other type lesions. They will disappear spontaneously within 2 to 6 weeks but may recur within the year.

ETIOLOGY

Treponema pallidum is a spirochete which causes syphilis. The primary chancre and certain moist lesions (condyloma lata or mucous patches) of secondary syphilis are very contagious, and sexual contact when such lesions are present is the usual mode of transmission.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Possible Primary Syphilis

    a. Painless open sore in the genital area.

    b. May have non-tender, swollen glands in the groin.

    c. No definitive history of contact to a known case of early syphilis, though patient may have noticed a suspicious lesion or rash on a sex partner.

2. Primary Syphilis:

    a. Painless open sore, at a site of sexual exposure.

    b. Localized, non-tender swollen glands.

3. Secondary Syphilis: Has one or more of the following:

NOTE: Symptomatic neurosyphilis (abnormal walk (gait), numbness in toes, feet, or legs, confusion or poor concentration, headaches, seizures, visual problems, weakness, or stiff neck) can rarely occur in the secondary stage and should be considered if signs and/or symptoms of meningitis are present. Any patient with

signs or symptoms of meningitis should be referred to the nearest emergency room immediately.

a. Rough, red, or reddish-brown rash on the body and/or extremities. Rash usually does not itch.
b. Growths/lesions in the anogenital region.
c. Hair falling out.
d. Swollen glands.
e. Sores in the mouth, vagina, or anus.
f. Fever, malaise.

OBJECTIVE

1. Primary Syphilis:

    a. Firm, round, painless ulcer (chancre) with an indurated border and relatively smooth base, at a site of sexual exposure, e.g., genitals, anus, mouth.

    b. Localized firm, non-tender, enlarged lymph nodes.

2. Secondary Syphilis (one or more of the following is present):

    a. Bilaterally symmetrical macular or papular, nonpruritic rash on body and/or extremities. May be only on the palms and soles (palmar/plantar).

    b. Condyloma lata (large, raised, gray or white lesions, usually in the genital and/or anal region or mouth).

    c. Patchy hair loss on scalp, eyebrows or eyelashes.

    d. Generalized enlarged lymph nodes.

    e. Mucous patches in the mouth or on the cervix.

PHYSICAL EXAM/LAB FINDINGS

1. Primary Syphilis

    a. Identification of *T. pallidum* on darkfield microscopic exam of serum from a chancre is definitive.

OR

b. Typical ulcer (chancre),

AND

A newly-reactive RPR, confirmed by a reactive treponemal EIA, A-TRP or TPPA,

OR

A four-fold or greater increase over the last known RPR titer in a patient with a previous history of syphilis is presumptive.

NOTE: Patients with a typical ulcer, a newly-reactive RPR or STAT POSTIVE RPR card test and no history of previous syphilis may be treated for primary syphilis prior to the results of the treponemal test being available.

c. A typical ulcer and exposure to a known case of early syphilis in the previous 10-90 days is suggestive of primary syphilis.

2. Secondary Syphilis

a. Identification of *T. pallidum* on darkfield microscopic exam of lesion material is definitive.

OR

b. Typical signs (e.g., rash, mucous patches)

AND

Newly-reactive RPR, confirmed by a treponemal test,

OR

A four-fold increase over the last known titer in a patient with a previous history of syphilis is presumptive.

NOTE: Patients with secondary typical signs, a newly-reactive RPR or STAT POSITIVE RPR and no history of previous syphilis may be treated for secondary syphilis prior to the results of the

treponemal test being available.

c. Typical dermatologic signs and exposure to a known case of early syphilis in the past six months is suggestive of secondary syphilis.

3. HIV-infected patients

When clinical findings are suggestive of syphilis but serologic tests are nonreactive or their interpretation is unclear, alternative tests may need to be considered. Neurosyphilis should be considered in HIV-infected patients with neurologic symptoms.

ASSESSMENT Primary Syphilis OR Secondary Syphilis

PLAN The desired outcome of case management is to ensure infection cure in the patient, prevention of infection in sexual partners exposed within the preceding 90 days, and congenital infection.

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. RPR titer, if not already done. False-positive nontreponemal test results can be associated with various medical conditions and factors unrelated to syphilis, including other infections (e.g., HIV), autoimmune conditions (e.g., Lupus), immunizations, pregnancy, IV drug use and older age. VDRL and RPR cannot be compared.

2. Repeat RPR, if lab results are equivocal or indeterminate in 2-4 weeks.

3. Confirmatory test by a reactive treponemal EIA, A-TRP, or TPPA. Interpretation of Syphilis EIA, A-TRP or TPPA results.

    a. Reactive means a diagnosis of syphilis is confirmed.

    b. Minimal reactive or equivocal means the test could not be called either reactive or non-reactive and a second specimen should be submitted for repeat testing in two to four weeks.

    c. Non-reactive means a diagnosis of syphilis is not confirmed.

4. If confirmatory test is reactive and the RPR (nontreponemal) is non-reactive, redraw the RPR (nontreponemal) within two to

four weeks.

5. If the RPR is negative, then a different treponemal test should be performed. If the second treponemal is negative and the risks are low, treatment may not be indicated.

6. Herpes culture/serology.

7. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown.

8. Recommendation: RPR STAT Card, if available. Must be able to titer out results if RPR STAT card report indicates positive findings, confirmed by a reactive treponemal EIA, A-TRP, or TPPA. If RPR card test is negative, titer out results to rule out prozone phenomenon (false negative test).

9. Recommendation: Darkfield microscopic exam if resources are available.

10. **If a patient is high risk or have symptoms of syphilis and the RPR results are negative, prozone effect may cause a false-negative reaction. If clinical suspicion of prozone effect request the lab to titer the sample or dilute the serum to a 1/16 dilution to rule out the prozone effect.**

DIAGNOSTIC TEST	RESULTS
RPR	Non-confirmatory - Nontreponemal
VDRL	Non-confirmatory- Nontreponemal
A-TRP	Confirmatory- Treponemal
EIA	Confirmatory- Treponemal
FTA-ABS	Confirmatory- Treponemal
TPPA	Confirmatory- Treponemal

NOTE: Patients with a positive treponemal screening test should receive a nontreponemal test to confirm the screening test. If the nontreponemal test is negative, another type of treponemal test, different from the initial treponemal test (A-TRP, FTA-ABS, TPPA, or EIA), should be done.

THERAPEUTIC

NOTE: Empiric treatment for primary or secondary syphilis can be given if clinical manifestations (e.g., chancre, skin rash, lymphadenopathy) of primary or secondary are identified and the

patient is unlikely to be located for treatment when test results are available. If empiric treatment is provided see patient education section for required education.

Recommendation: At the time of treatment collect RPR to be compared with follow up serologic response.

PHARMACOLOGIC

REMINDER: If Benzathine Penicillin G is in short supply, reserve existing penicillin for pregnant patients or HIV-infected patients.

NOTE: Any patients who test positive for syphilis should be tested for gonorrhea, chlamydia and HIV.

NOTE: Combinations of benzathine penicillin, procaine penicillin, and oral penicillin preparations are not considered appropriate for the treatment of syphilis.

1. Recommended regimen if patient is neither pregnant nor HIV-infected:

    a. Benzathine Penicillin G, 2.4 million units (mu) IM, once.

    OR

    b. If history of allergy to penicillin, Doxycycline 100mg PO every 12 hours for 14 days (if patient is 8 years of age or older).

2. Alternative regimen if patient is neither pregnant nor HIV- infected:

    Tetracycline 500mg PO every 6 hours for 14 days if patient is 8 years of age or older.

3. If patient is HIV-infected**:**

    a. Benzathine Penicillin G, 2.4 million units IM, once.

    OR

    b. If self-reported allergy to penicillins, refer to

PCN allergy algorithm to rule out allergy on page 698. If true allergy to penicillin, the patient must be referred for desensitization and subsequent treatment with penicillin.

4. Alternative Regimen if allergic to penicillin and desensitization is unavailable:

   Doxycycline 100mg PO every 12 hours for 14 days, with careful monitoring for compliance, (if patient is 8 years of age or older).

   NOTE: The efficacy of the alternative regimen in HIV infected population has not been well studied. Close serologic and clinical follow-up should be performed with alternative therapy.

5. If patient is pregnant:

   a. Benzathine Penicillin G, 2.4 million units IM, once.

   OR

   b. If self-report allergy to penicillin, complete PCN allergy algorithm in Appendix A. If true allergy identified refer patient for skin testing and possible desensitization, then subsequent treatment with penicillin.

   NOTE: Do not give Doxycycline or Tetracycline to lactating patient(s); patient(s) must be advised to discontinue breastfeeding throughout treatment and for two days after treatment or receive alternative regimen. If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment. Do not give to minors under the age of 8.

   NOTE: Avoidance of breastfeeding has been and continues to be a standard, strong recommendation for HIV-infected women in the United States, because maternal ART dramatically reduces but does not eliminate breastmilk transmission. Further, safe infant feeding alternatives are readily available in the United

States. In addition, there are concerns about other potential risks, including toxicity for the neonate or increased risk of development of ARV drug resistance, should transmission occur, due to variable passage of drugs into breastmilk.

NOTE: Persons with HIV infection who have primary or secondary syphilis should be treated as those without HIV infection.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING
(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts)

1. The name/significance of the infection. Educate for sequela and complications of the untreated infection https://www.cdc.gov/std/syphilis/stdfact-syphilis.htm

2. If patient is given oral medication provide patient with directions for taking the medication, possible side effects, and what to do about the side effects.

3. Inform patient(s) about the possibility of having a Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction (e.g. fever, chills, headache, myalgia, and exacerbation of cutaneous lesions). Educate as follows:

    a. If pregnant, seek medical care immediately if notice a change in fetal movement or uterine contractions. Pregnant women may have more severe reactions and should contact their prenatal care provider at the first sign or symptoms.

    b. Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction may occur within 12 hours after treatment of early syphilis. Local reaction may consist of intensification of lesions (e.g., a chancre may become edematous or a faint secondary rash may become prominent).

    c. Systemic reaction may consist of a rise in temperature to 101-102 degrees Fahrenheit. The self-limiting reaction usually lasts a few hours but may be up to 24 hours. Antipyretic may be taken as needed. (If pregnant, seek medical care immediately if notice a change in fetal movement or uterine contractions.)

4. Signs and symptoms of neurosyphilis. See Appointment Card. If neurologic or ophthalmic disease is suspected patient should be referred for CSF analysis, otologic and ophthalmologic examination.

5. The need for, and schedule of, follow-up blood tests 6, and 12 months after treatment. Resolution of signs and symptoms should occur within 3 to 6 months and seroversion or a fold four decline in nontreponemal titers within 12 to 24 months.

6. Patients treated during the primary stage of syphilis may revert to being serologically nonreactive after 1-3 years.

7. Patients who receive positive treponemal screening test should have a standard nontreponemal test with titer preformed to guide patient management decisions.

8. Counseling regarding abstinence until therapy is completed.

9. Advise the patient to return to clinic for all lab results even if presumptively treated at initial visit. Inform patient if lab results are positive additional treatment may be needed.

10. The need for examination and treatment of sex partner(s) and avoidance of sex with untreated partner(s). Introduce the patient to the Communicable Disease Specialist who will assist them with notifying partner(s) of need for examination and treatment.

11. Inform patient if additional lab(s) is/are positive, partner(s) will also need additional treatment.

12. Assist patient in developing a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan and document patients plan. Abstain from sex until all the symptoms are resolved, and partner(s) are tested and treated.

13. Refer all pregnant patients to OB/GYN or OB provider to seek prenatal care and/or fetal evaluation.

14. All pregnant women should be tested for syphilis during 1st and 3rd trimester (TITLE 31. HEALTH CHAPTER 17. CONTROL OF VENEREAL DISEASE § 31-17-4.2. HIV and Syphilis Pregnancy Screening).

15. Education and counseling of the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).

16. **For additional information and psychological support, refer to: National STD Hotline 1-800-227-8922 available 8am-5pm Mon-Fri (Eastern time), in English and Spanish. National Herpes Hotline 919-361-8488 available 9:00 a.m. to 7:00 p.m. (EST, Monday through Friday) http://www.ashasexualhealth.org/stdsstis/herpes/.**

17. If patient is of childbearing age, counsel on the use of contraceptives to reduce the risk of unintended pregnancy.

18. If empiric treatment is provided, patient education must include:

    a. Information of presumptive therapy with pending lab results.

    b. Patient option to consent to treatment or refusal of treatment prior to lab results due to the high suspicion of syphilis.

    c. Patient must return for lab results.

    d. Patients should be referred to a Communicable Disease Specialist for further counseling.

    e. Updated demographics (current locating information, phone number, emergency contact, etc.) collected on patient and provided to CDS.

19. Refer to the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for immunization recommendations for Hepatitis A, B and HPV https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/index.html) and the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual.

MANAGEMENT OF SEX PARTNERS

1. Provide written note(s) to patient to give to partner(s) to refer them to the HD for exam and treatment.

2. Contacts to Primary Syphilis

   Examine and treat, with one of the regimens listed above, all

referred partners exposed within 3 months of onset, or since onset, of symptoms.

3. Contacts to Secondary Syphilis

    a. Examine all referred partners exposed within 6 months of onset, or since onset, of symptoms.

    b. Treat (with one of the regimens listed above): All those exposed within the preceding 3 months, regardless of examination and serologic test results, and those exposed more than 3 months ago, if serologic test results are not immediately available and follow-up is uncertain.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Monitor compliance if taking alternative regimen from Benzathine penicillin G.

2. Schedule a routine appointment for a clinical evaluation and repeat RPR at 6 and 12 months after receiving treatment. Serologic response should be compared with the titer at the time of treatment.

3. If pregnant, clinical evaluation and RPRs should be done at least once during the third trimester and again at time of delivery. Monthly RPR titers may be indicated for women at high risk for reinfection.

4. HIV infected patients should be managed in the same manner as HIV-negative patients. However, HIV infected patients should have their RPR titers monitored at 3-month intervals for a year, and then at 24 months after therapy (3, 6,9,12, and 24 months).

5. Clinical presentation and RPR titer response should be appropriate for the stage of disease. RPR titers may decline more slowly for patients that previously had syphilis.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Seek medical consultation from delegating physician if:

    a. Signs/symptoms persist or recur.

b. A sustained four-fold increase in RPR titer compared to the baseline or maximum titer occurs. (The patient probably failed treatment or was re-infected. The patient should be re-treated and reevaluated for HIV infection and/or re-exposure. A cerebral spinal fluid exam should also be performed).

c. Titers have not declined fourfold within 6 months. The patient should be reevaluated for HIV infection. If further clinical and serologic follow up cannot be assured, re-treatment should be given.

d. In either instance above, re-treatment should consist of three weekly doses of benzathine penicillin 2.4 million units IM, unless CSF exam indicates that neurosyphilis is present.

e. Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed, and STD nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

f. Probable or suspected cases of syphilis with clinical magnifications or reactive RPR titer consult with delegating physician immediately to initiate possible presumptive treatment while pending confirmation.

g. Patient(s) with penicillin-allergy that need skin testing and desensitization, as necessary.

2. If patient displays signs/symptoms of neurologic or ophthalmic disease immediately refer patient to ER for emergency evaluation. Inform delegating physician of need for referral.

3. All primary and secondary syphilis cases should be referred to a Communicable Disease Specialist for further counseling and sex partner referral.

4. Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for reporting possible sexual or physical abuse of minors, if encountered, through history or physical. All suspected sexual or physical abuse of minors must be reported to the

county Department of Family and Children Services office as per Guidelines for Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf

REFERENCES

1. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015, Vol. 64, No. RR-3, **Retrieved February 28, 2019**.

2. GUIDELINES FOR MANDATORY REPORTING OF SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE for PUBLIC HEALTH PERSONNEL. (2017, April 1). **Retrieved February 28, 2019**, from https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf .

3. Holmes, K. K. (2008). Sexually transmitted diseases. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical. (Current)

4. American Academy of Pediatrics., In Pickering, L. K., In Baker, C. J., In Kimberlin, D. W., In Long, S. S., & American Academy of Pediatrics. (2012). Red book: 2012 report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases. (Current)

5. **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (October 18, 2016), Appendix C. STD Surveillance Case Definitions. Retrieved from https://wwwn.cdc.gov/nndss/conditions/syphilis/case-definition/2018**

6. Erratum: *MMWR*, Vol. 59, RR-12, December 17, 2010. (Current)

7. CDC*, "*Case Definitions for Infectious Conditions under Public Health Surveillance," *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report,* Vol. 46, No. RR-10, May 2, 1997. (Current)

8. University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine. (2017). Clinical Skin Disease Images. Retrieved from https://medicine.uiowa.edu/dermatology/education/clinical-skin-disease-images.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR LATENT SYPHILIS (EARLY AND LATE)

DEFINITION

The intervals during untreated syphilis infection, after the primary stage, are characterized by seroreactivity without other evidence of disease. Diagnosis is dependent upon proper interpretation of serologic test results, history of contact to syphilis and/or history of previous signs and symptoms.

Patients who have latent syphilis acquired within the preceding year are classified as having early latent (EL) syphilis.

Late latent (LL) syphilis is defined as having latent syphilis for more than 1 year.

Neurosyphilis can occur at any stage of syphilis. Neurosyphilis is an infection of the brain or spinal cord. Neurosyphilis can apply to all stages of syphilis: primary syphilis, secondary syphilis, early latent syphilis, late latent syphilis, and late syphilis with clinical manifestations. Clinical description of symptomatic neurosyphilis can consist of abnormal walk (gait), numbness in toes, feet, or legs, confusion or poor concentration, headaches, seizures, visual problems, weakness, or stiff neck.

ETIOLOGY

Treponema pallidum, a spirochete is responsible for causing syphilis. Unless there are hidden lesions present during the early latent periods, the infection can only be spread through contact with infected blood, such as trans placentally from mother to unborn child.

SUBJECTIVE

1. No current symptoms.
2. May have a history of symptoms (lesions, rashes, etc.) suggestive of primary or secondary syphilis.
3. May have a history of sexual contact with a known case of syphilis.

OBJECTIVE

The following criteria are used to diagnose latent syphilis:

1. Early Latent Syphilis

No clinical signs/symptoms

AND

Reactive RPR and confirmatory tests

AND

Patient has had the following within the past year:

1) A nonreactive serologic test or a four-fold titer increase on serial RPR test(s)
   OR
2) Symptoms consistent with primary or secondary syphilis
   OR
3) Sexual exposure to a known case of primary, secondary or early latent syphilis.

2. Late Latent Syphilis

No clinical signs/symptoms

AND

Reactive RPR and confirmatory tests

AND

The criteria for having acquired the infection within the preceding 12 months (see early latent syphilis above) are not met.

ASSESSMENT Early Latent Syphilis OR Late Latent Syphilis

PLAN The desired outcome of case management of early latent syphilis is to cure the infection in the patient and prevent development of infection in sexual partner(s) exposed within the preceding 90 days and to prevent congenital syphilis in a fetus. The desired outcome of treatment of late latent syphilis is to prevent the occurrence of or thwart the progression of late complications.

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Careful re-examination of all accessible mucosal surfaces (e.g., the oral cavity, the female perineum, and underneath the foreskin in uncircumcised males) to evaluate for internal mucosal lesions.

2. RPR titer, if not already performed.

3. Confirmatory test by a reactive treponemal EIA, A-TRP, or TPPA.

   Interpretation of Syphilis EIA, TPPA or A-TRP results
   1) Reactive means a diagnosis of syphilis is confirmed.
   2) Minimal reactive or equivocal means the test could not be called either reactive or non-reactive and a second specimen should be submitted for repeat testing in 2-4 weeks.
   3) Non-reactive means a diagnosis of syphilis is not confirmed.

4. Review Appointment Card Signs/Symptoms of Neurosyphilis with patient, if any found, refer immediately for emergency evaluation and notify delegating physician.

THERAPEUTIC

NOTE: After the completion of neurosyphilis treatment, benzathine penicillin 2.4 million units IM X 3 can be considered to provide total duration of therapy.

NOTE: PCN allergy algorithm should be completed on all patients who report penicillin allergy. Persons with a true penicillin allergy whose compliance with therapy or follow-up cannot be ensured should be desensitized and treated with benzathine penicillin.

PHARMACOLOGIC

REMINDER: If Benzathine Penicillin G is in short supply, reserve existing penicillin for pregnant and HIV-infected patients.

1. Early Latent Syphilis

   a. The preferred regimen for patients who are not pregnant, not allergic to penicillin, are HIV negative and neurosyphilis is ruled out (see appointment card):
   Benzathine Penicillin G, 2.4 million units IM, once.

   OR

   b. Alternative regimen:
   Doxycycline 100mg PO every 12 hours for 14

days, with careful monitoring for compliance, (if patient is 8 years of age or older).

NOTE: Do not give Doxycycline to lactating patient(s); patient(s) must be advised to discontinue breastfeeding throughout treatment and for two days after treatment is completed or receive alternative regimen. If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment. Do not give to minors under the age of 8.

a. If patient is pregnant and neurosyphilis is ruled out (see appointment card)
    1) Benzathine Penicillin G, 2.4 million units IM, once.
    2) If patient is pregnant a true PCN allergy is identified refer to allergist for desensitization with subsequent treatment with penicillin. PCN allergy algorithm should be completed on all patients who report penicillin allergy.

c. If patient is HIV infected and neurosyphilis is ruled out (see appointment card):
    Benzathine Penicillin G, 2.4 million units IM, once.

    NOTE: PCN allergy algorithm should be completed on all patients who report penicillin allergy. If patient is HIV infected and a true PCN allergy is identified refer to allergist for desensitization with subsequent treatment with penicillin.

d. Alternative regimen if allergic to penicillin and desensitization is unavailable:

    Doxycycline 100 mg PO, 2 times a day for 14 days, with careful monitoring for compliance, (if patient is 8 years of age or older).

    NOTE: The efficacy of the Doxycycline regimen in HIV infected population has not been well studied. Close serologic and clinical

follow-up should be performed with Doxycycline therapy.

NOTE: If patient is pregnant, and/or HIV infected, or has signs and symptoms of neurosyphilis, refer immediately for emergency evaluation. Delegating physician, Allergist and Infectious Disease specialist should be consulted.

2. Late Latent Syphilis

   a. If patient is not pregnant, not allergic to penicillin**,** is HIV negative and does not have neuropsychiatric signs/ symptoms the preferred regimen is:

      Benzathine Penicillin G, 2.4 million units IM, once for 3 doses (7.2 million units total).

      NOTE: An interval of up to 10-14 days between doses may occur without re-starting the sequence of injections

      OR

      PCN allergy algorithm should be completed on all patients who report penicillin allergy. If true PCN allergy identified refer to allergist for desensitization with subsequent treatment with penicillin.

      OR

      If allergic to penicillin, and neurosyphilis has been ruled out, Doxycycline 100mg PO every 12 hours for 28 days (if patient is 8 years of age or older), with careful monitoring for compliance.

      OR

      Tetracycline 500mg PO every 6 hours for 28 days, (if patient is 8 years of age or older) with careful monitoring for compliance.

      NOTE: Do not give Doxycycline or Tetracycline to HIV infected patient(s), lactating patient(s); patient(s) must be advised to discontinue breastfeeding throughout

treatment and for two days after treatment or receive alternative regimen. If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment. Do not give to minors under the age of 8.

If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment. Do not give to minors under the age of 8.

b. If patient is pregnant and does not have neuropsychiatric signs/symptoms:

Benzathine Penicillin G, 2.4 million units IM, once weekly for 3 doses (7.2 million units total).

NOTE: Pregnant patients who miss any dose of therapy, scheduled at 7-day intervals, must restart the sequence of injections.

OR

PCN allergy algorithm should be completed on all patients who report penicillin allergy. If patient is pregnant and a true PCN allergy is identified refer to allergist for desensitization with subsequent treatment with: Benzathine Penicillin G, 2.4 million units IM, weekly for 3 doses (7.2 million units total).

NOTE: Lactating mothers should not take Doxycycline longer than 4 weeks (28 days) or Tetracycline longer than 3 weeks (21 days). If lactating mothers are going to take Doxycycline or Tetracycline longer than specified, they must be advised to discontinue breastfeeding. If breastfeeding women are pumping, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant. Once long-term treatment is completed, breastfeeding may be resumed after 48 hours.

NOTE: Do not give Doxycycline or Tetracycline to minors under the age of 8.

c. If patient is HIV infected and does not have neuropsychiatric signs/symptoms:

Benzathine Penicillin G, 2.4 million units IM, once for 3 doses (7.2 million units total).

NOTE: Patient(s) who miss any dose of therapy, scheduled at 7-day intervals, must restart the sequence of injections.

OR

If patient has a history of allergy to penicillin, refer to allergist for skin testing and possible desensitization, with subsequent treatment with Benzathine Penicillin G, 2.4 million units IM once weekly for 3 doses (7.2million units total).

Alternative regimen if allergic to penicillin and desensitization is unavailable: Doxycycline 100mg PO every 12 hours a day for 28 days, with careful monitoring for compliance, (if patient is 8 years of age or older).

NOTE: The efficacy of the Doxycycline regimen in HIV infected population has not been well studied. Close serologic monitoring and clinical follow-up should be performed with Doxycycline therapy.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING
(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts).

1. The name/significance of the infection. Educate for sequela and complications of the untreated infection (https://www.cdc.gov/std/syphilis/stdfact-syphilis.htm).

2. If given oral medication, directions for administration and management of possible side effects.

3. Inform patients about the possibility of having a Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction (e.g. fever, chills, headache, myalgia, and exacerbation of cutaneous lesions). Please educate patients as follows:

a. If patient is pregnant, instruct patient to seek medical care immediately if she notices a change in fetal movement or uterine contractions. Pregnant women may have more severe reactions and should contact their prenatal care provider at the first sign of symptoms.

a. Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction may occur within 12 hours after treatment of early syphilis. Local reaction may consist of intensification of lesions (e.g., a chancre may become edematous or a faint secondary rash may become prominent).

b. Systemic reaction may consist of a rise in temperature to 101-102 degrees Fahrenheit. The self-limiting reaction usually lasts a few hours but may be up to 24 hours. Antipyretic may be taken as needed.

d. Pregnant women may have more severe reactions and should contact their prenatal care provider at the first sign or symptoms. (If pregnant, seek medical care immediately if notice a change in fetal movement or uterine contractions).

4. The need for and frequency of follow-up blood tests.

5. For early latent syphilis, the need for examination of sex partners and avoidance of sex with untreated partners. Introduce patients to the communicable disease specialist who will assist them with partner notification.

6. For late syphilis without neuropsychiatric signs/symptoms, give patient appointment card containing signs and symptoms of neurosyphilis with instructions on when to return.

7. Seropositive pregnant women should be considered infected unless adequate documentation of treatment history in medical records and titers has declined.

8. All pregnant women should be tested for syphilis during 1st and 3rd trimester (TITLE 31. HEALTH CHAPTER 17. CONTROL OF VENEREAL DISEASE § 31-17-4.2. HIV and Syphilis Pregnancy Screening).

9. Pregnant women diagnosed for syphilis in 2nd trimester,

should be referred to OB/GYN or OB provider for sonographic fetal evaluation for congenital syphilis.

10. Assist patient in developing a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan and document patients plan. Abstain from sex until all the symptoms are resolved, and partner(s) are tested and treated.

11. Education and counseling of the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).

12. Do not give Doxycycline or Tetracycline to lactating or pregnant patient(s); lactating patient(s) must be advised to discontinue breastfeeding throughout treatment and for two days after treatment is completed or receive alternative regimen. If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment. Do not give to minors under the age of 8.

13. Women who are breastfeeding should not receive Doxycycline. If Doxycycline is given to breastfeeding women, they should discontinue breastfeeding throughout treatment and can resume breastfeeding two days after completion of treatment. If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment.

14. If patient is of childbearing age, counsel on the use of contraceptives to reduce the risk of unintended pregnancy.

15. Review Appointment Card Signs/Symptoms of Neurosyphilis with patient. Refer all patients who have neuropsychiatric signs/symptoms immediately to ER for emergency evaluation; consult with delegating physician, allergist and infectious disease specialist. If no symptoms, review instructions on when to return for follow-up.

16. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown.

17. **For additional information and psychological support, refer to: National STD Hotline 1-800-227-8922 available 8am-5pm Mon-Fri (Eastern time), in English and Spanish. National Herpes Hotline 919-361-8488 available**

9:00 a.m. to 7:00 p.m. (EST, Monday through Friday)
http://www.ashasexualhealth.org/stdsstis/herpes/

18. Refer pregnant patients to OBGYN or OB provider for prenatal care.

19. Refer to the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for immunization recommendations for Hepatitis A, B and HPV (https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/index.html) and the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual.

MANAGEMENT OF SEX PARTNERS

1. Provide written note(s) to patient to give to sex partner(s) to come into health department for examination and treatment.

2. Contacts to Early Latent Syphilis:

   a. Examine all referred partners from the previous year.

   b. Treat all contacts exposed within the past 3 months, regardless of examination and serologic test results (with one of the above single dose or 14-day regimens).

   c. Treat all contacts exposed beyond 3 months ago, if serologic test results are not immediately available and follow-up is uncertain.

3. Contacts to Late Latent Syphilis:

   a. Evaluate steady (e.g., marital) sex partners. No treatment is needed unless the partner is found to be infected.

   b. Minors born to an infected female within the past few years should also be evaluated.

FOLLOW-UP (All latent syphilis)

1. Repeat RPR at 6, 12, and 24 months after treatment. Evaluate for possible neurosyphilis and re-treat appropriately if:

a. Titers increase fourfold.

b. If an initially high titer (at least 1:32) fails to decline at least fourfold within 12 to 24 months.

c. If the patient develops signs or symptoms attributable to syphilis.

2. If the patient is HIV-infected, repeat RPR at 6, 12, 18 and 24 months after treatment. Refer patient for CSF (cerebrospinal fluid) exam and re-treat accordingly if:

a. Signs or symptoms of syphilis recur.

b. If signs or symptoms of neurosyphilis develop.

c. If titers rise fourfold.

3. Persons who have syphilis and symptoms or signs suggesting neurologic disease (e.g., cranial nerve dysfunction, meningitis, stroke, and hearing loss) or ophthalmic disease (e.g., uveitis, iritis, neuroretinitis, and optic neuritis) should be referred to infectious disease specialist and/or ophthalmologist for evaluation that includes CSF analysis, ocular slit-lamp ophthalmologic examination, and otologic examination. Treatment should be guided by the results of this evaluation.

4. A CSF examination should be performed if:

a. A sustained (longer than 2 weeks) fourfold increase or greater in titer is observed.

b. An initially high titer (1:32 or greater) fails to decline at least fourfold within 12–24 months of therapy.

c. Signs or symptoms attributable to syphilis develop.

d. In such circumstances, patients with CSF abnormalities should be treated for neurosyphilis. If the CSF examination is negative, retreatment for latent syphilis should be administered. Serologic titers might fail to decline despite a negative CSF examination and a repeated course of therapy,

especially if the initial nontreponemal titer is low (less than 1:8); in these circumstances, the need for additional therapy or repeated CSF examinations is unclear but is generally not recommended. Serologic and clinical monitoring should be offered along with a reevaluation for HIV infection.

5. If pregnant, clinical evaluation and RPRs should be performed at least once during the third trimester and again at delivery.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Consult delegating physician if further medical guidance is needed and STD nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

2. Refer all patients who have neuropsychiatric signs/symptoms immediately to ER for emergency evaluation; consult with delegating physician, allergist and infectious disease specialist.

3. PCN allergy algorithm should be completed on all patients who report penicillin allergy.

4. Pregnant women diagnosed for syphilis in 2nd trimester, should be referred to OB/GYN or OB provider for sonographic fetal evaluation for congenital syphilis.

5. If a true allergy is identified, refer to a primary care physician or dermatologist for skin testing for penicillin allergy and possible desensitization.

6. All latent syphilis cases should be referred to a Communicable Disease Specialist for further counseling and sex partner referral.

7. Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for reporting possible sexual or physical abuse of minors, if encountered, through history or physical. All suspected sexual or physical abuse of minors must be reported to the county Department of Family and Children Services office as per Guidelines for Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAn

dPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf

8. Refer pregnant patients to OB/GYN or OB provider for prenatal care.

NOTE: The following appointment card depicts some of the symptoms and signs of Neurosyphilis. Patient Health Information:

You have been treated for Syphilis. This infection is curable if treated properly. It is very important that you return for treatment as discussed by the doctor or nurse to cure the infection and prevent progression of the infection.
To ensure the infection has been cured, it is important that you repeat blood work every:

- 6 months (after initial treatment)
- 12 months (for follow-up)
- 24 months (for further follow-up)

Return to:

PLACE HEALTH CLINIC LABEL HERE

On the following Dates:

Date	Treatment

If you are having complications, have been re-exposed to this infection or feel you are having signs and symptoms, please return as soon as possible.

If you or someone else notices you are having any of these signs and/or symptoms, you should return to the clinic or report to your primary care physician right away.

- ☐ Memory Loss
- ☐ Problems with Mental Function
- ☐ Unsteady Walking
- ☐ Balance Problems (Dizziness or Faint)
- ☐ Urinary Problems (Can't Hold Pee)
- ☐ Bowel Problems (Can't hold bowel movements)
- ☐ Vision Problems (Blurred vision, loss of vision)
- ☐ Eye Pain
- ☐ Problems Having Sex
- ☐ Numbness or Loss of Feeling in Legs
- ☐ Stiff Neck
- ☐ Headache
- ☐ Fever
- ☐ Loss of Hearing
- ☐ Persistent Nausea and Vomiting (Always throwing up)
- ☐ Seizures
- ☐ Stroke
- ☐ Unexplained Episodes of Severe Pain

Patient Health Information

You have been treated for a Late Syphilis infection. This infection is curable if treated properly. It is very important that you return for treatment as discussed by the doctor or nurse to cure the infection and prevent progression of the infection.

To ensure the infection has been cured, it is important that you repeat blood work every:

- 6 months (after initial treatment)
- 12 months (for follow-up)
- 24 months (for further follow-up)

Return to:
ABC Health Dept
123 Health Way
Treat Infection, State 12345

On the following Dates:
Date

Treatment

Appointment Card

PLACE HEALTH CLINIC LABEL HERE

REFERENCES

1. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015, Vol. 64, No. RR-3**, Retrieved February 28, 2019**.

2. GUIDELINES FOR MANDATORY REPORTING OF SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE for PUBLIC HEALTH PERSONNEL. (2017, April 1). **Retrieved February 28, 2019**, from https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf .

3. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (October 18, 2016), Appendix C. STD Surveillance Case Definitions. Retrieved from https**://wwwn.cdc.gov/nndss/conditions/syphilis/case-definition/2018/..**

4. Holmes, K. K. (2008). Sexually transmitted diseases. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical. (Current)

5. American Academy of Pediatrics., In Pickering, L. K., In Baker, C. J., In Kimberlin, D. W., In Long, S. S., & American Academy of Pediatrics. (2012). Red book: 2012 report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases. (Current)

6. University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine. (2017). Clinical Skin Disease Images. Retrieved from https://medicine.uiowa.edu/dermatology/education/clinical-skin-disease-images.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PEDICULOSIS PUBIS (crabs/pubic lice)

DEFINITION Pediculosis pubis is an infestation of pubic hair with pubic louse, pubic louse may also infest facial hair or eyelashes. Lice deposit eggs (nits) on the hair shaft; nits hatch in one week. Keep a high index of suspicion of sexual molestation in minors with pubic lice.

ETIOLOGY Crab louse, Phthirus pubis, typically spread by sexual contact or sleeping in the same bed. Nymphs and adult lice feed on human blood; only the body louse is known to spread disease. Incubation period is approximately 6-10 days.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Itching in the pubic area.
2. "Bugs" or "crabs in pubic area."

OBJECTIVE

1. Identification of lice, larvae, or nits attached to genital hair.

OR

2. History of exposure to pubic lice and pruritic, reddened macules or papules or secondary excoriations are observed in the genital area.

ASSESSMENT Pediculosis Pubis (Crab or Pubic Lice)

PLAN The desired outcome of treatment is to eliminate lice and nits from patients and their clothing and bedding.

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Identification of lice, larvae, or nits attached to genital hairs.
2. History of exposure to pubic lice and pruritic, reddened macules or papules or secondary excoriations are observed in the genital area.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Any patients who are diagnosed with pubic lice/crabs should be tested for gonorrhea, chlamydia, syphilis and HIV.

NOTE: Persons who have pediculosis pubis and also HIV infection should receive the same treatment regimen as those who are HIV negative.

NOTE: Prior to treatment of minors, consult with or refer to primary care provider. Keep a high index of suspicion of sexual molestation in minors with pubic lice.

1. Patients at least 2 months of age may use:

    a. Permethrin 1% cream rinse (e.g., NIX) applied to the affected area and washed off after 10 minutes. May repeat in 1 week if live lice are still found.

    NOTE: Patients who are breastfeeding should discontinue throughout treatment and can resume breastfeeding two days after completion of treatment. If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment. Do not give to ragweed sensitized patients.

    OR

    b. Pyrethrins with Piperonyl Butoxide (e.g., RID) applied to the affected area and washed off after 10 minutes.

    NOTE: Patients who are breastfeeding should discontinue during the duration of treatment and can resume breastfeeding two days after completion of treatment. If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant during duration of treatment nor two days after completion of treatment. Do not give to ragweed or chrysanthemums sensitized patients.

2. Mild topical antipruritic/anti-inflammatory cream or ointment may

be obtained OTC for itching.

3. Alternative Regimens may be ordered, administered and dispensed after consulting with delegating physician.

   c. If patient is at least 2 years of age weighs at least 15 kg and is not pregnant give Ivermectin 250mcg/kg PO once. Repeat in two weeks.

   NOTE: Patients who are breastfeeding should discontinue throughout treatment and can resume breastfeeding two days after completion of treatment.

   If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment.

   OR

   d. **If treatment failure is suspected due to resistance AND patient is 6 years of age or more,** give Malathion 0.5% lotion applied for 8-12 hours and then washed off. May reapply in 7-9 days if needed.

      NOTE: Malathion lotion is flammable; patients must avoid heat sources (fire, hair, dryers, curling irons, etc.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

Bedding and clothing should be decontaminated (e.g., either machine-washed with hot water, or machine-dried using the heat cycle or dry-cleaned) or removed from body contact for at least 72 hours (clean clothing should be worn after treatment).

MANAGEMENT OF SEX PARTNERS

Inform all sex/bed partners from within the preceding month to obtain over the counter medication and complete treatment as soon as possible. Avoid sex or sleeping with untreated partners.

PATIENTS EDUCATION/COUNSELING

(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts)

1. The name/significance of the infection. Educate for sequelae and complications of the untreated infection (http://www.ashasexualhealth.org/stdsstis/crabs/).

2. How to apply prescribed medication and decontaminate clothing and bedding. Fumigation of living areas is not necessary.

3. Education and counseling of the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).

4. If patient is of childbearing age, counsel on the use of contraceptives to reduce the risk of unintended pregnancy.

5. Assist patient in developing a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan and document patients plan. Abstain from sex until all the symptoms are resolved.

6. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown.

7. **For additional information and psychological support, refer to: National STD Hotline 1-800-227-8922 available 8am-5pm Mon-Fri (Eastern time), in English and Spanish. National Herpes Hotline 919-361-8488 available 9:00 a.m. to 7:00 p.m. (EST, Monday through Friday) http://www.ashasexualhealth.org/stdsstis/herpes/.**

8. Refer to the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for immunization recommendations for Hepatitis A, B and HPV (https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/index.html) and the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Reevaluate in 1 week if symptoms persist.

2. Re-treatment may be necessary if lice or eggs are found.
If no response to initial treatment, re-treatment with a different regimen is recommended.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Consult with delegating physician:

   a. Regarding any question of management.

   b. Consult delegating physician for referral of pediculosis pubis of the eyelashes/eyebrows.

   c. Consult with delegating physician for treatment of patients related to pediculosis pubis outbreak (e.g. nursing homes, jails, schools, and other communities).

   d. Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed and/or STD nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

2. Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedure for reporting possible sexual or physical abuse of minors, if encountered, through history or physical. All suspected sexual or physical abuse of minors must be reported to the county Department of Family and Children Services office as per Guidelines for Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf

REFERENCES

1. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015, Vol. 64, No. RR-3, **Retrieved February 28, 2019**.

2. GUIDELINES FOR MANDATORY REPORTING OF SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE for PUBLIC HEALTH PERSONNEL. (2017, April 1). **Retrieved February 28, 2019**, https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf

3. *Mark Lebwohl, Lily Clark and Jacob Lev*itt, "Therapy for Head Lice B*ased* on Life Cycle, Resistance, and Safety Considerations," *Pediatrics*, 2007, 119: 965-974. (Current)

4. Holmes, K. K. (2008). Sexually transmitted diseases. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical. (Current)

5. American Academy of Pediatrics., In Pickering, L. K., In Baker, C. J., In Kimberlin, D. W., In Long, S. S., & American Academy of Pediatrics. (2012). Red book: 2012 report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases. (Current)

6. University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine. (2017). Clinical Skin Disease Images. Retrieved from https://medicine.uiowa.edu/dermatology/education/clinical-skin-disease-images.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SCABIES RELATED TO SEXUAL TRANSMISSION

NOTE: Refer to Child Health Scabies Protocol when infection can be ruled out as acquired through sexual transmission.

DEFINITION

Scabies due to sexual transmission is the infestation with the "itch mite" which penetrates the skin, creating visible papules, vesicles, or small, linear burrows, which contain the mites and their eggs. Common sites in adults include the flexor surface of the wrists, webbing between fingers, anterior axillary folds, the external genitalia, and the inner aspects of the upper thigh. In infants, other skin areas including the neck, face and scalp may be affected.

The predominant symptom is pruritus due to sensitization. It begins two to six weeks after the first infestation, sooner after subsequent infestations. Complications include excoriations and secondary infections due to scratching.

ETIOLOGY

Scabies is caused by *Sarcoptes scabiei*, the itch mite, which travels from body to body through close physical contact, sleeping in the same bed or sharing clothing. Lesions may be seen only in the genital and adjacent areas when spread sexually. The incubation period in people with no previous exposure is 4-6 weeks. People who have been previously infested are sensitized and can develop symptoms 1-4 days after exposure.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Severe itching, usually worse at night, associated with a "breaking out" or rash.
2. May have history of similar symptoms in other family members, playmates, or sexual partners.

OBJECTIVE

1. Burrows in the skin, appearing as finely-raised, wavy lines from a few millimeters to a centimeter in length.
2. Papules or vesicles.
3. Excoriations and possible signs of secondary infection from scratching.

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION/LAB FINDINGS

1. Gross or microscopic identification of mites, larva or eggs on scraping from papules or burrows.

OR

2. Burrows in the skin or characteristic pruritic, erythematous, papular eruptions, and other causes of dermatitis are excluded.

3. Diagnosis is suggestive in a patient who has had sexual or other close physical contact to a patient infested with scabies and has compatible skin lesions.

ASSESSMENT Scabies due to sexual transmission

PLAN The desired outcome of treatment is to eliminate the mites and relieve symptoms.

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

NOTE: If the patient is symptomatic for scabies and denies sexual (vaginal, penile, oral or anal) intercourse in the past 60 days, Scabies can be treated as outlined per protocol without STI screening (CT, GC, RPR, HIV). Documentation of assessment must be completed. Patient should be educated regarding the missed opportunity of screening for other STIs and possibility of asymptomatic infections.

1. Gross or microscopic identification of mites, larva or eggs on scraping from papules or burrows.

2. Burrows in the skin or characteristic pruritic, erythematous, papular eruptions, and other causes of dermatitis are excluded.

3. Diagnosis is suggestive in a patient who has had sexual or other close physical contact to a patient infested with scabies and has compatible skin lesions.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Any patients who test positive for scabies related to

sexual transmission should be tested for gonorrhea, chlamydia, syphilis and HIV.

NOTE: Persons with HIV infection who have uncomplicated scabies should receive the same treatment regimens as those who are HIV negative. Persons with HIV infection and others who are immunosuppressed are at increased risk for crusted scabies. Such persons should be managed in consultation with a specialist.

1. Recommended regimen for nonpregnant, nonlactating patient at least 2 months of age:

    a. Permethrin 5% Cream (e.g., Elimite), single application. Thoroughly massage into all skin from the neck down to the soles of the feet, avoiding contact with mucous membranes, eyes and mouth. Remove by washing after 8-14 hours.

    b. If age is equal or greater than 2 years of age and weigh at least 15kg. Ivermectin 200mcg/kg orally, repeated in 2 weeks.

    NOTE: Patients who are breastfeeding will need to discontinue until 72 hours after last treatment.

2. Alternative regimen for nonpregnant, nonlactating patients at least 2 months of age:

    Lindane 1% lotion (1 oz.) or cream (30g), single application to all skin areas from neck down and thoroughly wash off in 8 hours.

    NOTE: [ALERT; US BOXED WARNING] Lindane is not recommended as first-line therapy because of toxicity. Use only as an alternative due to inability to tolerate other therapies or if other therapies have failed. All patients must be provided a medication guide. Do not use Lindane:

    1) Immediately after bath or shower.
    2) If patient has extensive dermatitis.
    3) In pregnant women or lactating women.
    4) In minors, less than 2 years of age.

5) In those who weigh less than 110 pounds.
6) If patient has uncontrolled seizures.

3. Pregnant or lactating females

NOTE: Treat only if clearly indicated; they should discontinue breastfeeding throughout treatment and can resume breastfeeding two days after completion of treatment. If breastfeeding women are pumping during treatment, they should not provide pumped breast milk to infant throughout treatment and for two days after completion of treatment.

Permethrin 5% Cream, as above.

NOTE: Avoidance of breastfeeding has been and continues to be a standard, strong recommendation for HIV-infected women in the United States, because maternal ART dramatically reduces but does not eliminate breastmilk transmission. Further, safe infant feeding alternatives are readily available in the United States. In addition, there are concerns about other potential risks, including toxicity for the neonate or increased risk of development of ARV drug resistance, should transmission occur, due to variable passage of drugs into breastmilk.

4. For relief of itching, suggest an OTC oral or topical antihistamine.

5. Bacitracin ointment (OTC) for mild secondary infection

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Bedding and clothing should be decontaminated (e.g., either dry cleaned or machine-washed and dried using the hot cycle) or removed from body contact for at least 72 hours. Fumigation of living areas is unnecessary.

2. Keep fingernails clean and well-trimmed to minimize secondary infection from scratching.

3. Bathe in cool water using a mild soap.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts.)

1. The name/significance of the infection. Educate for possible sequelae and complications of the untreated infection (http://www.ashasexualhealth.org/stdsstis/scabies/).

2. Directions for use of medication and management of possible side effects.

3. Itching may persist for up to two weeks even after successful treatment. Over the counter, Hydrocortisone cream (only use after diagnosis has been made) or Benadryl cream may relieve persistent itching.

4. Education and counseling of the correct usage of protective barriers (condoms, dental dams, etc.).

5. If patient is of childbearing age, counsel on the use of contraceptives to reduce the risk of unintended pregnancy.

6. Assist patient in developing a personalized STD/HIV risk reduction plan and document patients plan. Abstain from sex until all the symptoms are resolved.

7. HIV antibody test to determine HIV status, if unknown.

8. **For additional information and psychological support, refer to: National STD Hotline 1-800-227-8922 available 8am-5pm Mon-Fri (Eastern time), in English and Spanish. National Herpes Hotline 919-361-8488 available 9:00 a.m. to 7:00 p.m. (EST, Monday through Friday) http://www.ashasexualhealth.org/stdsstis/herpes/.**

9. Refer to the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for immunization recommendations for Hepatitis A, B and HPV (https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/index.html) and the Georgia Department of Public Health Immunization Program Manual.

MANAGEMENT OF PARTNERS

Those that have had close personal, household contacts, or sexual

partners within the past month need examination and treatment.

FOLLOW-UP

Reexamine in 2 weeks. Retreatment can be considered after 2 weeks for patients who are still symptomatic or if live mites are present. Treatment with an alternative regimen (e.g., Lindane) is recommended for patients who do not respond to the recommended treatment. If alternative regimen is contraindicated refer patient to primary care physician or dermatologist.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Refer to Child Health Scabies Protocol when infection can be ruled out as being acquired through sexual transmission.

2. Consult with delegating physician:

    a. For repeated treatment failure or failure to respond to treatment.

    b. For severe secondary infection.

    c. For treatment of patients related to scabies outbreak (nursing homes, jails, schools, and other communities).

    d. Prior to use of Lindane on any patient.

3. When further medical guidance is needed, and STD nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

4. Refer infants younger than 2 months of age to primary care physician or pediatrician for evaluation and treatment may also refer to the Child Health Standard Nurse Protocol for Scabies.

5. Public Health Employees must be familiar with procedures for reporting possible sexual or physical abuse of minors, if encountered, through history or physical. All suspected sexual or physical abuse of minors must be reported to the county Department of Family and Children Services office as per Guidelines for Mandatory Reporting of Suspected Child Abuse for Public Health Personnel

https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf

REFERENCES

1. Centers for Disease Control an*d Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015, Vo*l. 64, No. RR-3, **Retrieved February 28, 2019**.

2. GUIDELINES FOR MANDATORY REPORTING OF SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE for PUBLIC HEALTH PERSONNEL. (2017, April 1). **Retrieved February 28, 2019**. https://gets.sharepoint.com/sites/DPHIntranet/PHIL/FormsAndPolicies/Mandatory%20Reporting%20of%20Suspected%20Child%20Abuse%20%20Guidelines%20APRIL2017.pdf

3. Holmes, K. K. (2008). Sexually transmitted diseases. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical. (Current)

4. American Academy of Pediatrics., In Pickering, L. K., In Baker, C. J., In Kimberlin, D. W., In Long, S. S., & American Academy of Pediatrics. (2012). Red book: 2012 report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases. (Current)

5. University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine. (2017). Clinical Skin Disease Images. Retrieved from https://medicine.uiowa.edu/dermatology/education/clinical-skin-disease-images.

GA Department of Public Health Penicillin Allergy Testing (PRE-PEN) Protocol

Patient Criteria

Who to test:

- Patients who report a penicillin allergy that may be IgE mediated but cannot remember their reaction and there is no objective data confirming the allergy.
- Penicillin is clinically indicated and is considered by the prescriber to be the preferred agent.
- Penicillin or beta-lactam antibiotics are withheld due to concern for allergy.

Who NOT to test:

- Patients known to be extremely hypersensitive to penicillin, e.g. anaphylactic reaction within the last 5 years.
- Patients with clear history of severe skin reaction such as Stevens-Johnson syndrome or toxic epidermal necrolysis.
- Patients who have received antihistamines within the last 48-72 hours.

Procedure

Step 1. Prick Test

a. Clean the volar surface of either forearm with an alcohol swab.
b. Using an ink pen, draw 3 vertical lines approximately 1 inch apart on the designated testing site of the arm labeling testing sites as follows: PRP, PG, +, ─
c. In quick sequence, apply skin prick tests with PRE-PEN (PRP), penicillin G (PG), histamine (+) and saline (─).
    - Tests are conducted by applying a small drop of solution from the corresponding prefilled syringe and then making a single, shallow puncture of the epidermis using a twisting motion with a Duotip Test-II pricking device. Use a new pricking device per site.

d. Read the test in 15-20 minutes: (document test results below)
    - The positive control (histamine skin test) should be positive (> 3 mm wheal) to ensure the test is working properly. Flare and itching at positive control site are common.
    - Test is negative: change in diameter of PRE-PEN and PenG wheal is less than 3 mm than that observed with the negative control. Proceed to intradermal test.
    - Test is positive: change in diameter of PRE-PEN or PenG wheal is greater than 3 mm than that observed with the negative control. As soon as a positive response

is observed, the solution should be wiped off the skin. Do not proceed to intradermal test.

Step 2. Intradermal Test

a. Only conduct this test if patient produced a negative result with the prick test in step 1. Select 5 sites on the volar surface on the forearm. These sites should be on the opposite arm from the prick test if possible. Clean area with alcohol swab and label testing sites as PRP, PRP, PG, PG, C.
b. Using prefilled PRE-PEN syringe, intradermally inject 0.02 ml of PRE-PEN solution in duplicate (separate at least 2 cm apart). Mark the perimeter of each initial bleb with an ink pen.
c. Using prefilled PenG syringe, intradermally inject 0.02 ml of Pen G in duplicate (separate at least 2 cm apart). Mark the perimeter of each initial bleb with an ink pen.
d. Using prefilled saline syringe, intradermally inject 0.02 ml of saline. Mark the perimeter of initial bleb with an ink pen.
e. Read the test in 15-20 minutes: (document test results below)
    - Test is negative: there is no increase in the original bleb and no greater reaction than the negative control site.
    - Test is positive: bleb or wheal increases >3 mm from its original size. Patient is NOT to receive penicillin.

Step 3. (Optional) Oral Penicillin Challenge

a. Give patient oral penicillin (e.g., amoxicillin 250mg) challenge and move patient to in a monitored setting for 61 minutes.

Results

Patient: _____
DOB:_____
Nurse Performing Test: _____

Test Date	Product	Prick Width (mm)	Intradermal #1 Width (mm)	Intradermal #2 Width (mm)	Results (Pos/Neg/Ambiguous)
	PrePen (undiluted)				
	Penicillin G (10,000 U/ml)				
	Diluent Control				
	Histamine (1.0mg/ml)				

Interpretation:

- ☐ NEGATIVE for penicillin allergy
- ☐ POSITIVE for penicillin allergy

Physician Signature: _____ Date: _____ Time: _____

APPENDIX: PENICILLIN ALLERGY ASSESSMENT

CLINICAL REVIEW TEAM

Gregory S. Felzien, MD, AAHIVS Medical Advisor, Division of Health Protection, HIV unit Georgia Department of Public Health	**Meshell McCloud, MS, APRN, WHNP-BC, RN** Deputy Chief Nurse Georgia Department of Public Health
Mark Elam, MD Medical Director Georgia Department of Public Health Districts 1-1 & 1-2	**Jeffery Dockery, M.D. DABFM, FAAFP, AAHIVS** Physician, Southeast Health District 9-1 Georgia Department of Public Health
Gay Campbell, RPh. ADAP Pharmacy Director Georgia Department of Public Health	**Latasha Terry, MPA** STD Director, Office of STD Georgia Department of Public Health
Kimberly Brown, BSN, RN STD Nurse Consultant, STD Office Georgia Department of Public Health	

Background

Penicillin (PCN) allergy is reported by approximately 10% of the United States population. Patients with unconfirmed PCN allergy often receive suboptimal treatment for infectious diseases with second-line, broad-spectrum antibiotics that tend to be less effective, costlier, and associated with an increased risk of pseudomembranous colitis and antibiotic-resistant infections. Penicillin allergy wanes over time where 50% of individuals after 5 years and 80% after 10 years will no longer be allergic.

Note: Over 90% of reported PCN allergies can be excluded by:
Comprehensive patient history, chart review and antibiotic pharmacy fill history
The PCN allergy label can be removed in 92.8% following a direct Amoxicillin challenge

Studies have demonstrated that greater than 94% of patients who report a PCN allergy can tolerate the antibiotic. Recent studies have also found that direct oral challenges to Amoxicillin without preceding skin tests are safe in patients who report a low-risk history of PCN allergy, such as Amoxicillin-induced rashes. Among 100 million people exposed to oral Amoxicillin between 1972 and 2007 in the United Kingdom, only 1 death after anaphylaxis in association with oral Amoxicillin was identified.

Cross-reactivity between PCNs and Cephalosporins is less common than previously thought with an overall 1-2% of patients with a confirmed PCN allergy have a Cephalosporin allergy.

Note: A reaction to Cefalexin or Cefaclor (both Cephalosporins) is more likely if the patient had a recent Amoxicillin or Ampicillin allergy because these drugs have a similar side-chain structure. In addition, nearly 40% of patients with anaphylaxis to PCN have a cross-reactivity with cephalosporins.

Potential B-Lactam antibiotic Side effects, Adverse Reactions, Allergic signs and symptoms and Anaphylaxis (see Beta-Lactam antibiotic examples, page 5 of this appendix)	
Side Effect / Adverse Reactions	Redness at site of IM administration Itching at site of IM administration Pain at site of IM administration Diarrhea Nausea Vomiting Erythema Itching without rash
-VS-	
Allergic Sign and Symptoms	Skin rash

	Hives Itching with rash Fever Swelling Shortness of breath Wheezing Runny nose Itchy, watery eyes
Anaphylaxis	Hypotension Angioedema Tightening of the airways and throat causing trouble breathing Nausea or abdominal cramps Dizziness or lightheadedness Weak, rapid pulse Drop in blood pressure Seizures Loss of consciousness Stevens-Johnson syndrome (SJS) Toxic epidermal necrolysis (TEN) Acute generalized exanthematous pustulosis Maculopapular exanthema Drug reaction with eosinophilia and systemic symptoms (DRESS)

Penicillin Allergy Assessment

Appropriate antibiotic prescribing in a patient reporting a PCN allergy requires an understanding of allergy SEVERITY (severe vs. non-severe) and TIMING (immediate vs. delayed) and antibiotics tolerated since the reaction.

Questions in assessing Penicillin allergies

SEVERITY Severe vs. non-severe	1. Do you remember any details of the reaction? 2. Did the reaction involve any symptoms other than a rash? 3. Did the reaction involve blistering, ulceration, sloughing of the skin or lining of the mouth, eyes, genitals (SJS, TEN, DRESS)? 4. Did the reaction involve any organ failure? I.e. required dialysis

	5. If a reaction occurred, how was the reaction managed? Did it require treatment or hospitalization? 6. Was the reaction life threatening? I.e. required emergency room visit, hospitalization, intensive care unit admission?
TIMING Immediate (onset within hours of first or second dose) Delayed (onset after days) Recent or distant past	1. Did the reaction occur within the past year? If not within the last year, how long ago? 2. How long after taking the antibiotic did the reaction occur? I.e. minutes, hours, days?
Antibiotics tolerated since reaction Self-report Chart review Pharmacy review	1. Do you recall the name of the antibiotic that caused the reaction? 2. Since the reaction, have you taken any antibiotics? Do you recall the name of the antibiotic? Did you have any reactions? Were you able to complete the course of therapy?

Note: If the client cannot recall the details of the reaction, use the time since reaction (childhood vs. recent) and treatment (outpatient or inpatient) to gauge the likely severity. Most people who report allergy to a PCN in childhood are able to tolerate the drug as an adult.

Risk Assessment: also see algorithm figure 1

1. No Increased Risk: Proceed with preferred therapy per protocol and remove the individual's PCN allergy from the records:
    a. If individual reports taking and tolerating Penicillin
    OR
    b. Chart review (clinic and/or outside records) demonstrates the individual was prescribed a PCN and was able to tolerate treatment.
    OR
    c. Individual's pharmacy has documented that a PCN was picked up and the patient confirms the medication was taken without side effects or a reaction.

2. Low Risk: History of PCN use with reported side effect(s) not requiring treatment or hospitalization (i.e., any benign rash, GI symptoms, headache, or benign somatic symptoms or the previous side effect(s) occurs more than 10 years ago).

a. If the delegating provider is present in the clinic, **proceed with oral challenge** otherwise, discuss information obtained in number one above and number two here with the delegating provider prior to proceeding with the oral challenge.

NOTE: In individuals with low-risk PCN allergy (benign rash, GI symptoms, headache, or benign somatic symptoms or the previous side effects occurred more than 10 years) recent research supports the safety and efficacy of a direct oral Amoxicillin challenge. Those with severe reactions or reactions within 12 months of evaluation were not challenged.

3. Moderate Risk: If the individual reports a history of shortness of breath or anaphylaxis.
   a. Proceed with skin testing (see nurse protocol)
   b. If skin testing is unavailable in the clinic or through a collaborative partner, then proceed with alternative therapy using a non-beta-lactam.

4. High Risk: If the individual reports blistering rash, hemolytic anemia, nephritis, hepatitis, hospitalization.
   a. Avoid all beta-lactams and proceed to alternative therapy that is a non-beta-lactam.
   b. Document allergy to all beta-lactams in the records.

NOTE: One exception is syphilis in pregnancy where the only approved therapy is PCN. Individuals would require referral for desensitization and treatment.

Amoxicillin Oral Challenge:

Medication Allergies that qualify patient for oral Amoxicillin challenge:

- Penicillin
- Amoxicillin
- Ampicillin
- Ampicillin-sulbactam
- Amoxicillin Clavulanic Acid

Oral Amoxicillin Challenge

Contact the delegating physician prior to starting the oral challenge and immediately if a reaction develops.

- Obtain baseline vitals
- Give oral Amoxicillin 250 mg and move patient to a monitored setting for 61 minutes
- Obtain vitals every 15 minutes and as needed if the patient becomes symptomatic during the 61-minute monitoring

Items to have readily available during oral challenge are:

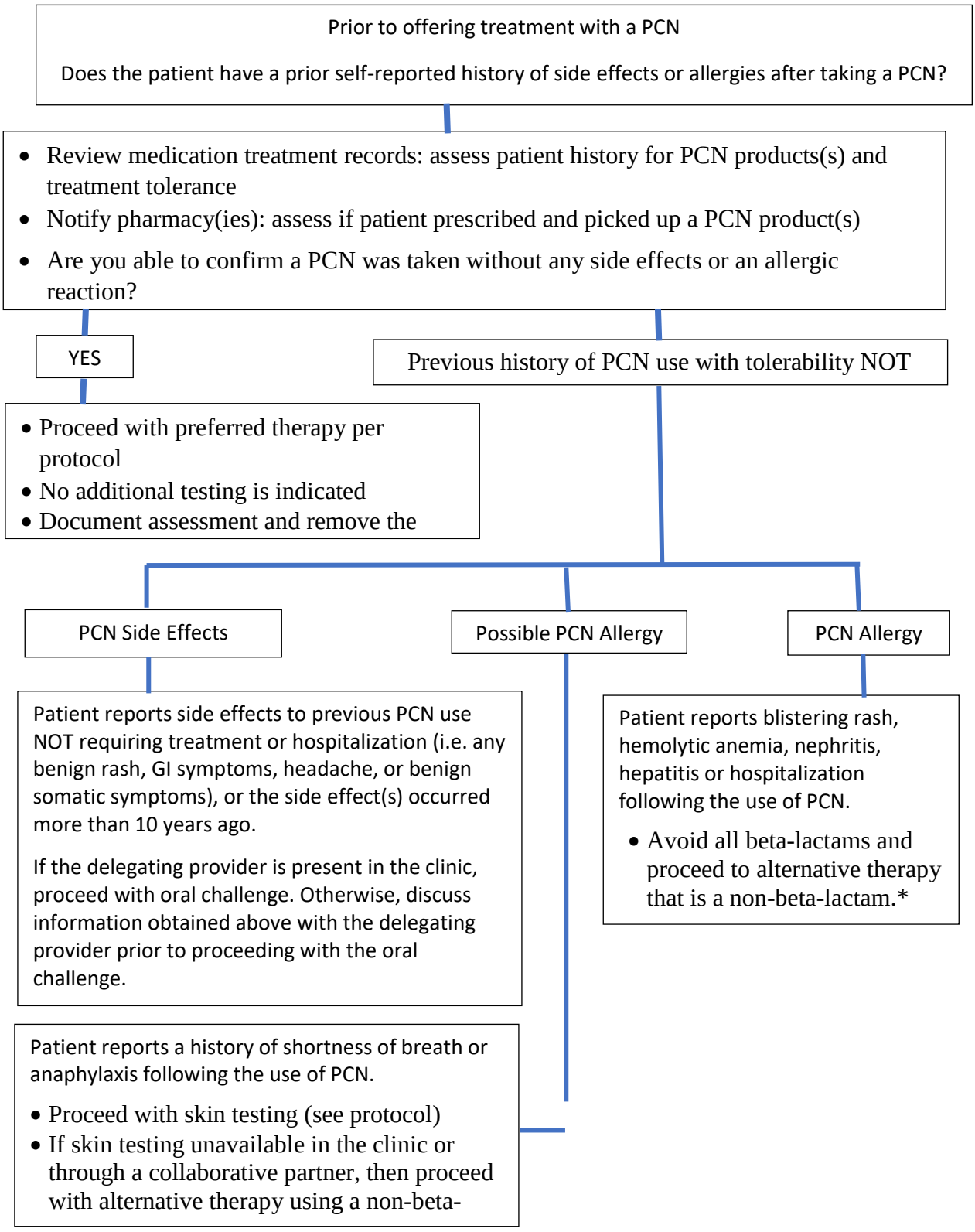
- Code cart in the room throughout the monitoring
- Blood pressure machine and stethoscope
- Thermometer
- Pulse Ox
- Phone

Oral Penicillin Challenge: CPT code CPT95076; must document at least 61 minutes of monitoring

Beta-Lactam antibiotic examples (not all inclusive)

Penicillin		Cephalosporin	
Generic	Trade	Generic	Trade
Ampicillin		Ceftriaxone	Rocephin™
Amoxicillin	Amoxil™	Cefotaxime	Claforan™
Amoxicillin/Clavulanate	Augmentin™	Cefuroxime	Ceftin™
Amoxicillin/Sulbactam	Unasyn™	Cefepime	Maxipime™
Dicloxacillin	Dycill™ / Dynapen™	Ceftazidime	Tazicef™
Nafcillin	Nallpen™	Cefpodoxime	Vantin™
Oxacillin	Bactocill™	Cefaclor	Ceclor™
Penicillin G	Pfizerpen™	Cephalexin	Keflex™
Penicillin V	PC Pen VK™ / Pen-V™	Cefadroxil	Duricef™
Piperacillin	Pipracil™	Cefixime	Suprax™
Piperacillin/Tazobactam	Zosyn™	Ceftaroline	Teflaro™

Figure 1: Penicillin (PCN) Allergy Risk Assessment Algorithm



***** One exception is syphilis in pregnancy where the only approved therapy is PCN. Pregnant individuals would require referral for desensitization and treatment.

REFERENCES:

1. Shenoy, E.S., Macy, E., Rowe, T., Blumenthal, K.G. Evaluation and Management of Penicillin Allergy: A Review. JAMA. 2019; 321 (2): 188-199

2. Banks, T.A., Tucker, M., Macy, E. Evaluating Penicillin Allergies without Skin Testing. Current Allergy and Asthma Reports. 2019; 19: 27

3. Devchand, M., Trubiano, J.A. Penicillin allergy: a practical approach to assessment and prescribing. Aust. Prescr. 2019; Dec. 42 (6): 192-199 https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC6954877/

4. Blumenthal, K.G., Huebner, E.M., Fu, X. et.al. Risk-based pathway for outpatient
penicillin allergy evaluations. J ALLERGY CLIN IMMUNOL PRACT. 2019, Clinical Communications

5. Stevenson, B., Trevenen, M., Klinken, E. et. al. Multicenter Australian Study to Determine Criteria for Low- and High-Risk Penicillin Testing in Outpatients. The Journal of Allergy and Clinical Immunology: In Practice. 2020; Feb. 8 (2): 681-689

6. PENICILLIN ALLERGY DELABELING ALGORITHM. Children's Hospital Colorado. https://www.childrenscolorado.org/globalassets/healthcare-professionals/clinical-pathways/penicillin-delabeling-external.pdf accesses April 22, 2020

7. GRADED CHALLENGE GUIDANCE DOCUMENT. Northwestern Memorial Hospital Illinois
https://asp.nm.org/uploads/9/0/7/8/90789983/nm_graded_challenge_guidance_document_created8.5.19.pdf accessed April 22, 2020

8. Safety of Graded Challenges to Amoxicillin without Penicillin Skin Testing. American Academy of Allergy, Asthma and Immunology. Online: May 2018 https://www.aaaai.org/global/latest-research-summaries/New-Research-from-JACI-In-Practice/amoxicillins accessed April 22, 2020

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOLS FOR TUBERCULOSIS

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOLS FOR TUBERCULOSIS CLINICAL REVIEW TEAM

Susan M. Ray, MD Medical Consultant, Tuberculosis Unit Professor, Emory School of Medicine	**Marcos C. Schechter, MD** Assistant Medical Consultant, TB Unit Asst. Professor Emory School of Medicine
Barbara Lawton, Pharm.D. Pharmacy Manager District 3-2	**Tammy Bowling, RN, BSN** Tuberculosis Coordinator District 1-2
Benjamin Yarn, BA, BS Program Director, Tuberculosis Unit DPH, State TB Office	**Marjorie McDermott, RN, BSN** Tuberculosis Nurse Consultant DPH, State TB Office
Toni Miles, RN, MSN Tuberculosis Program Coordinator/Clinic Manager District 3-3	**Mary Robin Connelly, MMSc.** Manager, Mycobacteriology Georgia Public Health Laboratory
Kim Anita Warren, RN, CLC Tuberculosis Coordinator District 5-2	**Janice Maxwell, RN, BSN** Tuberculosis Coordinator District 9-1
Carolyn Martin, RN Tuberculosis Nurse Consultant DPH, State TB Office	**Donelle Humphrey-Franklin, RPh, MBA** Assistant Pharmacy Director DPH, State Office of Pharmacy
Takiyah Turks, MPH, BSN, RN Quality Management Nurse Consultant, HIV Office, Suite 12-263 GA. DPH, State TB Office	**Titilola Rush, RN, BSN** Tuberculosis Nurse Consultant DPH, State TB Office
Latronda Davis, MPH, BSN, RN Hypertension & Diabetes Nurse Program Manager, Chronic Disease Prevention Section, DPH, State TB Office	**Janet McGruder, MBA, BSN** Immunization Nurse Consultant Education Manager, Infectious Disease & Immunization Program DPH, State TB Office
Kimberley Hazelwood, Pharm.D. Pharmacy Director DPH, State Office of Pharmacy	

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR ACTIVE TUBERCULOSIS (TB) DISEASE AGE 15 AND OVER

DEFINITION

Tuberculosis (TB) is an infectious disease transmitted through the air in droplet nuclei that are produced when a person with active TB disease of the lung or larynx sneezes, coughs, speaks, or sings. Persons breathing air contaminated with these droplet nuclei may become infected with TB.

Generally, a positive culture or positive Nucleic Acid Amplification test (NAAT) for *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* is necessary to confirm the diagnosis of TB disease. However, people being evaluated for TB may be diagnosed based on: a positive sputum/specimen smear for acid-fast bacilli (AFB); lung histology showing necrotizing granulomas with or without AFB; or clinical syndrome, even when a culture or pathologic specimen has not been, or cannot be obtained.

ETIOLOGY

Causative agent of TB is the *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (*M.tb*) complex (*M. tuberculosis, M. bovis, M. africanum, M. microti, M. canetii, M. caprae, M.mungi and M. pinnipedii)*.

SUBJECTIVE

1. May have history of exposure to a known person with TB disease

2. May have history of active TB disease or latent TB infection

3. May have one or more of the following symptoms related to TB:

    a. Productive, prolonged cough (usually more than two- or three-weeks' duration)
    b. Fever
    c. Chest pain or pleuritic pain
    d. Chills
    e. Night sweats
    f. Easily fatigued
    g. Loss of appetite
    h. Weight loss without dieting
    i. Hemoptysis (coughing up blood)
    j. Headache
    k. Muscle/bone/joint pain

    NOTE: A complete medical history and review of current medications is required to determine if there are any

diseases/illnesses present that would require consultation or referral to delegating physician.

OBJECTIVE Physical examination performed per guidelines may reveal the following criteria that are useful in identifying a person with TB disease:

1. Coughing or shortness of breath
2. Fever/sweating
3. Appears ill or fragile
4. Vital signs (height, weight, BMI, blood pressure, respiratory rate)
5. Jaundice of sclera or skin
6. Abdominal tenderness
7. Joint swelling or redness
8. Difficulty walking, tremors
9. Dizziness, syncope, memory loss

ASSESSMENT

1. Pulmonary tuberculosis

OR

2. Extra-pulmonary tuberculosis

OR

3. Person being evaluated for pulmonary tuberculosis

OR

4. Person being evaluated for extra-pulmonary tuberculosis

For patients with the following conditions, consultation with the delegating physician is required for patients to be treated under this protocol. Consultation must be documented in the patient's record.

1. BMI greater than 30 (obese)

2. BMI lower than 17 (underweight)

3. Age greater than 75 years old

4. Diabetes mellitus

5. Pregnant/breastfeeding

6. Liver disease

7. Extra-pulmonary TB not requiring 2nd line TB drugs or use of corticosteroid therapy (Excludes: Central Nervous System (CNS) TB, TB pericarditis: these cases must be referred for physician management.)

8. Allergic reactions not requiring 2nd line TB drugs

9. Decision to extend continuation phase using first-line TB drugs, e.g., bone/joint TB, miliary TB

10. Review of current medications reveal potential for drug-drug interactions with TB medications

11. Treatment interruptions:

    a. During the initial phase of treatment if the lapse is 14 days or more in duration
    b. During the continuation phase of treatment:
        1) If patient is smear positive initially and received less than 80% of the planned total doses for continuation phase
        2) Any patient whose lapse is 3 months or more in duration combined or a lapse of 2 consecutive months

NOTE: For patients with the following conditions, referral to the delegating physician is required and patients cannot be treated under this protocol:

1. TB treatment for children **from birth up to 15 years of age (i.e., age 0 – 14 years)**

2. Any known drug resistance to anti-TB medications

3. Known HIV infection

4. Central Nervous System (CNS) TB

5. TB pericarditis

6. TB patient requiring adjunctive use of corticosteroid therapy

7. Use of once-weekly Isoniazid and Rifapentine in continuation phase for active TB disease

8. Renal insufficiency **(**estimated creatinine clearance less than 70 mL/ min**)**

9. End-stage renal disease on hemodialysis

10. Any TB patient requiring 2nd line TB drugs

11. Treatment failure (positive culture of *M. tuberculosis* after 4 months of treatment)

12. Suspected TB meningitis

PLAN

The desired outcomes of treatment of active TB disease are biologic cure, prevention of drug resistant TB and prevention of transmission of TB to individuals exposed to persons with active TB.

NOTE: Any hospital admissions or deaths of persons with TB disease are to be reported immediately to the **District TB Coordinator who in turn will report to the State TB Office.**

INITIAL DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. If positive results for either an IGRA or a TST cannot be verified (including millimeters [mm] of induration), perform a TST or IGRA. **An IGRA is the preferred method of testing in individuals 2 years of age and older who are foreign born and/or have a history of BCG vaccination. TB skin testing should be performed on children less than 2 years of age.** Vaccination with live viruses may interfere with either of these test reactions. For persons scheduled to receive a TST **or IGRA,** testing should be done as follows:

a. Either on the same day as vaccination with live-virus vaccine

OR

b. 4-6 weeks after the administration of the live-virus vaccine, at least one month after smallpox vaccination

2. Collect three sputum specimens on consecutive days for culture **per procedure for spontaneous sputum collection for TB. Identify patients with dry, non-productive cough for nebulized sputum induction. Follow guidelines for both spontaneous and nebulized sputum in the TB Policy & Procedure Manual, current version. Send specimen collected** to the Georgia Public Health Laboratory (GPHL) in Decatur.

   Use the lab slip found on the GPHL website at **http://dph.georgia.gov/lab.** Look at the related files at the bottom of the page for the GPHL Submission Form. Check *Smear, Culture, and Sensitivity* for all three specimens and *NAAT* for the first specimen only. Do not mark "smear only" unless the patient has had a recent positive culture result.

   The public health nurse (PHN) **or designee** will obtain the first sputum specimen and provide the patient with two additional containers for collection. Instructions should be given to both patient and family on how to properly produce sputum for examinations. At least one of the specimens collected MUST be an early morning specimen as they provide the highest yield for detecting *M.tb*. Ideally the initial specimens should be collected over a three-day period, however multiple samples may be collected in the same day if eight hours has elapsed between collections and at least one is an early morning specimen.

   Specimens **not picked up** the day of collection should be refrigerated. If necessary, the PHN **or designee** should collect, **transport or** mail the specimens. Optimum sputum specimens contain an 8-10 ml sample; however, any amount collected will be tested at the state lab. Specimens received by the lab that contain less than a 0.5 ml sample may have an insufficient quantity of material for all lab testing to be performed.

3. Perform the following baseline blood chemistry labs:

    a. Obtain aspartate aminotransferase (AST), alanine aminotransferase (ALT), bilirubin**,** alkaline phosphatase, CBC with platelet count, serum creatinine, **HgbA1C**, and Hepatitis C antibody for all adults.

Normal HgbA1C	**Below 5.6%**
Pre-Diabetes (HgbA1C)	**5.7% - 6.4%**
Diabetes (HgbA1C)	**6.5% or greater**

    NOTE: If HgbA1C is elevated between 5.6% and 6.4%, refer to Nutritionist or Primary Care Physician for prediabetes education and counseling. If HgbA1C is 6.5% or greater, refer patient to PCP for evaluation and follow up.

    NOTE: If Hepatitis C Ab is positive, refer patient to PCP for evaluation and follow up.

    b. Hepatitis B profile **(HBsAg, HBsAb, HBcAb)** should be obtained for all adults (regardless of birth country) and anyone less than 18 years old who is foreign-born.

    NOTE: If HBsAg is positive, refer to PCP for evaluation and consideration for treatment. If all HB serology results are negative (i.e., the patient is susceptible to Hepatitis B infection), consider Hepatitis B immunization as per ACIP guidelines.

    c. All individuals will be tested for HIV using the opt-out approach. Consent is inferred unless patient declines testing. If HIV positive, collaborate with HIV Program to obtain CD4 T-cell count, then refer to consulting physician.

4. Obtain baseline visual acuity testing and red/green color discrimination for patients being placed on Ethambutol.

5. **Perform a urine pregnancy test, if woman is of childbearing age.**

6. Refer patient to have chest x-ray performed to detect abnormalities compatible with TB disease.

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES' FINDINGS

1. A positive interferon gamma release assay (IGRA) or a positive tuberculin skin test (TST). The absence of a positive IGRA/TST does not rule out the diagnosis of TB disease or latent TB infection, **particularly in immune compromised patients. Online link: https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/4/adult-and-adolescent-opportunistic-infection/325/tb**

2. Positive staining of AFB in sputum, bronchial brush, bronchial wash or lung tissue biopsy. However, a person with TB disease can be smear negative.

3. Chest x-ray showing abnormalities compatible with TB disease. (Radiographic findings of healed, inactive TB and reactivating TB sometimes cannot be distinguished). **See opportunistic infections: https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/4/adult-and-adolescent-opportunistic-infection/325/tb**

4. The following criteria (one or more) are required for a confirmed diagnosis of TB:

    a. Pathology findings compatible with the diagnosis of TB.
    b. Specimens with positive culture or positive NAAT for *M.tb.*

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Order medications for treatment with directly observed therapy (DOT) from drug stock and send a copy of the drug order(s) to the District Pharmacist or District Drug Coordinator. Refer to Tables 1 and 2 for options and dosages.

1. If a patient is REFERRED to the delegating physician for management, the PHN may not dispense ANY of the prescribed medications**.**

2. **PHN may not order or dispense 2nd line TB medications. Referral to the delegating physician and TB program Medical Consultant is required. Follow guidelines for ordering 2nd Line Therapy Authorization, Form is available at https://dph.georgia.gov/tb-public-health-clinic-forms**

Options for Dispensing of a Physician or Practitioner's Drug Order or Prescription:

The Prescribing Physician that meets the Dispensing Practitioner requirements of the Georgia Composite Medical Board can dispense the drugs. The Prescribing Physician may send the prescription to the District Pharmacist or a pharmacy by phone call or E-Scribe. A physician cannot dispense another practitioner's orders

3. **Video direct observed therapy (VDOT)**

Carefully selected patients meeting established minimum criteria may be eligible to receive their medications via VDOT. In order to perform VDOT the healthcare worker observes the patient take their medication via smartphone, laptop, or desktop. See Tuberculosis Policy and Procedure Manual for additional information.

Table 1: Regimen Options - Treatment of Patients with Drug-Susceptible TB

Option	Total Duration (Months)	Initial Phase		Continuation Phase[8]		Comments
		Drugs	**Interval & Dose # (minimal duration)**	**Drugs**	**Interval & Dose # (minimal duration)**	
1	6	Isoniazid Rifampin Pyrazinamide Ethambutol	Daily DOT for 40 doses (8 wks.)	**Regimen (1a) INH/RIF** **OR**	**DOT - 7 days/week for 126 doses (18 weeks)** **OR**	Regimen must be directly observed. Continue Ethambutol until susceptibility to Isoniazid and Rifampin is obtained via drug susceptibility results.
				Regimen (1b) INH/RIF **OR**	***DOT- 5 days/week for 90 doses (18 weeks)** **OR**	
				Regimen (1c) INH/RIF	**Thrice-weekly DOT for 54 doses (18 weeks) is preferred treatment**	
Pyridoxine (Vitamin B6) 25 - 50 mg PO daily to prevent the development of Isoniazid-induced peripheral neuropathy.						

INH=Isoniazid RIF=Rifampin PZA=Pyrazinamide EMB=Ethambutol Vitamin B6=Pyridoxine

NOTE:
a. ***Daily DOT = 5 days/week (Monday through Friday). Self-administered doses (including those on weekends) will not be counted toward the total doses. 5 daily doses of DOT equal 3 thrice-weekly doses of DOT. **Intermittent therapy is not recommended for HIV (+) individuals.**
b. Split dosing should be avoided.
c. Rifamate, a fixed combination of Rifampin 300 mg, and Isoniazid 150 mg, may be used to minimize the number of pills. Intermittent dosing is not recommended with fixed combination medications.
d. Refer to current drug reference or drug package insert for a complete list of adverse drug
e. reactions and drug interaction.

[8] TB treatment may be extended beyond 6 months minimal duration as determined by consultation with and documentation from delegating physician.

Table 2: First-Line TB Drugs Dosages

Drugs	Adult Dose based on body weight in kilograms (kg)[9]		Adverse Reactions
	Daily	Thrice-Weekly (preferred over twice weekly)	
Isoniazid	300 mg (5 mg/kg max. dose 300 mg) **No Less than 300mg/day**	900 mg (15 mg/kg max. dose 900 mg)	• Gastrointestinal (GI) upset • Liver enzyme elevation • Acute hepatitis • Peripheral neuropathy • Mild effects on central nervous system • Drug interactions
Rifampin	600 mg	600 mg	• Orange discoloration of body fluids and secretions • Drug interactions • GI upset • Hepatitis • Easy bruising/ bleeding • Influenza-like symptoms • Rash
Pyrazinamide[10]	40-55 kg: 1000 mg 56-75 kg: 1500 mg 76+ kg: 2000 mg	40-55 kg: 1500 mg 56-75 kg: 2500 mg 76+ kg: 3000 mg	• GI upset • Joint aches • Hepatitis • Rash • Hyperuricemia • Gout (rare)
Ethambutol	40-55 kg: 800 mg 56-75 kg: 1200 mg 76+ kg: 1600 mg	40-55 kg: 1200 mg 56-75 kg: 2000 mg 76+ kg: 2400 mg	• Optic neuritis

9 Formula used to convert pounds to kilograms: Divide pounds by 2.2 to get kilograms. *Example: Patient weighs 154 pounds ÷ 2.2 = 70 kilograms.*

10 Calculate Pyrazinamide and Ethambutol doses using actual body weight. NOTE: Round up fractions of a dose to the nearest whole number. Obese patients' (BMI over 30), underweight patients' (BMI under 17) and adults over 75 years dosing should be determined in collaboration with the district delegating/contract TB physician.

NOTE: Ethambutol and Pyrazinamide dosage adjustment may be needed if there is renal impairment. Patients with estimated creatinine clearance less than 70 mL/min or those with end-stage renal disease on dialysis are considered to be persons with complicated TB disease and dosing should be REFERRED to the district contract TB physician or delegating physician for care; a patient with these conditions cannot be managed using this protocol.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts)

Education/communication should use methods adapted to patient's cultural and linguistic background. Provide education to the patient and his/her family, when family is available and document in the patient record.

1. The *"12 Points of Tuberculosis (TB) Patient Education"* and the *"Patient Tuberculosis Education Record"* is located on the TB web pages at http://dph.georgia.gov/sites/dph.georgia.gov/files/TB-ClinicForm12_Points_PtEd.pdf

    a. Transmission of Tuberculosis
    b. Differences between latent TB infection (LTBI) and active TB disease
    c. Progression of LTBI to active TB disease
    d. Signs and symptoms of TB disease
    e. **Importance of HIV testing and greater risk of progression to active TB if HIV infected**
    f. Respiratory isolation and use of masks
    g. Infectious period
    h. Importance of chemotherapy as prescribed
    i. Side effects and adverse medication reactions
    j. Directly observed therapy
    k. Importance of regular medical assessments
    l. Importance of contact identification

2. **For women on Rifamycin (Rifampin, Rifabutin, Rifapentine), review the importance of using an alternative or back-up method of birth control such as condoms, a copper-bearing IUD or diaphragm. Advise patients that Rifamycin use can reduce the effectiveness of combined oral contraceptives, progestin-only oral contraceptives, Levonorgestrel implants, Depo-Provera, the patch and ring**.

3. The patient's immunization status. Assess and refer or administer vaccines indicated according to the current Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP) childhood and adult immunization schedule.

   For persons scheduled to receive a TST **or IGRA**, testing should be done either on the same day as vaccination with live-virus vaccine OR 4-6 weeks after the administration of the live-virus vaccine and at least one month after smallpox vaccination**.**

   See the Georgia Immunization Program Manual, Recommended Schedule and Guidelines, for current ACIP schedules and administration guidelines for each vaccine. The Georgia Immunization Manual may be accessed online at **http://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-section**

4. **Mental health assessment: If mental health problems are known, suspected, or patient answers "yes" to two or more related screening questions on F-3121R, send referral to the appropriate mental health agency or follow district policy.**

5. **Pre-diabetes education and counseling recommended for HgbA1C 5.7% or greater. Refer patient to Nutritionist, Primary Care Physician, or provide additional counseling which may be assessed online at http://dph.Georgia.gov/diabetes**

FOLLOW-UP

NOTE: Any hospital admissions or deaths of persons with TB disease are to be reported immediately **to the District TB Coordinator who will then report to the State TB Program.**

1. Continued patient management/follow-up by a case management team **comprising the patient**, PHN, physician and others determined by an individual needs assessment. Refer to the *TB Program Policy and Procedure Manual, **current edition*** and *Tuberculosis Nursing: A Comprehensive Guide to Patient Care, 2nd Edition* located in each county health department and "Scaled Goal Matrix Tool: Uniform Clinical Performance Measures for TB Nurse Case Managers, 2006" located on the TB web pages at **https://dph.georgia.gov/tb-public-health-clinic-forms**

2. After the nursing assessment, the PHN will use the *"Case*

Management Timeline – A Tracking Form for TB Medical Records" located on the TB web pages at **https://dph.georgia.gov/tb-public-health-clinic-forms** to determine documents to forward for review by the district TB coordinator, the district's contract physician and the state office.

3. Review the respiratory isolation status for the patient**.** All 3 of the following criteria must be met before isolation can be discontinued: patient has three consecutive negative AFB sputum smear results; patient has received standard anti-tuberculosis treatment for a minimum of two weeks; and patient has demonstrated clinical improvement.

   After the baseline 3 consecutive sputum specimens, collect follow-up sputum samples as follows:

   a. You may collect up to three sputum samples in a week until three consecutive negative AFB smears are obtained to determine when to discontinue respiratory isolation. Only one sputum sample that week should be marked on the lab form for smear/culture/sensitivity. Any additional sputum samples of the same week should be examined for AFB smear only.

   b. After three consecutively negative sputum smears are obtained, collect only one sputum specimen for smear/culture/sensitivity weekly until culture converts to negative.

   c. After sputum culture converts to negative, collect one sputum specimen monthly thereafter for smear/culture/sensitivity.

   d. Collect one sputum specimen at 60 days after medication treatment initiation for smear/culture/sensitivity test. A positive culture at this point identifies patients at increased risk for relapse. If the culture is still positive, refer patient for treatment to the contract physician.

   e. If the patient is unable to produce sputum **spontaneously, attempt to collect using nebulized sputum induction guidelines per procedure in the TB Policy & Procedure Manual, current version.** Document the collection attempt.

4. Monitor patient monthly for adverse drug reactions, drug-drug

interactions, drug-food interactions, drug-lab interactions, infectious status, and clinical and bacteriologic response to therapy.

5. Provide HIV test results with post-test counseling to patient and, if positive, appropriate referrals to HIV care. Seek confirmation that patient kept referral appointment for HIV care. If assistance is needed in linking patients to HIV care, please see the following website: https://www.gacapus.com/r/resource-directory-2/
   A Georgia Ryan White HIV Clinic list can also be found at https://dph.georgia.gov/care-services

6. Conduct contact identification following the *Tuberculosis Policy and Procedure Manual,* the *Tuberculosis Nursing: A Comprehensive Guide to Patient Care, 2nd Edition,* and the *CDC Guidelines for the Investigation of Contacts of Persons with Infectious Tuberculosis* (current edition).

7. Perform the following blood chemistry tests monthly to monitor reactions to TB drugs:

   a. AST and ALT
   b. Bilirubin
   c. Alkaline phosphatase
   d. CBC with platelets
   e. Serum creatinine monthly only if there are abnormalities at baseline or there are clinical reasons to obtain the measurements (e.g., hepatitis B or C virus infection, alcohol abuse, and abnormal kidney function)

   NOTE: Discontinue Isoniazid and/or Rifampin and report immediately to the consulting physician if any of the following occur:

   1) AST/ALT levels equal to or greater than 3 times the upper limit of normal with symptoms of adverse reactions.
   2) AST/ALT levels equal to or greater than 5 times the upper limit of normal in an asymptomatic patient.
   3) Patient reporting symptoms of adverse reactions.

8. Monitor the vision of patients taking Ethambutol by providing vision checks monthly, including visual acuity and red/green color discrimination.

9. Adherence should methodically be assessed monthly, at a minimum.

10. Observe the patient for Isoniazid-induced peripheral neuropathy (e.g., tingling, numbness, pain) during therapy. If present, report to the delegating physician immediately**.**

11. If patient is a woman of child-bearing age, assess date of last menstrual period monthly. Perform pregnancy test as needed.

NOTE: Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed and/or the TB nurse protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

1. **For patients with the following conditions, REFERRAL to the delegating physician is required and patients cannot be treated under this protocol.**

   a. TB treatment for children **from birth up to 15 years of age (i.e., age 0 – 14 years)**
   b. Any known drug resistance to anti-TB medications
   c. Known HIV infection
   d. Central Nervous System (CNS) TB
   e. TB pericarditis
   f. TB patient requiring adjunctive use of corticosteroid therapy
   g. Use of once-weekly Isoniazid and Rifapentine in continuation phase for active TB disease
   h. Renal insufficiency with estimated creatinine clearance less than 70 ml/min
   i. End-stage renal disease on hemodialysis
   j. Any TB patient requiring 2nd line TB drugs
   k. Treatment failure (positive culture of *M. tb* after 4 months of treatment)
   l. Treatment of Suspected TB Meningitis

      NOTE: Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed and/or the TB nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

2. Refer patient to a licensed dietitian if indicated. This will be especially important if the patient has a history of drug or alcohol abuse, is pregnant or breastfeeding, is HIV positive, has gastrointestinal side effects from TB drugs **or other medications,** has history of eating disorder or **if BMI is greater than 30 or less than 17.**

3. If patient needs housing, food or other frontline services, consult with the Georgia TB Program's Social Worker.

4. If smoker or tobacco user, refer to a local cessation program and/or the Georgia Tobacco Quit Line, 1-877-270-STOP (7867**).**

5. If substance abuse **is** known or suspected, refer for appropriate counseling**. If mental health problems are known or suspected, refer to appropriate agency for counseling and intervention.**

Table 3: TREATMENT OF TB - DRUG INTERACTIONS

Obtain and record a complete list of current prescription medications (including dose and frequency) from each LTBI and TB patient. Check for interactions between each of their medications and the planned LTBI/TB medications using a current drug reference. We recommend using Lexicomp, as all public health staff has access to this resource: https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/home;jsessionid=de081f2350de3dbc91e. The examples listed below are not exhaustive and do not substitute for the steps outlined above.

MEDICATION INTERACTIONS – RIFAMPIN and other Rifamycins (Rifapentine, Rifabutin)

Some Common Drugs/Drug Classes	**Effect on the co-administered drug**
Anticoagulants (Warfarin, Coumadin)	↓ serum concentration
Sulfonylureas (Glipizide, Glyburide, Glimepiride)	↓ serum concentration
Thiazolidinediones (Rosiglitazone, Pioglitazone)	↓ serum concentration
Contraceptives (oral, implants, patch, ring, injections)	↓ serum concentration
Fluconazole, Voriconazole, Itraconazole	↓ serum concentration
Corticosteroids	↓ serum concentration
Narcotics/analgesics (Methadone)	↓ serum concentration
Atovaquone (Mepron)	↓ serum concentration
Dapsone	↓ serum concentration
Cyclosporine	↓ serum concentration
Quinidine	↓ serum concentration
Lamotrigine (Lamictal)	↓ serum concentration
Phenytoin (Dilantin)	↓ serum concentration
Valproic acid and derivatives (Depakene, Depakote)	↓ serum concentration
Buspirone (Buspar)	↓ serum concentration
Thyroid hormone replacement	↓ serum concentration

DRUG INTERACTIONS – ISONIAZID

Name/type	**Effect on the co-administered drug**

Diazepam (Valium)	↓ serum concentration ↑ half-life
Phenytoin (Dilantin)	↑ serum concentration ↑ toxicity
Carbamazepine (Tegretol)	↑ serum concentration ↑ toxicity
Citalopram (Celexa)	↑ serum concentration ↑ toxicity
Alcohol	↑ risk of Isoniazid-**induced** hepatitis
Antacids	should be taken two hours apart, otherwise Isoniazid will have no effect

HIV: Antiretroviral therapy and TB medications

The information on interactions with Rifampin and HIV antiretroviral therapy (ART) is constantly changing; all people living with HIV (PLWH) should be referred to the contract physician for care. In general, only certain HIV medications can be used and Rifampin may be replaced by Rifabutin if appropriate to accommodate choice of ART. Rifabutin is on the formulary at the state pharmacy.

Recommended resource for HIV treatment guidelines and medication interactions: https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/1/adult-and-adolescent-arv/284/pi-drug-interactions

REFERENCES

1. POZ: HIV medications, https://www.poz.com/basics/hiv-basics/hiv-medications

2. American Diabetes Association. Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes 2019, Diabetes Care, Vol. 42, Suppl. 1, S1 – S193, January 1, 2019.

3. The Atlanta Tuberculosis Coalition, *Georgia TB Reference Guide*, 2014. (Current)

4. Payam Nahid, Susan E. Dorman, Narges Alipanah, Pennan M. Barry, Jan L. Brozek, Adithya Cattamanchi, Lelia H. Chaisson, Richard E. Chaisson, Charles L. Daley, Malgosia Grzemska, Julie M. Higashi, Christine S. Ho, Philip C. Hopewell, Salmaan A. Keshavjee, Christian Lienhardt, Richard Menzies, Cynthia Merrifield, Masahiro Narita, Rick O'Brien, Charles A. Peloquin, Ann Raftery, Jussi Saukkonen, H. Simon Schaaf, Giovanni Sotgiu, Jeffrey R. Starke, Giovanni Battista Migliori, Andrew Vernon; Executive Summary: Official American Thoracic Society/Centers for Disease Control and Prevention/Infectious Diseases Society of America Clinical Practice Guidelines: Treatment of Drug-Susceptible Tuberculosis, *Clinical Infectious Diseases*, Volume 63, Issue 7, 1 October 2016, Pages 853–867, https://doi.org/10.1093/cid/ciw566

5. CDC, Hamborsky J, Kroger A, Wolfe C, eds., *Epidemiology and Prevention of Vaccine-Preventable Diseases*, 13th ed., Washington D.C., Public Health Foundation, 2015.

6. Panel on Opportunistic Infections in HIV-Infected Adults and Adolescents. Guidelines for the prevention and treatment of opportunistic infections in HIV-infected adults and adolescents: recommendations from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, the National Institutes of Health, and the HIV Medicine Association of the Infectious Diseases Society of America. Available at http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/contentfiles/lvguidelines/adult_oi.pdf. (Accessed February 2019)

7. CDC, "Guidelines for Preventing the Transmission of Mycobacterium Tuberculosis in Health-Care Settings," *MMWR*, Vol. 54, No. RR-17, Dec. 30, 2005. (Current)

8. CDC, "Guidelines for the Investigation of Contacts of Persons with Infectious Tuberculosis," *MMWR,* Vol. 54, No. RR-15, Dec. 16, *2005.* (Current)

9. CDC, "Revised Recommendations for HIV Testing of Adults, Adolescents and Pregnant Women in Health Care Settings," *MMWR*, Vol. 55, No. RR-14, Sep. 22, 2006. (Current)

10. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention and Association of Public Health Laboratories. Laboratory Testing for the Diagnosis of HIV Infection: Updated

Recommendations. Available at http://stacks.cdc.gov/view/cdc/23447 Published June 27, 2014. Accessed February 2019.

11. National Center for HIV/AIDS, Viral Hepatitis, and TB Prevention (U.S.). Division of HIV/AIDS Prevention. Association of Public Health Laboratories. 2018 Quick reference guide: Recommended laboratory HIV testing algorithm for serum or plasma specimens. https://stacks.cdc.gov/view/cdc/50872

12. CDC, "Tuberculosis Associated with Blocking Agents Against Tumor Necrosis Factor-Alpha-California," *MMWR*, Vol. 53, No. 30, Aug. 6, 2004. (Current)

13. CDC. "Updated Guidelines for Using Interferon Gamma Release Assays to Detect *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* Infection — United States, 2010" MMWR 2010; 59 (RR5); 1-25.

14. Daugherty-Gibson, J.; Field, K.; Boutotte, J.; and Wilce, M., Developing a case management model for ensuring completion of TB therapy. *The International Journal of Tuberculosis and Lung Disease*, 10, S105, 2002. (Current)

15. Georgia Department of Public Health, Division of Health Protection, Immunization and Infectious Disease Program, Tuberculosis Office. *Tuberculosis Program Evaluation Guidelines.* 2012. (Current)

16. Georgia Department of Public Health, Division of Health Protection, Immunization and Infectious Disease Program, Tuberculosis Office. *Tuberculosis Policy and Procedure Manual.* 2014. (Current)

17. HIV Insite, Database of Antiretroviral Drug Interactions http://arv.ucsf.edu/insite?page=ar-00-02 (February 13, 2019).

18. **Heartland National Tuberculosis Center, Case Studies in Tuberculosis: Nurse Case Management Training Tools for Patient Success. http://www.heartlandntbc.org/assets/products/case_studies_tb_ncm_training_tools.pdf (February 13, 2019)**

19. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Core Curriculum on Tuberculosis – What the Clinician Should Know, 6th Edition, 2013 (Current)

20. **World Health Organization (WHO), *Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use*, 5th ed., *2015,* https://www.who.int/reproductivehealth/publications/family_planning/MEC-5/en/ (February 13, 2019)**

21. **Aidsinfo: Guidelines for the prevention and treatment of opportunistic infections in HIV infected adults and adolescents, https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/4/adult-and-adolescent-opportunistic-infection/325/tb; last updated September (March 14, 2019)**

22. **TB/Diabetes: Key Messages for TB & Diabetes, Flipchart Book; collaboration between Virginia Department of Health and University of Virginia, http://www.vdh.virginia.gov/content/uploads/sites/112/2018/07/English-Key-Messages-for-TB-Diabetes.pdf**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR LATENT TUBERCULOSIS INFECTION (LTBI) AND PRESUMPTIVE LTBI

DEFINITION

LTBI means that a person has been infected with M.tuberculosis (M.tb) but has no clinical or radiographic evidence of active TB disease. Individuals who are infected but do not have active disease are not infectious but, if not adequately treated, are at risk for developing disease and becoming infectious in the future.

Presumptive LTBI treatment is the practice of providing window period prophylaxis treatment to high-risk persons exposed to infectious people with TB disease. This means, when these exposed persons have an initial negative tuberculin skin test (TST) reaction (less than 5mm induration) or negative interferon gamma release assay (IGRA) test result and the test was performed less than eight weeks from the person's last exposure to a person with TB disease, treatment for LTBI is started until a follow-up TST/IGRA is negative. The window period is the time span between the date of a negative initial TST or IGRA and the date of the follow-up TST or IGRA.

Exposed persons at particularly high-risk of developing TB disease once infected with *M.tb* include: children less than 5 years of age and persons with compromised immune systems; compromised by HIV infection, medications (Prednisone, cancer chemotherapy, anti-rejection drugs for cancer therapy, tumor necrosis factor alpha agents antagonists) and certain medical conditions (diabetes mellitus, silicosis, end stage renal disease, cancer of the head and neck, reticuloendothelial diseases [e.g., lymphoma, leukemia], gastric or jejunoileal bypass surgery). These persons would benefit from presumptive LTBI therapy.

ETIOLOGY

Causative agent of TB is the *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (*M.tb*) complex (*M. tuberculosis, M. bovis, M. africanum, M. microti, M. canetii, M. caprae, M.mungi and M. pinnipedii)*.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient may have a history of known exposure to a person with TB.

2. Patient has no symptoms of TB disease.

NOTE: A complete medical history and review of current medications is required to determine if there are any diseases/illnesses present that would require consultation or referral to delegating physician.

OBJECTIVE

1. Physical examination performed per programmatic guidelines shows

no signs of active TB disease present.

NOTE: If signs and symptoms of TB disease are evident, patient should have 3 consecutive negative sputum smears and negative cultures with evaluation by a clinician**/**delegating physician before starting treatment for LTBI.

ASSESSMENT

1. Latent tuberculosis infection

2. Presumptive latent tuberculosis infection during the window period

PLAN

The desired outcome of treatment is to decrease high-risk persons' chance of developing active TB disease once diagnosed with latent TB infection.

NOTE: Any hospital admissions or deaths of persons with TB disease are to be reported immediately **to the District TB Coordinator who will then report to the State TB Program.**

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. If positive results for either an IGRA or a TST cannot be verified (including millimeters [mm] of induration), perform a TST or IGRA. **An IGRA is the preferred method of testing in individuals greater than or equal to 2 years of age who are foreign born and/or have a history of BCG vaccination. TB skin testing should be performed on children less than 2 years of age.** Vaccination with live viruses may interfere with either of these test reactions. For persons scheduled to receive a TST **or IGRA, testing should be done as follows:**

    a. Either on the same day as vaccination with live-virus vaccine

    OR

    b. 4-6 weeks after the administration of the live-virus vaccine. At least one month after smallpox vaccination.

2. Perform the following baseline blood chemistry labs:

    a. Obtain aspartate aminotransferase (AST), alanine aminotransferase (ALT), bilirubin, **Hemoglobin A1C**, and Hepatitis C antibody for all adults.

Normal (HgbA1C)	**Below 5.6%**
Pre-Diabetes (HgbA1C)	**5.7% - 6.4%**
Diabetes (HgbA1C)	**6.5% or greater**

Note: If Hemoglobin A1C (HgbA1C) is elevated, between 5.6% - 6.4%, refer to nutritionist or primary care physician for prediabetes education and counseling and if equal or greater than 6.5%, refer patient to primary care physician for evaluation and follow up.

Note: If Hepatitis C Ab is positive, refer patient to primary care physician for evaluation and follow up.

b. Hepatitis B profile **(HBsAg, HBsAb, HBsAb)** should be obtained for all adults (regardless of birth country) and anyone less than 18 years old who is foreign-born.

Note: If **HBsAg** is positive, refer to primary care physician for evaluation and consideration for treatment. **If all Hepatitis B serology results are negative (i.e., the patient is susceptible to Hepatitis B infection), consider Hepatitis B immunization as per ACIP guidelines.**

3. All individuals 13 years and older will be tested for HIV using the opt-out approach. Consent is inferred unless patient declines testing. Individuals younger than 13 years old should also be tested for HIV using the opt-out approach if the individual is sexually active or abuses drugs. If HIV positive, collaborate with HIV Program to obtain CD4 T-cell count, then refer to consulting physician.

4. **Urine pregnancy test, if woman is of childbearing age and sexually active.**

5. Baseline complete blood count with platelets for patients on the Isoniazid-Rifapentine regimen and Rifampin regimen.

6. Chest x-ray performed to detect abnormalities compatible with TB disease. (Radiographic findings of healed, inactive TB and reactivating TB sometimes cannot be distinguished).

7. If any lab results are abnormal, consult with delegating physician.

NOTE: **With the exception of HIV testing**, the baseline lab measurements are not mandatory for children less than **15 years** of age, unless a complicating medical condition (e.g., HIV, liver disease, renal disease, cardiac disease), foreign born requiring Hepatitis B testing or high-risk lifestyle is known or suspected.

LABORATORY FINDINGS

1. Chest x-ray negative for evidence of tuberculosis disease.

2. Absence of clinical signs of TB disease, both pulmonary and extra-pulmonary.

3. Patients with the following conditions/illnesses should be treated for LTBI if they have a positive TST **(5 mm or greater)** and/or positive IGRA:

    a. HIV-positive
    b. Recently exposed to a person with TB disease
    c. Fibrotic changes on chest x-ray consistent with old TB
    d. Organ transplants recipients
    e. Candidates being considered for treatment with tumor necrosis factor (TNF) antagonists such as injectable Remicade [Infliximab] for rheumatologic conditions or ulcerative colitis prior to initiation of therapy)
    f. Persons receiving the equivalent of equal to or greater than 15mg daily of prednisone for 1 month or longer

4. Patients with the following conditions/illnesses should be treated for LTBI if they have a positive TST **(10 mm or greater)** and/or positive IGRA:

    a. People who have lived or spent time in high prevalence countries.
    b. Injection drug users.
    c. Residents and employees of high-risk congregate settings (e.g., correctional facilities, nursing homes and other long-term care facilities, homeless shelters, hospitals and other health care facilities).
    d. Mycobacteriology laboratory personnel.
    e. Persons with clinical conditions that place them at high risk of progression to TB disease (e.g., substance abuse, infection with *M.tb* within the past two years, diabetes, hematologic or

reticuloendothelial malignancies, chronic renal failure, post-gastrectomy, silicosis, immunosuppressive therapy, chronic malabsorption syndromes)

f. Children less than 5 years of age, or children and adolescents exposed to adults in high-risk groups.

5. Patients with no risk factors should be treated for LTBI if they have a positive TST (**15mm or greater**) and/or positive IGRA.

6. Persons exposed to a person with TB disease may be treated for presumptive LTBI. Exposed persons with suppressed immune systems due to HIV infection, prolonged corticosteroid therapy, organ transplant and/or use of tumor necrosis factor alpha inhibitors should be treated for presumptive LTBI with a full course of LTBI treatment, regardless if follow-up TST/IGRA is negative.

7. There is also a group of people that can be treated for presumptive LTBI but do not have to complete a full course of LTBI treatment (as discussed above). The following exposed persons being treated for presumptive LTBI treatment can stop treatment if the follow-up TST/IGRA is negative:

    a. Child less than 5 years of age.
    b. Person diagnosed with diabetes mellitus, silicosis, end stage renal disease, gastrectomy, jejunoileal bypass, leukemia, lymphoma, and/or cancer of the head or neck.

NOTE: Treatment of LTBI or presumptive LTBI might NOT be indicated for persons likely to be infected with drug-resistant *M.tb*. These persons should be referred to the delegating physician.

NOTE: Treatment of LTBI might NOT be completed on persons who have been exposed to a person later found not to have TB. The Public Health Nurse (PHN) should consult with the delegating physician for care.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Order medications for treatment from drug stock and send a copy of the drug order(s) to the District Pharmacist or District Drug Coordinator. Refer to Tables 1 and 2 for options and dosages.

1. If a patient is referred to the delegating physician, the PHN may not dispense ANY of the prescribed medications**.** A pharmacist or dispensing ***practitioner*** can dispense the TB medications, or the prescription may be called in **or E-scribed** to a pharmacy by the **prescribing** physician.

2. PHN may dispense Rifapentine when given in conjunction with Isoniazid for LTBI treatment. PHN may not dispense 2nd line TB medications. If 2nd line medications are ordered, a pharmacist or dispensing practitioner can dispense the 2nd line TB medications, or the prescription may be called in **or E-scribed** to a pharmacy by the **prescribing** physician.

VIDEO DIRECTLY OBSERVED THERAPY (VDOT)

Carefully selected patients meeting established minimum criteria may be eligible to receive their medications via VDOT. In order to perform VDOT the healthcare worker observes the patient take their medication via smartphone, laptop, or desktop. See Tuberculosis Policy and Procedure Manual for additional information.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

(Reinforce pertinent information with handouts).

Education/communication should use methods adapted to patient's cultural and linguistic background. Provide education to the patient and his/her family, when family is available, and document in the patient record.

1. The *"12 Points of Tuberculosis (TB) Patient Education"* and the *"Patient Tuberculosis Education Record"* is located on the TB web pages at http://dph.georgia.gov/sites/dph.georgia.gov/files/TB-

ClinicForm12_Points_PtEd.pdf

a. Transmission of Tuberculosis
b. Differences between latent TB infection (LTBI) and active TB disease
c. Progression of LTBI to active TB disease
d. Signs and symptoms of TB disease
e. Importance of HIV testing and greater risk of progression to active TB if HIV infected
f. Importance of chemotherapy as prescribed
g. Side effects and adverse medication reactions
h. Directly observed therapy (if necessary)
i. Importance of regular medical assessments

2. **For women on Rifamycin (Rifampin, Rifabutin, Rifapentine), review the importance of using an alternative or back-up method of birth control such as condoms, a copper-bearing IUD or diaphragm. Advise patients that Rifamycin use can reduce the effectiveness of combined oral contraceptives, progestin-only oral contraceptives, Levonorgestrel implants, Depo-Provera, the patch and ring**.

3. The patient's immunization status. Assess and refer or administer vaccines indicated **per** the current Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP) childhood and adult immunization schedule.

   For persons scheduled to receive a TST, testing should be done either on the same day as vaccination with live-virus vaccine **OR** 4-6 weeks after the administration of the live-virus vaccine and at least one month after smallpox vaccination.

   See the Georgia Immunization Program Manual, Recommended Schedule and Guidelines, for current ACIP schedules and administration guidelines for each vaccine. The Georgia Immunization Manual may be accessed online at http://dph.georgia.gov/immunization-section

FOLLOW-UP

NOTE: Children (under the age of 14 years) are not required to have routine follow-up labs regardless of treatment regimen.

1. At eight to ten weeks after initial TST/IGRA, a follow-up TST/IGRA is to be performed on exposed persons on window period prophylaxis. If the follow-up TST/IGRA is positive, treatment is to continue until a full course of LTBI treatment is completed.

   If the follow-up TST/IGRA is negative in an exposed person who is immunosuppressed, (due to HIV infection, prolonged corticosteroid therapy, organ transplant and/or use of tumor necrosis factor alpha inhibitors) a full course of LTBI treatment is required.

   If the follow-up TST/IGRA is negative in any other exposed person, then the window period treatment may be discontinued.

2. Monitor patients receiving LTBI therapy at least monthly for adverse drug reactions (such as hepatitis, peripheral neuropathy), drug-drug interactions, drug-food interactions, drug-lab interactions, adherence**.**

   NOTE: Any hospital admissions or deaths of persons with TB disease are to be reported immediately **to District TB Coordinator who will then report to the State TB Program.**

   a. Observe the patient for Isoniazid-induced peripheral neuropathy (e.g., tingling, numbness, pain) during therapy. If present, refer to the delegating physician immediately**.**

   b. Symptoms of hepatitis (nausea, loss of appetite, vomiting, persistently dark urine, yellowish skin, malaise, unexplained elevated temperature for more than three days, abdominal tenderness and/or right upper quadrant tenderness). If present, put all LTBI medications on hold, obtain AST/ALT levels and refer to the delegating physician immediately.

3. Provide HIV test results with post-test counseling to patient and, if positive, appropriate referrals to HIV care. Seek confirmation that patient kept referral appointment for HIV care. See the following website: https://www.gacapus.com/r/resource-directory-2/
   A Georgia Ryan White HIV Clinic list can also be found at

https://dph.georgia.gov/care-services

4. Obtain monthly AST/ALT for patients considered at risk of developing hepatotoxicity. These patients include those with:

    a. baseline liver test abnormalities
    b. Continued regular alcohol use
    c. Known liver disorders
    d. Postpartum[11] women

5. Hold all TB medications and refer to the delegating physician immediately if:

    a. AST/ALT levels equal to or greater than 3 times the upper limit of normal with symptoms of adverse reactions.
    b. AST/ALT levels equal to or greater than 5 times the upper limit of normal in an asymptomatic patient.
    c. Patient reporting symptoms of adverse reactions.

    NOTE: Any hospital admissions or deaths due to adverse reactions are to be reported immediately **to the District TB Coordinator who will report to the State TB Program.**

6. **Obtain monthly complete blood count (with platelets) for patients receiving the Isoniazid-Rifapentine or Rifampin regimen. Hold all TB medications and refer to delegating physician if any results are abnormal.**

7. If patient is a woman of child-bearing age, assess date of last menstrual period monthly. Perform pregnancy test as needed. If pregnancy test ever positive, hold all TB medications and refer to delegating physician immediately.

8. A clinical symptom screen is required for all patients who have a lapse in treatment. A repeat chest x-ray/evaluation is required for patients who are symptomatic or who have had a lapse in LTBI therapy for two months or more.

11 Period of time immediately after the birth of an infant through 6 weeks. Pregnant women, particularly African-American and Hispanic women, may be at increased risk for fatal hepatitis associated with Isoniazid, per some reports. This risk may be increased during the postpartum period. These patients should be closely monitored for adverse reactions throughout the course of treatment. The risk of hepatitis from Isoniazid in pregnant/postpartum women does NOT preclude treatment of LTBI if these women are at extremely high risk for developing active TB (e.g., in close contact of person with TB disease, HIV positive, or with documented recent infection or conversion).

9. **Identify those patients who are eligible for VDOT per the VDOT policy in the current edition of the TB Policy & Procedure Manual, current version.**

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. For patients with the following conditions, CONSULTATION with the delegating physician is required for patients to be treated under this protocol. Consultation must be documented in the patient's record.

    a. Diabetes mellitus
    b. Liver disease
    c. Allergic reactions not requiring 2nd line TB drugs
    d. Review of current medications reveal potential for drug-drug interactions with TB medications.
    e. Treatment interruptions of two months or more
    f. HIV positive or refuses HIV testing
    g. Any abnormal lab results

    NOTE: Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed and/or the LTBI nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

2. For patients with the following conditions, REFERRAL to the delegating physician is required. These patients would no longer be able to be treated under this protocol.

    a. Pregnant, breastfeeding or postpartum women
    b. Patients experiencing adverse reactions
    c. Patients with known exposure to a person with drug resistant TB disease
    d. Children age **2 years and older** who are close contacts for whom the Isoniazid and Rifapentine regimen may be considered because it offers practical advantages or because the child is unlikely to complete 9 months of daily Isoniazid.

    NOTE: Consult delegating physician when further medical guidance is needed and LTBI nursing protocol is not applicable for therapeutic treatment of patient.

3. If smoker or tobacco user, refer to a local cessation program and/or the Georgia Tobacco Quit Line, 1-877-270-STOP (7867).

4. If **mental health** or substance abuse is known or suspected, refer for appropriate counseling for **intervention and follow up**.

5. If patient needs housing, food or other frontline services, consult with the Georgia TB Program's Social Worker

TABLE A: LTBI MEDICATIONS IN PREFERRED PRIORITY RANKINGS

Priority rank*	Regimen	Recommendation Grade**
Preferred	3 months isoniazid plus Rifapentine given once weekly	Strong
Preferred	4 months Rifampin given daily	Strong
Preferred	3 months Isoniazid plus Rifampin given daily	Conditional
		Conditional
Alternative	6 months Isoniazid given daily	Strong[§]
		Conditional
Alternative	9 months Isoniazid given daily	Conditional

Modified from Table 3 in "Guidelines for the Treatment of LTBI: Recommendations of the NTCA and CDC, 2020. MMWR Recomm Rep 2020; 69(no, RR-1).

Abbreviation: HIV = human immunodeficiency virus

* *Preferred:* excellent tolerability and efficacy, shorter treatment duration, higher completion rates than longer regimens and therefore higher effectiveness; *alternative:* excellent efficacy but concerns regarding longer treatment duration, lower completion rates, and therefore lower effectiveness.

** ***Strong***: strong GRADE recommendation for a regimen was made if the panel concluded that the desirable consequences of the intervention outweighed the undesirable consequences, the **majority of well-informed patients would choose the regimen**, and the evidence was at least moderate quality; ***conditional****:* conditional GRADE recommendation was made for a regimen when uncertainty existed regarding whether the desirable consequences outweighed the undesirable consequences (e.g., low-quality evidence for a critical outcome such that additional evidence could change key findings, hence the recommendation). A conditional recommendation indicates that **well-informed patients might make different choices regarding whether to choose the regimen**.

[§] Strong recommendation for those persons unable to take a preferred regimen (e.g., due to drug intolerability or drug-drug interactions).

Table B: Treatment of LTBI – Recommended Drug Regimens [and Dosages for Adults and Children] (Select ONE Option)

Drug	Interval and Duration	Adult Dosage	Criteria for Completion	Comments
Option A **Isoniazid and Rifapentine**	**Once weekly for 12 doses**.	**Isoniazid**:15mg/kg PO (round up to the nearest 50 or 100 mg); 900mg PO max **Rifapentin**: 10-14kg 300mg PO; 14.1-25kg 450mg PO; 25.1-32kg 600mg PO; 32.1-49.9kg 750mg PO; Equal to or **greater than** 50kg 900mg (max dose) PO	11 doses within 16 weeks (doses may be given no more frequently than every 72 hours) **In ages 2-5 years old, all 12 doses may be given by DOT.** **In ages 5 years and older, all 12 doses may be given by DOT or self-administered therapy.**	**Isoniazid and Rifapentine is recommended and the preferred regimen for treating LTBI in otherwise healthy patients aged 2 years and older at high risk for developing active TB.** These patients include persons in close contact with person with TB disease, recent converters, HIV positive persons (NOT on antiretrovirals) and those with old, healed TB on chest x-ray. Isoniazid and Rifapentine **should** also be used in situations where it offers practical advantages **over other preferred regimens. Isoniazid and Rifapentine is NOT recommended for the following patients: children less than 2 years of age, pregnant women or women expecting to become pregnant during treatment, patients who have LTBI with presumed Isoniazid or Rifampin resistance, and persons taking medications with clinically significant or unknown drug interactions with rifapentine**. Refer to the contract physician children **aged 2 and older who are close contacts** for whom the Isoniazid and Rifapentine regimen **should** be considered because it offers practical advantages.
Option B **Rifampin**	Daily self-admin (7 days/ week) for 4 months (18 weeks) **OR** Daily DOT **(Mon-Fri)** for 4 months (18 weeks)	600mg PO **for all adults** (10 mg/kg **for children** - max dose 600mg) **OR** 600mg PO for **all adults** (10 mg/kg **for children** - max dose 600mg)	120 doses within 6 months **OR** 90 doses within 6 months	**Daily Rifampin is a preferred regimen for treatment of LTBI with a strong recommendation. Rifampin therapy is the only preferred regimen for persons who acquired LTBI from a TB patient with Isoniazid-resistant**, Rifampin susceptible TB disease**; Rifampin is not recommended for persons who are: Taking medications with clinically significant or unknown drug interactions with rifampin, presumed infected with Rif-resistant M.TB, and women who are pregnant or expect to become pregnant within the 4 month regimen.**

Option C **Isoniazid and Rifampin**	**Daily self-admin (7 days/week for 3 months (18 weeks)**	**Isoniazid:** **Adults and children age 15 and over: 300mg PO** **Children up to age 14: 5mg/kg po–** max dose 300mg **Rifampin:** **Adults and children age 15 and over: 600mg PO for all adults** **Children up to age 14: (10mg/kg)-** max dose 600mg	**90 doses within 6 months**	**A regimen of 3 months of daily Isoniazid plus Rifampin is a preferred treatment that is conditionally recommended for adults of all ages, children and for HIV –positive persons as drug interactions allow. Among children aged < 15 years specifically, a 3-month course of daily Isoniazid plus Rifampin appeared as effective as a 6 month or longer course of Isoniazid. Isoniazid and Rifampin is not recommended for the following adults: Persons taking medications with clinically significant or unknown drug interactions with rifampin, presumed infected with RIF-resistant M.TB, and women who are pregnant or expect to become pregnant within the 3 month regimen. Refer to the contract physician children aged 2 and older who are close contacts for whom the Isoniazid and Rifampin regimen may be considered because it offers practical advantages over the other preferred regimens.**
Option D **Isoniazid 6 Months** **OR**	**Daily self-admin (7 days/week) for 6 months** **OR** **Twice-weekly DOT for 6 months**	**Adults and children age 15 and over: Isoniazid 300mg PO** **Children up to age 14: Isoniazid 5mg/kg po– max dose 300mg** **OR** **Adults and children age 15 and over:- 900mg PO** **Children up to age 14: 20mg/kg po– max dose 900mg**	**180 doses within 9 months** **OR** **52 doses within 9 months**	**Isoniazid therapy for 6 months is strongly recommended as an alternative for those unable to take a shorter preferred regimen, e.g., due to drug-drug intolerability or drug-drug interactions particularly in HIV negative persons. In HIV positive patients, Isoniazid may be concurrently taken with nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NRTIs), protease inhibitors or non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NNRTIs).** **NOTE: Twice weekly regimen not recommended for HIV positive patients.** **LTBI patients (including HIV infected) on daily INH LTBI regimen will no longer require DOT.** **Consider adding pyridoxine (Vitamin B6) 25-50mg to be given with each dose of isoniazid as a preventive measure against Isoniazid –induced peripheral neuropathy.**

Option D **Isoniazid 9 Months**	Daily self-admin (7 days/ week) for 9 months **OR** **Twice-weekly* DOT for 9 months**	**Adults and children age 15 and over: Isoniazid 300mg PO Children up to age 14: Isoniazid 5mg/kg po– max dose 300mg** **OR** **Adults and children age 15 and over:- 900mg PO** **Children up to age 14: 20mg/kg po– max dose 900mg**	270 doses within 12 months **OR** **76 doses within 12 months**	In HIV-positive patients, Isoniazid may be taken concurrently with nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NRTIs), protease inhibitors, or non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NNRTIs). **NOTE: Twice-weekly regimen not recommended for HIV positive patients. LTBI patients (including HIV-infected) on daily INH LTBI regimen will no longer require DOT.** Consider adding pyridoxine (Vitamin B6) 25 – 50 mg to be given with each dose of isoniazid as a preventive measure against Isoniazid-induced peripheral neuropathy.

*Twice-weekly doses should optimally be given at least two days apart, unless given to "catch up" on a missed dose. A dose given two consecutive days is discouraged. **NOTE:** Isoniazid is available in 100 and 300 mg tablets (both are scored for dividing in half (½). Rifapentine is available in 150 mg tablets only. **Rifampin (rifampicin) is available as 150-mg and 300-mg capsules. Rifampin and Rifapentine cannot be substituted for each other. NOTE**: DOT is **RECOMMENDED for all patients less than 5 years of age and patients on ANY biweekly INH (which is usually prescribed for children). The INH/Rifapentine regimen may be self administered or DOT – this is up to the discretion of the TB nurse.**

Table C: Treatment of LTBI – Drug Adverse Reactions and Monitoring

NOTE: The baseline lab measurements are not mandatory for children less than 15 years of age, unless a complicating medical condition (e.g., HIV, liver disease, renal disease, cardiac disease), foreign born requiring Hepatitis B testing or high-risk lifestyle is known or suspected.

Drug	Adverse Reactions	Monitoring **NOTE:** If any lab results abnormal, report to delegating physician.	Comments
Isoniazid	Gastrointestinal (GI) upset, hepatic enzyme elevations, hepatitis, peripheral neuropathy, mild effects on central nervous system, drug interactions	Obtain aspartate aminotransferase (AST), alanine aminotransferase (ALT), bilirubin, **HgbA1C**, and Hepatitis C antibody for all adults. Hepatitis B profile should be obtained for all adults (regardless of birth country) and anyone less than 18 years old who is foreign-born. All individuals will be tested for HIV using the opt-out approach. Consent is inferred unless patient declines testing. If HIV positive, collaborate with HIV Program to obtain CD4 T-cell count. Consult with delegating physician. See **CONSULTATION on P.733** Baseline complete blood count with platelets for patients on the Isoniazid-Rifapentine regimen or Rifampin regimen**.**	Hepatitis risk increases with age and alcohol consumption, **but these are not contraindications to prescribing INH.** Pyridoxine can prevent isoniazid-induced peripheral neuropathy.
Rifampin and Rifapentine	Orange discoloration of body fluids (secretions, tears, urine), GI upset, drug interactions, hepatitis, thrombocytopenia, rash, fever, Influenza-like symptoms, hypersensitivity reaction[12]	Obtain aspartate aminotransferase (AST), alanine aminotransferase (ALT), bilirubin, **HgbA1C**, and Hepatitis C antibody for all adults**.** Hepatitis B profile should be obtained for all adults (regardless of birth country) and anyone less than 18 years old who is foreign-born. All individuals will be tested for HIV using the opt-out approach. Consent is inferred unless patient declines testing. If HIV positive, collaborate with HIV Program to obtain CD4 T-cell count. Consult with delegating physician. See CONSULTATION on p.733 Baseline complete blood count with platelets for patients on the Isoniazid-Rifapentine regimen or Rifampin regimen**.**	Hepatitis risk increases with age and alcohol consumption, **but these are not contraindications to prescribing Rifamycins.**

[12] Hypersensitivity reactions may include a flu like syndrome (e.g. fever, chills, headaches, dizziness, and musculoskeletal pain), thrombocytopenia, shortness of breath or other signs and symptoms including wheezing, acute bronchospasm, urticaria, petechiae, purpura, pruritus, conjunctivitis, angioedema, hypotension or shock. If moderate to severe reaction (e.g., thrombocytopenia, hypotension), hospitalization or life-threatening event: discontinue treatment. If mild reaction (e.g., rash, dizziness, fever): Continue to monitor patient closely with a low threshold for discontinuing treatment

Table D: Treatment of LTBI – Drug Interactions

NOTE: Obtain and record a complete list of current prescription medications (including dose and frequency) from each LTBI and TB patient. Check for interactions between each of their medications and the planned LTBI/TB medications using a current drug reference. We recommend using Lexicomp, as all public health staff has access to this resource: https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/home;jsessionid=de081f2350de3dbc91e. The examples listed below are not exhaustive and do not substitute for the steps outlined above.

MEDICATION INTERACTIONS – RIFAMPIN

Name/type	**Effect**
Anticoagulants (Warfarin, Coumadin)	↓ serum concentration
Sulfonylureas (Glipizide, Glyburide, Glimepiride)	↓ serum concentration
Thiazolidinediones (Rosiglitazone, Pioglitazone)	↓ serum concentration
Contraceptives (oral, implants, patch, ring, injections)	↓ serum concentration
Fluconazole, Voriconazole, Itraconazole	↓ serum concentration
Corticosteroids	↓ serum concentration
Narcotics/analgesics (Methadone)	↓ serum concentration
Atovaquone (Mepron)	↓ serum concentration
Dapsone	↓ serum concentration
Cyclosporine	↓ serum concentration
Quinidine	↓ serum concentration
Lamotrigine (Lamictal)	↓ serum concentration
Phenytoin (Dilantin)	↓ serum concentration
Valproic acid and derivatives (Depakene, Depakote)	↓ serum concentration
Buspirone (Buspar)	↓ serum concentration
Thyroid hormone replacement	↓ serum concentration

DRUG INTERACTIONS – ISONIAZID

Name/type	**Effect**
Diazepam (Valium)	↓ serum concentration ↑ half-life
Phenytoin (Dilantin)	↑ serum concentration ↑ toxicity
Carbamazepine (Tegretol)	↑ serum concentration ↑ toxicity
Citalopram (Celexa)	↑ serum concentration ↑ toxicity
Alcohol	↑ risk of Isoniazid-**induced** hepatitis
Antacids (Should be taken two hours apart, or Isoniazid will have no effect)	
Cycloserine	↑ risk of CNS toxicity

HIV: Antiretroviral therapy and medications for LTBI

The information on interactions with Rifamycins and HIV antiretroviral therapy (ART) is constantly changing; all people living with HIV (PLWH) should be referred to the contract Physician for care. In general, only certain HIV medications can be used in combination with Rifamycins.

Recommended resource for HIV treatment guidelines and medication interactions: https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/1/adult-and-adolescent-arv/284/pi-drug-interactions

REFERENCES

1. **POZ: Health, Life & HIV, https://www.poz.com/basics/hiv-basics/hiv-medications**

2. American Diabetes Association. Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes, Diabetes Care, Vol. 42, Suppl. 1, S14-S80, current edition.

3. **American Academy of Pediatrics, Red Book Online - updated September 2018. http://redbook.solutions.aap.org/ accessed March 12, 2019.**

4. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). W. Atkinson, S. Wolfe, J. Hamborsky, L. McIntyre, eds., *Epidemiology and Prevention of Vaccine-Preventable Diseases*, 13th ed., Washington D.C., Public Health Foundation, 2015. **https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/pubs/pinkbook/index.html**

5. **Department of Health and Human Services, National Center for HIV/AIDS, Viral Hepatitis, STD, and TB Prevention, Division of Tuberculosis Elimination, Developed in partnership with the New Jersey Medical School Global Tuberculosis Institute. *Latent Tuberculosis Infection: A Guide for Primary Health Care Providers.* 2010 (Current) http://www.cdc.gov/tb/publications/LTBI/pdf/TargetedLTBI.pdf. March 12, 2019**

6. CDC, Revised Recommendations for HIV Testing of Adults, Adolescents and Pregnant Women in HealthCare Settings*," MMWR*, Vol. 55, No. RR-14, Sep. 22, 2006. (Current) https://stacks.cdc.gov/view/cdc/23447.

7. CDC, Targeted Tuberculin Testing and Treatment of Latent Tuberculosis Infection, *MMWR*, Vol. 49, No. RR-6, Jun. 9, 2000. (Current) https://www.cdc.gov/tb/publications/slidesets/ltbi/default.htm.

8. CDC. (2011). Recommendations for use of an Isoniazid-Rifapentine regimen with direct observation to treat latent mycobacterium tuberculosis infection. *MMWR*. 60(48). 1650-1653 (Current) 9. CDC. https://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/mm6048a3.htm

9. **Tuberculosis associated with blocking agents against tumor necrosis factor - alpha - California, 2002–2003. *MMWR* 2004; 53 (No. 30). (Current) http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/PDF/wk/mm5330.pdf. March 12, 2019.**

10. CDC. Updated Guidelines for Using Interferon Gamma Release Assays to Detect *Mycobacterium Tuberculosis* Infection — United States, 2010. ‖ *MMWR* 2010; 59 (RR-5); 1-25 (Current)

11. **Department of Health and Human Services, Panel on Antiretroviral Guidelines for Adults and Adolescents, *Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in HIV-1-infected Adults and Adolescents*, Last Updated October 2018, Assessed**

March 12, 2019. https://aidsinfo.nih.gov/guidelines/html/1/adult-and-adolescent-arv/0

12. G*eorgia TB Reference Guide*, 2014.The Atlanta Tuberculosis Coalition. https://stacks.cdc.gov/view/cdc/31290 March 12, 2019, (Current)

13. Georgia Department of Public Health, Division of Health Protection, Immunization and Infectious Disease Program, Tuberculosis Office. *Tuberculosis Program Evaluation Guidelines.* 2012. http://dph.georgia.gov/tb-publications-reports-manuals-and-guidelines, March 12, 2019. (Current)

14. Georgia Department of Public Health, Division of Health Protection, Immunization and Infectious Disease Program, Tuberculosis Office. *Tuberculosis Policy and Procedure Manual.* 2016. https://dph.georgia.gov/tb-publications-reports-%20manuals-and-guidelines. March 12, 2019. (Current)

15. Holland, D., Sanders, G., Hamilton, C., and Stout, J. (2011). —Potential Economic viability of two proposed Rifapentine-based regimens for treatment of latent tuberculosis infection. ‖ *Public Library of Science ONE,* 6(7). E22276. (Current)

16. Keane, Joseph et al, —Tuberculosis Associated with Infliximab, a Tumor Necrosis actor – Neutralizing Agent, ‖ *New England Journal of Medicine*, Vol.345, No. 15, October 11, 2001, pp. 1098-1104. (Current)

17. Macaraig, Michelle. Sept. 20, 2012. "Increased treatment completion for Latent TB infection with the Telephone Nurse Monitoring Program (TNMP). Presentation at TB Education and Training Network (ETN) Conference, http://www.cdc.gov/tb/education/tbetn/conference.htm. March 12, 2019.

18. Martinson, N., Barnes, G. Moulton, L., et al. (2011). New regimens to prevent tuberculosis in adults with HIV infection. *New England journal of Medicine, 365.* 11-20 (Current).

19. National Tuberculosis Controllers Association (NTCA) and National Tuberculosis Nursing Coalition (NTNC), *Tuberculosis Nursing: A Comprehensive Guide to Patient Care,* 2nd Edition. 2011, http://www.tbcontrollers.org/resources/tb-nursing-manual/ (Current)

20. New York City Department of Health and Mental Hygiene. *Clinical Practice Manual.* "Management of Patient with LTBI: Telephone Nurse Monitoring Program (TNMP)." 2006. Sent by Michelle Macaraig, D.Ph., MPH, Assistant Director for Strategic Planning and Program Evaluation, Bureau of TB Control, New York City Department of Health and Mental Hygiene.

21. Reichman, LB, and Bhavaraju, R, eds. *Guidelines for the Diagnosis of Latent Tuberculosis Infection in the 21st Century, 2nd Edition.* Newark: New Jersey Medical School Global Tuberculosis Institute (Current)

http://globaltb.njms.rutgers.edu/educationalmaterials/productfolder/guidelines.html
Accessed March 1, 2019.

22. Rom, William N., and Garay, Stuart M. *Tuberculosis*, 2nd ed., Little, Brown and Company (Inc.), Boston, September 12, 2003. (Current)

23. Schechter, M., Zajdenverg, R., Falco, G., et al. (2006). Weekly Rifapentine/Isoniazid or daily rifampin/pyrazinamide for latent tuberculosis in household contacts. ‖ *American journal of Respiratory Critical Care Medicine, 173.* 922-926. (Current)

24. Sterling T., Villarino, M., Borisov, A., et al. (2011). Three months of Rifapentine and Isoniazid for latent tuberculosis infection. *The New England Journal of medicine, 365*(23). 2155-2166. (Current)

25. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Core Curriculum on Tuberculosis – *What the Clinician Should Know*, 6th ed., 2013. (Current)

26. Department of Reproductive Health, World Health Organization (WHO), Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 5th ed., August 2015. http://www.who.int/reproductivehealth/publications/family_planning/9789241563888/en/. Accessed March 12, 2019

27. CDC, Update of Recommendation for Use of Once-weekly Isoniazid-Rifapentine Regimen to Treat Latent Mycobacterium, MMWR, Volume 67, (25), 723-726, June 29, 2018.

28. CDC, and National Tuberculosis Controllers Association (NTCA), Recommendation for the treatment of Latent TB Infection (LTBI), MMWR, Vol 69, (1); 1-11, February 14, 2020.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

WOMEN'S HEALTH

WOMEN'S HEALTH
CLINICAL REVIEW TEAM

Name	Title/District
Melissa Kottke, MD, MPH, MBA	Medical Consultant
Danielle Acuff, MSN, APRN, FNP-C	**North Georgia Health District**
Audrey Arona, MD	**DHD/East Metro Health District**
Angie Callaway, RN, BSN	**Women's Health Coordinator North Georgia Health District**
Adrienne Davis, MSN, WHNP-BC	**Women's Health Coordinator District 2**
Debra Dewitt, MSN, WHNP-BC, FNP-C	**District 3.2 BCCP/Family Planning Coordinator, Fulton County Board of Health**
Janet English, RN	**Nurse Consultant BCCP & Cancer State Aid, Georgia Department of Public Health**
Jennifer Harrison, APRN, FNP	**East Central Health District – Emanuel County Health Department**
Kimberley Hazelwood, Pharm D	Pharmacy Director, Georgia Department of Public Health
Lindsey Hixon, RN, BSN, CLC	**Clay, Quitman & Randolph Counties - Public Health Nursing Supervisor**
Donelle Humphrey-Franklin, RPh, MBA	**Assistant Director of Pharmacy, Georgia Department of Public Health**
Pepa Koleva, RN, BSN	**Cobb Douglas District**
Cynthia Payne, MS, NP-BC, CNM	**Women's Health Coordinator Clayton County Board of Health, District 3-3**
Missy Pollock, RN	**South Health District**
Allen Rowland, MSN, APRN, FNP, BC	Women's Health Program Nurse Consultant & Southeast Health District
Jennifer Sapp, MS, APRN, WHNP - BC	Women's Health Coordinator, East Central Health District-6
Pamela Smith, MSN, WHNP-BC, IBCLC	Northeast Health District
Cynthia Walters, RN	**Southwest Health District**
Risë Wood, RPH	District Pharmacist, Northwest Health District

CENTERS FOR DISEASE CONTROL AND PREVENTION (CDC) US MEDICAL ELIGIBILITY CRITERIA (MEC), SELECTED PRACTICE RECOMMENDATIONS (SPR) FOR CONTRACEPTIVE USE AND QUALITY FAMILY PLANNING (QFP)

The CDC US Medical Eligibility Criteria (MEC) and Selected Practice Recommendations (SPR) for Contraception Use reflect adaptations of the WHO Medical Eligibility Criteria and SPR to ensure appropriateness for use in the United States. Most of the U.S. guidance does not differ from the WHO guidance. However, several changes have been made, including adaptations of selected WHO recommendations, addition of recommendations for new medical conditions, and removal of recommendations for contraceptive methods not currently available in the United States.

In 2014, the CDC released Providing Quality Family Planning Services (QFP). Created in collaboration with the Office of Population Affairs and the Department of Health and Human Services, this document provides recommendations about how to provide high quality evidence-based family planning services. Used together, the MEC, SPR and QFP should guide clinicians in providing evidence-based contraceptive care in the United States.

The MEC contains recommendations for health-care providers for the safe use of contraceptive methods by women and men with various characteristics and medical conditions. It is intended to assist health-care providers when they counsel women, men, and couples about contraceptive method choice. These recommendations are meant to be a source of clinical guidance; health-care providers should always consider the individual clinical circumstances of each person seeking family planning services.

The SPR contains recommendations which are intended to help health-care providers address issues related to use of contraceptives, such as how to help a woman initiate use of a contraceptive method, which examinations and tests are needed before initiating use of a contraceptive method, what regular follow-up is needed, and how to address problems that often arise during use, including missed pills and side effects such as unscheduled bleeding.

CDC US Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use was updated in 2016.
http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6503.pdf
This full report provides vital information, not only about what the recommendation is, but also why. Providers should be aware that this guidance is continually updated in response to emerging evidence. For updates, refer to the CDC's website.
http://www.cdc.gov/reproductivehealth/unintendedpregnancy/usmec.htm

Additional resources including android/iPhone/iPad apps, wall charts, wheels and guidance in Spanish can be accessed at that site. Local clinics should make copies of the CDC Medical Eligibility Criteria available to all clinic staff and should encourage its use with each contraceptive clinical encounter

TYPE OF CONTRACEPTIVE		
CONDITION	**CATEGORY** I=Initiation C=Continuation	**CLARIFICATIONS/ EVIDENCE**
Condition	Condition classified from 1 to 4 The categories for fertility awareness-based methods and surgical sterilization are described at the beginning of the relevant section.	Clarifications and evidence regarding the classification

NA denotes a condition for which a ranking was not given by the Working Group but for which clarifications have been provided.

I=Initiation. This provides guidance for initiating a contraceptive method given the presence of a particular medical condition at the time of initiation.
C=Continuation. This provides guidance about whether to continue a contraceptive method if a particular medical condition has been diagnosed since starting that method of contraception. To illustrate this with an example: Stroke (history of a cerebrovascular accident). Initiating a contraceptive implant in someone with this situation is Medical Eligibility Criteria Category 2. This should be interpreted that it is acceptable to start using a contraceptive implant with this condition. However, for someone who had not had a stroke before using the implant, but who has a stroke while using the contraceptive implant, continuing the method is Medical Eligibility Criteria Category 3, and one should obtain consultation with an MD.

Classification of categories:

Each condition was defined as representing either an individual's characteristics (e.g., age, history of pregnancy, use of certain medications) or a known pre-existing medical/pathological condition (e.g., diabetes, hypertension). It is expected that national and institutional health and service delivery environments will decide the most suitable means for screening for conditions according to their public health importance. Patient history will often be the most appropriate approach.

The conditions affecting eligibility for the use of each contraceptive method were classified under one of the following four categories:

1. A condition for which there is no restriction for the use of the contraceptive method.

2. A condition where the advantages of using the method generally outweigh the theoretical or proven risks.

3. A condition where the theoretical or proven risks usually outweigh the advantages of using the method.

4. A condition which represents an unacceptable health risk if the contraceptive method is used.

Abbreviations used by the CDC Medical Eligibility Criteria:
COC – Combined oral contraceptive
CHC- Combined hormonal contraceptive
POP – Progestin-only pill
POC- Progestin-only contraceptive
DMPA – Depot medroxyprogesterone acetate
Implants – Implanon & Nexplanon
Cu IUD – Copper IUD (ParaGard)
LNG IUD – Levonorgestrel IUD (e**.g.,** Liletta, Kyleena, Mirena, Skyla)
UPA- Ulipristal Acetate

Using the categories in practice:

Categories 1 and 4 are self-explanatory. Classification of a method/condition as category 2 indicates the method can generally be used, but careful follow-up may be required. However, provision of a method to a woman with a condition classified as category 3 requires careful clinical judgment and access to clinical services; for such a woman, the severity of the condition and the availability, practicality, and acceptability of alternative methods should be taken into account. For a method/condition classified as category 3, use of that method is not usually recommended unless other more appropriate methods are not available or acceptable. Careful follow-up will be required.

Where resources for clinical judgment are limited, such as in community-based services, the four-category classification framework can be simplified into two categories. With this simplification, a classification of Category 3 indicates that a woman is not medically eligible to use the method. District level conditions are often consistent with community-based services and thus the two-tier approach listed in the following table is recommended. Provision of a contraceptive to a woman with a condition that falls into category 3 (for initiation or continuation) should be done only after consultation with the delegating MD.

CATEGORY	WITH CLINICAL JUDGMENT	WITH LIMITED CLINICAL JUDGMENT
1	Use method in any circumstances	Yes (Use the method)
2	Generally use the method	
3	Use of method not usually recommended unless other more appropriate methods are not available or not acceptable	No (Do not use the method)
4	Method not to be used	

NOTE ABOUT AGE AND WHEN TO STOP USING CONTRACEPTION: A woman who has had menopause confirmed by the absence of menses for 12 months while not on hormones that may suppress menstruation no longer needs contraception. Age--by itself--is not a contraindication to any method of contraception. Use of hormonal methods can mask the diagnosis of menopause. The average age of menopause in the U.S. is 51, and a clinician can be certain about menopause by age 55. A woman with no medical problems can continue her desired contraception as long as she desires it or until age 55. However, medical co-morbidities increase with age. And the combination of these (e**.g.,** hypertension, diabetes, obesity) plus age may increase the risk, particularly with estrogen containing contraceptives. For all women, continuous reassessment of her health, co-morbidities and reproductive goals and needs is essential and working with her to determine what is best for her as she nears menopause.

The CDC US Medical Eligibility Criteria also highlights the importance of selecting contraceptive methods that have higher efficacy at preventing pregnancy. The following table (Table 1) lists the perfect and typical use failure rates of common contraceptives, as well as the continuation rates at one year. Providers should become familiar with the typical use failure rates, as those are the rates that are experienced by most patients. The CDC US Medical Eligibility Criteria also created a list of conditions that are associated with an increased risk of adverse events in the event of unintended pregnancy (Box 2).

For women with conditions that may make unintended pregnancy an unacceptable health risk, long-acting, highly effective contraceptive methods may be the best choice. Women with these conditions should be advised that sole use of barrier methods for contraception and behavior-based methods of contraception may not be the most appropriate choice because of their relatively higher typical-use rates of failure (Table 1).

TABLE 1: Percentages of women experiencing an unintended pregnancy during the first year of typical use and the first year of perfect use of contraception and the percentage continuing use at the end of the first year-United States

TABLE 1. Percentage of women experiencing an unintended pregnancy during the first year of typical use and the first year of perfect use of contraception and the percentage continuing use at the end of the first year — United States

Method	Women experiencing an unintended pregnancy within the first year of use		Women continuing use at 1 year[§]
	Typical use[*]	Perfect use[†]	
No method[¶]	85%	85%	
Spermicides[**]	29%	18%	42%
Withdrawal	27%	4%	43%
Fertility awareness–based methods	25%		51%
Standard Days method[††]		5%	
TwoDay method™[††]		4%	
Ovulation method[††]		3%	
Sponge			
Parous women	32%	20%	46%
Nulliparous women	16%	9%	57%
Diaphragm[§§]	16%	6%	57%
Condom[¶¶]			
Female (Reality®)	21%	5%	49%
Male	15%	2%	53%
Combined pill and progestin-only pill	8%	0.3%	68%
Evra patch®	8%	0.3%	68%
NuvaRing®	8%	0.3%	68%
Depo-Provera®	3%	0.3%	56%
Intrauterine device			
ParaGard® (copper T)	0.8%	0.6%	78%
Mirena® (LNG-IUS)	0.2%	0.2%	80%
Implanon®	0.05%	0.05%	84%
Female sterilization	0.5%	0.5%	100%
Male sterilization	0.15%	0.10%	100%
Emergency contraceptive pills[***]	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
Lactational amenorrhea methods[†††]	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable

Adapted from Trussell J. Contraceptive efficacy. In Hatcher RA, Trussell J, Nelson AL, Cates W, Stewart FH, Kowal D. Contraceptive technology. 19th revised ed. New York, NY: Ardent Media; 2007.

* Among typical couples who initiate use of a method (not necessarily for the first time), the percentage who experience an unintended pregnancy during the first year if they do not stop use for any other reason. Estimates of the probability of pregnancy during the first year of typical use for spermicides, withdrawal, fertility awareness-based methods, the diaphragm, the male condom, the pill, and Depo-Provera are taken from the 1995 National Survey of Family Growth corrected for underreporting of abortion; see the text for the derivation of estimates for the other methods.

† Among couples who initiate use of a method (not necessarily for the first time) and who use it *perfectly* (both consistently and correctly), the percentage who experience an unintended pregnancy during the first year if they do not stop use for any other reason. See the text for the derivation of the estimate for each method.

§ Among couples attempting to avoid pregnancy, the percentage who continue to use a method for 1 year.

¶ The percentages becoming pregnant in the typical use and perfect use columns are based on data from populations where contraception is not used and from women who cease using contraception to become pregnant. Of these, approximately 89% become pregnant within 1 year. This estimate was lowered slightly (to 85%) to represent the percentage who would become pregnant within 1 year among women now relying on reversible methods of contraception if they abandoned contraception altogether.

** Foams, creams, gels, vaginal suppositories, and vaginal film.

†† The TwoDay and Ovulation methods are based on evaluation of cervical mucus. The Standard Days method avoids intercourse on cycle days 8–19.

§§ With spermicidal cream or jelly.

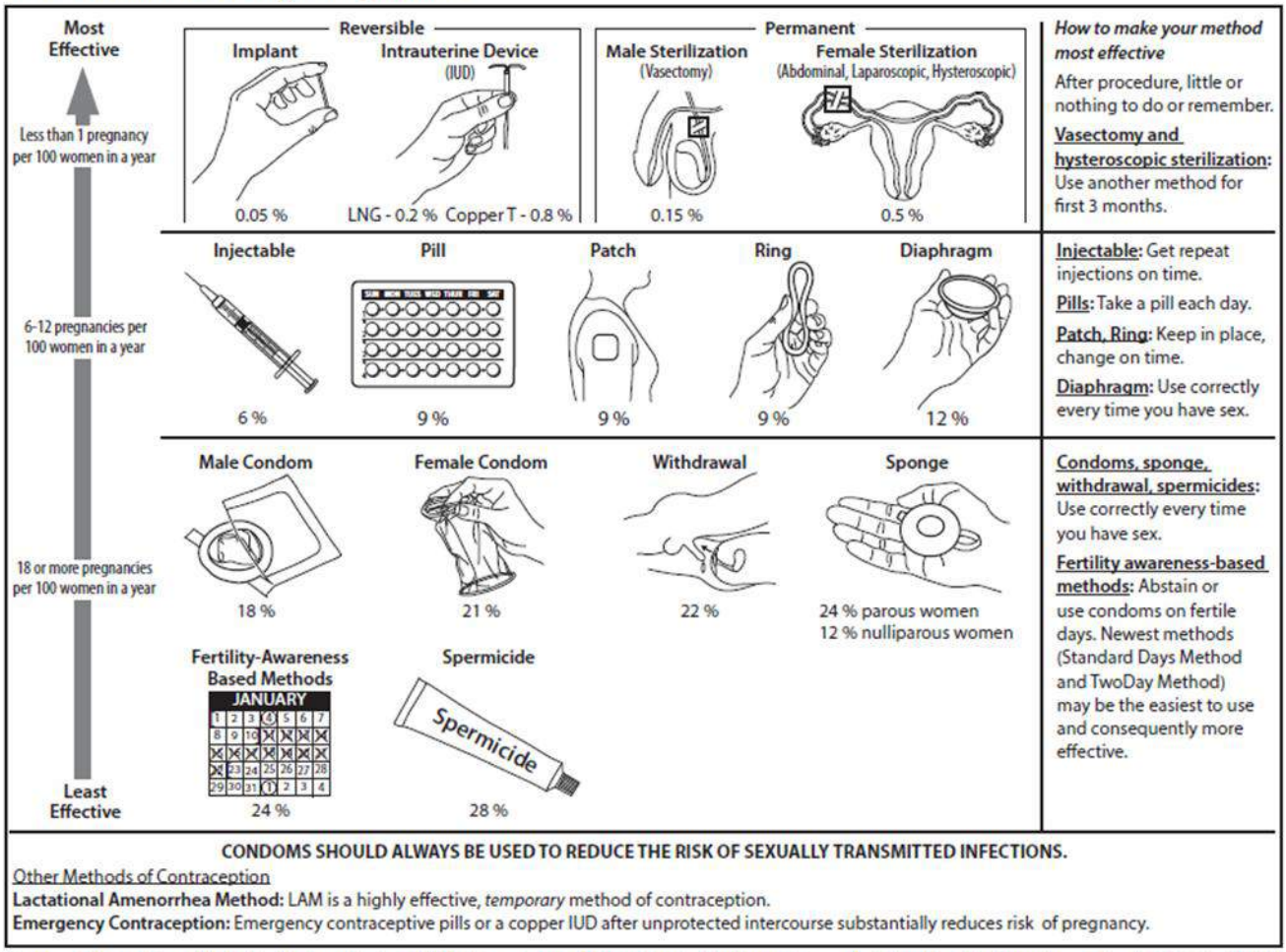
¶¶ Without spermicides.

*** Treatment initiated within 72 hours after unprotected intercourse reduces the risk for pregnancy by at least 75%. The treatment schedule is 1 dose within 120 hours after unprotected intercourse and a second dose 12 hours after the first dose. Both doses of Plan B can be taken at the same time. Plan B (1 dose is 1 white pill) is the only dedicated product specifically marketed for emergency contraception. The Food and Drug Administration has in addition declared the following 22 brands of oral contraceptives to be safe and effective for emergency contraception: Ogestrel or Ovral (1 dose is 2 white pills); Levlen or Nordette (1 dose is 4 light-orange pills); Cryselle, Levora, Low-Ogestrel, Lo/Ovral, or Quasence (1 dose is 4 white pills); Tri-Levlen or Triphasil (1 dose is 4 yellow pills); Jolessa, Portia, Seasonale, or Trivora (1 dose is 4 pink pills); Seasonique (1 dose is 4 light blue-green pills); Empresse (1 dose is 4 orange pills); Alesse, Lessina, or Levlite (1 dose is 5 pink pills); Aviane (1 dose is 5 orange pills); and Lutera (1 dose is 5 white pills).

††† Lactational amenorrhea method is a highly effective *temporary* method of contraception. However, to maintain effective protection against pregnancy, another method of contraception must be used as soon as menstruation resumes, the frequency or duration of breastfeeding is reduced, bottle feeds are introduced, or the baby reaches 6 months of age.

Some providers may find the following graphic useful in interpreting the above efficacy data and in counseling patients. In general, provider counseling can follow a hierarchical approach **if the patient prioritizes method efficacy. For patients who prioritize other method characteristics (e.g., bleeding profile, presence or absence of hormones, etc.), this may still be a useful tool to provide a visual for the patient.**

FIGURE. Effectiveness of family planning methods*



CONDOMS SHOULD ALWAYS BE USED TO REDUCE THE RISK OF SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED INFECTIONS.

Other Methods of Contraception

Lactational Amenorrhea Method: LAM is a highly effective, *temporary* method of contraception.

Emergency Contraception: Emergency contraceptive pills or a copper IUD after unprotected intercourse substantially reduces risk of pregnancy.

Sources: Adapted from World Health Organization (WHO) Department of Reproductive Health and Research, Johns Hopkins Bloomberg School of Public Health/ Center for Communication Programs (CCP). Knowledge for health project. Family planning: a global handbook for providers (2011 update). Baltimore, MD; Geneva, Switzerland: CCP and WHO; 2011; and Trussell J. Contraceptive failure in the United States. Contraception 2011;83:397–404.

* The percentages indicate the number out of every 100 women who experienced an unintended pregnancy within the first year of typical use of each contraceptive method.

BOX 2: Conditions associated with the increased risk for adverse health events as a result pregnancy

BOX 2. Conditions associated with increased risk for adverse health events as a result of pregnancy*

- Breast cancer
- Complicated valvular heart disease
- Cystic fibrosis
- Diabetes: insulin dependent; with nephropathy, retinopathy, or neuropathy or other vascular disease; or of >20 years' duration
- Endometrial or ovarian cancer
- Epilepsy
- Hypertension (systolic ≥160 mm Hg or diastolic ≥100 mm Hg)
- History of bariatric surgery within the past 2 years
- HIV: not clinically well or not receiving antiretroviral therapy
- Ischemic heart disease
- Gestational trophoblastic disease
- Hepatocellular adenoma and malignant liver tumors (hepatoma)
- Peripartum cardiomyopathy
- Schistosomiasis with fibrosis of the liver
- Severe (decompensated) cirrhosis
- Sickle cell disease
- Solid organ transplantation within the past 2 years
- Stroke
- Systemic lupus erythematosus
- Thrombogenic mutations
- Tuberculosis

*Long-acting, highly effective contraceptive methods might be the best choice for women with conditions that are associated with increased risk for adverse health events as a result of pregnancy. These women should be advised that sole use of barrier methods for contraception and behavior-based methods of contraception might not be the most appropriate choice because of their relatively higher typical-use rates of failure.

The CDC's Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use were also updated in 2016. They can be found at http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6504.pdf Like the Medical Eligibility Criteria, the SPR represents an extensive and ongoing review of the literature regarding how to use contraception. Specifically, the SPR provides recommendations on when to initiate contraceptives, which studies are necessary prior to initiation, and makes some suggestions on clinical management scenarios.

Clinicians are encouraged to read the document in its entirety, including the detailed review on the utility of a urine pregnancy test. This set of protocols (in particular, the Initiation of Contraceptives protocol) reflects that using a checklist to be "reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant" has a very high probability that the woman is not pregnant. See Box below. The SPR supports immediate initiation for all methods of contraception if you can be reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant.

BOX 2. How to be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant

A health care provider can be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant if she has no symptoms or signs of pregnancy and meets any one of the following criteria:

- is ≤7 days after the start of normal menses
- has not had sexual intercourse since the start of last normal menses.
- has been correctly and consistently using a reliable method of contraception
- is ≤7 days after spontaneous or induced abortion
- is within 4 weeks postpartum
- is fully or nearly fully breastfeeding (exclusively breastfeeding or the vast majority [≥85%] of feeds are breastfeeds), amenorrheic, and <6 months postpartum

Appendix B

When To Start Using Specific Contraceptive Methods

Contraceptive method	When to start (if the provider is reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant)	Additional contraception (i.e., back-up) needed	Examinations or tests needed before initiation*
Copper-containing IUD	Anytime	Not needed	Bimanual examination and cervical inspection†
Levonorgestrel-releasing IUD	Anytime	If >7 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	Bimanual examination and cervical inspection†
Implant	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	None
Injectable	Anytime	If >7 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	None
Combined hormonal contraceptive	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	Blood pressure measurement
Progestin-only pill	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 2 days.	None

Abbreviations: BMI = body mass index; HIV = human immunodeficiency virus; IUD = intrauterine device; STD = sexually transmitted disease; U.S. MEC = *U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use*.

* Weight (BMI) measurement is not needed to determine medical eligibility for any methods of contraception because all methods can be used (U.S. MEC 1) or generally can be used (U.S. MEC 2) among obese women (Box 1). However, measuring weight and calculating BMI (weight [kg] / height [m]^2) at baseline might be helpful for monitoring any changes and counseling women who might be concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.

† Most women do not require additional STD screening at the time of IUD insertion. If a woman with risk factors for STDs has not been screened for gonorrhea and chlamydia according to CDC's *STD Treatment Guidelines* (http://www.cdc.gov/std/treatment), screening can be performed at the time of IUD insertion, and insertion should not be delayed. Women with current purulent cervicitis or chlamydial infection or gonococcal infection should not undergo IUD insertion (U.S. MEC 4).

Other key recommendations from the SPR include a detailed discussion of the tests and/or examinations that are needed before initiation of contraceptive methods. For this classification,
Class A: essential and mandatory in all circumstances for safe and effective use of the contraceptive method.
Class B: contributes substantially to safe and effective use, but implementation may be considered within the public health and/or service context; risk of not performing an examination or test should be balanced against the benefits of making the contraceptive method available.
Class C: does not contribute substantially to safe and effective use of the contraceptive method.

The SPR discusses follow-up suggestions after contraceptive initiation (table below). Adolescents and women with complex medical histories may require additional or tailored follow-up. The SPR also makes recommendations about management of abnormal bleeding during contraceptive use and what to do with a woman who develops PID with an IUD in situ. These are reflected in those specific protocols.

TABLE. Examinations and tests needed before initiation of contraceptive methods

	Contraceptive method and class							
Examination or test	**Cu-IUD and LNG-IUD**	**Implant**	**Injectable**	**CHC**	**POP**	**Condom**	**Diaphragm or cervical cap**	**Spermicide**
Examination								
Blood pressure	C	C	C	A*	C	C	C	C
Weight (BMI) (weight [kg]/ height [m]^2)	—†	—†	—†	—†	—†	C	C	C
Clinical breast examination	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C
Bimanual examination and cervical inspection	A	C	C	C	C	C	A§	C
Laboratory test								
Glucose	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C
Lipids	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C
Liver enzymes	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C
Hemoglobin	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C
Thrombogenic mutations	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C
Cervical cytology (Papanicolaou smear)	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C
STD screening with laboratory tests	—¶	C	C	C	C	C	C	C
HIV screening with laboratory tests	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C

Abbreviations: BMI = body mass index; CHC = combined hormonal contraceptive; Cu-IUD = copper-containing intrauterine device; DMPA = depot medroxyprogesterone acetate; HIV = human immunodeficiency virus; LNG-IUD = levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine device; POP = progestin-only pill; STD = sexually transmitted disease; U.S. MEC = *U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 2010*.

* In cases in which access to health care might be limited, the blood pressure measurement can be obtained by the woman in a nonclinical setting (e.g., pharmacy or fire station) and self-reported to the provider.

† Weight (BMI) measurement is not needed to determine medical eligibility for any methods of contraception because all methods can be used (U.S. MEC 1) or generally can be used (U.S. MEC 2) among obese women (Box 2). However, measuring weight and calculating BMI at baseline might be helpful for monitoring any changes and counseling women who might be concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.

§ A bimanual examination (not cervical inspection) is needed for diaphragm fitting.

¶ Most women do not require additional STD screening at the time of IUD insertion if they have already been screened according to CDC's *STD Treatment Guidelines* (available at http://www.cdc.gov/std/treatment). If a woman has not been screened according to guidelines, screening can be performed at the time of IUD insertion and insertion should not be delayed. Women with purulent cervicitis or current chlamydial infection or gonorrhea should not undergo IUD insertion (U.S. MEC 4). Women who have a very high individual likelihood of STD exposure (e.g., those with a currently infected partner) generally should not undergo IUD insertion (U.S. MEC 3). For these women, IUD insertion should be delayed until appropriate testing and treatment occurs.

The SPR discusses follow-up suggestions after contraceptive initiation (table below). Adolescents and women with complex medical histories may require additional or tailored follow-up. The SPR also makes recommendations about management of abnormal bleeding during contraceptive use and what to do with a woman who develops PID with an IUD in situ. These are reflected in those specific protocols.

TABLE D1. Routine follow-up after contraceptive initiation

Action	Contraceptive method				
	Cu-IUD or LNG-IUD	Implant	Injectable	CHC	POP
General follow-up					
Advise women to return at any time to discuss side effects or other problems or if they want to change the method. Advise women using IUDs, implants, or injectables when the IUD or implant needs to be removed or when a reinjection is needed. No routine follow-up visit is required.	X	X	X	X	X
Other routine visits					
Assess the woman's satisfaction with her current method and whether she has any concerns about method use.	X	X	X	X	X
Assess any changes in health status, including medications, that would change the method's appropriateness for safe and effective continued use based on U.S. MEC (i.e., category 3 and 4 conditions and characteristics) (Box 1).	X	X	X	X	X
Consider performing an examination to check for the presence of IUD strings.	X	—	—	—	—
Consider assessing weight changes and counseling women who are concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.	X	X	X	X	X
Measure blood pressure.	—	—	—	X	—

Abbreviations: CHC = combined hormonal contraceptives; Cu-IUD = copper-containing intrauterine device; HIV = human immunodeficiency virus; IUD = intrauterine device; LNG-IUD = levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine device; POP = progestin-only pills; U.S. MEC = *U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use*.

NOTE (regarding length of use): The long acting methods of contraception are often effective for longer than the FDA approved time. For example, the Mirena is approved for use for 5 years, however clinical data demonstrates its effectiveness for up to 7 years. **Similarly, Liletta is currently approved for six years and is likely effective up to seven years. The FDA is currently evaluating its use up to seven years.** The Copper T380A is approved for use for 10 years, however clinical data demonstrates its effectiveness for 12 years, and probably longer. The contraceptive implant is approved for use for 3 years however, clinical data demonstrates its effectiveness for 5 years, and probably longer. This information can be used when counseling women at the time of initiation as well as at the end of the FDA approval window. If the patient is satisfied with the method at the end of the FDA approval window and would like to continue using it, evidence indicates that it still provides contraception as noted above. If she would like to have it removed, this should be honored.

PROVIDING QUALITY FAMILY PLANNING

Providing Quality Family Planning is an essential service for the health of families. These recommendations help "put everything together," and suggest how to intertwine the MEC and SPR into clinical settings. Figure 1 in QFP (below) shows how providing family planning services is embedded within a larger framework of preventive care. Clinicians providing family planning should be equipped to provide all Family Planning Services as well as Related Preventive Health Services, with referral as needed. Provision of Other preventive health services should be available on-site or by referral.

FIGURE 1. Family planning and related and other preventive health services

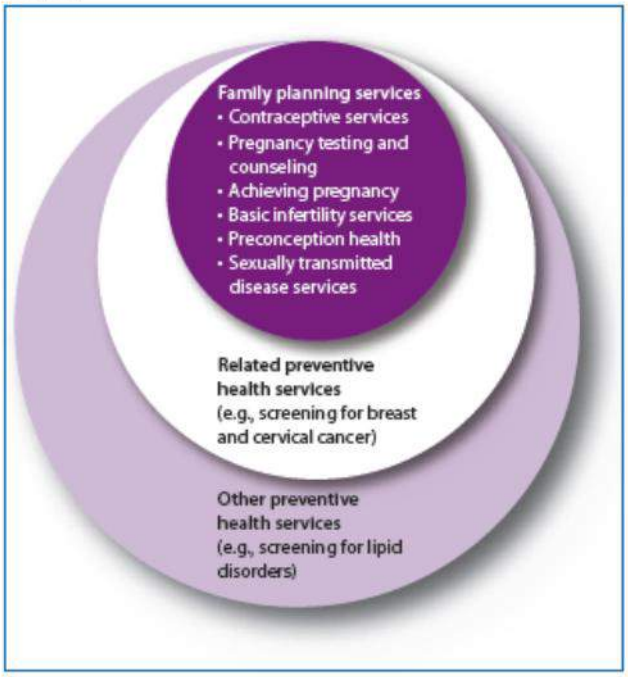
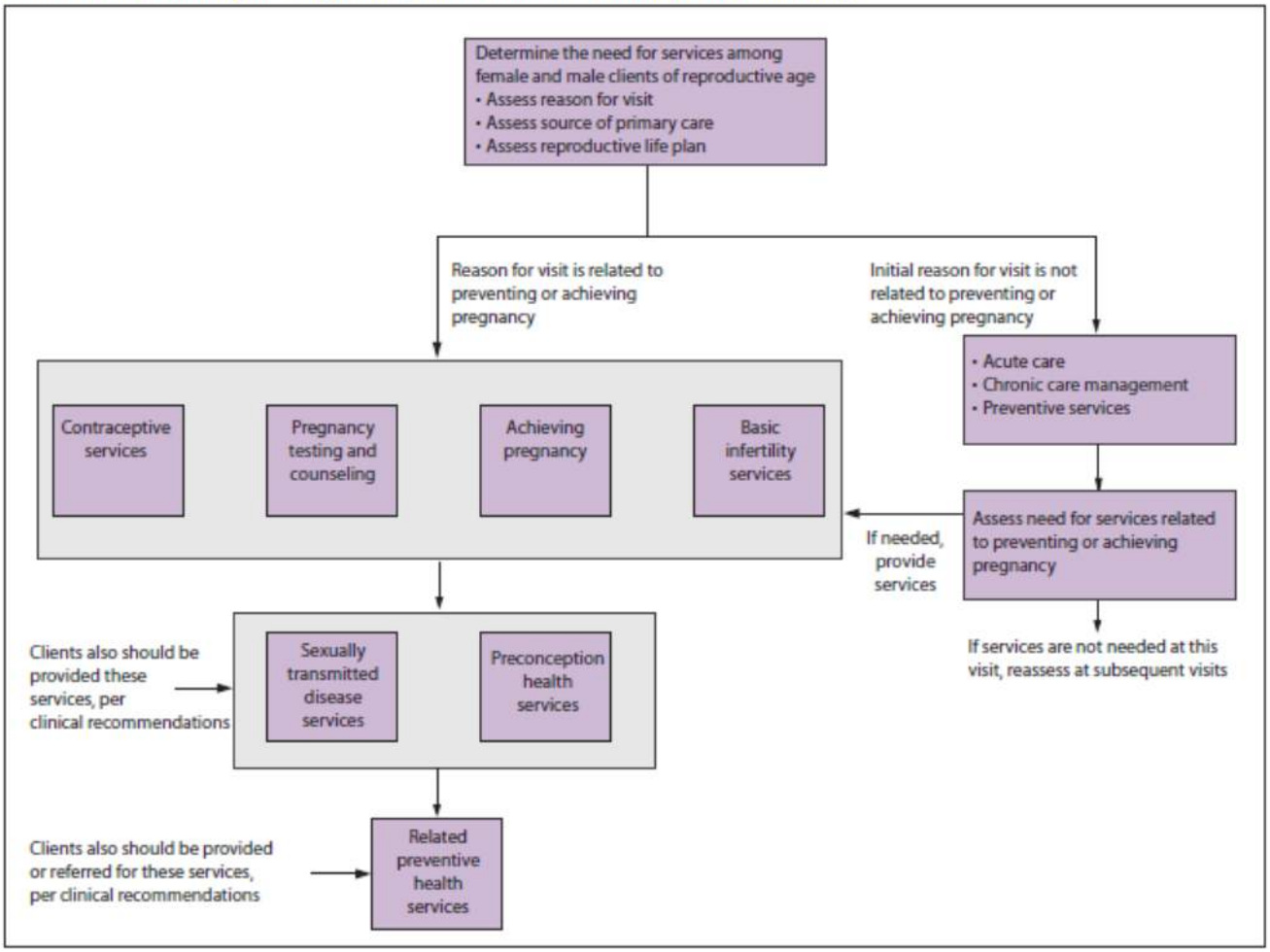


FIGURE 2. Clinical pathway of family planning services for women and men of reproductive age



A suggested clinical pathway is depicted in Figure 2. Determining the reason for the visit, other sources of care and reproductive life plan are the first steps. A reproductive life plan can be a simple assessment to understand the fertility goals of the patient. See questions listed in Box 2. As Figure 2 indicates, clinicians should ask a woman about her source of primary care. If she is receiving primary care services elsewhere, a clinician need not repeat these in conjunction with providing Family Planning services.

BOX 2. Recommended questions to ask when assessing a client's reproductive life plan

Providers should discuss a reproductive life plan with clients receiving contraceptive, pregnancy testing and counseling, basic infertility, sexually transmitted disease, and preconception health services in accordance with CDC's recommendation that all persons capable of having a child should have a reproductive life plan.*

Providers should assess the client's reproductive life plan by asking the client questions such as:

- Do you have any children now?
- Do you want to have (more) children?
- How many (more) children would you like to have and when?

* Source: CDC. Recommendations to improve preconception health and health care—United States: a report of the CDC/ATSDR Preconception Care Work Group and the Select Panel on Preconception Care. MMWR 2006;55(No. RR-6).

The QFP makes the following recommendations for steps to providing contraceptive services. Clinicians should follow these steps:

1. Establish and maintain rapport:
    a. Use open ended questions, listen, encourage sharing, demonstrate empathy and acceptance

    b. Maintain privacy and confidentiality, explain how personal information will be used

    c. Encourage questions

2. Obtain clinical and social information

    a. Medical history, including menstrual, obstetric history, conditions that may affect contraceptive eligibility (see MEC). A complete medication history including herbal medications should be obtained and reviewed for potential interactions with contraceptives. **Certain prescription medications, over the counter medications and herbal medications may decrease the effectiveness of contraceptives. Review patient's current medication history and consult online drug database, for example, Lexicomp, for more detailed information.**

    b. Reproductive life plan (as above). **It is important to acknowledge that each patient may not fit into categories of completely wanting or wishing to avoid pregnancy. Providers should work collaboratively and incorporate shared decision-making in all family planning counseling interactions.**

c. Contraceptive history and preferences

d. Sexual health assessment (using the 5 P's)
   1) Practices (what types of sexual activity are they engaging in, e.g., vaginal, oral, anal)
   2) Pregnancy prevention method
   3) Partner (number, gender, concurrency)
   4) Protection from STDs (what are they doing for STD prevention, e.g., condoms, abstinence, monogamy)
   5) Past STD history (self and partner(s), those with history of STDs are at higher risk of STDs)

3. Work interactively to select the most effective and appropriate contraceptive method incorporating the following:

   a. Method effectiveness

   b. Correct use

   c. Non-contraceptive benefits

   d. Side effects

   e. Protection from STDs/HIV

   f. Providers should also incorporate additional concerns identified from social history into this discussion (e.g., socio-behavioral concerns, intimate partner violence, mental health and substance use) that may impact method use

4. Conduct a physical assessment related to contraceptive use, when warranted (see SPR Table-Examination and tests needed before initiation of contraceptive methods also see Preventive Care and Health Screening Protocol for screening that may be valuable for overall health).

5. Provide contraceptive method along with instructions, help patient develop a plan for use, confirm understanding, arrange follow-up.

   a. Start the method the day of visit when possible (see Initiation of Contraceptives protocol).
   b. Provide multiple cycles (ideally a full year) of pill, patch, or ring when possible.

REFERENCES:

1. CDC, U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 2016, MMWR 2016; 65: 3 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6503.pdf

2. CDC, U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use, 2016. MMWR 2016; 65:4 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6504.pdf

3. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Providing Quality Family Planning MMWR 2014 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/rr/rr6304.pdf

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PREVENTIVE CARE AND HEALTH SCREENING

DEFINITION

Preventive care and health screening is an important part of providing health care to women, **and it focuses on promoting and maintaining health over a woman's lifetime**. Screening, by its definition, is performed before the onset of symptoms of disease to prevent disease or to identify it in its early stages. Recommendations for preventive care and health screening are generally grouped by age and are determined after identifying major causes of morbidity and mortality for that age group. Attention is directed towards those conditions for which early identification can impact the trajectory of the disease and intervention is possible.

ETIOLOGY

A well-woman visit provides an excellent opportunity to counsel patients about maintaining a healthy lifestyle and minimizing health risks. A visit focused on preventive care and wellness is encouraged at least once per year, and this care may be accomplished over more than one visit. A comprehensive history is one of the most important aspects of a well-woman visit. This protocol discusses the examination, counseling and testing that should be offered as a part of preventive care in a family planning setting. Please note that offering preventive care and health screening is valuable for overall health, but there is no screening that is necessary for the safe provision of contraception. Preventive care and screening, like all aspects of clinical care, change over time. Providers must make efforts to be up-to-date on recommendations. Suggested resources for providers include the US Preventive Services Task Force **https://www.uspreventiveservicestaskforce.org/Page/Name/uspstf-a-and-b-recommendations** and American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists www.acog.org.

Furthermore, cervical cancer screening and breast cancer screening should be consistent with current Georgia Breast and Cervical Cancer Program Screening Guidelines.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient's general well-being **(including complete medical, surgical, social and obstetric/gynecologic history, reproductive goals, and medication use (including herbal and over-the-counter) and allergies)** and health habits (including exercise, nutrition, sexuality, substance use, mental health, experiences of intimate partner violence and immunization history).

2. A family history to include cancer, heart disease, hypertension, high cholesterol, diabetes, autoimmune diseases, mental health disorders, **bleeding and clotting disorders** and other concerns.

OBJECTIVE EXAM

The following exam components **can** be performed and documented at the **preventive and screening visit,** if needed, and **periodically** thereafter. If a woman indicates that she has a primary care physician and has had appropriate screening based on Tables 1-3 below, this can be documented per patient history, and these services do not need to be repeated. **Note: Performance of a pelvic exam in an asymptomatic woman should be done after discussing the potential risks and benefits of performing the exam and should be based on shared decision-making between the patient and provider. Exam components listed in the table below are for screening exams for a well person. Additional components of the physical exam should be completed as clinically appropriate.**

TABLE 1: Exam components

	Menarche-18 years	19-39 years	40-64 years
Height	X	X	X
Weight	X	X	X
BMI	X	X	X
Blood pressure	X	X	X
Tanner staging of secondary sexual characteristics	X		
Neck (thyroid and lymph nodes)		X	X
Heart and Lung	X	X	X
Breast exam		X	X
Abdomen	X	X	X
Pelvic exam*****	As indicated	X (Pap smears begin at age 21)	X
Rectal exam			X (begin at age 50; may begin at age 45 for high risk populations)
General Health and wellness (ex. skin, oral cavity), as indicated	X	X	X

*****Pelvic exams should be performed for pap screening and for women who are having symptoms. Evidence suggests that this exam may be **performed or deferred based on shared decision-making with the patient.**

ASSESSMENT Preventive care and health screening

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES (Please see chart below)**

The following table outlines the diagnostic studies (lab and other) that should be performed or recommended, if needed, by age category. Depending upon the setting, some may require referral.

TABLE 2: Screening and Diagnostic Studies

	Menarche-18 years	19-39 years	40-64 years
Urine pregnancy test	As indicated	As indicated	As indicated
Cervical cancer screening	None	Ages 21-29: Cytology alone every 3 years Age 30 and over: Co-testing (cytology plus HPV) every 5 years **OR** **HPV testing alone every 5 years** **OR** Acceptable for cytology alone every 3 years	Co-testing (cytology plus HPV testing) every 5 years **OR** **HPV testing alone every 5 years** **OR** Acceptable for cytology alone every 3 years
Urinalysis	As indicated	As indicated	As indicated
Hemoglobin	As indicated	As indicated	As indicated
Wet prep	As indicated	As indicated	As indicated
Lipids[13]			X (begin at age 45 and every 5 years thereafter)
Fasting glucose[14]			X (begin at age 45 and every 5 years thereafter)
Mammography			X (every 1-2 years ages 40-49, annually thereafter)
Colon cancer screening			Begin at age 50 (AHRQ, ACOG and AGA support initiating screening for African American and Native American patients at age 45. Clinicians are encouraged to discuss these recommendations with patients and initiate screening accordingly). Preference for colonoscopy every 10 years. Sigmoidoscopy every 5 years, with high-sensitive fecal occult blood test (3 samples) every 3 years or annual screening with high-sensitive fecal occult blood testing (3 samples) acceptable. NOTE: A single stool guaiac collected at the time of clinical rectal exam is NOT sufficient for colon cancer screening.

1 For those who are at increased risk for cardiovascular disease, lipid screening may occur after age 20 and every five years thereafter. Increased risk can occur with the following:

a. BMI greater than 30
b. Hypertension
c. Personal history of coronary heart disease
d. Diabetes
e. Family history of early onset heart disease (less than 50 years for males and less than 60 years for females)
f. Tobacco use

2 For those with hypertension or a history of gestational diabetes, screening for type 2 diabetes with a fasting glucose is appropriate. In some settings, screening with stat hgb A1c may be appropriate.

TABLE 3: STD Screening

The following table outlines a risk-based strategy for STD screening. Providers are reminded that screening is to be applied to asymptomatic patients and that additional testing may be appropriate for symptomatic patients. Providers are also encouraged to be aware of their local epidemiology of STDs. Some areas of Georgia have epidemic-level prevalence of disease. STD screening, as with other preventive health studies, can be recommended, but not required.

	Females
Chlamydia	Annually all women less than **25** years old. For women **25** years old and over, screen annually for those with new partners, multiple partners or partners with other partners. Those who have previously tested positive should be screened for reinfection 3 months after treatment or whenever the person presents for care in the 12 months following initial treatment.
Gonorrhea	Annually all women less than **25** years old. For women **25** years old and over, screen annually for those with new partners, multiple partners, previous STD or gonorrhea, inconsistent condom use (if at risk), commercial sex work, and drug use. Those who have previously tested positive should be screened for reinfection 3 months after treatment or whenever the person presents for care in the 12 months following initial treatment.
HIV	All patients 13-64 should routinely be screened for HIV**.** This should be offered at the initial visit and reassessed annually for the need for additional screening (see below for those who should be screened annually). Those at high risk should be screened **at least** annually. High risk includes: injection-drug users and their sex partners, persons who exchange sex for money or drugs, sex partners of HIV-infected persons, and MSM or heterosexual persons who themselves or whose sex partners have had more than one sex partner since their most recent HIV test**. In addition to screening, people at high risk should be provided and assessment for and information about PrEP (Pre-exposure Prophylaxis) for HIV.** Additionally, all women who seek evaluation and treatment for STDs should be offered screening for HIV.
Hepatitis C	One time screening for those who were born 1945-1965. Screen also if at high risk for infection.
Syphilis	Populations at risk include MSM, commercial sex workers, persons who exchange sex for drugs, those in adult correctional facilities and those living in communities with high prevalence of syphilis.

PATIENT EDUCATION AND COUNSELING

1. Obesity: For those with BMI greater than 30, intensive, multicomponent behavioral interventions for obese adults include the following components:
    a. Behavioral management activities, such as setting weight-loss goals.
    b. Improving diet or nutrition and increasing physical activity
        1) Regular aerobic physical activity at least 30 minutes per day, most days of the week.
        2) Refer for diet and nutrition counseling, if available.
    c. Addressing barriers to change.
    d. Self-monitoring.
    e. Strategizing how to maintain lifestyle changes.

2. Nutrition

    a. Counsel or refer to nutritionist or dietician (if available) if patient has poor dietary intake, is overweight or underweight, is anemic or has any chronic disease related to poor nutrition.

    b. Recommend that all women who are seeking pregnancy or are capable of pregnancy are consuming 400 mcg of folic acid daily for prevention of neural tube defects.

3. Smoking: For women reporting any amount of smoking,

    a. Refer patient to local cessation program and/or Georgia Tobacco Quit Line, 1-877-270-STOP (7867), if smoker or tobacco user. Patient must be 13 years or older to receive services.

    b. Providers may utilize the 5 A framework to tobacco cessation
        1) Ask about tobacco use.
        2) Advise to quit through clear personalized messages.
        3) Assess willingness to quit.
        4) Assist to quit.
        5) Arrange follow-up and support

4. Alcohol use

    a. May screen using AUDIT, AUDIT-C, CAGE, T-ACE or single question tool.

1) Single question tool is “How many times in the past year have you had 5 (for men) or 4 (for women and all adults older than 65 years) or more drinks in a day?”
2) A positive screen is more than 1 time.

b. Women identified to have a positive screen should have additional conversation to assess for alcohol abuse or dependence. She may need to be counseled that her level of drinking may be negatively impacting her health and safety and referred to local resources, including Alcoholics Anonymous.

5. Immunizations

a. Emphasize importance of keeping immunizations current; assess patient’s immunization status and administer vaccines indicated according to the current Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices childhood or adult immunization schedule. If patient declines vaccination, document refusal.

b. See the Georgia Immunization Program Manual, Recommended Schedule and Guidelines, for current immunization schedules and administration guidelines for each vaccine. The Georgia Immunization Manual may be accessed online at

https://dph.georgia.gov/sites/dph.georgia.gov/files/Immunizations/2017%20Immunization%20Complete%20Manual%20Transmittal%20rev112018_%20%28002%29.pdf

c. The CDC guidance on Providing Quality Family Planning Services recommends the following immunizations related to reproductive health:
1) Human Papilloma Virus (HPV)
2) Hepatitis B: Routine hepatitis B vaccination should be offered to all unvaccinated children and adolescents aged 18 years and younger and all unvaccinated adults who do not have a documented history of hepatitis B infection.

6. Intimate Partner Violence

a. Women should be asked about safety within their relationship including physical, emotional and sexual violence and coercion.

b. Those who are experiencing partner violence should be referred to local resources. If the patient is under 18 years of age, then consult legal counsel for possible reporting as child abuse.

FOLLOW-UP

As indicated by exam, patient education and counseling.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

Women with abnormal screening labs (those that fall outside the lab report's reference range) or findings which are not covered by a separate nurse protocol - such as Iron Deficiency Anemia in Non-Pregnant Women or Bacterial Cystitis - should be referred to MD for appropriate follow-up (i.e. to a primary care provider for management of laboratory abnormalities), as indicated.

REFERENCES

1. **US Preventive Services Task Force. https://www.uspreventiveservicestaskforce.org/Page/Name/uspstf-a-and-b-recommendations Accessed April 8, 2019**

2. **ACOG Committee Opinion, No 755, Well Woman Visit. https://www.acog.org/Clinical-Guidance-and-Publications/Committee-Opinions/Committee-on-Gynecologic-Practice/Well-Woman-Visit**

3. **ACOG Practice Advisory: Cervical Cancer Screening (Update) https://www.acog.org/Clinical-Guidance-and-Publications/Practice-Advisories/Practice-Advisory-Cervical-Cancer-Screening-Update. Accessed 4/8/2019**

4. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Providing Quality Family Planning MMWR 2014 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/rr/rr6304.pdf

5. Guidelines for Women's Health, 4th Edition, American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2014. http://www.acog.org/Resources%20And%20Publications/Guidelines%20for%20Womens%20Health%20Care.aspx

6. **ACOG Well Woman Recommendations. https://www.acog.org/About-ACOG/ACOG-Departments/Annual-Womens-Health-Care/Well-Woman-Recommendations. Accessed 4/8/2019**

7. Qaseem A, Humphrey LL, Harris R, Starkey M, Denberg TD, for the Clinical Guidelines Committee of the American College of Physicians. Screening Pelvic Examination in Adult Women: A Clinical Practice Guideline From the American College of Physicians. Ann Intern Med. 2014;161:67-72. doi:10.7326/M14-0701

8. **ACOG Committee Opinion No. 754 The Utility and Indications for Routine Pelvic Examination. https://www.acog.org/Clinical-Guidance-and-Publications/Committee-Opinions/Committee-on-Gynecologic-Practice/The-Utility-of-and-Indications-for-Routine-Pelvic-Examination. Accessed 4/8/2019.**

9. **CDC HPV Vaccine Recommendations: https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/vpd/hpv/hcp/recommendations.html Accessed April 8, 2019.**

10. **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Disease Treatment Guidelines, 2015. https://www.cdc.gov/std/tg2015/tg-2015-print.pdf**

11. GA DPH Breast and Cervical Cancer Program, Breast Procedure Manual 2015, Cervical Procedure Manual 2015, Breast and Cervical Cancer Program Manual 2015.

12. National Institute of Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism. Helping Patients who drink too much. https://pubs.niaaa.nih.gov/publications/Practitioner/CliniciansGuide2005/clinicians_guide4_before.htm

13. **Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration and Health Resources and Services Administration Screening Tools: https://www.integration.samhsa.gov/clinical-practice/screening-tools Accessed 4/8/2019**

14. **A Pocket Guide for Alcohol Screening and Brief Intervention. https://pubs.niaaa.nih.gov/publications/practitioner/PocketGuide/pocket.pdf**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR EMERGENCY CONTRACEPTIVE PILLS (ECPs)

DEFINITION

Emergency Contraception (EC) is a contraceptive method used to prevent pregnancy. ECPs are ineffective if a woman is already pregnant.

Progestin-only ECPs are increased doses of levonorgestrel taken after sexual intercourse to prevent pregnancy by inhibiting ovulation.

Ulipristal acetate is the newest branded ECP. It is a selective progestin receptor modulator. It also works to delay ovulation. It is only available by prescription, but has superior efficacy in preventing pregnancy compared to progestin-only ECP between 72-120 hours after sex and also in women who are obese.

The copper IUD is the most effective method of EC and should be offered to women who need EC as well as desire contraception going forward. It can be placed up to 5 days after unprotected sex and left in place up to at least 10 years, with studies suggesting up to 12 years efficacy. See Copper IUD protocol for details on placement.

As of April 2013, a court ruling indicated levonorgestrel based ECP must be made available over-the-counter, with no age or gender restrictions. They are still available by prescription, and this may be an important clinical practice to continue because of cost concerns. Ulipristal acetate and the Copper IUD are available only by prescription.

ETIOLOGY

ECP work by delaying or preventing ovulation. ECP are most effective if given within 72 hours of unprotected intercourse, but are effective up to 120 hours. The sooner ECP are initiated, the more effective the treatment. ECP will not disrupt a pregnancy once implantation has occurred. There is no evidence that ECP will harm a pregnancy once implantation has occurred. The effectiveness of treatment depends on when in the woman's menstrual cycle the emergency contraception is used and how soon after sex it is taken.

There are no medical contraindications to the use of ECP except known pregnancy and allergy to the medicine. The duration of use of ECP is less than that of regular use of combined oral contraceptives and progestin only pills and thus would be expected to have less clinical impact.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient provides history of unprotected sexual intercourse within the last 120 hours (5 days) and requests post-coital contraception as an emergency measure only (not as ongoing routine contraception).

For women who are interested in ongoing contraception, the copper IUD provides the most effective EC and highly effective long acting reversible contraception. It should be discussed with all women requesting emergency contraception (See Copper IUD Protocol).

NOTE: Progestin only EC is most effective if given within 72 hours of unprotected intercourse. The sooner ECP are initiated, the more effective the treatment. If the patient is more than 72 hours from unprotected intercourse, educate the woman that the copper IUD and ulipristal acetate are superior to levonorgestrel for pregnancy prevention in this window.

2. Due to the time-sensitive nature of use of ECPs, patients may request and/or providers can recommend or provide EC in advance for use as needed. This may be particularly valuable for women who elect short term or coitally-dependent contraception (contraceptive pills, condoms, contraceptive patch, contraceptive rings, etc.) or for any woman who has a medical condition that puts her at increased risk if she experiences an unintended pregnancy (See Box 2 CDC Medical Eligibility Criteria).

3. Precautions:

When providing oral levonorgestrel (e.g., Plan B® One-Step, Plan B® Two-Step, Next Choice, etc.) or ulipristal acetate, Ella®:

1. History of hypersensitivity to any component of ECPs.
b. Known or suspected pregnancy.

OBJECTIVE

1. A pregnancy test is not needed before providing ECP but may be performed if the patient reports more than one act of unprotected intercourse since last menstrual period (LMP).

2. Pelvic exam, if indicated.

3. Current and local availability of oral levonorgestrel, or ulipristal acetate.

ASSESSMENT Patient requests EC; no contraindications or allergies to any component of the emergency contraceptive.

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

NOTE: Hazardous agent; use appropriate precautions for handling and disposal which can be found at: https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Levonorgestrel 1.5 mg (e.g., Plan B® One-Step, My Way®, React®, EContra EZ®, Aftera®, etc.): one single dose of 1.5mg levonorgestrel PO as soon as possible within 120 hours after unprotected intercourse.

OR

2. Levonorgestrel 0.75mg (e.g., Plan B® Two-Step, Next Choice®) packaged as two doses of 0.75mg with package instructions to take each dose 12 hours apart. However, it works better and is easier for the patient to take both pills PO at once as soon as possible.

   NOTE: Antiemetics not needed with progestin only ECP.

OR

3. If the patient is a candidate for ulipristal acetate, one tablet of 30mg ulipristal acetate PO as soon as possible**, with or without food.** Ulipristal acetate works better than levonorgestrel-only ECP between 72-120 hours and for women who have BMI greater than 30. For women in these situations, clinicians should preferentially offer Ulipristal acetate or Paragard if available due to their higher efficacy.

4. Consider repeating the dose of ECP if vomiting occurs within 2 hours of Levonorgestrel or within 3 hours of ulipristal acetate.

5. If patient wants to initiate an ongoing method, ParaGard should be considered as it provides the most effective EC and provides highly effective long acting contraception.

   a. For those who use ulipristal acetate as ECP, a back-up barrier method is encouraged until her next menses. Patient may initiate a hormonal contraceptive method according to manufacturer's directions at the next menstrual cycle or she may initiate hormonal

contraceptives 5 days after taking the ulipristal acetate for ECP. She should be provided contraceptive supplies

and instructions about when to begin. Women who are interested in DMPA or a subdermal implant should return in 5 days for the injection or at the time of next menses.

b. For those who use levonorgestrel-only ECP**,** initiate the method according to manufacturer's directions at the next menstrual cycle or begin the method the day after ECP treatment is complete. DMPA and a subdermal implant can be initiated on the same day as this ECP. Encourage use of a back-up method for 7 days and repeat urine pregnancy testing in 2-3 weeks.

6. ECPs (Ella (ulipristal acetate) or Levonorgestrel only) are not indicated for use in children or adolescents prior to menarche. Adolescents (postmenarchal) who need ECPs should follow adult dosing schedule. If there is any situation in which a clinician feels that a minor's request for EC is a result of a sexual act that was not consensual, the clinician should report the concern according to clinical guidelines regarding Mandatory Reporting Laws.

7. Offer STD screening if sexual encounter also placed patient at risk of contracting STDs. If patient has been raped, refer to local authorities and clinical setting where an exam can be performed for collecting evidence (if your clinic does not do this). Provision of the ECP should not be delayed for this referral.

8. Refer patient to NP for copper IUD placement if she is interested in copper IUD as emergency contraception.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Provide the patient with exact directions for taking medication. This will include taking one dose (combining doses if necessary, for those that suggest separating progestin only ECP over 12 hours) of the levonorgestrel based ECP or ulipristal acetate as soon as possible.

2. Encourage patient to choose an ongoing method of birth control **if that is acceptable to her.** ECP is not intended for routine contraception. Repeated use within the same menstrual cycle is not recommended. For women who initiate a hormonal method and use levonorgestrel-only ECP, encourage use of a back-up method for 7 days. For those who use ulipristal acetate as ECP a

back-up method is encouraged until her next menses. Emergency contraception does not protect from pregnancy going forward (except for use of Paragard as EC) and future acts of sex require additional contraception.

3. Inform patient that next menstrual period may start a few days earlier or later than usual. The next menstrual period should begin within the next 2 or 3 weeks. If no menses in 3 weeks advise patient to return to clinic for pregnancy test.

4. If patient initiates an ongoing method immediately after ECP, her next cycle may also be delayed. In this setting, offer a urine pregnancy test in 2-4 weeks. (This can be done by a home pregnancy test if the patient desires).

5. Women who use ulipristal acetate for EC and who begin a hormonal contraception should use a back-up method until her next menses.

6. Provide counseling on preconception health counseling and future fertility.

7. Advise patient that ECP does not protect against STD/HIV. Counsel on the use of condoms to reduce the risk of STD/HIV.

8. Provide information for the Emergency Contraception Hotline (1-888-NOT-2-LATE). The Hotline is an automated, toll free confidential service available 24 hours a day in English and Spanish. In addition to basic information, each caller hears a recording of the names and telephone numbers of the five closest ECP providers.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Return to clinic if menses has not started in 3 weeks or if next menses is unusually light or painful.

2. Return to clinic for ongoing birth control method if not provided at visit.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Refer patient to physician immediately for symptoms concerning for an ectopic pregnancy.

REFERENCES

1. **Robert Hatcher et al., *Contraceptive Technology,* 21tst ed., Ardent Media, Inc., New York, 2018. (Current)**

2. Joellen Hawkins et al., *Protocols for Nurse Practitioners in Gynecologic Settings,* 11th ed., Springer Publishing Co., New York, 2015.

3. **M. Zieman, R.A. Hatcher. *Managing Contraception, 14th ed., Ardent Media Inc.,* New York, 2017**

4. CDC, U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 2016, MMWR 2016; 65: 3 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6503.pdf

5. CDC, U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use, 2016. MMWR 2016; 65:4 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6504.pdf

6. US Department of Health and Human Services; Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. NIOSH list of antineoplastic and other hazardous drugs in healthcare settings, 2016. Available at https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html Updated September 2016 Accessed November 8, 2016.

7. **Wolters Kluwer. *Lexicomp® Online* (2019, April 20). Levonorgestrol (Systemic). Retrieved April 25, 2019, from https://online.lexi.com/crlsql/servlet/crlonline**

8. **Wolters Kluwer. *Lexicomp® Online* (2019, April 20). Ulipristal . Retrieved April 25, 2019, from https://online.lexi.com/crlsql/servlet/crlonline**

9. **Cooper Surgical. (2018, November 1). Paragard® IUD | Official Healthcare Provider Website. *Paragard Prescribing Information*. Retrieved April 23, 2019, from https://hcp.paragard.com/**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR INITIATION OF CONTRACEPTIVES

DEFINITION

Contraceptive initiation can occur on the day of the clinical visit when a provider is reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant.

ETIOLOGY

This protocol discusses initiation of contraceptive methods including the following: combined hormonal contraception (OC, Vaginal Ring, Contraceptive Patch); Progestin-only Pills (POP); medroxyprogesterone acetate (commonly known as DMPA); subdermal contraceptive implants and intrauterine devices (IUD).

Requiring a patient to return for contraceptive initiation or to remember when to start her method at some point in the future opens opportunity not only for failure to initiate the method but also for pregnancy to occur while waiting to do so. Initiating contraceptives immediately can streamline patient education regarding initiation. It can make instructions easier to provide and to understand. For DMPA, it can increase access by 81%.

A sensitive urine pregnancy test is positive when the hormone human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG) is present in sufficient quantities in the body. This will generally be positive by 14 days after an act of intercourse. Thus, a pregnancy test done on any given day would not reliably identify pregnancies from more recent intercourse. Initiation of hormonal contraception during this two-week window does not alter whether or not previous intercourse will result in pregnancy that is not yet detectable. There is a low rate of pregnancy for those who initiate hormonal contraceptives while not on their menses (~3%). In general when inadvertently used early in pregnancy, combined hormonal and progestin only contraceptive methods do not harm a pregnancy.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient is interested in starting contraception.

2. Medical, menstrual and coital history. Patient does not have any contraindication to using the selected contraceptive (as per the individual Standard Nurse Protocol and the CDC Medical Eligibility Criteria).

OBJECTIVE

1. Clinicians can be reasonably certain a woman is not pregnant by her history if she has no signs or symptoms of pregnancy and she meets any of the following:

    a. Has not had intercourse since her last normal menstrual period.

    b. Has been consistently and correctly using a reliable method of contraception.

c. Is within the first seven days of a normal menstrual period.

d. Is within four weeks postpartum (lactating or non-lactating).

e. Is within seven days of a miscarriage or abortion.

NOTE: If a woman has not had sex since a miscarriage or abortion, a provider can be reasonably certain that she is not pregnant and can initiate any method. A pregnancy test is not indicated and may still be positive.

f. Is fully breastfeeding, is amenorrheic and is less than six months postpartum.

ASSESSMENT Patient desires contraception

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

1. Sensitive urine pregnancy test (UCG) as indicated.

THERAPEUTIC (See chart below)

PHARMACOLOGIC

6. If a pregnancy test is performed and is positive, provide options counseling.

7. If a provider can be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant, any contraceptive may be initiated on that day.

8. In situations where a provider cannot be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant, the benefits of initiating hormonal contraceptives (combined hormonal contraceptives, DMPA, POP, subdermal implant) outweigh the risks and contraception can be initiated immediately. Offer initiation of hormonal contraception immediately:

   a. Starting hormonal contraception **on the day of the visit** can be easier for patients and can increase access.

   b. Hormonal contraception will not prevent a pregnancy from sex that has already occurred.

   c. Most studies show no increased risk for adverse outcomes (congenital anomalies, neonatal or infant death) in infants exposed to contraception.

d. The likelihood of pregnancy in previous studies of immediate initiation in situations like these was 3%.

e. If patient wants to begin hormonal contraception (OC, contraceptive ring, contraceptive patch, DMPA, subdermal implant) that day, initiate method.

f. Encourage condoms or abstinence for 7 days. Repeat UCG in 14-28 days (this can be done by a home pregnancy test if the patient desires).

g. If patient declines initiation of hormonal contraception on that day, provide the method to begin on the first day of the next menstrual cycle or advise her to return to clinic to receive a DMPA shot or implant when her next period begins.

h. If the patient desires an IUD and the provider cannot be reasonably certain that patient is not pregnant, the patient should be provided an alternate method of contraception and should return for IUD placement when the provider can be reasonably certain she is not pregnant.

i. If patient has had unprotected sex in the last 120 hours, offer emergency contraception (emergency contraceptive pills or Paragard IUD). See Emergency Contraceptive Pills protocol

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Provide method-specific counseling and consent for the method that the patient is initiating.

2. Provide condoms for backup protection (or encourage abstinence) for at least 7 days. Counsel on the continued use of condoms to reduce the risk of STD/HIV.

3. Schedule well-woman care as needed.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Routine follow-up for situations when the provider can be reasonably certain the patient is not pregnant when initiating contraception, refer to table below.

TABLE D1: Routine follow-up after contraceptive initiation

TABLE D1. Routine follow-up after contraceptive initiation

	Contraceptive method				
Action	Cu-IUD or LNG-IUD	Implant	Injectable	CHC	POP
General follow-up					
Advise women to return at any time to discuss side effects or other problems or if they want to change the method. Advise women using IUDs, implants, or injectables when the IUD or implant needs to be removed or when a reinjection is needed. No routine follow-up visit is required.	X	X	X	X	X
Other routine visits					
Assess the woman's satisfaction with her current method and whether she has any concerns about method use.	X	X	X	X	X
Assess any changes in health status, including medications, that would change the method's appropriateness for safe and effective continued use based on U.S. MEC (i.e., category 3 and 4 conditions and characteristics) (Box 1).	X	X	X	X	X
Consider performing an examination to check for the presence of IUD strings.	X	—	—	—	—
Consider assessing weight changes and counseling women who are concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.	X	X	X	X	X
Measure blood pressure.	—	—	—	X	—

Abbreviations: CHC = combined hormonal contraceptives; Cu-IUD = copper-containing intrauterine device; HIV = human immunodeficiency virus; IUD = intrauterine device; LNG-IUD = levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine device; POP = progestin-only pills; U.S. MEC = *U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use*.

2. For situations when a provider cannot be reasonably certain patient is not pregnant, a urine pregnancy test should be repeated in 2-4 weeks (this can be done by a home pregnancy test if the patient desires).

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. **Patients with chronic medical conditions should be encouraged to discuss their contraceptive decision with the provider managing those medical conditions. This is particularly important for people who have serious or multiple medical conditions, rare medical conditions not listed in these protocols, and those who take medications that can interact with contraception (some medications used to treat HIV, tuberculosis, epilepsy and certain fungal infections).**

2. Seek consultation, as applicable, if patient has health screening laboratory values (not covered by a nurse protocol) or has abnormal laboratory values and/or physical findings.

How to Be Reasonably Certain That a Woman is Not Pregnant

A health-care provider can be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant if she has no symptoms or signs of pregnancy and meets any one of the following criteria:

- is ≤7 days after the start of normal menses
- has not had sexual intercourse since the start of last normal menses
- has been correctly and consistently using a reliable method of contraception
- is ≤7 days after spontaneous or induced abortion
- is within 4 weeks postpartum
- is fully or nearly fully breastfeeding (exclusively breastfeeding or the vast majority [≥85%] of feeds are breastfeeds), amenorrheic, and <6 months postpartum

In situations in which the health-care provider is uncertain whether the woman might be pregnant, the benefits of starting the implant, depot medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA), combined hormonal contraceptives and progestin-only pills likely exceed any risk; therefore, starting the method should be considered at any time, with a follow-up pregnancy test in 2-4 weeks. For IUD insertion, in situations in which the health-care provider is not reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant, the woman should be provided with another contraceptive method to use until the health-care provider can be reasonably certain that she is not pregnant and can insert the IUD.

When to Start Using Specific Contraceptive Methods

Contraceptive method	When to start (if the provider is reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant)	Additional contraception (i.e., back up) needed	Examinations or tests needed before initiation[1]
Copper-containing IUD	Anytime	Not needed	Bimanual examination and cervical inspection[2]
Levonorgestrel-releasing IUD	Anytime	If >7 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	Bimanual examination and cervical inspection[2]
Implant	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	None
Injectable	Anytime	If >7 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	None
Combined hormonal contraceptive	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	Blood pressure measurement
Progestin-only pill	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 2 days.	None

Abbreviations: BMI = body mass index; IUD = intrauterine device; STD = sexually transmitted disease; U.S. MEC = U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use

[1] Weight (BMI) measurement is not needed to determine medical eligibility for any methods of contraception because all methods can be used (U.S. MEC 1) or generally can be used (U.S. MEC 2) among obese women. However, measuring weight and calculating BMI (weight [kg]/height [m²] at baseline might be helpful for monitoring any changes and counseling women who might be concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.

[2] Most women do not require additional STD screening at the time of IUD insertion. If a woman with risk factors for STDs has not been screened for gonorrhea and chlamydia according to CDC's STD Treatment Guidelines (http://www.cdc.gov/std/treatment), screening can be performed at the time of IUD insertion, and insertion should not be delayed. Women with current purulent cervicitis or chlamydial infection or gonococcal infection should not undergo IUD insertion (U.S. MEC 4).

Source: For full recommendations and updates, see the U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use webpage at http://www.cdc.gov/reproductivehealth/unintendedpregnancy/usspr.htm.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion

REFERENCES:

1. https://www.cdc.gov/reproductivehealth/contraception/pdf/when-to-start_508tagged.pdf

2. CDC, U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use, 2016. MMWR 2016; 65:4 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6504.pdf (Current)

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR COMBINED HORMONAL CONTRACEPTIVES

DEFINITION Combined hormonal contraceptives are birth-control methods that include a combination of an estrogen and a progestin. Estrogen and progesterone are two hormones which direct many of the processes surrounding the menstrual cycle. Combined hormonal contraceptives include oral contraceptives (OCs or pills), transdermal patch and vaginal ring. There are many different OC formulations with varying amounts of estrogen and progestins. The patch and the ring have one formulation each.

ETIOLOGY Combined hormonal contraceptives work primarily by preventing ovulation. The progestin in combined hormonal contraceptives provide most of the birth control activity by: thickening cervical mucus to prevent sperm penetration into the upper genital tract, blocking the luteinizing hormone (LH) surge prohibiting ovulation, and inhibiting capacitation of the sperm which may delay sperm transport. Estrogen may contribute to the contraceptive effect by decreasing folliculogenesis by suppressing release of FSH but serves primarily to allow menstrual cycle control. Estrogen and progestins have other effects on the reproductive tract, however, there is no significant evidence that these effects contribute to the contraceptive efficacy.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient provides a detailed health history (includes menstrual, sexual, contraception, personal health and family history) that does not reveal a condition representing an unacceptable health risk according to the CDC *US Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use*.

2. If breastfeeding, is at least 30 days postpartum without co-morbidities that increase venous thromboembolism risk (such as age 35 or older, previous venous thromboembolism, thrombophilia, immobility, transfusion at delivery, BMI 30 or greater, postpartum hemorrhage, post cesarean delivery, preeclampsia, or smoking). For breastfeeding post-partum patients with above co-morbidities, patient must be at least 42 days postpartum before initiating combined hormonal contraception.

3. If non-breastfeeding, must be at least 21 days postpartum without patient must be at least 42 days postpartum before

4. If age 35 or older, does not smoke. **Use of e-cigarettes does not preclude use of any contraceptive method.**

5. If age 35 or older and has two or more co-morbidities (to include the following: BMI of 30 or greater, diabetes, low HDL, high LDL or high triglycerides) must use non-estrogen containing methods as first line

6. If on anticonvulsant therapy, does not take certain anticonvulsants (e.g., phenytoin, carbamazepine, barbiturates, primidone, topiramate, oxcarbazepine, lamotrigine).

7. If on antimicrobial therapy, does not take a rifamycin (Rifampin, rifabutin, or Rifapentine) derivative

8. For those requesting pills, has not had a history of malabsorptive bariatric surgery (Roux-en-Y gastric bypass, biliopancreatic diversion).

9. If on antiretroviral therapy, does not take Fosamprenavir.

10. Refer to CDC *US Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use* for medical conditions that represent an unacceptable health risk for taking combined OCs. Medical conditions include:

    a. Hypertension; **>140 systolic or >90 diastolic**
    b. Deep vein thrombosis (DVT) / Pulmonary embolism
    c. Known thrombogenic mutations
    d. History of superficial venous thrombosis
    e. Ischemic heart disease
    f. Stroke
    g. Valvular heart disease-complicated (pulmonary hypertension, risk for atrial fibrillation, history of subacute bacterial endocarditis)
    h. Peripartum cardiomyopathy
    i. Lupus with positive (or unknown) antiphospholipid antibodies
    j. Migraine headaches with aura (at any age)
    k. Multiple sclerosis with prolonged immobility
    l. Breast cancer
    m. Diabetes: nephropathy/retinopathy/neuropathy, other vascular disease or diabetes of greater than 20 years' duration
    n. Inflammatory bowel disease (ulcerative colitis or Crohn's disease) who are at increased risk for VTE (those with active or extensive disease, surgery, immobilization, corticosteroid use, vitamin deficiencies or fluid depletion)
    o. Gall-bladder disease (symptomatic) – medically treated, current symptomatic
    p. History of cholestasis: past related to CHCs
    q. Viral Hepatitis: acute or flare (initiation of combined hormonal contraception)

r. Cirrhosis: severe (decompensated)
s. Liver Tumors: benign hepatocellular adenoma, malignant (hepatoma)
t. Major surgery with prolonged immobilization
u. Solid organ transplant, complicated (graft failure, rejection, cardiac allograph vasculopathy)

OBJECTIVE

1. Provider should assess whether they can be reasonably certain that the patient is not pregnant (see Initiation of Contraception protocol).

2. Physical examination and laboratory tests, as indicated. See Standard Nurse Protocol for Preventive Care and Health Screening.

ASSESSMENT

Patient desires combined hormonal contraception and has no condition representing an unacceptable health risk for taking combined hormonal contraceptives. Patient is not allergic to any component of the contraceptive.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Blood pressure is below 140/90.

2. Urine pregnancy test, as indicated.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Hazardous agent; use appropriate precautions for handling and disposal which can be found at: https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html

1. Select a method based on the hormonal dose, the patient's medical history (clinical picture), preference, past experiences with contraceptives, cost and potential side effects.

   a. For those interested in a pill, both WHO and FDA recommend using the lowest dose pill (35 mcg or less) that is effective. (See Appendix A).

   b. For those interested in the patch:

      1) Women who use the contraceptive patch are exposed to about 60% more estrogen than if they were taking a

typical birth control pill containing 35 mcg of estrogen. In general, increased estrogen exposure may increase the risk of developing serious blood clots (for instance, in the legs or lungs) that can block blood vessels and cause death or serious disability. However, it is not known whether women using the contraceptive patch are at a greater risk of having these serious problems. One study found a doubling of this risk and another study found no increased risks. The manufacturer of the contraceptive patch is doing studies on this.

2) The transdermal contraceptive patch may be less effective in women with body weight of 198 lbs (90 kg) or higher. May consider back-up method such as condoms if weight is 198 lbs (90 kg) or higher**.**

c. Storage of NuvaRing®: Store out of direct sunlight.

NOTE: Prior to dispensing to the patient, refrigerate at 2-8° C (36-46° F). After dispensing to the patient, NuvaRing® can be stored for up to 4 months at room temperature out of direct sunlight. When dispensed to the patient, place an expiration date on the label not to exceed either, 4 months from the date of dispensing or the expiration date, whichever comes first.

2. Provide instructions on selected combined hormonal contraceptive usage to include: initiation of method, routines for method use. If a provider can be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant, combined hormonal contraceptives may be initiated on that day of clinic visit (See Initiation of Contraceptives protocol). Encourage back up contraception for 7 days.

3. In situations where a provider cannot be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant, the benefits of initiating combined hormonal contraceptives outweigh the risks and contraception can be initiated immediately.

a. Offer initiation of hormonal contraception immediately.
   1) Starting hormonal contraception, the day of clinic visit can be easier for patients and can increase access.
   2) Hormonal contraception will not prevent a pregnancy from sex that has already occurred.
   3) Most studies have shown no increased risk for adverse outcomes (congenital anomalies, neonatal or infant death) in infants exposed to contraception.
   4) The likelihood of pregnancy in previous studies of immediate initiation in situations like these was 3%.

5) If patient wants to begin combined hormonal contraception (OC, Contraceptive Ring, Contraceptive Patch) the day of clinic visit, initiate it. Encourage condoms or abstinence for 7 days. Repeat UCG in 14-28 days (this can be done by home pregnancy test if the patient desires).
6) If patient declines initiation of hormonal contraception on that day, provide the method to begin on the first day of her next menstrual cycle.
7) If patient has had unprotected sex in the last 120 hours, offer emergency contraception (emergency contraceptive pills or Paragard IUD). See Emergency Contraceptive Pills Protocol. If providing ulipristal acetate for EC, start CHC in 5 days **and encourage condoms or abstinence to continue for the following 7 days after starting the CHC**.

4. Switching from other methods:

   a. When switching from a non-hormonal method, start combined hormonal contraceptive immediately.

   b. For patients with an IUD, it may be reasonable to start combined hormonal contraceptives when the appointment for IUD removal is made.

   c. When switching from a hormonal method that works primarily by inhibiting ovulation (Combined hormonal contraception, DMPA, implant), start combined method immediately after stopping the other method with no breaks.

5. Provide education/counseling to include: details of method use side effects and danger signs, effectiveness and back-up methods, preconception health and future fertility, and risks of STD/HIV.

6. Can **provide** up to **a one-year** supply of combined hormonal method.

7. Instruct patient to follow the method-specific instructions (See PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING below).

8. Schedule follow-up exam, as indicated.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Counsel patient according to the seven basic elements of informed consent using the pneumonic, BRAIDED. Benefits- (benefits of using the method), Risks (major risks and side effects), Alternatives (other methods available), Inquiries (all patient's questions have been answered), Decision (patient can make a decision to stop the method at any time), Explanation (instructions on use of the method), Documentation.

2. For those who request the pill, explain instructions for combined OCs use.

    a. Take pills at the same time every day to encourage pill taking to be part of a routine.

    b. Can encourage patient to set an alarm as a reminder or to sign up for services to trigger reminders (e.g., Bedsider.org).

    c. Use a back-up barrier method (or abstinence) for the first 7 days of combined OCs initiation, as indicated above.

    d. Use a back-up barrier method if a pill is missed. A missed pill(s) increases the risk of pregnancy. Refer to pill package insert for missed pill(s) instructions.

    e. Offer emergency contraceptive pills (ECP) in advance and instruct women to use it if 2 or more OC pills were missed and patient had unprotected sex in the last 5 days.

    OPTIONAL: For women who desire menstrual suppression, additional instructions for extended use of OCs:

        a. Take one monophasic OC each day (recommend 20mcg).

        b. Skip the placebo pills (the 7 pills at the end of the month that are a different color) and start the next pill pack. **If calling in a prescription, include "skip the placebo pills" in the sig instructions.**

        c. This means that the woman should take one active pill each day (no placebo pills) until she desires a period. Common extended cycles include bi-cycling

two pill packs in a row followed by one week of placebo pills and the resulting menstrual period), tri-cycling (three pill packs in a row followed by one week of placebo pills and the resulting menstrual period), or continuous (no placebo pills, no menstrual periods).

d. This will require more pill packs over the course of the year. Alternatively, a provider can order an extended version of pills (e.**g.,** Seasonale, Lybrel) if the woman has insurance coverage and desires menstrual suppression.

3. For those who request the patch (**e.g., Xulane®**), explain instructions for patch use:

a. The first day the patch is applied is designated as "Patch Change Day."
   1) Remove the patch and apply a new patch on Patch-Change Day on weeks 2 and 3. Apply the new patch to a different area of skin to reduce skin irritation.
   2) No patch is applied on week 4. Menstrual period will begin during week 4.

b. Remove liner and apply the sticky surface of the patch on clean, dry skin of the lower abdomen, buttocks, upper outer arm, or upper torso (not on the breasts). The absorption is the same when applied to any of these areas.
   1) Press down firmly on the patch with the palm of the hand for 10 seconds. Make sure that the edges stick well.
   2) Location of patch should not be altered in mid-week.
   3) Check the patch every day to make sure it is sticking. Avoid touching the sticky surface.

c. Do not apply creams, oils, or cosmetics near the patch site.

d. If the patch becomes loose and is still sticky, try to reattach it. If it is not sticky, replace it with a new patch, and then change the new patch on the usual Patch-Change Day.

e. Do not attempt to tape down a patch that has become loosened.

f. To remove the patch, grasp it by an edge and pull it off. Fold it closed on itself on the adhesive side to seal in the

medication. Discard the patch in the garbage; do not flush it into the toilet.

g. Remove any stickiness or adhesive that remains on the skin by using baby oil or lotions.

h. Management of Missed/Forgotten Patches:

1st Week

1) Apply new patch as soon as possible.
2) Record this day of the week as new Patch-Change Day.
3) Use back-up method for first 7 days of patch use.
4) If new patch was applied 3 or more days late (patch was left off for 10 days or more in a row) and patient had unprotected sex in last 120 hours, offer emergency contraception.

2nd – 3rd Week

1) *1-2 days late*:
   a) Apply a new patch as soon as remembered.
   b) Keep the same Patch-Change Day.
   c) No need for back-up method.
2) *More than 2 days late*:
   a) Stop current cycle and start a new 4-week cycle by applying a new patch immediately.
   b) Record this day of the week as the new Patch-Change Day.
   c) Use back-up method for first 7 days of patch use.

4th Week

1) Remove the patch.
2) Start the next cycle on the usual Patch-Change Day.
3) No need for back-up method.

4. For those who request the ring, explain instructions for ring use.

a. Insertion:

1) Remove NuvaRing® from the foil pouch.
2) Press opposite sides of the ring together and gently push the folded ring into your vagina while lying down, squatting, or standing with one leg up. If you feel discomfort after inserting NuvaRing®, slide it farther in until it feels comfortable. Once in the vagina, the

exact position of NuvaRing® is not important for it to be effective. Once inserted, keep NuvaRing® in place for 3 weeks in a row.

3) The NuvaRing® does not require fitting or placement in a specific position, nor the use of spermicidal jelly. It does not need to surround the cervix. **Those who are using the ring should not concurrently rely on the diaphragm or internal condom for back-up because the ring may interfere with correct placement of those methods.** If discomfort is felt, the device is probably not placed high enough in the vagina.

4) The NuvaRing® does not need to be removed for intercourse.

b. Continuation:

1) After 7 ring-free days, insert a new NuvaRing® into the vagina to begin the cycle again. Insert the new NuvaRing® on the same day of the week the previous NuvaRing® was inserted, even if the menses is not finished.

c. Late Replacement or Removal:

1) NuvaRing® can be accidentally expelled when it has not been inserted properly, while removing a tampon, or when straining to move the bowels. If expelled, rinse ring with cool/lukewarm water and re-insert promptly (within 3 hours from the time it was expelled).

2) During the first or second week, if the NuvaRing® is out of the vagina for more than 3 hours, rinse and re-insert the ring as soon as possible. Use a back-up method for the next 7 days. If ring is lost, insert a new one. Offer emergency contraception if patient had unprotected intercourse in the last 120 hours (5 days).

3) During the third week, if the NuvaRing is out of the vagina for more than 3 hours, she can insert a new ring immediately to begin a new 3-week cycle

OR,

if the ring was used continuously for the preceding 7 days, choose to have a withdrawal bleed and insert a new ring no later than 7 days from the last ring removed/expelled.

For either option, use a back-up method until the new ring has been used continuously for 7 days.

4) If patient waited more than 7 days before inserting a new NuvaRing®, follow Initiation of Contraceptives Protocol for restart. Consider emergency contraception (if recent intercourse) plus a back-up method for the first 7 days after reinsertion of new ring. Restart therapy by inserting a new NuvaRing® as soon as possible and begin a new 4-week cycle.
5) If a new ring was inserted 3 or more days late or the NuvaRing® was in place longer than 4 weeks, follow Initiation of Contraceptives Protocol for restart. Use an additional contraceptive method until new ring has been in place for at least 7 days. Offer emergency contraception if patient had unprotected sexual intercourse in the last 120 hours (5 days).

d. Removal & Disposal:
   1) Remove the NuvaRing® by hooking the index finger around the ring and pulling it out.
   2) Place the used NuvaRing® in the foil pouch and throw it away in a trash container out of the reach of children and pets (do not flush it down the toilet).

OPTIONAL: For women who desire menstrual suppression, additional instructions for extended use of vaginal ring:

a. Menstrual suppression can be accomplished with the vaginal ring without requiring additional product over the course of the year.

b. Place one ring vaginally on any calendar day (**e.g.,** April 14).

c. One month later (May 14), remove the ring and place another

5. Discuss side effects and danger signs (ACHES). ACHES is a pneumonic for thrombotic diseases that may be attributable to CHCs (severe Abdominal pain; Chest pain, coughing up blood, dyspnea; Headaches, weakness, numbness; Eye problems such as complete or partial loss vision; leg pain, Swelling, redness or inflammation).

   The primary side effects of hormonal contraception are headache, nausea, application site reactions, and breast discomfort. Women using the patch are more likely to experience breakthrough bleeding and/or spotting during the first 2 months compared with users of a combined OC. Some women using the ring may experience vaginal irritation or infection.

6. Discuss effectiveness of combined methods and back-up methods.

   a. For those using the ring, do not rely on a diaphragm as a back-up method because NuvaRing® may interfere with the correct placement and position of a diaphragm

7. Provide counseling on preconception health counseling and future fertility.

8. Counsel on the use of condoms to reduce the risk of STD/HIV.

FOLLOW-UP

Patient should return as needed (see table below) for evaluation or contact clinic if side effects, danger signs, or symptoms of pregnancy develop. Outside of clinic hours, seek physician or emergency care if danger signs develop. **Patients with blood pressures 130-140 systolic and 80-90 diastolic should receive follow-up for a blood pressure check in 1-2 months.**

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Refer patient to PCP/clinic MD or APRN if patient develops any of the following danger signs:

    a. Abdominal pain (severe).
    b. Eye problems (vision loss or blurring).
    c. Speech problems.
    d. Chest pain (severe), coughs, shortness of breath.
    e. Severe leg pain (calf or thigh).
    f. Severe headaches that start or become worse after beginning to take combined OCs.
    g. Dizziness, weakness, numbness or depression.

2. Seek consultation with delegating physician/PCP/clinic MD or APRN, as applicable, on serious health concerns expressed by patient.

3. Advise patient to continue treatment with physician if patient is under the supervision of physician for a health problem.

4. Seek consultation with delegating physician/PCP/clinic MD or APRN, as applicable, if patient has health screening laboratory values (not covered by a nurse protocol) or has abnormal laboratory values and/or physical findings that indicate combined hormonal contraceptives should not be continued.

5. Seek consultation with delegating physician/PCP/clinic MD or APRN, if the patient develops high blood pressure while on combined hormonal contraception.

    a. Immediately refer patient to the Emergency Room with severe hypertension characterized by systolic pressure 180 mmHg or greater or diastolic pressure 110 mmHg or greater on any occasion. Instruct the patient to stop the combined OCs and discuss non-estrogen containing methods.

b. For blood pressure 140 mmHg or greater systolic, or 90 mmHg or greater diastolic, on two measurements 6 hours apart, discuss changing method to one that does not contain estrogen (IUD, Implant, progestin-only method). **Anyone experiencing symptoms with blood pressures over 140/90 should be referred to the ER.**

c. A diagnosis of hypertension requires two readings more than six hours apart. If the patient has a single elevated reading (using an appropriately sized blood pressure cuff) and desires to continue to use combined hormonal contraception, ask patient to return for a repeat blood pressure check in 1-7 days.

1) If patient has an elevated blood pressure when she returns, discuss the need to change to a method that does not contain estrogen, using the CDC *US Medical Eligibility for Contraceptive Use* guidance for women with hypertension. Refer her for primary care management of her blood pressure.
2) If she has a normal blood pressure when she returns, she may continue combined hormonal contraception, but may warrant more frequent blood pressure monitoring**.**

How to Be Reasonably Certain That a Woman is Not Pregnant

A health-care provider can be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant if she has no symptoms or signs of pregnancy and meets any one of the following criteria:

- is ≤7 days after the start of normal menses
- has not had sexual intercourse since the start of last normal menses
- has been correctly and consistently using a reliable method of contraception
- is ≤7 days after spontaneous or induced abortion
- is within 4 weeks postpartum
- is fully or nearly fully breastfeeding (exclusively breastfeeding or the vast majority [≥85%] of feeds are breastfeeds), amenorrheic, and <6 months postpartum

In situations in which the health-care provider is uncertain whether the woman might be pregnant, the benefits of starting the implant, depot medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA), combined hormonal contraceptives and progestin-only pills likely exceed any risk; therefore, starting the method should be considered at any time, with a follow-up pregnancy test in 2-4 weeks. For IUD insertion, in situations in which the health-care provider is not reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant, the woman should be provided with another contraceptive method to use until the health-care provider can be reasonably certain that she is not pregnant and can insert the IUD.

When to Start Using Specific Contraceptive Methods

Contraceptive method	When to start (if the provider is reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant)	Additional contraception (i.e., back up) needed	Examinations or tests needed before initiation[1]
Copper-containing IUD	Anytime	Not needed	Bimanual examination and cervical inspection[2]
Levonorgestrel-releasing IUD	Anytime	If >7 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	Bimanual examination and cervical inspection[2]
Implant	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	None
Injectable	Anytime	If >7 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	None
Combined hormonal contraceptive	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	Blood pressure measurement
Progestin-only pill	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 2 days.	None

Abbreviations: BMI = body mass index; IUD = intrauterine device; STD = sexually transmitted disease; U.S. MEC = U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use

[1] Weight (BMI) measurement is not needed to determine medical eligibility for any methods of contraception because all methods can be used (U.S. MEC 1) or generally can be used (U.S. MEC 2) among obese women. However, measuring weight and calculating BMI (weight [kg]/height [m²]) at baseline might be helpful for monitoring any changes and counseling women who might be concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.

[2] Most women do not require additional STD screening at the time of IUD insertion. If a woman with risk factors for STDs has not been screened for gonorrhea and chlamydia according to CDC's STD Treatment Guidelines (http://www.cdc.gov/std/treatment), screening can be performed at the time of IUD insertion, and insertion should not be delayed. Women with current purulent cervicitis or chlamydial infection or gonococcal infection should not undergo IUD insertion (U.S. MEC 4).

Source: For full recommendations and updates, see the U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use webpage at http://www.cdc.gov/reproductivehealth/unintendedpregnancy/usspr.htm.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion

TABLE D1. Routine follow-up after contraceptive initiation

Action	Contraceptive method				
	Cu-IUD or LNG-IUD	Implant	Injectable	CHC	POP
General follow-up					
Advise women to return at any time to discuss side effects or other problems or if they want to change the method. Advise women using IUDs, implants, or injectables when the IUD or implant needs to be removed or when a reinjection is needed. No routine follow-up visit is required.	X	X	X	X	X
Other routine visits					
Assess the woman's satisfaction with her current method and whether she has any concerns about method use.	X	X	X	X	X
Assess any changes in health status, including medications, that would change the method's appropriateness for safe and effective continued use based on U.S. MEC (i.e., category 3 and 4 conditions and characteristics) (Box 1).	X	X	X	X	X
Consider performing an examination to check for the presence of IUD strings.	X	—	—	—	—
Consider assessing weight changes and counseling women who are concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.	X	X	X	X	X
Measure blood pressure.	—	—	—	X	—

Abbreviations: CHC = combined hormonal contraceptives; Cu-IUD = copper-containing intrauterine device; HIV = human immunodeficiency virus; IUD = intrauterine device; LNG-IUD = levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine device; POP = progestin-only pills; U.S. MEC = *U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use*.

REFERENCES

1. **Robert Hatcher et al., *Contraceptive Technology,* 21st ed., Ardent Media, Inc., New York, 2018. (Current)**

2. Joellen Hawkins et al., *Protocols for Nurse Practitioners in Gynecologic Settings,* 11th ed., Springer Publishing Co., New York, 2015.

3. **M. Zieman, R.A. Hatcher. *Managing Contraception, 14th ed., Ardent Media Inc.,* New York, 2017**.

4. CDC, U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 2016, MMWR 2016; 65: 3 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6503.pdf

5. CDC, U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use, 2016. MMWR 2016; 65:4 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6504.pdf

6. US Department of Health and Human Services; Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. NIOSH list of antineoplastic and other hazardous drugs in healthcare settings, 2016. Available at https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html Updated September 2016. Accessed November 8, 2016.

7. **Wolters Kluwer. (2019, April 20). *Lexicomp® Online.* Ethinyl Estradiol and Norelgestromin. Retrieved April 25, 2019, from https://online.lexi.com/crlsql/servlet/crlonline**

8. **Wolters Kluwer. (2019, April 20). *Lexicomp® Online.* Ethinyl Estradiol and Etonogestrel. Retrieved April 25, 2019, from https://online.lexi.com/crlsql/servlet/crlonline**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR PROGESTIN-ONLY PILL (MINIPILL)

DEFINITION

Progestin-only pills (POP) are also known as minipills. Minipills contain only a progestin and are taken daily with no hormone free days. Minipills have lower progestin doses than combined pills and no estrogen. The amount of progestin in the minipill is less than the amount in the lowest-dose combination oral contraceptives.

ETIOLOGY

Minipills prevent pregnancy primarily by thickening and decreasing cervical mucus preventing sperm penetration. This effect on cervical mucus rapidly resolves, so punctual daily dosing is essential for optimizing contraceptive efficacy. Secondary mechanism of action may include: suppressing mid-cycle peaks of LH and FSH, inhibiting progesterone-receptor synthesis, reducing number/size of endometrial glands associated with a thin atrophic endometrium, reducing activity of the cilia in the fallopian tubes, arresting movement of the blastocyst, and premature luteolysis (diminished function of the corpus luteum).

Minipills do not suppress the milk supply once breastfeeding is well established and studies have found no adverse effects on infant health. The minipill may be used for women who cannot use estrogen according to the CDC *US Medical Eligibility for Contraceptive Use* guidance and for those who cannot tolerate estrogen-excess side effects.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient provides a detailed health history (includes menstrual, sexual, contraception, personal health and family history) that does not reveal a condition representing an unacceptable health risk according to the product prescribing information and the CDC *Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use*.

2. If breastfeeding, patient may initiate immediately. However, there is minimal likelihood of ovulating before one month postpartum in a woman who is breastfeeding.

3. If on anticonvulsant therapy, does not take certain anticonvulsants (e.g., phenytoin, carbamazepine, barbiturates, primidone, topiramate, oxcarbazepine).

4. If on antimicrobial therapy, does not take a rifamycin derivative (Rifamycin, Rifabutin or Rifapentine).

5. Does not have a history of malabsorptive procedures (**e.g.,** Roux-en-Y gastric bypass or biliopancreatic diversion)

6. Refer to CDC *Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use* for medical conditions that represent an unacceptable health risk for taking the minipill. Medical conditions include:

a. Lupus with positive (or unknown) antiphospholipid antibodies
b. Breast cancer
c. Cirrhosis – severe (decompensated)
d. Liver Tumors – benign hepatocellular adenoma; malignant (hepatoma)

7. Refer to CDC Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use for medical conditions that represent an unacceptable health risk if they develop while taking the minipill. Women with these conditions may initiate minipills. However, if women who did not have these conditions at the time of initiation develop these conditions after being on minipills, the minipills should not be continued. Medical conditions include:

   a. Ischemic heart disease
   b. Stroke

8. May report estrogen-excess side effects while taking combined hormonal contraceptives, such as headaches, breast tenderness, nausea and chloasma.

9. May want lowest-dose oral contraceptive available.

OBJECTIVE

1. Provider assessment of whether they can be reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant (see Initiation of Contraception protocol).

2. Physical examination and laboratory tests, as indicated. See protocol for Preventive Care and Health Screening.

ASSESSMENT

Patient has no condition representing an unacceptable health risk if taking minipills. Not allergic to any component of minipill.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

Pregnancy test, if indicated, is negative.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Hazardous agent; use appropriate precautions for handling and disposal which can be found at:
https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html

1. Order any FDA approved progestin-only OC. (See Appendix A)

2. Determine appropriate pill initiation method to begin taking pills. See Patient Education/Counseling below.

3. Provide instructions on selected progestin-only pill usage to include: pill initiation method, daily pill routines, and missed pills.

4. Provide education/counseling to include: informed consent, side effects and danger signs, effectiveness and back-up methods, preconception health and future fertility, and risks of STD/HIV.

5. May provide up to a **one-year supply** of progestin only OCs.

6. Instruct patient to take one pill daily by mouth at the same time of day.

7. Schedule follow-up exam, as indicated (see table below).

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Counsel patient according to seven basic elements of informed consent (BRAIDED - Benefits Risks Alternatives Inquiries Decision Explanation Documentation).

2. Educate patient on when to initiate the method (see Initiation of Contraceptives Protocol) and table below.

3. Switching from other methods.

    a. When switching from a non-hormonal method, start progestin only pills immediately following the guidelines for the quick start method.

    b. For patients with an IUD, it may be reasonable to start minipills when the appointment for IUD removal is made.

    c. When switching from a hormonal method that works primarily by inhibiting ovulation, start minipills immediately after stopping the other method with no breaks.

4. Explain instructions for minipill use.

    a. Always take one pill every day at the same time. Taking a pill more than a few hours late increases the risk of pregnancy and missing two or more pills in a row greatly increases the risk. When one packet is finished, take the first pill from the next packet on the very next day. All pills

are active, hormonal pills. There is no wait between packets.

b. With missed pills or more than three hours late taking the pills, use a barrier method or avoid sex for two days. Take the last missed pill as soon as possible and continue taking one pill each day as usual.

c. Advise patient to refer to the pill package insert for missed pill(s) instructions.

d. Offer emergency contraceptive pills (ECP) in advance to be used if pill was missed or taken late and patient had unprotected sex in the past 120 hours. ECP reduce the risk of pregnancy. (See Nurse Protocol of Emergency Contraceptive Pills.)

5. Discuss effectiveness of minipill and back-up methods.

a. There appear to be no significant metabolic effects and there is an immediate return to fertility upon discontinuation of the minipill.

b. The minipill may cause irregular bleeding or amenorrhea.

c. There is not consensus regarding how to manage BTB with POPs. BTB is common with POPs and is generally not a sign that there is anything wrong. The patient can be reassured if there is no objective concern from history, exam or diagnostic study, as described above. If patient is not satisfied with this reassurance, provider should discuss alternative contraceptive methods.

6. Discuss danger signs:

a. Abdominal pain may be due to an ovarian cyst or ectopic pregnancy.

b. A delayed period after several months of regular cycles may be a sign of pregnancy.

c. Repeated, very severe headaches.

7. Provide counseling on preconception health counseling and future fertility.
8. Counsel on the use of condoms to reduce the risk of STD/HIV.

FOLLOW- UP

Patient should return as needed (see table below) for evaluation or contact clinic if side effects, danger signs, or symptoms of pregnancy develop. Outside of clinic hours, seek physician or emergency care if danger signs develop.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Refer patient to physician if patient develops danger signs.

2. Seek consultation, as applicable, if patient has abnormal health screening laboratory values (not covered by a nurse protocol) or develops abnormal laboratory values and/or physical findings that indicate the minipill should not be continued.

3. Refer to physician if patient has suspected pregnancy (e.g., missed menses after several regular cycles), especially if she has signs of ectopic pregnancy such as abdominal pain or tenderness, or fainting.

How to Be Reasonably Certain That a Woman is Not Pregnant

A health-care provider can be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant if she has no symptoms or signs of pregnancy and meets any one of the following criteria:

- is ≤7 days after the start of normal menses
- has not had sexual intercourse since the start of last normal menses
- has been correctly and consistently using a reliable method of contraception
- is ≤7 days after spontaneous or induced abortion
- is within 4 weeks postpartum
- is fully or nearly fully breastfeeding (exclusively breastfeeding or the vast majority [≥85%] of feeds are breastfeeds), amenorrheic, and <6 months postpartum

In situations in which the health-care provider is uncertain whether the woman might be pregnant, the benefits of starting the implant, depot medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA), combined hormonal contraceptives and progestin-only pills likely exceed any risk; therefore, starting the method should be considered at any time, with a follow-up pregnancy test in 2-4 weeks. For IUD insertion, in situations in which the health-care provider is not reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant, the woman should be provided with another contraceptive method to use until the health-care provider can be reasonably certain that she is not pregnant and can insert the IUD.

When to Start Using Specific Contraceptive Methods

Contraceptive method	When to start (if the provider is reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant)	Additional contraception (i.e., back up) needed	Examinations or tests needed before initiation[1]
Copper-containing IUD	Anytime	Not needed	Bimanual examination and cervical inspection[2]
Levonorgestrel-releasing IUD	Anytime	If >7 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	Bimanual examination and cervical inspection[2]
Implant	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	None
Injectable	Anytime	If >7 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	None
Combined hormonal contraceptive	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	Blood pressure measurement
Progestin-only pill	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 2 days.	None

Abbreviations: BMI = body mass index; IUD = intrauterine device; STD = sexually transmitted disease; U.S. MEC = U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use

[1] Weight (BMI) measurement is not needed to determine medical eligibility for any methods of contraception because all methods can be used (U.S. MEC 1) or generally can be used (U.S. MEC 2) among obese women. However, measuring weight and calculating BMI (weight [kg]/height [m²]) at baseline might be helpful for monitoring any changes and counseling women who might be concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.

[2] Most women do not require additional STD screening at the time of IUD insertion. If a woman with risk factors for STDs has not been screened for gonorrhea and chlamydia according to CDC's STD Treatment Guidelines (http://www.cdc.gov/std/treatment), screening can be performed at the time of IUD insertion, and insertion should not be delayed. Women with current purulent cervicitis or chlamydial infection or gonococcal infection should not undergo IUD insertion (U.S. MEC 4).

Source: For full recommendations and updates, see the U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use webpage at http://www.cdc.gov/reproductivehealth/unintendedpregnancy/usspr.htm.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion

TABLE D1. Routine follow-up after contraceptive initiation

Action	Contraceptive method				
	Cu-IUD or LNG-IUD	Implant	Injectable	CHC	POP
General follow-up					
Advise women to return at any time to discuss side effects or other problems or if they want to change the method. Advise women using IUDs, implants, or injectables when the IUD or implant needs to be removed or when a reinjection is needed. No routine follow-up visit is required.	X	X	X	X	X
Other routine visits					
Assess the woman's satisfaction with her current method and whether she has any concerns about method use.	X	X	X	X	X
Assess any changes in health status, including medications, that would change the method's appropriateness for safe and effective continued use based on U.S. MEC (i.e., category 3 and 4 conditions and characteristics) (Box 1).	X	X	X	X	X
Consider performing an examination to check for the presence of IUD strings.	X	—	—	—	—
Consider assessing weight changes and counseling women who are concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.	X	X	X	X	X
Measure blood pressure.	—	—	—	X	—

Abbreviations: CHC = combined hormonal contraceptives; Cu-IUD = copper-containing intrauterine device; HIV = human immunodeficiency virus; IUD = intrauterine device; LNG-IUD = levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine device; POP = progestin-only pills; U.S. MEC = *U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use*.

REFERENCES

1. **Robert Hatcher et al., *Contraceptive Technology,* 21st ed., Ardent Media, Inc., New York, 2018. (Current)**

2. Joellen Hawkins et al., *Protocols for Nurse Practitioners in Gynecologic Settings,* 11th ed., Springer Publishing Co., New York, 2015.

3. **M. Zieman, R.A. Hatcher. *Managing Contraception, 14th ed., Ardent Media Inc.,* New York, 2017.**

4. CDC, U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 2016, MMWR 2016; 65: 3 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6503.pdf

5. CDC, U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use, 2016. MMWR 2016; 65:4 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6504.pdf

6. US Department of Health and Human Services; Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. NIOSH list of antineoplastic and other hazardous drugs in healthcare settings, 2016. Available at https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html

7. Wolters Kluwer, 2019 Lexicomp® Online. Norethindrone. < https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/patch_f/7382?searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Ft%3Dname%26q%3DMicronor%26ac%3Dfalse%26va%3Dmicornor#cyt> **Accessed September 6, 2019**.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR MEDROXYPROGESTERONE ACETATE (DMPA) (Injectable Contraceptive)

DEFINITION Medroxyprogesterone acetate is a progestin-only (estrogen-free) long acting reversible hormonal contraceptive birth control which is injected every 3 months or 12 weeks. Medroxyprogesterone acetate is commonly known as DMPA.

ETIOLOGY DMPA inhibits ovulation by suppressing levels of follicular-stimulating hormone (FSH) and luteinizing hormone (LH) and by eliminating the LH surge. The pituitary gland remains responsive to gonadotropin-releasing hormone, which suggests that the site of action of medroxyprogesterone acetate is the hypothalamus.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient desires DMPA as choice of contraception.

2. Patient provides detailed health history (includes menstrual, sexual, contraception, personal health and family history) that does not reveal a condition representing an unacceptable health risk according to the product prescribing information and to the *CDC Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use*.

3. Refer to *CDC Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use* for medical conditions that represent an unacceptable health risk for taking DMPA. Medical conditions include:

    a. Multiple risk factors for arterial cardiovascular disease (examples of risk factors include, but are not limited to, the following: age over 35, smoking, diabetes, low HDL, high LDL or high triglycerides, obesity and hypertension). Women with multiple risk factors for arterial cardiovascular disease should be encouraged to consider long-acting reversible contraceptives. For women with three or more risk factors, consult with the delegating physician prior to initiating DMPA.

    b. Elevated blood pressure levels (systolic equal to or greater than 160 mmHg or diastolic equal to or greater than 100 mmHg., patients with well controlled hypertension or those who have blood pressures less than 160/100 are candidates for DMPA).

    c. Vascular disease.

    d. Ischemic heart disease.

e. Stroke.

f. Lupus with positive (or unknown) antiphospholipid antibodies.

g. Severe thrombocytopenia (at the time of initiation).

h. Rheumatoid arthritis receiving immunosuppressive therapy (with long term corticosteroid therapy) with a history of or risk factors for nontraumatic fractures.

i. Unexplained vaginal bleeding (suspicious for serious condition before evaluation).

j. Breast cancer.

k. Diabetes – nephropathy/retinopathy/neuropathy, other vascular disease or diabetes of greater than 20 years duration.

l. Cirrhosis – severe (decompensated).

m. Liver Tumors – benign hepatocellular adenoma; malignant (hepatoma).

OBJECTIVE Physical examination and laboratory tests, as indicated. See protocol for Preventive Care and Health Screening.

ASSESSMENT Patient has no condition representing an unacceptable health risk if using DMPA. Not allergic to any component of injection.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

Pregnancy test, if indicated, is negative.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Hazardous agent; use appropriate precautions for handling and disposal which can be found at: https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html

NOTE: Allergic reactions may occur. Encourage patient to remain in the clinic at least 20 minutes after each injection. Refer to the Emergency Preparedness Allergic Reaction Nurse Protocol as needed.

1. Availability: DMPA is provided either IM or **subQ.** IM: 1 mL vials or prefilled syringes containing 150 mg/1mL. **subQ**: 104mg/0.65mL

2. Storage: DMPA IM is to be stored at room temperature 20° to 25°C (68° to 77° F). Both the vial and the pre-filled syringe should be vigorously shaken at least one minute just before use to ensure the dose is uniformly suspended (refer to package insert).

   DMPA **subQ** is to be stored at room temperature 20° to 25°C (68° to 77° F). Shake vigorously prior to administration.

3. Administration: DMPA 150mg IM, injected deeply into the deltoid or gluteus maximus muscle. Depending on the size of the patient, may need to use a 1.5-inch needle. Do not massage the injection site, and instruct patient not to massage site. (Massaging area may reduce duration of action and thereby effectiveness). Rotate administration site with each injection.

   DMPA 104mg **subQ**, administer by **subQ** injection in the anterior thigh or abdomen. Avoid boney areas and the umbilicus. Administer over 5-7 seconds. Do not rub the injection area (refer to package insert). Rotate administration site with each injection.

4. Initiation:

   a. Educate patient on when to initiate the method.

   b. If a provider can be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant, DMPA may be initiated on that day. Back up for 7 days.

   c. In situations where a provider cannot be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant, the benefits of initiating DMPA outweigh the risks and contraception can be initiated immediately.
      1) Starting DMPA the day of clinic visit can be easier for patients and can increase access.
      2) Hormonal contraception will not prevent a pregnancy from sex that has already occurred.
      3) Most studies have shown no increased risk for adverse outcomes (congenital anomalies, neonatal or infant death) in infants exposed to contraception.

4) The likelihood of pregnancy in previous studies of immediate initiation in situations like these was 3%.
5) If patient wants to begin DMPA that day of the clinic visit, initiate that day. Encourage condoms or abstinence for 7 days. Repeat UCG in 14-28 days (this can be done by home pregnancy test if the patient desires).
6) If patient declines initiation of hormonal contraception on that day of clinic visit, return to the clinic during the first 5 days of her next menstrual cycle for starting DMPA.
7) If patient has had unprotected sex in the last 120 hours, offer EC (emergency contraceptive pills or Paragard IUD). See Emergency Contraceptive Pills Protocol. If providing ulipristal acetate EC, start DMPA in 5 days.

5. Switching from other methods:

   a. For patients with an IUD, it may be reasonable to start the DMPA when the appointment for IUD removal is made.

   b. When switching from a hormonal method that works primarily by inhibiting ovulation, give the DMPA immediately after stopping the other method with no breaks.

6. Continuation:

   a. The manufacturer recommends re-injection of DMPA IM between 11 and 13 weeks after a previous injection and **subQ** between 12 and 14 weeks after a previous injection.

   b. At each re-injection follow-up visit, ask the date of the last menses, ask about any problems or concerns, specifically signs and symptoms of pregnancy, any changes in contraceptive or STD prevention needs. If the patient is not having any unacceptable symptoms or problems, she may receive re-injection.

   c. Contraceptive coverage will be maintained in switching from IM (150 mg/mL) to subcutaneous (104mg per 0.65 mL) DMPA provided the next injection is given within the prescribed dosing period for the IM (150 mg/mL).

d. Contraceptive coverage will be maintained in switching from DMPA 104mg **subQ** to 150mg IM, provided the next injection is given within the prescribed dosing period for DMPA 104mg **subQ**.

7. Managing Late Injections

   a. Women who present after 13 weeks for DMPA IM and 14 weeks for DMPA **subQ** but prior to 15 weeks 0 days may receive their next injection without additional evaluation.

   b. If women present greater than 15 weeks 0 days from last IM or **subQ** of DMPA injection and patient desires to continue with DMPA, treat as re-initiation.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Counsel patient according to seven basic elements of informed consent (BRAIDED – Benefits Risks Alternatives Inquiries Decision Explanation Documentation).

2. Emphasize the importance of the schedule associated with use of this method of contraception. Instruct patient to use back-up contraception during the first week after the injection if injections are late.

3. Discuss danger signs and other warning signs including repeated painful headaches, heavy bleeding, severe depression, jaundice, severe lower abdominal pain (may be sign of pregnancy), and pus, prolonged pain, or bleeding at the injection site.

4. Common side effects may include: bleeding/menstrual irregularities, weight changes, headache, nervousness, abdominal pain, dizziness, and weakness or fatigue. Less common side effects include: decreased libido, backache, leg cramps, depression, nausea, acne, vaginitis, breast pain, hair loss, bloating, rash, and hot flashes. Common side effects may not be relieved until the drug clears the body 6-8 months after the last injection. Bleeding irregularities are very common (30% in the first year and 10% thereafter). If necessary, bleeding can be treated with medication (as noted below in follow-up).

5. Call or return if there are questions about possible side effects or development of reasons to avoid use, such as weight gain, heavy bleeding, headaches or depression.

6. Advise that amenorrhea is common on DMPA and is not harmful. Approximately 50% of women are amenorrheic after one year of use, and this increases to 80% by 5 years.

7. Review the FDA black box warning and WHO and CDC recommendations on DMPA and bone mineral density. Counsel patient on adequate calcium intake from foods like milk, cheese, yogurt or ice cream or a calcium/vitamin D supplement daily; regular exercise; and avoiding alcohol, smoking and excessive intake of sodas and caffeine. Advise patient after 2 years of continuous DMPA use, re-evaluation regarding bone health, risk and continuation of DMPA for contraception is appropriate. Women and their providers should continually reassess contraceptive medical eligibility over time, but for healthy women 18-45 years old, the duration of use for DMPA need not be limited**.**

8. Please see details below.

NOTE: In November 2004, the FDA issued the following "black box warning" in the Depo-Provera package labeling. Clinicians are advised to review the following warning, which has been added to the prescribing information:

"Women who use Depo-Provera Contraceptive Injection may lose significant bone mineral density. Bone loss is greater with increasing duration of use and may not be completely reversible. It is unknown if use of Depo-Provera Contraceptive Injection during adolescence or early adulthood, a critical period of bone accretion, will reduce peak bone mass and increase the risk of osteoporotic fracture in later life. Depo-Provera Contraceptive Injection should be used as a long-term birth control method (e.g., longer than 2 years) only if other birth control methods are inadequate."

The WHO and many others have reviewed the evidence on this subject and concluded:

"there should be no restriction on the use of Depo-Provera (DMPA), including no restriction on duration of use, among women aged 18 to 45 who are otherwise eligible to use the method."

Most studies have found that women lose bone mineral density while using Depo-Provera, but regain bone mineral density after discontinuing Depo-Provera. Depo-Provera may decrease the amount of calcium in the bones. It is not known if use during the reproductive years affects the risk of fracture in later postmenopausal years.

Therefore, all Depo-Provera users should have the FDA black box warning clearly explained to them and a discussion of alternatives if they choose to change methods.

Women with medical co-morbidities that place them at risk for osteoporosis and fracture, such as chronic corticosteroid use, disorders of bone metabolism, a strong family history of osteoporosis or women with anorexia nervosa, may not be well suited for long-term Depo-Provera use. Consider alternative contraceptives in patients with significant risk factors for osteoporosis.

WHO further recommended:

"Among adolescents (menarche to age 17) and women over age 45, the advantages of using Depo-Provera usually outweigh the theoretical safety concerns regarding fracture risk. Since data are insufficient to determine if this is the case with long-term use among these age groups, the overall risks and benefits for continuing use of the method should be reconsidered over time with the individual user."

9. Discuss effectiveness of DMPA and back-up methods.

10. Advise patient that DMPA is a long acting contraceptive and not immediately reversible. It takes at least 3 months for fertility to return after last injection. Anovulation may linger after discontinuation. The average is about 9 months (range of 4-31 months) after the last injection and does not increase with longer duration of use.

11. There is no apparent increased risk for breast cancer.

12. No adverse effects have been noted in infants of mothers using DMPA during lactation. Quality and quantity of breast milk is not adversely affected.

13. Provide counseling on preconception health counseling and future fertility.
14. Counsel on the use of condoms to reduce the risk of STD/HIV. DMPA offers no protection from STD/HIV.

FOLLOW-UP

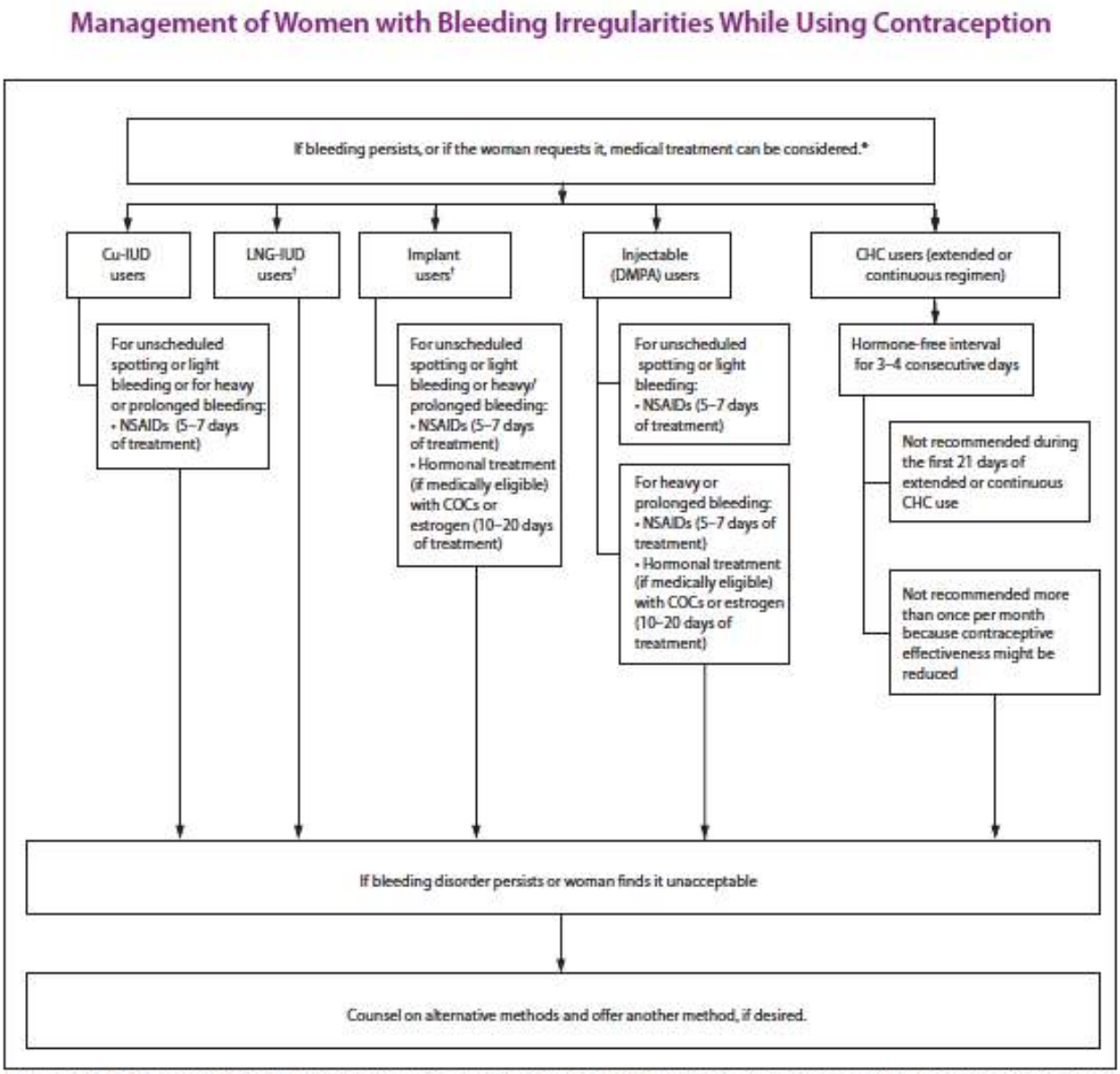
1. Return for re-injection of DMPA IM between 11 and 13 weeks after previous injection and **subQ** between 12 and 14 weeks after previous injection.

2. Treatment of bleeding irregularities:

    a. For bleeding irregularities, rule out infection or cervical lesions. Refer to protocol for Spotting or Breakthrough Bleeding While Using Hormonal Contraception. May give:
        1) A combined low-dose oral contraceptive for 1 cycle
        2) Ibuprofen 400mg PO every 4 to 6 hours **or 800mg PO every 8 hours** as necessary for 5 to 7 days, **with food. (Maximum dose 2400 mg/day for those 12-17 years and 3200 mg/day for those 18 years and older.)**

    b. See table below.

Table 1 Management of Bleeding Irregularities, from CDC's US Selected Practice Recommendations



Abbreviations: CHC = combined hormonal contraceptive; COC = combined oral contraceptive; Cu-IUD = copper-containing intrauterine device; DMPA = depot medroxyprogesterone acetate; LNG-IUD = levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine device; NSAIDs = nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs.
* If clinically warranted, evaluate for underlying condition. Treat the condition or refer for care.
† Heavy or prolonged bleeding, either unscheduled or menstrual, is uncommon.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Symptoms of pregnancy.

2. Signs or symptoms of allergic reaction (rash, difficulty breathing, redness and swelling at injection site, etc.).

3. Signs or symptoms of infection (fever, severe pain, redness or swelling at injection site, etc.).

4. Intolerable bleeding pattern.

How to Be Reasonably Certain That a Woman is Not Pregnant

A health-care provider can be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant if she has no symptoms or signs of pregnancy and meets any one of the following criteria:

- is ≤7 days after the start of normal menses
- has not had sexual intercourse since the start of last normal menses
- has been correctly and consistently using a reliable method of contraception
- is ≤7 days after spontaneous or induced abortion
- is within 4 weeks postpartum
- is fully or nearly fully breastfeeding (exclusively breastfeeding or the vast majority [≥85%] of feeds are breastfeeds), amenorrheic, and <6 months postpartum

In situations in which the health-care provider is uncertain whether the woman might be pregnant, the benefits of starting the implant, depot medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA), combined hormonal contraceptives and progestin-only pills likely exceed any risk; therefore, starting the method should be considered at any time, with a follow-up pregnancy test in 2-4 weeks. For IUD insertion, in situations in which the health-care provider is not reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant, the woman should be provided with another contraceptive method to use until the health-care provider can be reasonably certain that she is not pregnant and can insert the IUD.

When to Start Using Specific Contraceptive Methods

Contraceptive method	When to start (if the provider is reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant)	Additional contraception (i.e., back up) needed	Examinations or tests needed before initiation[1]
Copper-containing IUD	Anytime	Not needed	Bimanual examination and cervical inspection[2]
Levonorgestrel-releasing IUD	Anytime	If >7 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	Bimanual examination and cervical inspection[2]
Implant	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	None
Injectable	Anytime	If >7 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	None
Combined hormonal contraceptive	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	Blood pressure measurement
Progestin-only pill	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 2 days.	None

Abbreviations: BMI = body mass index; IUD = intrauterine device; STD = sexually transmitted disease; U.S. MEC = U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use

[1] Weight (BMI) measurement is not needed to determine medical eligibility for any methods of contraception because all methods can be used (U.S. MEC 1) or generally can be used (U.S. MEC 2) among obese women. However, measuring weight and calculating BMI (weight [kg]/height [m²]) at baseline might be helpful for monitoring any changes and counseling women who might be concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.

[2] Most women do not require additional STD screening at the time of IUD insertion. If a woman with risk factors for STDs has not been screened for gonorrhea and chlamydia according to CDC's STD Treatment Guidelines (http://www.cdc.gov/std/treatment), screening can be performed at the time of IUD insertion, and insertion should not be delayed. Women with current purulent cervicitis or chlamydial infection or gonococcal infection should not undergo IUD insertion (U.S. MEC 4).

Source: For full recommendations and updates, see the U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use webpage at http://www.cdc.gov/reproductivehealth/unintendedpregnancy/usspr.htm.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion

TABLE D1. Routine follow-up after contraceptive initiation

Action	Contraceptive method				
	Cu-IUD or LNG-IUD	Implant	Injectable	CHC	POP
General follow-up					
Advise women to return at any time to discuss side effects or other problems or if they want to change the method. Advise women using IUDs, implants, or injectables when the IUD or implant needs to be removed or when a reinjection is needed. No routine follow-up visit is required.	X	X	X	X	X
Other routine visits					
Assess the woman's satisfaction with her current method and whether she has any concerns about method use.	X	X	X	X	X
Assess any changes in health status, including medications, that would change the method's appropriateness for safe and effective continued use based on U.S. MEC (i.e., category 3 and 4 conditions and characteristics) (Box 1).	X	X	X	X	X
Consider performing an examination to check for the presence of IUD strings.	X	—	—	—	—
Consider assessing weight changes and counseling women who are concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.	X	X	X	X	X
Measure blood pressure.	—	—	—	X	—

Abbreviations: CHC = combined hormonal contraceptives; Cu-IUD = copper-containing intrauterine device; HIV = human immunodeficiency virus; IUD = intrauterine device; LNG-IUD = levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine device; POP = progestin-only pills; U.S. MEC = *U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use*.

REFERENCES

1. "Black Box Warning Added Concerning Long-Term Use of Depo-Provera Contraceptive Injection," *FDA Talk Paper*, T04-50, FDA, November 17, 2004. (Current)

2. **Robert Hatcher et al., *Contraceptive Technology,* 21st ed., Ardent Media, Inc., New York, 2018. (Current)**

3. Joellen Hawkins et al., *Protocols for Nurse Practitioners in Gynecologic Settings,* 11th ed., Springer Publishing Co., New York, 2015.

4. **M. Zieman, R.A. Hatcher. *Managing Contraception, 14th ed., Ardent Media Inc.,* New York, 2017.**

5. CDC, U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 2016, MMWR 2016; 65: 3 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6503.pdf

6. CDC, U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use, 2016. MMWR 2016; 65:4 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6504.pdf

7. **ACOG Committee Opinion #602: Depot Medroxyprogesterone Acetate and Bone Effects,. < http://www.acog.org/-/media/Committee-Opinions/Committee-on-Adolescent-Health-Care/co602.pdf?dmc=1. Accessed April 9, 2019**.

8. US Department of Health and Human Services; Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. NIOSH list of antineoplastic and other hazardous drugs in healthcare settings, 2016. Available at https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html . Updated September 2016. Accessed November 8, 2016.

9. **IBM. (2019, April 25) *Micromedex*. Safety Information, Boxed Warning Medroxyprogesterone Acetate Injectable. Retrieved April 25, 2019, from http://www.micromedexsolutions.com/home/dispatch**

10. **Wolters Kluwer. (2019, April 20) *Lexicomp Online*. Medroxyprogesterone Injectable. Retrieved April 25, 2019, from https://online.lexi.com/crlsql/servlet/crlonline**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR VAGINAL CONTRACEPTIVE DIAPHRAGM

DEFINITION

The diaphragm is a dome-shaped rubber cup that is inserted into the vagina before intercourse. It consists of soft rubber, latex **or silicone** that is fitted for size. There are some diaphragms on today's market that do not require special fitting.

ETIOLOGY

The dome of the diaphragm covers the cervix. The posterior rim rests in the posterior fornix and the anterior rim fits snugly behind the pubic bone. The diaphragm acts as a barrier and prevents sperm from entering. Spermicidal cream or jelly placed in the dome prior to insertion add to its effectiveness by killing any sperm that might slip around the edge of the diaphragm.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient provides a detailed health history (includes menstrual, sexual, contraception, personal health and family history) that does not reveal a condition representing an unacceptable health risk according to the product prescribing information and the CDC *Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use*.

2. Refer to CDC *Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use* for medical conditions that represent an unacceptable health risk for using a diaphragm. Medical conditions include:

    a. HIV/AIDS or high risk of HIV infection
    b. Antiretroviral Therapy
    c. History of Toxic Shock Syndrome
    d. Known allergy or hypersensitivity to diaphragm material

3. Patient reports no full-term delivery within the past 6 weeks.

OBJECTIVE

1. Physical examination and laboratory tests, as indicated. See protocol for Preventive Care and Health Screening.

2. Pelvic exam shows:

    a. Adequate vaginal tone to hold the diaphragm in place.
    b. Absence of uterine prolapse, severe cystocele or rectocele.
    c. Uterus is not fixed in retroflexed or retroverted position.
    d. Notch behind the symphysis pubis is adequate to support the rim of the diaphragm.

3. Patient is physically able to insert a diaphragm.

ASSESSMENT

Patient has no condition representing an unacceptable health risk if using the diaphragm.

PLAN THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

Use diaphragm with contraceptive jelly/cream containing spermicide.

For patients with latex allergies, provide latex-free diaphragm (e.g., Lea's Shield).

NOTE: Increased use of nonoxynol 9 is associated with risk of vaginal irritation, therefore increased risk of HIV transmission.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

Fit patient for appropriate size and type of diaphragm, **if necessary, for their desired diaphragm.**

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Counsel patient according to the seven basic elements of informed consent (BRAIDED – Benefits Risks Alternatives Inquiries Decision Explanation Documentation).

2. Insertion, removal and care of diaphragm, with return demonstration.

3. Once in position, the diaphragm provides effective contraceptive protection for 6 hours.

4. After intercourse, the diaphragm must be left in place for at least 6 hours, but it should be removed as soon as possible thereafter. Continuous wearing of a contraceptive diaphragm for more than 24 hours is not recommended.

   If more than one act of intercourse in 6 hours, do not remove diaphragm. Add additional spermicide before each act of intercourse. Increased use of nonoxynol 9 is associated with risk of vaginal irritation, therefore increased risk of HIV transmission.

5. Prevention of toxic shock syndrome:

   a. Do not use diaphragm during menses.

   b. Do not leave diaphragm in place for more than 24 hours.

c. Seek care for danger signs of toxic shock:
    1) Temperature of 101° F or higher.
    2) Diarrhea.
    3) Vomiting.
    4) Muscle aches.
    5) Rash appearing like sunburn.

6. Diaphragm will need to be refitted and replaced with new diaphragm at least every 2 years or:

    a. After vaginal delivery.
    b. After gynecologic or lower abdominal surgery.
    c. After weight loss or gain of over 10 pounds.
    d. After second trimester abortion.

7. Discuss risks that decrease the effectiveness of the diaphragm (e.g., petroleum jelly and vaginal medications**,** can weaken latex causing tears and leaks).

8. Provide counseling on preconception health counseling and future fertility.
9. Counsel on the lack of protection from sexually transmitted infections and the use of condoms to reduce the risk of STD/HIV.

FOLLOW-UP

Return to clinic in one month, with diaphragm in place, to assess for proper fit.

REFERRAL/CONSULTATION

1. Signs/symptoms of toxic shock syndrome.

2. Recurrent urinary tract infection or vaginal infection.

3. Signs/symptoms of cystocele or rectocele.

REFERENCES

Robert Hatcher et al., *Contraceptive Technology,* 21st ed., Ardent Media, Inc., New York, 2018. (Current)

2. Joellen Hawkins, et al., *Protocols for Nurse Practitioners in Gynecologic Settings,* 11th ed., Springer Publishing Co., New York, 2015.

3. CDC, U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 2016, MMWR 2016; 65: 3 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6503.pdf

4. CDC, U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use, 2016. MMWR 2016; 65:4 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6504.pdf

5. **M. Zieman, R.A. Hatcher. *Managing Contraception, 14th ed., Ardent Media Inc.,* New York, 2017**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SPOTTING OR BREAKTHROUGH BLEEDING WHILE USING HORMONAL CONTRACEPTIVES

DEFINITION Breakthrough bleeding (BTB) is uterine bleeding that occurs between menstrual periods in women using oral contraceptive, but can also occur with other combined hormonal contraception (patch and ring). Irregular bleeding is also common for progestin only methods (pill, injection and implant). A light amount of BTB is referred to as spotting. Spotting and BTB are generally not signs of any serious problems.

ETIOLOGY Spotting and BTB are most common (30-50%) in women taking combined OCs, but also may occur with other hormonal contraceptives. Spotting and BTB are most likely to occur during the first few months after a woman begins taking a new hormonal contraceptive and generally resolves by the third or fourth month of use. This may not be the case for some progestin only methods.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient provides a detailed health history (includes menstrual, sexual, contraception, personal health and family history).

2. Patient may have a recent history which includes the following:

    a. started new hormonal contraceptive

    b. missed contraceptive or incorrect usage

    c. inter-menstrual spotting/bleeding for several months

    d. GI problems such as vomiting or diarrhea

    e. abnormal vaginal discharge and/or odor

    f. dyspareunia or pelvic pain

    g. history of abnormal pap

    h. pain during menses

    i. pain or bleeding with sexual intercourse

    j. new sex partner

    k. smoking

    l. new medications

3. Patient may have history of taking anti-seizure medications (phenobarbital, phenytoin, carbamazepine, lamotrigrine, topiramate or primodone, rifampin, or griseofulvin).

OBJECTIVE Pelvic exam, if indicated, is negative for other causes of bleeding. (Pelvic exam is indicated for signs and symptoms of infection, pregnancy, malignancy or to assess heavy bleeding).

ASSESSMENT Spotting or BTB while taking hormonal contraceptive.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Urine dipstick, if indicated.
2. Gonorrhea and chlamydia tests, if indicated.
3. Pregnancy test, if indicated.
4. Hemoglobin/hematocrit, if indicated.
5. Wet prep, if indicated.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Hazardous agent; use appropriate precautions for handling and disposal which can be found at: https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html

For combined hormonal contraception:

NOTE: Please refer to Appendix A for information on combined hormonal formulations.

1. Combined OCs:

   a. Women with persistent irregular bleeding after 2-3 months while taking OCs, offer changing to other formulations; although no research indicates any specific OCs is best at eliminating spotting or bleeding.

      Breakthrough bleeding and spotting are most commonly seen in very low dose formulations (20 mcg). Offering a switch to a monophasic, 35 mcg pill or to a tri-phasic pill

may help these symptoms. Instructions for taking these pills should be one pill orally daily.

OR

For extended-cycle users who have taken at least 21 days of pills, she can stop taking pills for 3 to 4 days to allow a withdrawal bleed to start, then restart the active pills, taking them again for at least 21 days. The length of time between unscheduled bleeding episodes should increase with the duration of use**.** It is not recommended that a woman do this more than once per month because it can reduce contraceptive efficacy.

2. For Patch or Ring:

   a. For those using the contraceptive patch or vaginal ring, ensure that the woman is placing it and changing it on the appropriate time schedule. Reassure her that BTB should improve over the first several months.

   b. For extended-cycle users who has used the ring for at least 21 days, she can stop using the ring for 3 to 4 days to allow a withdrawal bleed to start, then restart use of the ring, using it again for at least 21 days. The length of time between unscheduled bleeding episodes should increase with the duration of use. It is not recommended that a woman do this more than once per month because it can reduce contraceptive efficacy.

3. For DMPA:

   a. For unscheduled or light bleeding offer NSAIDs. If not allergic may order Ibuprofen 400 mg PO every 4 to 6 hours **or 800 mg PO every 8 hours** as necessary for 5 to 7 days **with food**. **(Maximum dose 2400mg/day for those 12-17 years and 3200mg/day for those 18 years and older.)**

   b. For heavy or prolonged bleeding, offer NSAIDs. If not allergic may order Ibuprofen 400 mg PO every 4 to 6 hours **or 800 mg PO every 8 hours** as necessary for 5 to 7 days **with food**. **(Maximum dose 2400mg/day for those 12-17 years and 3200mg/day for those 18 years and older.)**

OR

Hormonal treatment (if medically eligible).

1) Pack of combined OC

OR

2) Estrogen (suggest conjugated equine estrogen 0.625 mg PO daily or estradiol **0.5mg** PO daily), but may be given up to four times daily for 10-20 days if needed.

4. For Contraceptive Implant:

a. For unscheduled spotting, light or heavy/prolonged bleeding, offer NSAIDs, if not allergic **and no contraindications**. Ibuprofen 400mg PO every 4 to 6 hours **or 800 mg PO every 8 hours** as necessary for 5 to 7 days **with food**. **(Maximum dose 2400mg/day for those 12-17 years and 3200mg/day for those 18 years and older.)**

OR

Hormonal treatment (if medically eligible)

1) Pack of combined OC or
2) Estrogen (suggest conjugated equine estrogen 0.625 mg PO daily or estradiol **0.5mg** PO daily), but may be given up to four times daily for 10-20 days if needed.

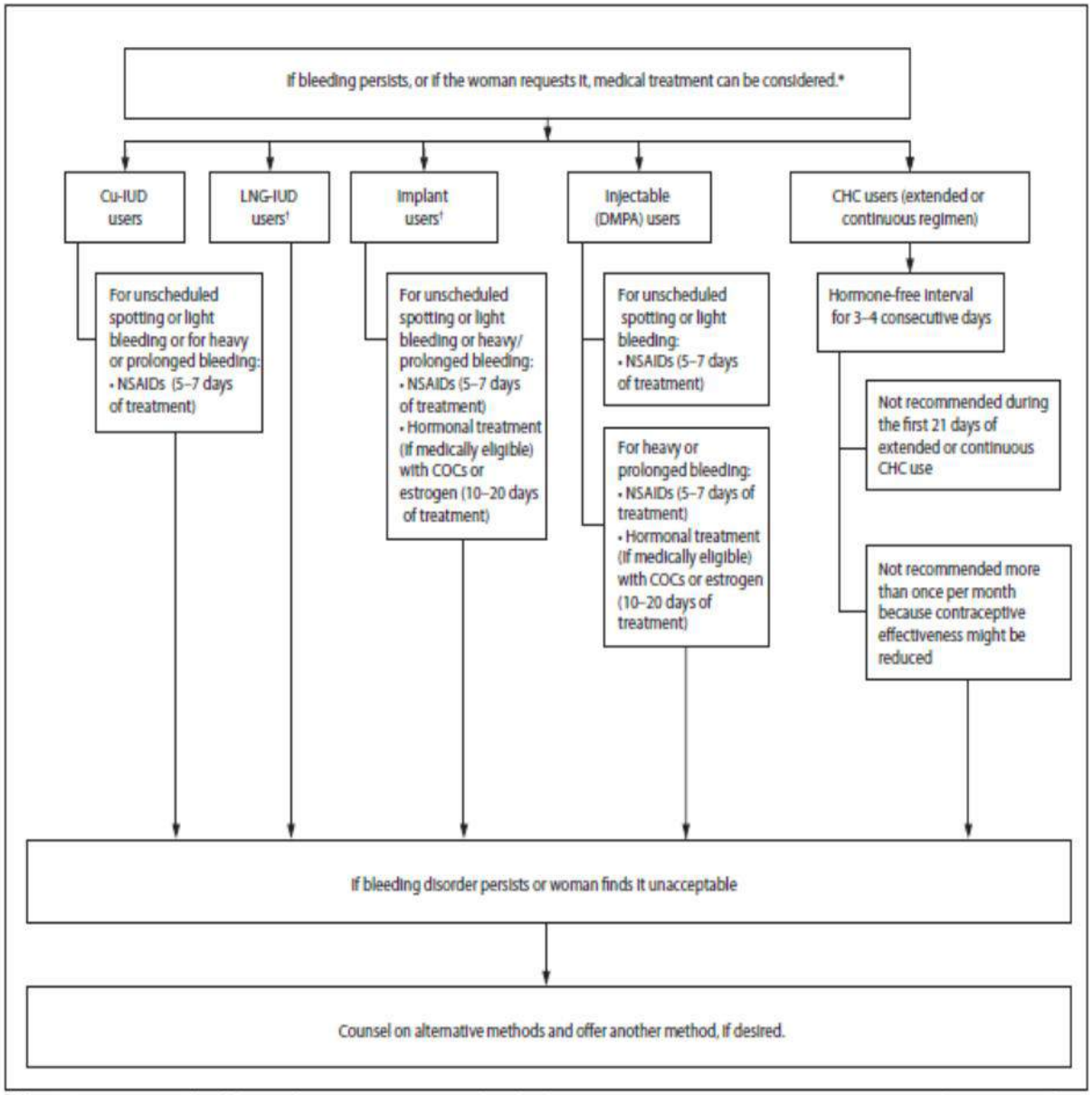
5. For POPs:

There is not consensus regarding how to manage BTB with POPs. BTB is common with POPs and is generally not a sign that there is anything wrong. The patient can be reassured if there is no objective concern from history, exam or diagnostic study, as described above. If patient is not satisfied with this reassurance, provider should discuss alternative contraceptive methods.

6. For all methods, if symptoms are bothersome or persist despite change, consider changing method. If a woman desires trial of alternate approach (**e.g.,** NSAIDs after unsuccessful hormonal treatment), that is acceptable. If a woman desires a longer course of therapy with either NSAID or hormonal treatment, that is acceptable. See chart from SPR below regarding Management of Women with Bleeding Irregularities While Using Contraception.

Appendix E

Management of Women with Bleeding Irregularities While Using Contraception



Abbreviations: CHC = combined hormonal contraceptive; COC = combined oral contraceptive; Cu-IUD = copper-containing intrauterine device; DMPA = depot medroxyprogesterone acetate; LNG-IUD = levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine device; NSAIDs = nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs.
* If clinically warranted, evaluate for underlying condition. Treat the condition or refer for care.
† Heavy or prolonged bleeding, either unscheduled or menstrual, is uncommon.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Reassure new hormonal contraceptive users that breakthrough bleeding generally decreases dramatically over the first 3-4 months of initiation.

2. Reinforce proper administration of hormonal contraceptive, especially the importance of taking pills each day.

3. Counsel on use of alternate contraceptive method if hormonal contraceptive is discontinued.

4. Counsel on use of condoms to reduce the risk of STD/HIV.

5. Advise that BTB occurs at a higher rate in women who smoke. Refer patient to local cessation program and/or Georgia Tobacco Quit Line, 1-877-270-STOP (7867), if smoker or tobacco user.

FOLLOW-UP

Reassess spotting or BTB in 3 months depending on the acuity of the problem.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Seek consultation with, as applicable, if spotting or BTB continues.

2. Seek consultation with MD, as applicable, if patient has abnormal screening tests not covered by nurse protocol or abnormal diagnostic test results.

3. Refer patient to physician for pelvic pathology.

REFERENCES

1. **Robert Hatcher et al., *Contraceptive Technology,* 21tst ed., Ardent Media, Inc., New York, 2018.**

2. Joellen Hawkins et al., *Protocols for Nurse Practitioners in Gynecologic Settings,* 11th ed., Springer Publishing Co., New York, 2015.

3. Leon Speroff and Marc Fritz, *Clinical Gynecologic Endocrinology and Infertility*, 8th ed., Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia, 2010. (Current)

4. **M. Zieman, R.A. Hatcher. *Managing Contraception, 14th ed., Ardent Media Inc.,* New York, 2017.**

5. CDC, U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use, 2016. MMWR 2016; 65:4 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6504.pdf

6. US Department of Health and Human Services; Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. NIOSH list of antineoplastic and other hazardous drugs in healthcare settings, 2016. Available at https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html Updated September 2016. Accessed November 8, 2016.

7. Sarina Schrager, M.D. Abnormal Uterine Bleeding Associated with Hormonal Contraception Am Fam Physician. 2002 May15;65 (10):2073-2081.8 8.

8. **Wolters Kluwer. Conjugated Estrogens. *Lexicomp Online*. Login. https://online.lexi.com/crlsql/servlet/crlonline Published April 20, 2019. Accessed April 26, 2019.**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR IUD-RELATED DYSMENORRHEA

DEFINITION

Dysmenorrhea is pain during menstruation that interferes with daily activities. Intrauterine device (IUD) related dysmenorrhea is painful menses during IUD use.

ETIOLOGY

The main symptom of dysmenorrhea is pain with menses. The pain is concentrated in the abdomen, pelvic region, or lower back. Symptoms often co-occurring with menstrual pain include nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, headaches, weakness, dizziness or lightheadedness. Moderate to severe dysmenorrhea may be an indication for removal of the IUD. However, the Levonorgestrel IUD helps reduce menses and dysmenorrhea in many women**.**

Differential diagnosis includes mechanical pressure of IUD against wall of uterus, partial expulsion, pelvic inflammatory disease (PID), endometriosis, cancer, leiomyomata and ectopic pregnancy. Since cramping and abdominal pain may be signs of pregnancy or infection, those two problems must always be ruled out.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient provides a detailed health history (includes menstrual, sexual, contraception, personal health and family history).

2. Patient reports painful menses and gives history of current IUD.

3. Patient may have a recent history which includes the following:

    a. Heavy or late menses
    b. PID/STD
    c. Vaginal infection/abnormal discharge
    d. Recent sexual partner change or multiple sexual partners
    e. Pain with IUD in past

4. Patient provides IUD type, insertion date, and date of last string check if applicable.

5. Patient does not report fever or abnormal vaginal discharge.

OBJECTIVE

1. External exam usually within normal limits.

2. Internal exam usually within normal limits; may note vaginal discharge or partially-expelled IUD. Note length of IUD strings.

3. Bimanual exam usually within normal limits. May note tenderness on examination. May feel partially-expelled IUD.

4. Cervical motion tenderness or pain in the uterus or adnexa are more characteristic of PID.

ASSESSMENT IUD-related dysmenorrhea

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

1. Urine pregnancy test.

2. Hemoglobin/hematocrit, if indicated.

3. Gonorrhea and chlamydia tests; vaginal wet mount, if indicated.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Prostaglandin inhibitors/nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs may be taken if patient is not **allergic and no contraindications,** such as**:**

   a. Ibuprofen 400mg every 4-6 hours or 800mg PO every 8 hours as needed for pain **with food**. **(Maximum daily dose 2400 mg/day for those ages 12-17 years and 3200mg/day for those 18 years and older**)

   OR

   b. Naproxen 500mg PO for one dose, then 250mg PO every 6-8 hours as needed for pain **with food**. (Day 1 maximum daily dose 1250mg/day, subsequent daily dose maximum of 1000mg/day)

   OR

   c. Over-the-counter-strength products (e.g., Advil, Nuprin, Aleve, Motrin IB, coated aspirin, or acetaminophen) as needed for pain per package directions.

   NOTE: Do not order NSAIDS if patient has a history of allergic reaction to aspirin. Acetaminophen per package instructions would be acceptable in this case.

   d. For optimal relief, encourage starting these medicines 24-48 hours before menses begin and continue through the first two days of the cycle.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Heating pad or hot-water bottle to pelvic region, hot baths or showers and/or warm liquids taken orally.

2. A progestin-releasing IUD may be associated with decreased pain. Discuss with patient and refer to APRN or physician if she wants a progestin-releasing IUD.

3. Remove the IUD (refer to APRN or physician) for the following:

    a. Partial expulsion.
    b. Excessive pain not relieved by the above measures.
    c. Patient's request for removal of IUD for any reason.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Discuss findings, treatment rationale.

2. Counsel on the use of condoms to reduce the risk of STD/ HIV.

3. Discuss correct use and side effects of medications.

4. If providing an NSAID, remind patient not to take additional NSAIDs over-the-counter.

FOLLOW-UP

Return to the clinic if symptoms are not relieved or if foul discharge begins.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Immediately refer patient to physician if suspect ectopic pregnancy, PID (See STD Nurse Protocol) that does not improve with 2-3 days of antibiotic treatment, or concerns for other gynecologic pathology causing the pain.
http://dph.georgia.gov/nurse-protocols

2. Refer patient to physician if symptoms not relieved by the above measures.

3. Presence of actinomyces on Pap smear report with evidence of pelvic infection; if no evidence of infection, no action is necessary.

REFERENCES

1. **Robert Hatcher et al., *Contraceptive Technology,* 21st ed., Ardent Media, Inc., New York, 2018. (Current)**

2. Joellen Hawkins et al., *Protocols for Nurse Practitioners in Gynecologic Settings,* 11th ed., Springer Publishing Co., New York, 2015.

3. **M. Zieman, R.A. Hatcher. *Managing Contraception, 14th ed., Ardent Media Inc.,* New York, 2017**

4. CDC, U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 2016, MMWR 2016; 65: 3 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6503.pdf

5. CDC, U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use, 2016. MMWR 2016; 65:4 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6504.pdf

6. **Wolters Kluwer. Ibuprofen. *Lexicomp® Online*. Login. https://online.lexi.com/crlsql/servlet/crlonline Published April 20, 2019. Accessed April 26, 2019.**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR COPPER IUD-RELATED MENORRHAGIA

DEFINITION

Menorrhagia refers to menstrual periods that occur at regular intervals but are marked by prolonged bleeding (greater than 7 days) or excessive blood loss (greater than 80 mL). IUD-related menorrhagia is prolonged or excessive bleeding with an IUD in place.

ETIOLOGY

Presence of IUD in utero. Bleeding problems constitute one of the more common IUD complications. Women using the copper-releasing IUD (Copper T380A) usually have heavier menses. Excessive bleeding with the Copper T380A can be treated with NSAIDs. Since local prostaglandin production is involved with excessive bleeding, any prostaglandin synthetase inhibitor should help. Starting in advance of menses does not give better results than starting with the onset of flow. If hemoglobin levels drop, oral iron supplementation can be started. Excessive menstrual bleeding may be an indication for removal of the IUD. The levonorgestrel IUD is associated with decreased menstrual bleeding.

Other causes to consider may be: PID, partial expulsion of the IUD, dysfunctional uterine bleeding as a result of an endocrine imbalance, cancer of the cervix or endometrium, cervical or uterine polyps, abnormal perimenopausal bleeding, fibroids, and pregnancy.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient provides a detailed health history (includes menstrual, sexual, contraception, personal health and family history).

2. Patient reports prolonged or excessive menstrual bleeding and gives history of current IUD.

3. Patient may have a recent history which includes the following:

    a. dizziness, weakness or tiredness

    b. pale skin color

OBJECTIVE

1. External exam usually within normal limits.

2. Internal exam may be within normal limits**;** may note partially-expelled IUD or feel IUD in the cervical canal.

3. Bimanual exam may be within normal limits**.** Cervical motion tenderness or pain in uterus and adnexal areas is more characteristic of PID.

ASSESSMENT

IUD-related menorrhagia.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Hematocrit or hemoglobin.

2. Urine pregnancy test.

3. Gonorrhea and chlamydia tests; vaginal wet mounts, if indicated.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. If hemoglobin below normal, treat according to Nurse Protocol for Iron-Deficiency Anemia.

2. Prostaglandin inhibitors/NSAIDs as needed to help reduce menstrual blood loss and for relief of pain**,** if not allergic **and no contraindications**. Begin at the onset of menses (or if the patient also has dysmenorrhea begin 24-48 hours prior to the onset) and continue for 3-4 days.

   a. Ibuprofen 400 mg PO every 4 hours or 800mg three times daily as needed for pain or to help relieve menstrual blood loss **for 5 to 7 days with food**. **(Maximum dose 2400mg/day for those 12-17 years and 3200mg/day for those 18 years and older.)**

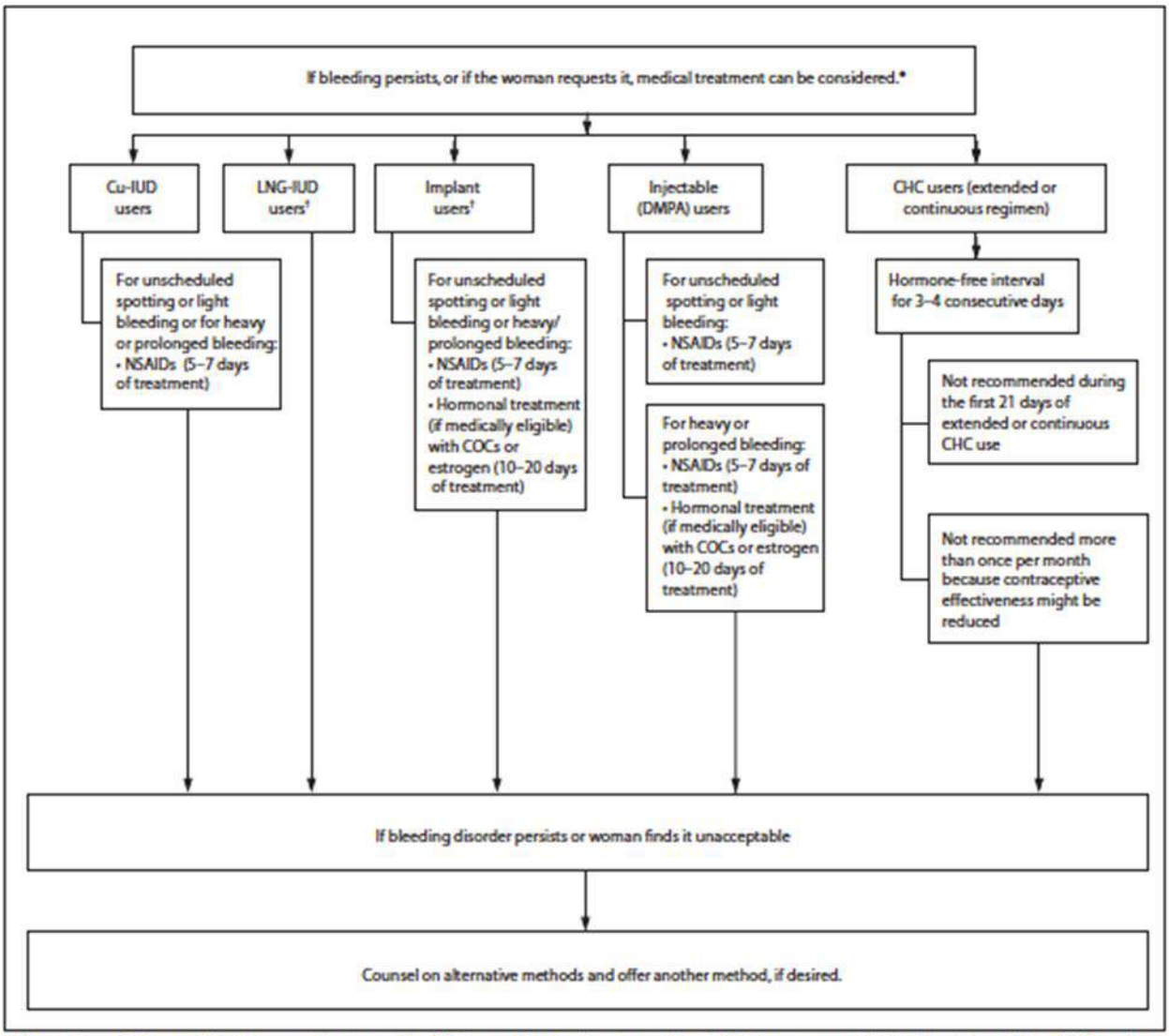
   OR

   b. Naproxen 500 mg PO for one dose, then 250 mg PO every 6-8 hours as needed for pain or to help relieve menstrual blood loss **with food**. (Maximum dose 1250mg/day)

   OR

   c. Over-the-counter-strength products (e.g., Advil, Nuprin, Aleve, Motrin IB, coated aspirin, or acetaminophen) per package directions as needed.

Table 1. Management of Women with Bleeding Irregularities, from the CDC's US Selected Practice Recommendations



Abbreviations: CHC = combined hormonal contraceptive; COC = combined oral contraceptive; Cu-IUD = copper-containing intrauterine device; DMPA = depot medroxyprogesterone acetate; LNG-IUD = levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine device; NSAIDs = nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs.
* If clinically warranted, evaluate for underlying condition. Treat the condition or refer for care.
† Heavy or prolonged bleeding, either unscheduled or menstrual, is uncommon.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Remove the IUD (by APRN or physician) for the following:
   a. Partial expulsion.
   b. Excessive menstrual blood loss.

c. Patient's request for removal of IUD for any reason.

2. Consult with APRN or physician to discuss possible need for removal if any of the following:

   a. hemoglobin has dropped 2 gm/dL or more from previous reading.

   b. hemoglobin is less than 9 gm/dL.

   c. hematocrit has dropped 6% or more over 4-6 weeks.

   d. hematocrit is less than 27%.

3. If IUD is removed, may initiate alternate contraceptive method. Hormonal contraceptives (combined oral pills, transdermal contraceptive patch, Nuvaring, DMPA) may decrease bleeding and blood loss. Also, the Levonorgestrel IUD significantly improves menorrhagia. Refer to *CDC Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use* for medical conditions that represent an unacceptable health risk for the selected contraceptive method.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Counsel patient on the importance of iron rich foods in the daily diet of menstruating women.

2. Discuss signs of possible pelvic infection and excessive bleeding.

FOLLOW-UP

Return in 4-6 weeks for evaluation of bleeding and hematocrit/ hemoglobin.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Immediately refer patient to physician if suspect ectopic pregnancy or PID that has not improved with 2-3 days of antibiotics. See Nurse STD Nurse Protocol. **http://dph.georgia.gov/nurse-protocols**

2. Refer patient to physician if menorrhagia continues for 1-2 menstrual periods after pharmacologic measures started.

3. Refer patient to APRN or physician if no improvement in anemia after 4 weeks of iron supplemental therapy.

4. Refer to APRN or physician for removal.

REFERENCES

1. **Robert Hatcher et al., *Contraceptive Technology,* 21st ed., Ardent Media, Inc., New York, 2018. (Current)**

2. Joellen Hawkins et al., *Protocols for Nurse Practitioners in Gynecologic Settings,* 11th ed., Springer Publishing Co., New York, 2015.

3. **M. Zieman, R.A. Hatcher. *Managing Contraception, 14th ed., Ardent Media Inc.,* New York, 2017**

4. CDC, U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 2016, MMWR 2016; 65: 3 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6503.pdf

5. CDC, U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use, 2016. MMWR 2016; 65:4 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6504.pdf

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR BACTERIAL CYSTITIS

NOTE: Females under age 18 can consent for sexual and reproductive health services. For this protocol, females under age 18 must be established Women's Health patients or be accompanied by a parent or guardian who consents to treatment.

DEFINITION Cystitis is a bladder inflammation.

ETIOLOGY Cystitis is a common lower urinary tract infection that affects the bladder and not the kidneys. Cystitis is usually caused by bacteria (generally e-coli) which travel to the bladder from the urethra. Women are more likely to develop cystitis after sexual intercourse. Bacterial cystitis may be characterized by dysuria, frequency, urgency and low-grade fever.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient provides a detailed health history (includes menstrual, sexual, contraception, personal health and family health) that may reveal factors that increase the risk for bacterial cystitis.

2. Patient may report recent history which includes the following:

    a. Frequency, burning on urination
    b. Urgency, with or without incontinence
    c. Suprapubic pain and/or tenderness

3. No symptoms of vaginal infection. If indicated, do work-up for possible vaginal infection, chlamydia and gonorrhea

4. No recent history of fever, shaking chills, unilateral flank pain, inability to urinate **n**or a sudden decrease in urine volume. No history of kidney disease.

OBJECTIVE

1. Lower abdominal tenderness on palpation.

2. No flank pain or CVA tenderness on exam.

3. Temperature less than 100ºF.

4. Diagnostic criterion: Dipstick urinalysis positive for either white blood cells (WBC) and/or nitrites, hematuria, abnormal urine discoloration or odor.

ASSESSMENT Bacterial cystitis

PLAN **DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES**

1. Dipstick urinalysis positive for either white blood cells (WBC) and/or nitrites, hematuria, abnormal urine discoloration or odor.

2. If diagnosis is questionable, obtain clean-catch urine for urinalysis and culture and sensitivity.

3. If abnormal vaginal discharge or discharge from the urethra, perform wet prep and tests for gonorrhea and chlamydia. For those less than **25** years old, follow guidelines for screening for STDs as these infections may be present without vaginal discharge.

4. Urine pregnancy test, if indicated.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Trimethoprim 160 mg/sulfamethoxazole 800 mg (Bactrim DS, Septra DS, Sulfatrim DS). 1 tablet PO with food, **twice daily** for 3 days.

NOTE: Do not give if patient has a history of allergy to the drug components; asthma, kidney or liver disease, folic acid deficiency states, G6-PD deficiency, or any other blood dyscrasia; is pregnant; or, is breastfeeding an infant less than 2 months old, or with or an elevated bilirubin. **Not recommended for persons taking warfarin, phenytoin or methotrexate. Other potentially significant drug interactions may exist. Consult drug interactions database (e.g., Lexicomp) for more detailed information.** See Referral/Consultation.

OR

2. Nitrofurantoin monohydrate macrocrystals, 100mg **PO twice daily** for 5 days (with meals).

NOTE: Do not give if patient has a history of nitro-furantoin allergy, kidney or liver disease, optic neuritis, G6-PD deficiency or anemia; is breastfeeding an infant less than one month old or if infant has G6-PD deficiency. **Not recommended for persons taking probenecid or other uricosuric medications. Consult drug interactions database (e.g., Lexicomp) for more detailed information. Antacids containing magnesium trisilicate (ex. Gaviscon) should be avoided during nitrofurantoin therapy.**

3. For non-curative symptomatic relief, if patient is age 12 or older, is not pregnant or breast-feeding and has no history of liver disease:

    a. Phenazopyridine Hydrochloride (Pyridium®) 200mg, 1 tablet PO 3 times a day after meals as needed for 2 days when used concomitantly with an antibacterial agent.

    OR

    b. Nonprescription phenazopyridine hydrochloride 95 mg for less than 2 days. Follow package directions.

NOTE: Do not give if patient has a history of allergy to any of the drug components. Discontinue medication immediately if any yellowish or orange discoloration of skin or eyes is noted. This medication may stain contact lenses.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

Increase fluid intake (cranberry juice might be suggested) and empty bladder frequently.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Stress the importance of completing the full course of treatment, unless serious side-effects occur.

2. Discuss common drug-specific instructions and cautions.

    a. For trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole: avoid sun exposure, discontinue drug immediately if develop a rash or signs of liver problems. Drink a full glass of water with each dose.
    b. For nitrofurantoin: discontinue drug if develop peripheral neuropathy, visual problems, diarrhea or symptoms of liver or lung problems.
    c. Phenazopyridine may cause discoloration of urine and may stain underwear. Suggest pantyliners.

    3. Discuss potential risk factors for cystitis and prevention strategies.

    a. Empty bladder frequently
    b. Urinate after sex
    c. Wipe from front to back

d. Do not douche
e. If using vaginal spermicides, consider switching to a different contraceptive method

4. Seek medical care immediately if medication side effects or systemic symptoms develop.

5. Discuss that post-menopausal women may have increased susceptibility for cystitis because of a decrease in vaginal lactobacilli and an increased pH.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Patient should call the clinic if cystitis symptoms are not improved within 48 hours of starting therapy or if symptoms of severe systemic illness begin.

2. If no improvement in 48 hours after starting therapy or if symptoms persist after therapy is complete, either perform complete UA, culture and sensitivity and treat or refer for testing.

REFERRAL/CONSULTATION

1. Refer to physician if patient is pregnant.

2. Refer to physician if patient has any of the following:

   a. Gross hematuria in a specimen uncontaminated by menses.
   b. Systemic complaints such as temperature equal to or greater than 100°F, fast pulse, shaking chills or unilateral flank pain.
   c. Recurrent cystitis within one month, or more than 3 episodes in one year.
   d. If follow-up urinalysis reveals unexplained (non-menstrual) microhematuria without WBC or nitrite.

REFERENCES

1. **Robert Hatcher et al., *Contraceptive Technology,* 21st ed., Ardent Media, Inc, New York, 2018. (Current)**

2. "Cystitis – acute", *MedlinePlus*, U.S. National Library of Medicine, <www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/000526.htm> (March 27, 2017)

3. Hooton, TM. Uncomplicated Urinary Tract Infection. NEJM. 2012;366:1028-37

4. **Wolters Kluwer. Nitrofurantoin. *Lexicomp® Online*. Login. https://online.lexi.com/crlsql/servlet/crlonline Published April 20, 2019. Accessed April 26, 2019.**

5. **Wolters Kluwer. Sulfamethoxazole/Trimethoprim. *Lexicomp® Online*. Login. https://online.lexi.com/crlsql/servlet/crlonline Published April 20, 2019. Accessed April 26, 2019.**

6. **Wolters Kluwer. Phenazopyridine. *Lexicomp Online®*. Login. https://online.lexi.com/crlsql/servlet/crlonline Published April 20, 2019. Accessed April 26, 2019.**

7. **Wolters Kluwer. OTC Phenazopyridine Product Availability. *Facts & Comparisons® eAnswers*. http://online.factsandcomparisons.com/ Published February 8, 2019. Accessed April 26, 2019.**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR DYSMENORRHEA (PRIMARY)

NOTE: Females under age 18 can consent for sexual and reproductive health services. For this protocol, females under age 18 must be established Women's Health patients or be accompanied by a parent or guardian who consents to treatment.

DEFINITION Primary dysmenorrhea is painful menstruation without identifiable causes.

ETIOLOGY Elevated levels of prostaglandins E2 and F in the endometrium cause uterine contractions. This increases intrauterine pressure, creating uterine ischemia and spasmodic pain. The main symptom of dysmenorrhea is pain with menses that is concentrated in the abdomen, pelvic region, or lower back. Symptoms often co-occurring with menstrual pain include nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, headaches, weakness, dizziness or lightheadedness. Differential diagnosis includes pelvic inflammatory disease, endometriosis, adenomyosis, endometrial hyperplasia, endometrial cancer, leiomyomata, ectopic pregnancy, IUD with partial expulsion.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient provides a detailed health history (includes menstrual, sexual, contraception, personal health and family history). Note history of: parity, menarche, method of contraception, pelvic inflammatory disease/sexually transmitted diseases, onset of symptoms/changes over time, family history of dysmenorrhea, nutritional status.
2. Patient reports cramping pain in the lower abdomen just before or during menstruation.
3. Patient may report symptoms of congestive (secondary) dysmenorrhea: irritability, depression, nervousness, exhaustion, backache, constipation, bloating, weight gain, breast tenderness, dull ache, and/or onset of symptoms prior to menses.
4. Patient may report symptoms of spasmodic dysmenorrhea: nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, weakness, dizziness, pelvic cramping, abdominal/back/thigh cramping, sweating, pallor, and/or headache.

OBJECTIVE Physical examination usually within normal limits, unless secondary factors are present.

ASSESSMENT Primary dysmenorrhea

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

As indicated: Pap smear, gonorrhea/chlamydia tests, vaginal wet mount, pregnancy test.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Over the counter analgesics – Coated aspirin, Aleve®, Motrin IB®, Nuprin®, acetaminophen (e.g., Tylenol®), **follow** package directions.

OR

2. Ibuprofen **if not allergic and no contraindications** 400mg to 800mg PO every 6-8 hours as needed for pain **for up to 10 days as needed with food**. (**Maximum daily dose 2400mg/day for those 12-17 years and 3200mg/day for those 18 years and older**)

OR

3. Naproxen 500mg PO for one dose, then 250mg PO every 6-8 hours as needed for pain **with food**. (Day 1 maximum daily dose 1250mg/day, subsequent daily dose maximum of 1000mg/day)

NOTE: Do not order NSAIDs if patient has a history of allergic reaction to aspirin. Acetaminophen per package instructions would be acceptable in this case.

4. For optimal relief, encourage starting these medicines 24-48 hours before menses begin and continue through the first two days of the cycle.

5. May initiate contraceptive method if method poses no unacceptable health risk: OC, medroxyprogesterone acetate, transdermal contraceptive patch, NuvaRing®, LNG IUD, contraceptive Implant may decrease symptoms.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Topical heat.

2. Regular exercise may be helpful.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Inform patient that primary dysmenorrhea probably does not affect fertility.

2. Assess patient's knowledge of activities that may provide relief.

3. Caution patient if taking prostaglandin inhibitors (Aleve®, Motrin Ibuprofen®, Nuprin®, aspirin).

    a. Prolonged chronic use may cause kidney problems and GI upset.
    b. Discuss that one should not simultaneously use several different NSAIDs at the same time**.**
    c. Stop medication and report severe persistent headaches, fever and muscle aches, which may be signs of aseptic meningitis.

FOLLOW-UP

Return to clinic if no relief from therapy after two menstrual cycles.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Refer to physician for differential diagnosis, as indicated.

2. Refer to physician if no relief from therapy or if patient develops severe side effects of medication.

REFERENCES

1. **Robert Hatcher et al., Contraceptive Technology, 21st ed., Ardent Media, Inc., New York, 2018. (Current)**

2. Joellen Hawkins, et al., *Protocols for Nurse Practitioners in Gynecologic Settings*, 11th ed., Springer Publishing Co., New York, 2015.

3. **Wolters Kluwer. Facts & Comparisons® eAnswers. OTC Pain Relievers Product Comparison. http://online.factsandcomparisons.com/ Published February 8, 2019. Accessed April 26, 2019.**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR IRON-DEFICIENCY ANEMIA IN NON-PREGNANT WOMEN

NOTE: Females under age 18 can consent for sexual and reproductive health services. For this protocol, females under age 18 must be established Women's Health patients or be accompanied by a parent or guardian who consents to treatment.

DEFINITION

Anemia is a condition in which the body does not have enough healthy red blood cells. Red blood cells provide oxygen to the body. Iron deficiency anemia develops due to low iron levels.

NOTE: This protocol is to help manage the most common cause of anemia in premenopausal women but is not intended to manage the full scope of possible anemias in our patients. Attention to the guidance for consultation/referral is recommended.

ETIOLOGY

Iron-deficiency anemia, the most common type of anemia, is present in 20% of all premenopausal women in the United States. The primary cause of iron-deficiency anemia in premenopausal women is loss of blood through menstruation. In postmenopausal women, bleeding is usually from the GI tract (chronically bleeding lesions, reflux esophagitis, peptic ulcers, gastric or colorectal adenocarcinomas). Iron-deficiency anemia also commonly occurs during pregnancy. Iron-deficiency anemia can usually be corrected with iron supplementation.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient provides a detailed health history (includes menstrual, sexual, contraception, personal health and family history).

2. Patient may be asymptomatic if anemia is mild.

3. Patient may report history which includes the following:

    a. Pallor, fatigue**,** malaise, and/or anorexia
    b. History of GI bleeding
    c. Changes in stool color or bleeding from hemorrhoids
    d. Excessive blood loss during menses or history of fibroid tumors
    e. Poor dietary intake of iron rich foods and pica
    f. History of drug/medication use, especially aspirin and other NSAIDs
    g. Nonspecific complaints of headache, poor concentration, and/or palpitations
    h. Uncomfortable tingling or crawling feeling in the legs (restless leg syndrome)
    i. Frequent blood donations

4. With severe anemia, the patient may also present with:

    a. Weakness and faintness
    b. Increased heart rate
    c. Shortness of breath
    d. Dizziness or lightheadedness
    e. Symptoms of heart failure
    f. Confusion and dementia
    g. Nausea and loss of appetite
    h. Headaches
    i. Bleeding gums
    j. Sore tongue

5. No history of major hemoglobinopathies (e.g., sickle cell anemia, sickle C disease, sickle beta thalassemia, hemoglobin c disease).

OBJECTIVE

1. Patient may have the following:

    a. Pallor, best seen in conjunctivae.
    b. Atrophy of the surface or edges of the tongue.
    c. Inflammation/cracking of the lips.
    d. Spoon nails (thin and concave from side to side).
    e. Tachycardia, flow murmur.

ASSESSMENT

Symptoms of anemia. Anemia in pre-menopausal women is most commonly iron deficiency, and may be due to increased loss with menses, low iron consumption and depleted stores from pregnancies.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Hemoglobin below 11.8 gm/dL for non-pregnant women.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Treatment of (presumed) iron deficiency anemia:

    a. Ferrous Sulfate 325mg (contains 65mg of elemental iron) PO **twice daily.**

    OR

    b. Ferrous fumarate 325mg (contains 106mg of elemental iron) PO daily or **twice daily**. Ferrous fumarate has more elemental iron in it than ferrous sulfate**.**

NOTE: There are extended release products on the market, and they are intended for once daily use. **However, immediate release iron products are preferred for treatment of iron deficiency anemia.** To avoid GI upset, start with a single daily dose and increase by 1 tablet per day each week or as tolerated until desired daily dose is achieved**.** Do not give if patient has sickle cell or hemoglobin variants. **Do not give to patients with peptic ulcer, regional enteritis, or ulcerative colitis**.

2. Efforts should be directed towards treatment of the underlying reason for the anemia (ex. menorrhagia, low consumption, etc.)

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. For best absorption, take iron supplements on an empty stomach. If the iron upsets the stomach, take iron with a small amount of food but not with dairy products, antacids, eggs, whole grain breads, coffee or tea. Foods that may decrease absorption include dietary fiber, soy products, spinach, and eggs. Foods that enhance dietary absorption of iron include broccoli, grapefruit, orange juice, peppers and strawberries.

2. Introduce iron gradually to minimize stomach upset. Take one tablet once a day x 1 week and then increase to **twice daily** if needed. **Alternate-day dosing (e.g., Every other day or Monday, Wednesday, Friday) has been shown to result in greater absorption of iron. Reserve this dosing schedule for persons who can maintain adherence.**

3. Beverages consumed with meals or supplements have a dramatic effect on iron absorption.

    a. Vitamin C (Orange juice, approximately 1 cup) doubles the absorption of iron.
    b. Tea, coffee or milk can reduce absorption to less than one half and should be consumed in moderation between meals or supplements.

4. Antacids, tetracycline, cimetidine, pancrelipase and proton pump inhibitors interfere with iron absorption. Do not take iron within 3 hours of taking these medications. Iron affects other medications and a pharmacist or health care provider should be consulted before starting another medication.

5. Iron supplements may cause black or dark green bowel movements, diarrhea, or constipation.

6. Counsel patient on other common side effects of iron therapy.

7. Too much iron is dangerous. Iron tablets may look like candy and a package of iron tablets can poison a child. Keep iron supplements out of the reach of children.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Recheck hemoglobin at the end of 4-6 weeks of initial treatment.

    a. If the hemoglobin has increased by 1 gm/dL or more, continue treatment for 2-3 months to replenish iron stores, then recheck hemoglobin.

    b. If the hemoglobin is not increased at least 1 gm/dL, assess for compliance with therapy, diet, enteric parasites and other possible anemia-causing conditions.

    c. In situations when the hemoglobin has not increased and the patient has not been compliant with the medicine, the provider should explore reasons (constipation, upset stomach, forgot, etc.) and work collaboratively with the patient to suggest a solution that will work for her. Recheck hemoglobin in 4-6 weeks.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Refer to physician if hemoglobin less than 9 gm/dL.

2. If after 4-6 weeks the hemoglobin does not increase at least 1 gm/dL, despite compliance with iron supplementation regimen and the absence of acute illness, refer to physician.

3. Refer any patient with **peptic ulcer, regional enteritis, or ulcerative colitis**, sickle cell or other hemoglobin variants to physician.

4. Refer patient to physician if there is evidence of other medical problems, including concerns for GI bleeding (black or tarry stools, patient history with symptoms of reflux or ulcer).

5. Refer any woman at risk for endometrial pathology (ex. 35 years old or older with abnormal bleeding, chronic anovulation, Tamoxifen therapy) to MD for evaluation for possible endometrial sampling.

6. All post-menopausal women with anemia should be referred to physician for evaluation.

REFERENCES

1. CDC, "*Recommendations to Prevent and Control Iron Deficiency in the United States,"* MMWR, Vol. 47, No. RR-3, April 3, 1998. (Current)

2. Mayo Clinic, "Iron Deficiency Anemia," <http://mayoclinic.com/health/iron-deficiency-anemia/DS00323> (March 27, 2017)

3. US Preventive Services Task Force, Clinical Screening Guidelines. http://www.ahrq.gov/professionals/clinicians-providers/guidelines-recommendations/guide/index.html> (March 27, 2017)

4. **Liu K, Kaffes AJ. Iron deficiency anaemia: a review of diagnosis, investigation and management. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2012;24(2):109-116.[PubMed 22157204]**

5. **Hershko C, Camaschella C. How I treat unexplained refractory iron deficiency anemia. *Blood.* 2014;123(3):326-333.[PubMed 24215034]10.1182/blood-2013-10-512624**

6. **Wolters Kluwer. Ferrous Fumarate. *Lexicomp® Online.* Login.** https://online.lexi.com/crlsql/servlet/crlonline**. Published April 20, 2019. Accessed April 26, 2019.**

7. **Wolters Kluwer. Iron Supplements. Facts & Comparisons® eAnswers.** http://online.factsandcomparisons.com/**. Published February 8, 2019. Accessed April 26, 2019.**

8. **Wolters Kluwer. *Lexicomp® Online.* Login. Iron Preparations, Oral AHFS DI (Adult and Pediatric).**
<https://online.lexi.com/lco/action/doc/retrieve/docid/complete_ashp/413777?searchUrl=%2Flco%2Faction%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dferrous%2520fumarate%26t%3Dname%26va%3Dferrous%2520fumarate#dosage-admin-nested-0> Accessed, September 6, 2019.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SCREENING MAMMOGRAPHY

DEFINITION A mammogram is an x-ray image of the breast.

ETIOLOGY Mammography may detect cancer up to three years before a breast mass is palpable. It is the only method of screening for breast cancer proven to decrease mortality. The goal of performing screening mammograms is the early detection of breast cancer, resulting in reduced morbidity and mortality. Various well-respected professional organizations have differing recommendations as to what age to initiate and how often to conduct the screenings. The American Cancer Society recommends annual breast cancer screening by mammography beginning at age 40, continuing as long as the woman is in good health. Kaiser Permanente Care Management Institute recommends screening mammograms be performed everyone to two years in women age 40 and above.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Obtain health history, including family history of cancers.
2. Reports no breast symptoms requiring diagnostic evaluation.
3. Age 40 or older**.**

OBJECTIVE Perform **MammaCare** clinical breast exam

ASSESSMENT Clinical breast exam normal

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

None.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Annual or biennial screening mammogram for women ages 40-49. Women at increased risk for breast cancer should be screened annually.
2. Annual screening mammogram for women age 50 and older (annual as defined by the CDC is every 12-18 months).

NOTE: It is important to ascertain where and when any prior mammograms or breast ultrasounds were done so that appropriate comparison exams are available to the interpreting radiologist.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. No lotions, deodorants, perfumes or powders should be used on breasts or under arms prior to mammogram. This may cause shadows to appear in the imaging.

2. Educate regarding current screening mammogram recommendations.

3. Any unusual breast changes (i.e., mass, skin changes, nipple discharge, and severe pain) that a patient discovers in the future should be evaluated by a clinician as soon as possible.

FOLLOW-UP:

1. If screening mammogram report is incomplete or abnormal, follow radiologist's recommendation for diagnostic mammography or breast ultrasound. Refer to Ordering Diagnostic Mammograms and Breast Ultrasound nurse protocol.

2. Notify patient of screening mammogram results and document in medical record.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Refer to MD as needed for abnormal screening mammogram result.

2. Refer to GA DPH BCCP manual for reimbursement guidelines if screening mammogram is to be funded by BCCP program.

REFERENCES

1. Georgia Department of Public Health BCCP Manual, July 2015

2. **American College of Radiology ACR Appropriateness of Criteria. https://acsearch.acr.org/list. Last review date: 2/19/19**

3. **Women'shealth.gov. https://www.womenshealth.gov/a-z-topics/mammograms#j%20Content Content last updated: November 21, 2018.**

4. **What Is a Mammogram and When Should I Get One? http://www.cdc.gov/cancer/breast/basic_info/mammograms.html Content last updated September 11, 2018**

5. **American Cancer Society Guidelines for the Early Detection of Cancer, 5/30/2018**

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR ORDERING DIAGNOSTIC MAMMOGRAMS AND BREAST ULTRASOUNDS

DEFINITION

Breast diagnostic procedures may be requested to further evaluate an abnormal finding of the breast, enabling diagnosis. The diagnostic tests that the public health nurse may be asked to order include diagnostic mammogram and/or breast ultrasound. A diagnostic mammogram may include supplemental views and/or spot compressions and is performed under the immediate supervision of the radiologist.

A breast ultrasound uses sound waves to make pictures of the tissues inside the breast and can show all areas of the breast including the area closet to the chest wall, which is hard to study with a mammogram. A breast ultrasound determines whether an area of concern is solid, fluid-filled or a combination of both.

ETIOLOGY

A diagnostic mammogram is appropriate to further assess findings such as a palpable breast mass, persistent focal breast pain, clear (but not necessarily colorless) or bloody nipple discharge and/or skin changes. It is often requested by the radiologist when a screening mammogram requires further investigation. A diagnostic mammogram is also ordered for short-term follow-up of a probable benign finding indicated by a previous BIRADS 3 mammogram interpretation.

Breast ultrasounds evaluate palpable masses and areas of concern discovered on mammograms. In the woman under 30 years of age, initially, an ultrasound alone is often preferred to evaluate a breast mass due to the increased breast density in this population**.**

SUBJECTIVE

1**.** Obtain health history, including family history of cancers.

2. May report unilateral persistent focal pain not associated with menstrual cycle.

3. May report breast mass or skin changes of breast.

4. May have no outward symptoms (if diagnostic testing is requested for further evaluation of incomplete or abnormal screening breast imaging).

OBJECTIVE

Perform **MammaCare** clinical breast exam.

ASSESSMENT

Document condition requiring diagnostic mammogram and/or breast ultrasound (i.e., breast mass, skin changes, BIRADS 0 mammogram report, BIRADS 3-short-term follow-up, unilateral focal breast pain**)**

PLAN **THERAPEUTIC**

PHARMACOLOGIC

None.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Follow BCCP New Palpable Breast Mass algorithm included in this protocol.

2. Order as appropriate (indicate right or left breast if unilateral procedure):

    a. Unilateral or bilateral diagnostic mammogram.
    b. Unilateral or bilateral breast ultrasound.

3. If not already enrolled, enroll patient in BCCP if patient is eligible and funding is available.

NOTE: It is important to ascertain where and when any prior mammograms or breast ultrasounds were done so that appropriate comparison exams are available to the interpreting radiologist.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. No lotions, deodorants, perfumes or powders should be used on breasts or under arms prior to mammogram. This may cause shadows to appear in the imaging.

2. Educate regarding current screening mammogram recommendations.

3. Any unusual breast changes (i.e., mass, skin changes, nipple discharge, and severe pain) that a patient discovers in the future should be evaluated by a clinical breast exam as soon as possible.

FOLLOW-UP:

1. For a newly diagnosed breast mass, follow BCCP New Palpable Breast Mass algorithm included in this protocol.

2. If a breast mass is discovered during the premenstrual time of a

woman's menstrual cycle have her return for a recheck of her breast during the week following the end of her menses. If the mass remains present, proceed with diagnostic testing.

3. Continue to follow-up until condition proves benign. If malignancy is identified, follow-up until patient is under oncologic care.

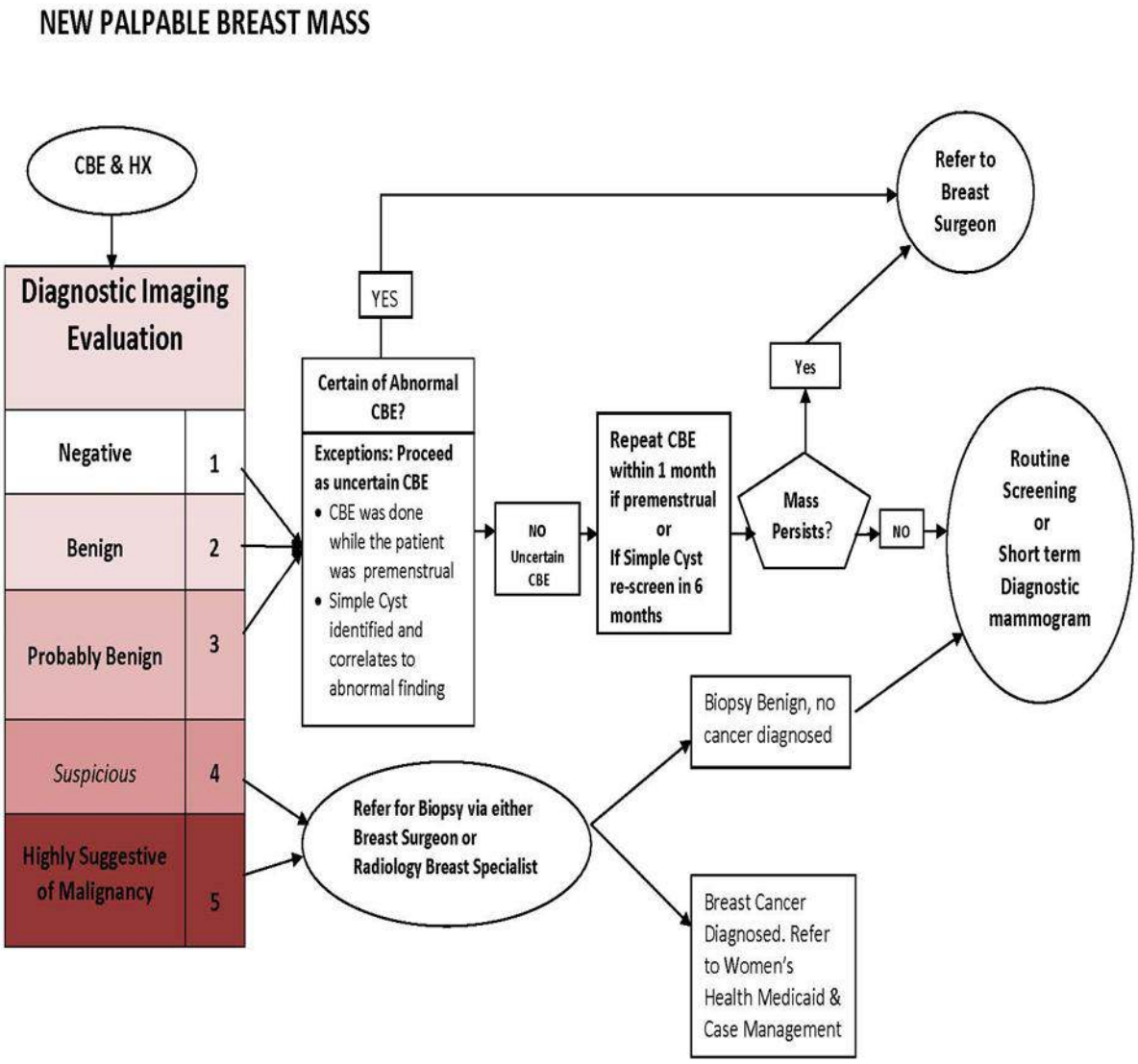
CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Refer to surgeon for evaluation of abnormal clinical findings and further management.

2. Refer women who have bilateral nipple discharge with no evidence of a breast mass to MD for evaluation. The nipple discharge may be due to an underlying medical condition not related to an abnormality of the breast specifically.

3. For unilateral spontaneous nipple discharge refer to the Spontaneous Unilateral Nipple Discharge (Non-Lactating) nurse protocol.

Table 1: BCCP New Palpable Breast Mass Algorithm



REFERENCES

1. Georgia Department of Public Health BCCP Manual, July 2015

2. **American College of Radiology ACR Appropriateness of Criteria. https://acsearch.acr.org/list . Last review date: 2/19/19.**

3. **Women's health.gov. http://womenshealth.gov/publications/our-publications/fact-sheet/mammograms.html#j Content last updated: January 4, 2017. (March 28, 2017).**

4. **American College of Radiology Practice Parameter for the Performance of Breast Ultrasound Examination (Resolution 38) https://www.acr.org/-/media/ACR/Files/Practice-Parameters/US-Breast.pdf (Revised, 2016)**

5. T Richards, A Hunt, S Courtney, and H Umeh Nipple Discharge: A Sign of Breast Cancer? Ann R Coll Surg Engl. Mar 2007; 89(2): 124–126. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC1964556/ (October 9, 2014)

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR SPONTANEOUS UNILATERAL NIPPLE DISCHARGE (NON-LACTATING)

DEFINITION Spontaneous unilateral nipple discharge is the presence of discharge flowing from the nipple that does not require manipulation of the nipple to visualize the discharge. Spontaneous leaking from the nipple should be absent within 6 months after cessation of breastfeeding.

ETIOLOGY Many conditions may cause spontaneous nipple discharge; most of these conditions are benign. These benign conditions include: intraductal papilloma, mammary duct ectasia, fibrocystic changes, endocrine disorders and infection/abscesses. The most common cause for bloody nipple discharge in the absence of a breast mass is intraductal papilloma. Less than 10% of nipple discharge is associated with breast cancer.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Obtain health history, including family history of cancers.
2. Reports discharge from one nipple that flows spontaneously. Discharge may be described as a single or variety of colors (i.e., white, clear, yellow, green or bloody).
3. Denies known breast mass.

OBJECTIVE Perform **MammaCare** clinical breast exam.

ASSESSMENT Spontaneous unilateral nipple discharge observed

OR

Spontaneous unilateral nipple discharge reported

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Order bilateral diagnostic mammogram **and/or** ultrasound of the breast with discharge.

NOTE: Contact MD breast specialist for recommended diagnostic studies – diagnostic mammogram or ultrasound – if needed.

2. Order TSH and Prolactin.

THERAPEUTIC

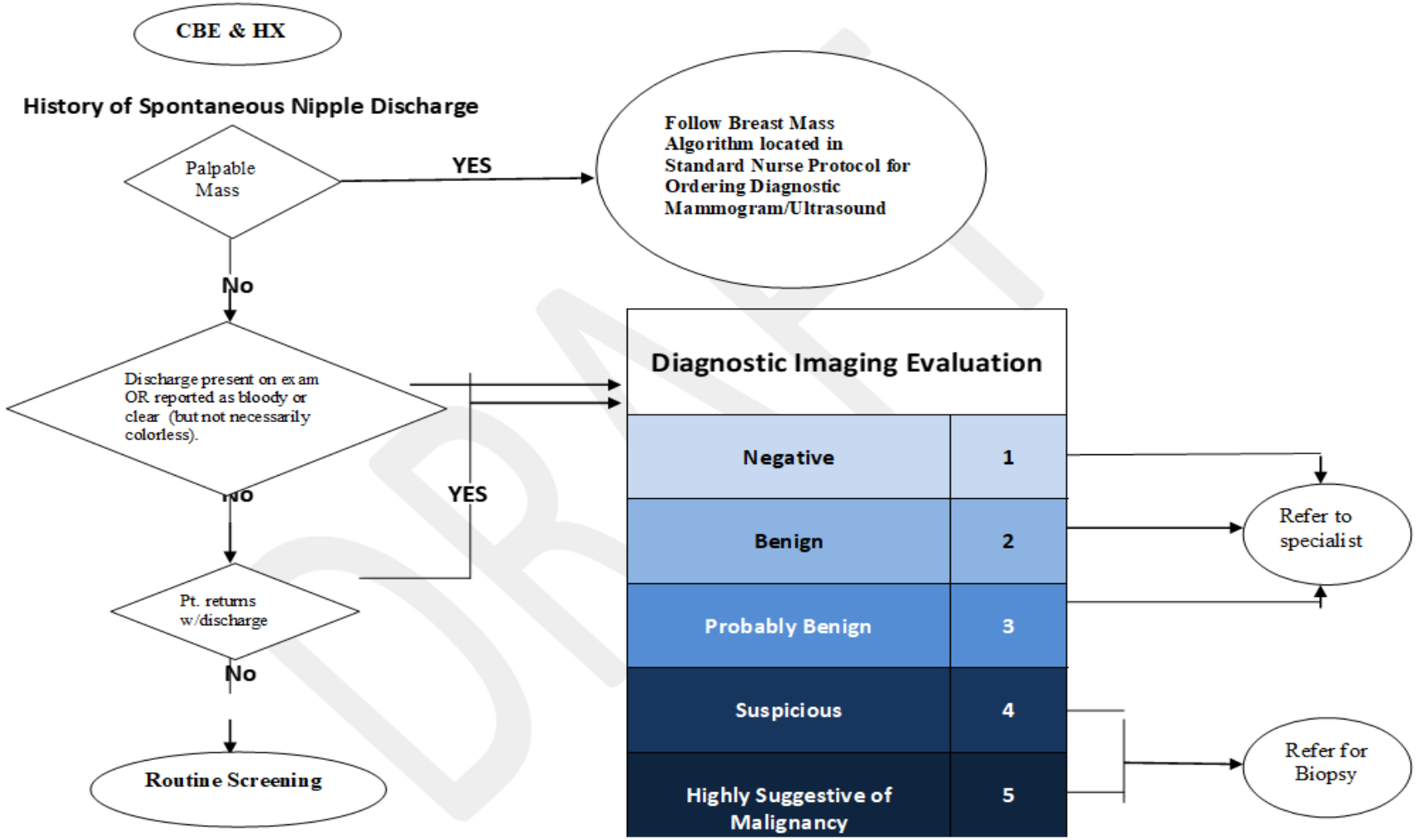
PHARMACOLOGIC

None.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

3. Follow recommendation from the Spontaneous Unilateral Nipple Discharge (Non-Lactating) algorithm included in this protocol.

Table 1: Spontaneous Unilateral Nipple Discharge (Non-lactating) Algorithm



PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Inform patient that less than 10% of nipple discharge is due to breast cancer but further diagnostic testing is warranted to rule out breast cancer.

2. No lotions, deodorants, perfumes or powders should be used on breasts or under arms prior to mammogram. This may cause shadows to appear in the imaging.

3. It is important to ascertain where and when any prior mammograms or breast ultrasounds were done so that appropriate comparison exams are available to the interpreting radiologist.

4. Educate regarding current screening mammogram recommendations.

5. Any unusual breast changes (i.e., mass, skin changes, nipple discharge, severe pain) that a patient discovers in the future should be evaluated by a clinical breast exam as soon as possible.

FOLLOW-UP:

1. If no discharge is present, follow routine recommendation for breast cancer screening.

2. Instruct the patient not to express discharge from her nipples. Explain that expressing discharge tend**s** to increase the amount of discharge.

3. If no unilateral discharge is noted upon exam and reported discharge is non-bloody, have patient return to clinic for exam if/when unilateral discharge returns.

4. Continue to follow-up until condition proves benign. If malignancy is identified, follow-up until patient is under oncologic care.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Refer to surgeon for evaluation after mammogram results are received.

2. Radiologists' requests for galactogram to be reimbursed by BCCP

must be pre-approved by a nurse consultant at the state office. A galactogram is not indicated unless the nipple discharge is spontaneous, unilateral, and expressed from a single pore.

3. All breast masses suspicious for cancer must be referred to surgeon for evaluation after thorough imaging, evaluation and minimally invasive biopsy if indicated.

4. **Refer women who have bilateral nipple discharge with no evidence of a breast mass to MD for evaluation. The nipple discharge may be due to an underlying medical condition not related to an abnormality of the breast specifically.**

REFERENCES

1. http://www.merckmanuals.com/professional/gynecology_and_obstetrics/breast_disorders/nipple_discharge.html Last full review/revision September 2013 by Mary Ann Kosir, MD; Content last revised May 2016.

2. Georgia Department of Public Health BCCP Manual, July 2015.

3. Edward Azavedo, MD, PhD, John M Lewin, MD, Bernard D Coombs, MB, ChB, PhD http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/347305-overview#a01 Breast Imaging in Nipple Discharge Evaluation, Sep 4, 2013. Content last revised October 9, 2015

4. Women'shealth.gov., http://womenshealth.gov/publications/our-publications/fact-sheet/mammograms.html#j Content last updated: January 4, 2017.

5. Alexander, K. C., Leung, M.B.B.S. and Daniele Pacaud, M.D., Diagnosis and Management of Galactorrhea Am Fam Physician. 2004 Aug 1;70(3):543-550.

STANDARD NURSE PROTOCOL FOR LACTATIONAL MASTITIS

DEFINITION Mastitis is an inflammation of the breast. This is a common occurrence in lactating women with 3-20% being impacted. It is more common in the first 6 weeks postpartum but can occur any time while lactating.

ETIOLOGY Inflammation of the breast may or may not involve a bacterial infection. There may be a continuum from breast engorgement to non-infective mastitis to infective mastitis to breast abscess. These symptoms may occur with areas of breast engorgement or blockage because bacteria gain access to static milk via the nipple. Breast engorgement is different than mastitis in that engorgement is generally diffuse and bilateral. A plugged milk duct may cause a palpable tender mass. It is different from mastitis in that a plugged duct generally does not have systemic symptoms. An abscess is a severe outcome of mastitis and has the signs and symptoms of mastitis with the presence of a tender, fluctuant mass. When infective mastitis occurs, the most common bacterial cause is *S. aureus.*

SUBJECTIVE

1. Obtain health history, including family history of cancers.
2. Patient may report breast pain, redness, fever, chills, muscle aches and flu-like symptoms.
3. Denies known breast mass.

OBJECTIVE Perform clinical breast exam noting skin changes, masses and/or any other signs and findings consistent with mastitis.

ASSESSMENT Symptoms and signs of lactational mastitis without underlying mass or signs of mass or abscess.

PLAN

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

1. Dicloxacillin 500mg PO **four times daily** for 7 to 14 days. Take 1 hour before or 2 hours after meals with at least 120mL of water. Do not take lying down or immediately before going to bed.

OR

2. Cephalexin 500mg PO four times daily for 7 to 14 days

OR

3. May use Clindamycin 300mg to 450mg PO three times daily x 7 to 14 days for penicillin allergy.

4. Prostaglandin inhibitors/NSAIDs may be taken for pain and fever if patient is not allergic **and no contraindications**, such as**:**

    a. Ibuprofen 400mg every 4 to 6 hours **or 800 mg PO every 8 hours** as needed for pain **with food** x 10 days or fever x 3 days. If no relief, may increase to 400mg every 4 to 6 hours as needed. **(Maximum: 2400 mg/day for those 12-17 years and 3200 mg/day for those 18 years and older),**

    OR

    b. Naproxen 500mg PO for one dose then, 250mg PO every 6-8 hours as needed **with food** for pain or fever. (Maximum daily dose for Day 1 is 1,250mg; subsequent daily doses should not exceed 1,000mg).

    NOTE: Naproxen that is available OTC is 220mg each.

    OR

    c. Acetaminophen 650mg PO every 4 to 6 hours as needed for pain of fever. (maximum daily dose: 3250mg/day)

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Cold compresses or ice packs can help to reduce breast pain and swelling.

2. Women should be encouraged to completely empty the breast by continuing to breastfeed, pump or express milk by hand. It is safe to breastfeed while undergoing treatment.

3. A plugged mild duct does not require antibiotics for treatment. Women should follow instructions below and consider applying heat to the breast prior to feeding.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Mothers should be encouraged to breastfeed more frequently starting on the affected breast.

2. If pain interferes with the let-down, feeding may begin on the unaffected breast, switching to the affected breast as soon as let-down is achieved.

3. Positioning the infant at the breast with the chin or nose pointing to the blockage will help drain the affected area.

4. Massaging the breast during the feeding with an edible oil or nontoxic lubricant on the fingers may also be helpful to facilitate milk removal. Massage should be directed from the blocked area moving toward the nipple.

5. After the feeding, expressing milk by hand or pump may augment milk drainage and hasten resolution of the problem.

FOLLOW-UP:

1. Clinical response is generally rapid and dramatic.

2. If there is not improvement in 48 hours, the patient should be referred to MD for evaluation and/or consideration of breast ultrasound or culture of breast milk.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Refer to MD if a breast mass concerning for abscess or malignancy is present on exam.

2. If patient is severely ill or cannot tolerate PO medications, refer to MD or to ER.

REFERENCES:

1. Academy of Breastfeeding Medicine Clinical Protocol #4: Mastitis, Revised March, 2014 https://abm.memberclicks.net/assets/DOCUMENTS/PROTOCOLS/4-mastitis-protocol-english.pdf

2. **Wolters Kluwer. Dicloxacillin. Facts & Comparisons® eAnswers. http://online.factsandcomparisons.com/. Published February 8, 2019. Accessed April 26, 2019.**

3. **Wolters Kluwer. Cephalexin. *Lexicomp Online®.* Login. https://online.lexi.com/crlsql/servlet/crlonline. Published April 20, 2019. Accessed April 26, 2019.**

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

STANDARD WOMEN'S HEALTH APRN PROTOCOLS

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

STANDARD APRN PROTOCOL FOR AMENORRHEA

DEFINITION

Amenorrhea is defined as the absence of menses. Primary amenorrhea is defined as no menstrual period by the age of 15, lack of any secondary sexual characteristics by age 13 or no menses within 5 years after the development of breasts, pubic or axillary hair.

Secondary amenorrhea is defined as absence of menstrual periods for greater than 3 months in a woman who was previously menstruating.

ETIOLOGY

1. Primary:

    a. Gonadal failure.
    b. Congenital absence of uterus and vagina.
    c. Constitutional delay.

2. Secondary:

    a. Pregnancy; breastfeeding.
    b. Pituitary disease or tumor; disruption of hypothalamic-pituitary axis.
    c. Menopause.
    d. Too little body fat (about 22% required for menses).
    e. Excessive exercise (e.g., long-distance running, ballet dancing, gymnastics, figure skating, etc.).
    f. Rapid weight loss.
    g. Cessation of menstruation following use of CHC or DMPA.
    h. Recent change in lifestyle (e.g., increased stress).
    i. Thyroid disease.
    j. Polycystic ovary disease.
    k. Anorexia nervosa or other eating disorders.
    l. Premature ovarian **i**nsufficiency, ovarian dysgenesis, infection, hemorrhage, necrosis, neoplasm.
    m. Cushing Disease
    n. Asherman's Syndrome.
    o. Cervical stenosis.
    p. Medications including psychotropics.
    q. Chronic illness.
    r. Tuberculosis.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient provides a detailed health history (includes menstrual, sexual, contraception, personal health and family history).

2. Patient reports absence of menses (as defined above).

3. Patient may have a history which includes the following**:**

    a. Changes in skin/hair, vision/hearing or voice
    b. Palpitations
    c. Breast size changes or galactorrhea
    d. Vasomotor symptoms
    e. Changes in weight, dietary habits
    f. Cold or heat intolerance
    g. Known medical problems
    h. Stress
    i. Exercise patterns (changes or rigorous)
    j. Recent pregnancy, risk for pregnancy
    k. Genital tract procedures

OBJECTIVE

1. May be obese or underweight for height.

2. May note on physical examination:

    a. Skin/hair changes – dry skin or warm, moist skin, excessive sweating, palmar erythema, acne, hirsutism, balding**,** purple abdominal striae, absence of pubic or axillary hair.
    b. Facial plethora, moon facies, exophthalmos, ocular signs, visual fields defect, impaired auditory acuity, abnormal thyroid size and consistency, fine silky scalp hair or alopecia pattern.
    c. Tachycardia.
    d. Breast tissue atrophy, galactorrhea.
    e. "Buffalo" hump of back.
    f. On pelvic exam:
        1) External – Vulvar atrophy, clitoromegaly.
        2) Internal – Atrophic vaginal mucosa, change in cervical mucous or imperforate hymen.
        3) Bimanual – Softening of cervix or cervical uterine junction, cervical stenosis, uterine or ovarian atrophy or enlargement.

ASSESSMENT

Primary amenorrhea **or** Secondary amenorrhea with or without galactorrhea.

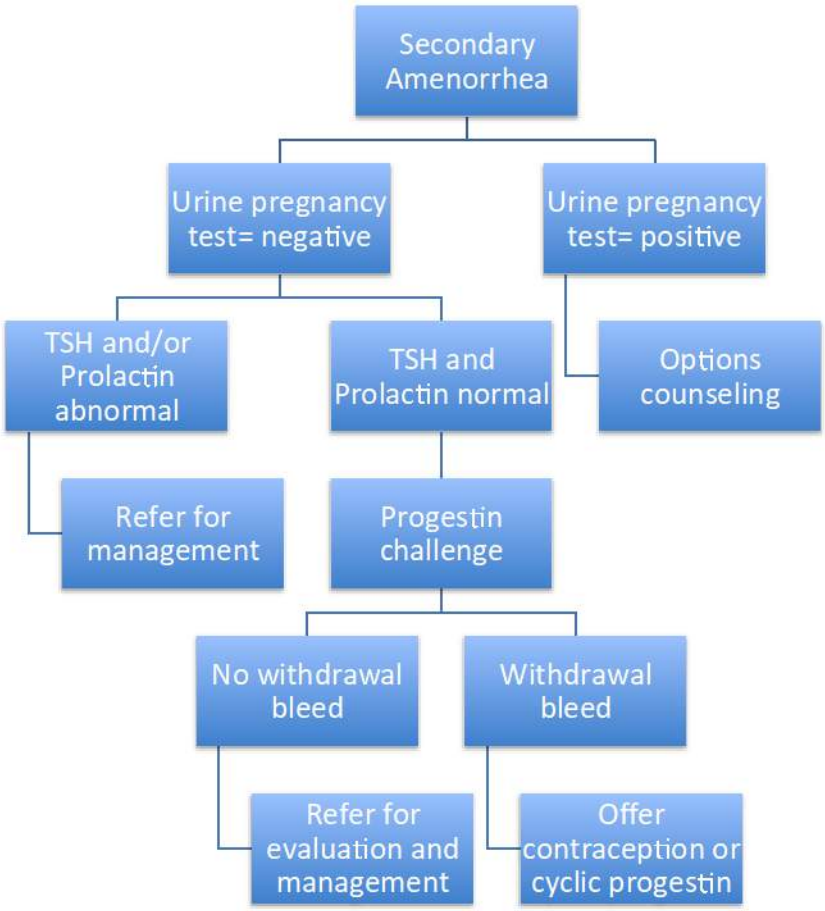
PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Pregnancy test for either primary or secondary amenorrhea.

2. For primary amenorrhea, refer these patients for further evaluation.

3. For secondary amenorrhea, consider TSH and prolactin followed by a progestin challenge test as suggested in Table below. Clinicians may also refer these patients for further evaluation.



THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Hazardous agent; use appropriate precautions for handling and disposal which can be found at: https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html

1. Progestin challenge test: Medroxyprogesterone Acetate 5mg-10mg (1 tab) PO daily for 5-10 days.

   If bleeding occurs with progestin challenge test (usually within 2-7 days)

   AND

a. Patient desires contraception, begin any desired contraceptive for which she meets the *CDC Medical Eligibility Criteria.* If she desires cyclic menses, encourage

a combined hormonal contraceptive (pill, patch or ring). (See Appendix A)

OR

b. Patient does not desire contraception, give medroxyprogesterone acetate, 10 mg PO daily for the first 10 days of every month for 3 consecutive months. If she does not have spontaneous menses thereafter, refer.

2. If no bleeding occurs with progestin challenge test, repeat pregnancy test. If negative, refer patient for management and/or further evaluation.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Give menstrual calendar and counsel on its use.

2. Inform that bleeding usually occurs within 2 weeks after treatment (frequently 2-7 days).

3. Discuss what can be expected during future evaluation. Explain that accurate diagnosis may take time.

4. Review female anatomy and menstrual cycle to help her understand the testing being done.

5. Discuss contraception, as indicated.

FOLLOW-UP

Return in two weeks if no withdrawal bleeding has occurred after medroxyprogesterone acetate.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. If patient has primary amenorrhea.

2. Positive pregnancy test, perform options counseling and refer as indicated.

3. If patient does not have a withdrawal bleed after progestin challenge test and negative pregnancy test, refer for further evaluation.

4. Patient fails to have spontaneous menses within 3 months after treatment.

5. Suspected eating disorders, or polycystic ovarian syndrome.

6. If patient has abnormal symptoms, laboratory test(s), or exam findings.

7. Patient has neurological symptoms such as headache or abnormal neurological exam.

8. May refer for diagnostic testing (i.e., prolactin level, TSH, FSH, LH).

REFERENCES

1. Joellen Hawkins et al., *Protocols for Nurse Practitioners in Gynecological Settings,* 11th ed., Springer Publishing Co., New York, 2015.

2. Master-Hunter and Hieman. Amenorrhea: Evaluation and Treatment. American Family Physicians. April 15, 2006, Volume 73, Number 8, Pg 1374-1382.

3. **Wolters Kluwer. Progesterone. *Lexicomp® Online*. https://online.lexi.com/crlsql/servlet/crlonline. Published April 20, 2019. Accessed April 26, 2019.**

STANDARD APRN PROTOCOL FOR CONTRACEPTIVE IMPLANT INSERTION

NOTE: All clinicians performing insertions and/or removals of the contraceptive implant must complete the manufacturer's (Merck) Clinical Training Program, a required comprehensive hands-on workshop. Only clinicians who complete the program will be able to order the product. You must be an advanced practice clinician or a physician in order to attend the required training. For those who completed training for Implanon, a web-based training can be completed for certification in Nexplanon placement. For those who have never been certified to place the contraceptive implant, in-person training is required. The training is free and can be arranged by calling 1-877-467-5266.

DEFINITION

Nexplanon® is a small, thin, implantable hormonal contraceptive that is effective for at least three years. The product has FDA approval for three years, but evidence indicates that the contraceptive effect is present for **five** years and longer. The subdermal contraceptive implant is an etonogestrel-impregnated 4cm plastic rod. It is placed under the skin of the upper arm. It does not contain estrogen. It prevents pregnancy primarily by inhibiting ovulation. Other contraceptive effects include thickening cervical mucus and thinning the endometrial lining. Nexplanon® is identical to its predecessor, Implanon®, except that it is radio-opaque and the inserter has been changed**.**

SUBJECTIVE

1. Desires an implant for long-term contraception.

2. Has detailed health history (includes menstrual, sexual, contraception, personal health and family history) that does not reveal a condition representing an unacceptable health risk according to the product prescribing information and to the CDC *Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use*.

3**.** If breastfeeding, she may initiate immediately. However, there is minimal likelihood of ovulating before one month postpartum in a woman who is breastfeeding.

4. Refer to CDC *Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use* for medical conditions that represent an unacceptable health risk for using the contraceptive implant. Medical conditions include:

    a. Lupus with positive (or unknown) antiphospholipid antibodies
    b. Breast cancer
    c. Cirrhosis – severe (decompensated)
    d. Liver Tumors – benign hepatocellular adenoma; malignant (hepatoma)
    e. Unexplained vaginal bleeding, suspicious for serious underlying condition, before evaluation.

5. Refer to CDC *Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use* for medical conditions that represent an unacceptable health risk if *they develop while using* the contraceptive implant. Women with these conditions may initiate the implant. However, if women who did not have these conditions at the time of initiation develop these conditions after using the implant, the implant should not be continued. Medical conditions include:

    a. Ischemic heart disease
    b. Stroke

6. May report estrogen-excess side effects while taking combined hormonal contraceptives, such as headaches, breast tenderness, weight gain, nausea and thus prefer a method that does not contain estrogen.

OBJECTIVE

1. Physical examination and laboratory tests as indicated. See protocol for Preventive Care and Health Screening.

2. Timing of insertion of implant; see Initiation of Contraceptives Protocol.

ASSESSMENT

Patient has no condition representing an unacceptable risk if using the contraceptive implant. No allergy to any component of the implant.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

Pregnancy test if indicated to rule out pregnancy.

THERAPEUTIC

1. Initiation

    a. If a provider can be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant, implant may be initiated that day with back up x 7 days.

    b. In situations where a provider cannot be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant the benefits of initiating the implant outweigh the risks and contraception can be initiated immediately.
        1) Starting the implant the day of the clinic visit can be easier for patients and can increase access Hormonal contraception will not prevent a pregnancy from sex that has already occurred.

2) Most studies have shown no increased risk for adverse outcomes (congenital anomalies, neonatal or infant death) in infants exposed to contraception.
3) The likelihood of pregnancy in previous studies of immediate initiation in situations like these was 3%.
4) If patient wants to have implant inserted that day, insert implant. Encourage condoms or abstinence for 7 days. Repeat UCG in 14-28 days (this can be done by home pregnancy test if the patient desires).
5) If patient declines initiation of the implant on that day of clinic visit, have her return on the first day of her next menstrual cycle for placement.
6) If she has had unprotected sex in the last 120 hours, offer EC (ECPs or Paragard IUD). See Emergency Contraceptive Pills Protocol.

2. Switching from other methods

a. For patients with an IUD, it may be reasonable to insert the implant when the appointment for IUD removal is made.

b. When switching from a hormonal method that works primarily by inhibiting ovulation, insert the implant immediately after stopping the other method with no breaks. If she has been using a contraceptive injection, the implant may be initiated any time within the window of contraceptive coverage. Back up x 7 days.

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Hazardous agent; use appropriate precautions for handling and disposal which can be found at: https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html

1. Local anesthesia with **2-3 mL's** of 1% lidocaine (should be injected under the skin and along the insertion track).

2. Insert the contraceptive implant per manufacturer's directions. Before insertion, the patient must read and sign the program's method specific consent form.

a. The implant should be palpated by both the clinician and patient before patient goes home to ensure proper placement.

3. The provider should fill out the Contraceptive Implant Placement procedure note as indicated.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Take precautions to avert a vasovagal reaction (syncope/ fainting). Allow the patient to lie still several minutes after insertion. Ask about pain or feeling faint. If the patient says she feels like she can sit up, have her sit up slowly while being supported. If no problems in 1-2 minutes, allow her to stand.

2. Treat signs of vasovagal reaction (pallor/cyanosis, pinched-face look, dilated pupils, weak and rapid pulse, rapid shallow breathing, hypotension) according to the Emergency Guidelines**,** Policies and Procedures Nurse Protocol.

3. Ice to insertion area for discomfort**, as needed**.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Counsel patient according to seven basic elements of informed consent (BRAIDED – Benefits Risks Alternatives Inquiries Decision Explanation Documentation).

2. The User Card from the product package should be filled out and given to the patient after the contraceptive implant insertion so she will have a record of the location of implant and when it should be removed.

3. Review warning signs and symptoms of possible insertion site problems: redness, swelling, or purulent discharge at insertion site. Encourage patient to keep insertion site bandaged for the next 3-5 days.

4. Counsel patient on common side effects: menstrual changes or bleeding irregularities (spotting, light bleeding, prolonged bleeding or no bleeding), emotional lability, weight gain, headache, acne, depression.

5. Further counsel patient regarding unpredictable bleeding irregularities, so that she knows what to expect. Women who use the contraceptive implant are likely to have changes in their vaginal bleeding patterns, especially during the first three months of use, which are often unpredictable. These may include changes in bleeding frequency or duration, or amenorrhea. Amenorrhea and oligomenorrhea are common.

6. Take over-the-counter ibuprofen or acetaminophen **(follow package instructions)** and/or apply ice to insertion area for discomfort.

7. If inserted more than 5 days from LMP and patient not currently on hormonal contraception, recommend back-up or abstinence for 7 days.

8. Provide counseling on preconception health counseling and future fertility.
9. Use condoms to reduce the risk of STD, including HIV.

10. Counsel patient to discuss all medications and herbal supplements with clinician because they can alter the metabolism of hormonal contraception and cause side effects, and/or decrease effectiveness.

11. The contraceptive implant is approved for use for 3 years. However, clinical data demonstrates its effectiveness for 5 years, and maybe longer. This information can be used when counseling women at the time of initiation as well as at the end of the FDA approval window. If the patient is satisfied with the method at the end of the FDA approval window and would like to continue using it, evidence indicates that it still provides contraception as noted above. If she would like to have it removed, this should be honored.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Return as scheduled for evaluation or contact clinic if side effects or danger signs develop. See table below, Routine follow-up after contraceptive initiation.

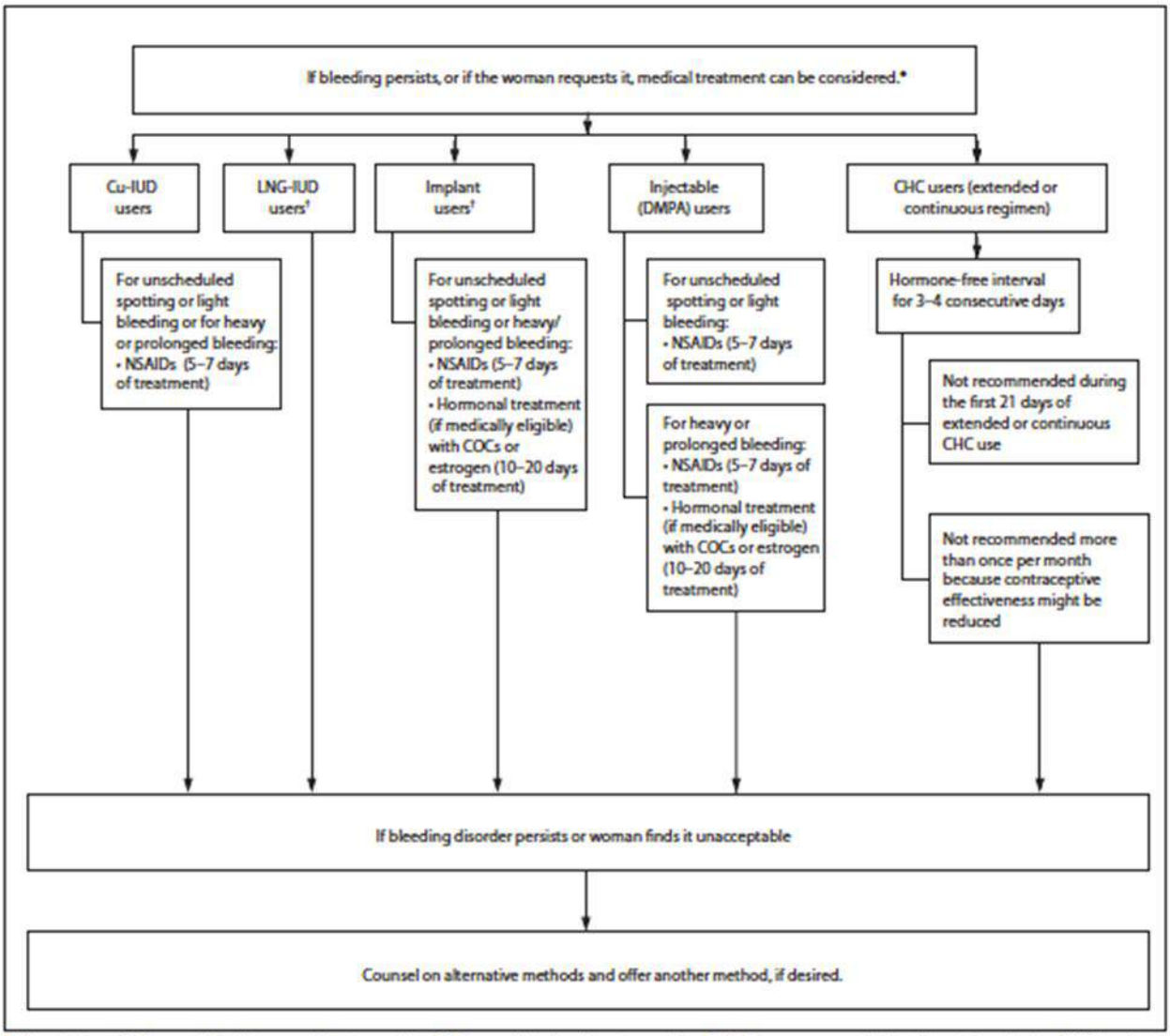
2. Outside of clinic hours, seek physician or emergency care if warning signs develop.

3. Treatment of side effects: None of the following has been proven to be effective for treatment of bothersome bleeding while using the implant. Often continuation of use of the implant is the best treatment, but for some women the bleeding profile may not improve**.** If a woman is interested in continuing the implant and would like to try one of the following, it may be reasonable. If she desires removal, this request should be accommodated.

4. For bleeding irregularities see Nurse Protocol for Spotting and Breakthrough Bleeding while on Hormonal Contraception**.** Please see table below from the CDC's Selected Practice Recommendations

Table 1. Summary from the CDCs Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use

Management of Women with Bleeding Irregularities While Using Contraception



Abbreviations: CHC = combined hormonal contraceptive; COC = combined oral contraceptive; Cu-IUD = copper-containing intrauterine device; DMPA = depot medroxyprogesterone acetate; LNG-IUD = levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine device; NSAIDs = nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs.
* If clinically warranted, evaluate for underlying condition. Treat the condition or refer for care.
† Heavy or prolonged bleeding, either unscheduled or menstrual, is uncommon.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Difficult implant insertion or removal.
2. Allergy to **local anesthetic**.
3. Suspected ectopic pregnancy.
4. Other complications related to implant use.

How to Be Reasonably Certain That a Woman is Not Pregnant

A health-care provider can be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant if she has no symptoms or signs of pregnancy and meets any one of the following criteria:

- is ≤7 days after the start of normal menses
- has not had sexual intercourse since the start of last normal menses
- has been correctly and consistently using a reliable method of contraception
- is ≤7 days after spontaneous or induced abortion
- is within 4 weeks postpartum
- is fully or nearly fully breastfeeding (exclusively breastfeeding or the vast majority [≥85%] of feeds are breastfeeds), amenorrheic, and <6 months postpartum

In situations in which the health-care provider is uncertain whether the woman might be pregnant, the benefits of starting the implant, depot medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA), combined hormonal contraceptives and progestin-only pills likely exceed any risk; therefore, starting the method should be considered at any time, with a follow-up pregnancy test in 2-4 weeks. For IUD insertion, in situations in which the health-care provider is not reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant, the woman should be provided with another contraceptive method to use until the health-care provider can be reasonably certain that she is not pregnant and can insert the IUD.

When to Start Using Specific Contraceptive Methods

Contraceptive method	When to start (if the provider is reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant)	Additional contraception (i.e., back up) needed	Examinations or tests needed before initiation[1]
Copper-containing IUD	Anytime	Not needed	Bimanual examination and cervical inspection[2]
Levonorgestrel-releasing IUD	Anytime	If >7 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	Bimanual examination and cervical inspection[2]
Implant	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	None
Injectable	Anytime	If >7 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	None
Combined hormonal contraceptive	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	Blood pressure measurement
Progestin-only pill	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 2 days.	None

Abbreviations: BMI = body mass index; IUD = intrauterine device; STD = sexually transmitted disease; U.S. MEC = U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use

[1] Weight (BMI) measurement is not needed to determine medical eligibility for any methods of contraception because all methods can be used (U.S. MEC 1) or generally can be used (U.S. MEC 2) among obese women. However, measuring weight and calculating BMI (weight [kg]/height [m²] at baseline might be helpful for monitoring any changes and counseling women who might be concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.

[2] Most women do not require additional STD screening at the time of IUD insertion. If a woman with risk factors for STDs has not been screened for gonorrhea and chlamydia according to CDC's STD Treatment Guidelines (http://www.cdc.gov/std/treatment), screening can be performed at the time of IUD insertion, and insertion should not be delayed. Women with current purulent cervicitis or chlamydial infection or gonococcal infection should not undergo IUD insertion (U.S. MEC 4).

Source: For full recommendations and updates, see the U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use webpage at http://www.cdc.gov/reproductivehealth/unintendedpregnancy/usspr.htm.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion

TABLE D1. Routine follow-up after contraceptive initiation

Action	Contraceptive method				
	Cu-IUD or LNG-IUD	Implant	Injectable	CHC	POP
General follow-up					
Advise women to return at any time to discuss side effects or other problems or if they want to change the method. Advise women using IUDs, implants, or injectables when the IUD or implant needs to be removed or when a reinjection is needed. No routine follow-up visit is required.	X	X	X	X	X
Other routine visits					
Assess the woman's satisfaction with her current method and whether she has any concerns about method use.	X	X	X	X	X
Assess any changes in health status, including medications, that would change the method's appropriateness for safe and effective continued use based on U.S. MEC (i.e., category 3 and 4 conditions and characteristics) (Box 1).	X	X	X	X	X
Consider performing an examination to check for the presence of IUD strings.	X	—	—	—	—
Consider assessing weight changes and counseling women who are concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.	X	X	X	X	X
Measure blood pressure.	—	—	—	X	—

Abbreviations: CHC = combined hormonal contraceptives; Cu-IUD = copper-containing intrauterine device; HIV = human immunodeficiency virus; IUD = intrauterine device; LNG-IUD = levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine device; POP = progestin-only pills; U.S. MEC = *U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use*.

REFERENCES

1. **Robert Hatcher et al., *Contraceptive Technology,* 21st ed., Ardent Media, Inc., New York, 2018. (Current)**

2. Joellen Hawkins et al., *Protocols for Nurse Practitioners in Gynecologic Settings,* 11th ed., Springer Publishing Co., New York, 2015.

3. **M. Zieman, R.A. Hatcher. *Managing Contraception, 14th ed., Ardent Media Inc.,* New York, 2017.**

4. CDC, U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 2016, MMWR 2016; 65: 3 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6503.pdf

5. CDC, U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use, 2016. MMWR 2016; 65:4 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6504.pdf

6. US Department of Health and Human Services; Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. NIOSH list of antineoplastic and other hazardous drugs in healthcare settings, 2016. Available at https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html Updated September 2016. Accessed November 8, 2016.

7. Ali, Moazzam et al. *Extended Use up to Five Years of the Etonogestrel-releasing Subdermal Contraceptive Implant: Comparison to Levonorgestrel-releasing subdermal Implant.* Human Reproduction: 31 (11), pp 2491-2498. September 26, 2016. https://academic.oup.com/humrep/article-pdf/31/11/2491/6629131/dew222.pdf

8. McNicholas C, Swor E, Wan L, et al. Prolonged use of the etonogestrel implant and levonorgestrel intrauterine device: 2 years beyond Food and Drug Administration - approved duration. Am J Obstet Gynecol 2017; 216:586.e1-6. http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.ajog.2017.01.036

9. **Wolters Kluwer. Nexplanon. Lexicomp® Online. Login. https://online.lexi.com/crlsql/servlet/crlonline . Published April 20, 2019. Accessed April 26, 2019.**

10. **Merck. HIGHLIGHTS OF PRESCRIBING INFORMATION ... Nexplanon Prescriber Information. https://www.merck.com/product/usa/pi_circulars/n/nexplanon/nexplanon_pi.pdf . Published November 1, 2018. Accessed April 26, 2019.**

11. Darney, Philip D, MD. Etonogestrel contraceptive implant .May 14, 2019. Wolters Kluwer, UpToDate 2019.< https://www.uptodate.com/contents/etonogestrel-contraceptive-implant?search=nexplanon%20anesthesia&sectionRank=2&usage_type=default&anchor=H20&source=machineLearning&selectedTitle=1~150&display_rank=1#H4011773244> **accessed September 6, 2019**

STANDARD APRN PROTOCOL FOR CONTRACEPTIVE IMPLANT REMOVAL

NOTE: All clinicians performing insertions and/or removals of the contraceptive implant must complete the manufacturer's (Merck) Clinical Training Program, a required comprehensive hands-on workshop. Only clinicians who complete the program will be able to order the product. You must be an advanced practice clinician or a physician in order to attend the required training. For those who completed training for Implanon, a web-based training can be completed for certification in Nexplanon placement. There is no difference in removal between these devices. For those who have never been certified to place the contraceptive implant, in-person training is required. The training is free and can be arranged by calling 1-877-467-5266.

DEFINITION Removal of the contraceptive implant at the patient's request, due to clinical findings such as pregnancy or side effects, or at the end of the implant's period of contraceptive efficacy.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient desires contraceptive implant removal.
2. May be pregnant.
3. Complains of severe side effects.
4. The window of contraceptive efficacy has passed.

OBJECTIVE

1. Positive pregnancy test.
2. Clinical findings of severe side effects or a contraindication for continuing with the implant.

ASSESSMENT Removal of the contraceptive implant is desired or recommended.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

Implant palpable under skin and exact position localized. If implant is not palpable, do not attempt to begin removal process. Implanon can be localized with ultrasound using a high frequency linear array transducer (10 megahertz or greater) or MRI. Nexplanon is radio-opaque and can also be visualized by x-ray. Only remove a non-palpable implant once the location of the implant has been established. If imaging methods fail, call the manufacturer, Merck, at 1-877-467-5266 for further instructions.

NOTE: Implants placed in other countries may be a two-implant system. If the patient received her implant outside of DPH, inquire about where. If she received it from another country, ask her if she knows if there are one or two implants and palpate for confirmation.

THERAPEUTIC

NOTE: Hazardous agent; use appropriate precautions for handling and disposal which can be found at: https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html

NOTE: Before removal, the patient must read and sign the consent form for removal. Per manufacturer's instructions, remove the contraceptive implant capsule through a very small incision over the tip that is closest to the elbow.

1. Per manufacturer's removal instructions:

    a. Inject local anesthetic under the distal tip of the implant. **Anesthetize the site, for example, with 0.5 to 1 mL 1% lidocaine**.

    b. Make a 2-3 mm incision just above the tip of the rod, the incision should be in-line or parallel to the implant. (If the woman has a two-implant system, sometimes the incision should be perpendicular to both implant tips to be able to remove both through the same incision).

    c. Gently push the tip of the implant through the incision and grasp with hemostat or forceps for removal.

    d. Place bandage over incision.

    e. **A new implant may be inserted immediately after the old implant is removed using the same incision as long as the site is in the correct location.**

2. If implant is not palpable but has been localized by ultrasound and is found to be deeply inserted, referral to a specialist with expertise in deep removals is highly recommended. This specialist should have a good understanding of the vessels and nerves of the arm. Any adverse events associated with removal should be reported to Merck at 1-877-467-5266.

3. The provider should fill out the Contraceptive Implant Removal procedure note as indicated.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Provide patient with instructions for care. Take over-the-counter ibuprofen or acetaminophen **(follow package directions)** for discomfort if needed.

2. Discuss alternative contraceptive method, if desired. Another implant can be placed during the same procedure, as noted above.

3. Menses may be delayed or irregular for a month or more after removal.

FOLLOW-UP

1. May follow-up in 1-2 weeks for incision check, if desired.

2. Return, as needed, for contraception or preventative care and health screening.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Difficult/failed removal.

2. Successful removal, patient pregnant.

3. Persistent side effects.

REFERENCES

1. **Robert Hatcher et al., *Contraceptive Technology,* 21st ed., Ardent Media, Inc., New York, 2018. (Current)**

2. Joellen Hawkins et al., *Protocols for Nurse Practitioners in Gynecologic Settings,* 11th ed., Springer Publishing Co., New York, 2015.

3. **M. Zieman, R.A. Hatcher. *Managing Contraception, 14th ed., Ardent Media Inc.,* New York, 2017**

4. CDC, U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 2016, MMWR 2016; 65: 3 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6503.pdf

5. CDC, U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use, 2016. MMWR 2016; 65:4 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6504.pdf

6. US Department of Health and Human Services; Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. NIOSH list of antineoplastic and other hazardous drugs in healthcare settings, 2016. Available at https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html Updated September 2016. Accessed November 8, 2016.

7. Ali, Moazzam et al. *Extended Use up to Five Years of the Etonogestrel-releasing Subdermal Contraceptive Implant: Comparison to Levonorgestrel-releasing subdermal Implant.* Human Reproduction: 31 (11), pp 2491-2498. September 26, 2016. https://academic.oup.com/humrep/article-pdf/31/11/2491/6629131/dew222.pdf

8. McNicholas C, Swor E, Wan L, et al. Prolonged use of the etonogestrel implant and levonorgestrel intrauterine device: 2 years beyond Food and Drug Administration - approved duration. Am J Obstet Gynecol 2017; 216:586.e1-6. http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.ajog.2017.01.036

9. **Merck. HIGHLIGHTS OF PRESCRIBING INFORMATION ... Nexplanon Prescriber Information. https://www.merck.com/product/usa/pi_circulars/n/nexplanon/nexplanon_pi.pdf. Published November 1, 2018. Accessed April 26, 2019.**

10. Darney, Philip D, MD. Etonogestrel contraceptive implant .May 14, 2019. Wolters Kluwer, UpToDate 2019.< https://www.uptodate.com/contents/etonogestrel-contraceptive-implant?search=nexplanon%20anesthesia&sectionRank=2&usage_type=default&anchor=H20&source=machineLearning&selectedTitle=1~150&display_rank=1#H4011773244> accessed September 6, 2019

STANDARD APRN PROTOCOL FOR IUD INSERTION: COPPER T380A

DEFINITION The Copper T380A (ParaGard®) intrauterine device, is a copper-bearing contraceptive device that prevents pregnancy for at least 10 years. It prevents pregnancy by immobilizing sperm, inhibiting fertilization and preventing implantation due to local inflammatory responses and endometrial effects. The copper IUD can also be used for emergency contraception. It is the most effective method of emergency contraception within 5 days of unprotected sex. For women who are seeking ongoing highly effective contraception, use of the copper IUD as emergency contraception may be ideal**.**

SUBJECTIVE

1. Desires an IUD for long-term contraception.

2. Has detailed health history (includes menstrual, sexual, contraception, personal health and family history) that does not reveal a condition representing an unacceptable health risk according to the product prescribing information and to the *CDC Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use.* Conditions that present an unacceptable health risk for use of the copper IUD include:

   a. Currently pregnant
   b. Unexplained vaginal bleeding, suspicious for serious underlying condition, before evaluation.
   c. Postpartum sepsis
   d. Immediately post septic abortion
   e. Current PID or within the past 3 months
   f. Current purulent cervicitis or chlamydial infection or gonorrhea
   g. Uterine anomalies that distort the endometrial cavity
   h. Cervical or endometrial cancer waiting to be treated
   i. Gestational trophoblastic disease with persistently elevated β-hcg levels or malignant disease with evidence or suspicion of intrauterine disease
   j. Severe thrombocytopenia (at the time of initiation)
   k. Pelvic tuberculosis
   l. Complicated solid organ transplantation: graft failure (acute or chronic), rejection, cardiac allograft vasculopathy

3. May desire hormone-free contraception

4. May desire the most effective emergency contraceptive possible.

OBJECTIVE

1. Physical examination and laboratory tests as indicated.

See protocol for Preventive Care and Health Screening.

2. Pelvic exam must be completed.

3. No pelvic exam findings that are contraindications to placement at the time of insertion.

4. Determine if reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant (see Initiation of Contraception Protocol) or is in need of emergency contraception with unprotected sex in the past 5 days.

ASSESSMENT Patient has no condition representing an unacceptable risk if using a Copper T380A.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Negative pregnancy test, if indicated.

2. Laboratory tests:

   a. Negative gonorrhea and chlamydia tests, if indicated. Tests may be performed on the day of placement, and the woman can return for treatment (if necessary). Clarification on this comes from the CDC's Selected Practice Recommendations: Most women do not require additional STD screening at the time of IUD insertion if they have already been screened according to STD Program's current Screening Criteria for Chlamydia and Gonorrhea.

   b. If a woman has not been screened according to guidelines, screening can be performed at the time of IUD insertion, and insertion should not be delayed. Women with purulent cervicitis or current chlamydial infection or gonorrhea should not undergo IUD insertion (U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria 4).

   c. Wet mount, if indicated.

NOTE: Trichomonas, yeast and BV are not contraindications to IUD placement. Clinicians may diagnose, treat, and place an IUD on the same day.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Before insertion, the patient must read and sign the program's method specific consent form.

1. May encourage an over-the-counter (OTC) non-steroidal anti-inflammatory agent 30-60 minutes before the procedure to reduce discomfort.

2. Insert Copper T380A per manufacturer's directions. May be inserted any time in the cycle if pregnancy has been ruled out. The Copper T380A is effective immediately after insertion.

3. If a provider can be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant, any contraceptive, including a Copper IUD may be initiated on that day.

    a. This includes women who were not on a contraceptive method.

    b. This also includes women who have been consistently and correctly using another method of contraception (CHC, injection, implant, POP, IUD). Insert on the same day that removal of the implant or other IUD occurs.

4. In situations where a provider cannot be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant, the woman should be provided an alternate method of contraceptive and should return for IUD placement when the provider can be reasonably certain she is not pregnant. If she does not desire a bridge hormonal method, she can be rescheduled to return within 5 days of the start of her next menses.

    An exception to this: If she has had unprotected sex in the last 120 hours, has no other acts of unprotected sex since her LMP and desires the Copper T380A for EC and for ongoing contraception, it may be placed immediately.

5. After Childbirth: May be inserted immediately following delivery of the placenta or within 7 days following a spontaneous induced abortion; do not insert if puerperal sepsis or septic abortion is present. If IUD had not been placed immediately postpartum and patient desires an IUD postpartum for contraception, wait a minimum of 6 weeks after delivery or until the uterus is fully involuted and pregnancy is ruled out.

6. If lactating, there appears to be an increased risk of perforation.

7. The provider should complete the IUD Placement procedure note as indicated.

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Take precautions to avert a vasovagal reaction (syncope/ fainting) caused by uterine manipulation and sounding. After IUD insertion, allow the patient to lie still for at least 30 seconds. Ask about pain or cramping. If the patient says she feels okay, have her sit up slowly while being supported. If no problems in 30 seconds, allow her to stand.

2. Treat signs of vasovagal reaction (pallor/cyanosis, pinched-face look, dilated pupils, weak and rapid pulse, rapid shallow breathing, hypotension) according to the Emergency Guidelines, Policies, Procedures and Protocols.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Counsel patient according to seven basic elements of informed consent (BRAIDED – Benefits Risks Alternatives Inquiries Decision Explanation Documentation).

2. Discuss checking for IUD strings.

    a. The IUD can be expelled without being noticed, and the package insert suggests that women check for the strings monthly. However, checking for the strings has not been shown to add to optimal use of the IUD. If a patient feels reassured by checking the strings, she may do so. However, she should not be instructed that this practice is necessary.

    b. If the patient does check for her strings routinely and cannot feel the strings, or if the plastic part is felt, use another method of contraception and return to the clinic.

    c. Women who had an IUD placed immediately postpartum may require a string trim when they present for postpartum follow-up.

d. Most likely cause of IUD failure is expulsion with risk highest during the first year, particularly within the first 3 months after insertion.

3. Review warning signs and symptoms of possible problem: abdominal pain, vaginal discharge, pain with intercourse, missing string, pregnancy symptoms, heavy bleeding, **post-coital spotting**.

4. There is a small increased risk of PID, which is most likely to occur within the first 2-3 weeks after insertion. Patient should be instructed to return for signs and symptoms of infection.

5. Menstrual irregularities (spotting, light bleeding) are common in the first 3-6 months after insertion.

6. Take over-the-counter ibuprofen or naproxen sodium (**follow** package directions) if needed for discomfort.

7. Should strongly consider adding condoms for STD protection if patient is at risk for STDs (multiple partners, partner with multiple partners).

8. Provide counseling on preconception health counseling and future fertility.

9. Use condoms to reduce the risk of STD, including HIV.

10. The T380A is approved for use for 10 years, however clinical data demonstrates its effectiveness for 12 years, and maybe longer. This information can be used when counseling women at the time of initiation as well as at the end of the FDA approval window. If the patient is satisfied with the method at the end of the FDA approval window and would like to continue using it, evidence indicates that it still provides contraception as noted above. If she would like to have it removed, this should be honored.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Outside of clinic hours, seek physician or emergency care if warning signs develop.

2. Re-examine and evaluate the patient as indicated. See table below.

3. If evidence of pelvic inflammatory disease, see Nurse Protocol for Pelvic Inflammatory Disease. IUD removal is not necessary unless no improvement after 2-3 days of antibiotic treatment. **http://dph.georgia.gov/nurse-protocols**

4. If pregnancy occurs, counsel patient that IUD should be removed at time of diagnosis whether pregnancy is continued or terminated.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. **Concern for anatomical abnormalities**
2. Difficult IUD insertion or removal.
3. Suspected uterine or ectopic pregnancy.
4. To MD for IUD removal if pregnant.
5. Other complications related to IUD use.
6. Presence of actinomyces on Pap smear report with evidence of pelvic infection.

How to Be Reasonably Certain That a Woman is Not Pregnant

A health-care provider can be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant if she has no symptoms or signs of pregnancy and meets any one of the following criteria:

- is ≤7 days after the start of normal menses
- has not had sexual intercourse since the start of last normal menses
- has been correctly and consistently using a reliable method of contraception
- is ≤7 days after spontaneous or induced abortion
- is within 4 weeks postpartum
- is fully or nearly fully breastfeeding (exclusively breastfeeding or the vast majority [≥85%] of feeds are breastfeeds), amenorrheic, and <6 months postpartum

In situations in which the health-care provider is uncertain whether the woman might be pregnant, the benefits of starting the implant, depot medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA), combined hormonal contraceptives and progestin-only pills likely exceed any risk; therefore, starting the method should be considered at any time, with a follow-up pregnancy test in 2-4 weeks. For IUD insertion, in situations in which the health-care provider is not reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant, the woman should be provided with another contraceptive method to use until the health-care provider can be reasonably certain that she is not pregnant and can insert the IUD.

When to Start Using Specific Contraceptive Methods

Contraceptive method	When to start (if the provider is reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant)	Additional contraception (i.e., back up) needed	Examinations or tests needed before initiation[1]
Copper-containing IUD	Anytime	Not needed	Bimanual examination and cervical inspection[2]
Levonorgestrel-releasing IUD	Anytime	If >7 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	Bimanual examination and cervical inspection[2]
Implant	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	None
Injectable	Anytime	If >7 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	None
Combined hormonal contraceptive	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	Blood pressure measurement
Progestin-only pill	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 2 days.	None

Abbreviations: BMI = body mass index; IUD = intrauterine device; STD = sexually transmitted disease; U.S. MEC = U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use

[1] Weight (BMI) measurement is not needed to determine medical eligibility for any methods of contraception because all methods can be used (U.S. MEC 1) or generally can be used (U.S. MEC 2) among obese women. However, measuring weight and calculating BMI (weight [kg]/height [m^2] at baseline might be helpful for monitoring any changes and counseling women who might be concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.

[2] Most women do not require additional STD screening at the time of IUD insertion. If a woman with risk factors for STDs has not been screened for gonorrhea and chlamydia according to CDC's STD Treatment Guidelines (http://www.cdc.gov/std/treatment), screening can be performed at the time of IUD insertion, and insertion should not be delayed. Women with current purulent cervicitis or chlamydial infection or gonococcal infection should not undergo IUD insertion (U.S. MEC 4).

Source: For full recommendations and updates, see the U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use webpage at http://www.cdc.gov/reproductivehealth/unintendedpregnancy/usspr.htm.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion

TABLE D1. Routine follow-up after contraceptive initiation

Action	Contraceptive method				
	Cu-IUD or LNG-IUD	Implant	Injectable	CHC	POP
General follow-up					
Advise women to return at any time to discuss side effects or other problems or if they want to change the method. Advise women using IUDs, implants, or injectables when the IUD or implant needs to be removed or when a reinjection is needed. No routine follow-up visit is required.	X	X	X	X	X
Other routine visits					
Assess the woman's satisfaction with her current method and whether she has any concerns about method use.	X	X	X	X	X
Assess any changes in health status, including medications, that would change the method's appropriateness for safe and effective continued use based on U.S. MEC (i.e., category 3 and 4 conditions and characteristics) (Box 1).	X	X	X	X	X
Consider performing an examination to check for the presence of IUD strings.	X	—	—	—	—
Consider assessing weight changes and counseling women who are concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.	X	X	X	X	X
Measure blood pressure.	—	—	—	X	—

Abbreviations: CHC = combined hormonal contraceptives; Cu-IUD = copper-containing intrauterine device; HIV = human immunodeficiency virus; IUD = intrauterine device; LNG-IUD = levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine device; POP = progestin-only pills; U.S. MEC = *U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use*.

REFERENCES

1. **Robert Hatcher et al., *Contraceptive Technology,* 21st ed., Ardent Media, Inc., New York, 2018. (Current)**

2. Joellen Hawkins et al., *Protocols for Nurse Practitioners in Gynecologic Settings,* 11th ed., Springer Publishing Co., New York, 2015.

3. **M. Zieman, R.A. Hatcher. *Managing Contraception, 14th ed., Ardent Media Inc.,* New York, 2017**

4. CDC, U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 2016, MMWR 2016; 65: 3 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6503.pdf

5. CDC, U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use, 2016. MMWR 2016; 65:4 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6504.pdf

6. **GA DPH, Nurse Protocols for STD, Nurse Protocols for Registered Professional Nurses in Public Health, 2018. http://dph.georgia.gov/nurse-protocols**

7. **Food and Drug Administration. ParaGard T 380A Intrauterine Copper Contraceptive. https://www.accessdata.fda.gov/drugsatfda_docs/label/2005/018680s060lbl.pdf. Published April 26, 2019. Accessed April 26, 2019.**

STANDARD APRN PROTOCOL FOR IUD INSERTION: Levonorgestrel (LNG) Releasing Intrauterine System®

DEFINITION

The LNG-releasing intrauterine systems (Mirena®, Liletta®, Skyla® and Kyleena) are available in the United States. The LNG-releasing system consists of a small T-shaped frame with a steroid reservoir that contains levonorgestrel, a potent progestin found in many combination oral contraceptives, progestin-only pills, and implants.

The LNG intrauterine system releases a low dose of LNG into the uterine cavity, a system similar to that of LNG implants or LNG-containing mini-pills. As with these methods, thickening the cervical mucus and inhibition of ovulation, sperm motility and function are considered the primary means of preventing pregnancy. A weak foreign-body effect is also noted which could decrease implantation. Unlike the copper IUD, the LNG IUD is not approved for use as emergency contraception.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Desires an IUD for long-term contraception.

2. Has detailed health history (includes menstrual, sexual, contraception, personal health and family history) that does not reveal a condition representing an unacceptable health risk according to the product prescribing information and to the *CDC Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use.* Conditions that present an unacceptable health risk for use of the LNG IUD include:

    a. Currently pregnant
    b. Unexplained vaginal bleeding, suspicious for serious underlying condition, before evaluation.
    c. Postpartum sepsis.
    d. Immediately post septic abortion.
    e. Current PID or within the past 3 months.
    f. Current purulent cervicitis or chlamydial or gonorrhea infection
    g. Uterine anomalies that distort the endometrial cavity.
    h. Cervical or endometrial cancer waiting to be treated.
    i. Gestational trophoblastic disease with persistently elevated β-hcg levels or malignant disease with evidence or suspicion of intrauterine disease.
    j. Lupus with positive or unknown antiphospholipid antibodies.
    k. Breast cancer.
    l. Cirrhosis – severe (decompensated).
    m. Liver Tumors – benign hepatocellular adenoma; malignant (hepatoma).

n. Pelvic tuberculosis.
o. Complicated solid organ transplantation: graft failure (acute or chronic), rejection, cardiac allograft vasculopathy.

3. Refer to CDC *Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use* for medical conditions that represent an unacceptable health risk if they develop while using the LNG-releasing intrauterine system. Women with these conditions may initiate the implant. However, if women who did not have these conditions at the time of initiation develop these conditions after using the implant, the implant should not be continued. Medical conditions include:

   a. Ischemic heart disease.

4. May desire lighter periods or no periods at all.

OBJECTIVE

1. Physical examination and laboratory tests as indicated. See protocol for Preventive Care and Health Screening.

2. Pelvic exam must be completed.

3. No pelvic exam findings that are contraindications to placement at the time of insertion.

4. Determine if reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant (see Initiation of Contraception Protocol).

ASSESSMENT

Patient has no condition representing an unacceptable risk if using a LNG IUD. Not allergic to any component of the IUD.

3. **PLAN**

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

1. Negative pregnancy test at the time of insertion.

2. Laboratory tests:

   a. Negative gonorrhea and chlamydia tests, if indicated. Tests may be performed on the day of placement, and the woman can return for treatment (if necessary). Clarification on this comes from the CDC's Selected Practice Recommendations. Most women do not require additional STD screening at the time of IUD insertion if they have already been screened according to STD Program's current Screening Criteria for Chlamydia and Gonorrhea.

b. If a woman has not been screened according to guidelines, screening can be performed at the time of IUD insertion, and insertion should not be delayed.

c. Women with purulent cervicitis or current chlamydial infection or gonorrhea should not undergo IUD insertion (U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria 4).

d. Wet mount, if indicated.

NOTE: Trichomonas, yeast and BV are not contraindications to IUD placement. Clinicians may diagnose, treat, and place an IUD on the same day.

THERAPEUTIC

PHARMACOLOGIC

NOTE: Hazardous agent; use appropriate precautions for handling and disposal which can be found at: https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html

NOTE: Before insertion, the patient must read and sign the program's method specific consent form.

1. May encourage an over-the-counter (OTC) non-steroidal anti-inflammatory agent 30-60 minutes before the procedure to reduce discomfort.

3. Insert LNG IUD per manufacturer's directions.

4. If a provider can be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant, any contraceptive, including an LNG IUD may be initiated on that day.

   a. This includes women who were not on a contraceptive method. If not inserted during the first 7 days of the menstrual cycle, a barrier method should be used for 7 days.

b. This also includes women who have been consistently and correctly using another method of contraception (CHC, injection, POP, IUD). If inserted during active use of the

previous method, continue the previous method for 7 days when possible.

c. Insert on the same day that removal of an implant or other IUD occurs.

5. In situations where a provider cannot be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant, the woman should be provided an alternate method of contraceptive and should return for IUD placement when the provider can be reasonably certain she is not pregnant. If she does not desire a bridge hormonal method, she can be rescheduled to return within 5 days of the start of her next menses.

6. After childbirth: May be inserted immediately following delivery of the placenta or within 7 days following a spontaneous induced abortion; do not insert if puerperal sepsis or septic abortion is present. If IUD had not been placed immediately postpartum and patient desires an IUD postpartum for contraception, wait a minimum of 6 weeks after delivery or until the uterus is fully involuted and pregnancy is ruled out.

7. If lactating, there appears to be an increased risk of perforation.

8. Mirena® releases 20mcg per day initially then declines; is approved for use for 5 years.

9. Skyla® releases 14mcg per day initially then declines; is approved for use for 3 years.

10. Liletta® releases 18.6mcg per day initially then declines; is approved **for 6** years.

11. Kyleena® releases 17.5 mcg per day initially and then declines; is approved for use for 5 years.

11. The provider should complete the IUD Insertion Procedure Note as indicated**.**

NON-PHARMACOLOGIC MEASURES

1. Take precautions to avert a vasovagal reaction (syncope/ fainting) caused by uterine manipulation and sounding. After IUD insertion, allow the patient to lie still for at least 30 seconds. Ask about pain or cramping. If the patient says she feels okay, have her sit up

   slowly while being supported. If no problems in 30 seconds, allow her to stand.

2. Treat signs of vasovagal reaction (pallor/cyanosis, pinched-face look, dilated pupils, weak and rapid pulse, rapid shallow breathing, hypotension) according to Emergency Guidelines, Policies, Procedures and Protocols.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Counsel patient according to seven basic elements of informed consent (BRAIDED – Benefits Risks Alternatives Inquiries Decision Explanation Documentation).

2. Discuss checking for IUD strings.

   a. The IUD can be expelled without being noticed, and the package insert suggests that women check for the strings monthly. However, checking for the strings has not been shown to add to optimal use of the IUD. If a patient feels reassured by checking the strings, she may do so. However, she should not be instructed that this practice is necessary.

   b. If the patient does check for her strings routinely and cannot feel the strings, or if the plastic part is felt, use another method of contraception and return to the clinic.

   c. Women who had an IUD placed immediately postpartum may require a string trim when they present for postpartum follow-up.

   d. Most likely cause of IUD failure is expulsion with risk highest during the first year, particularly within the first 3 months after insertion.

3. Review warning signs and symptoms of possible problem: abdominal pain, vaginal discharge, pain with intercourse, missing string, pregnancy symptoms, heavy bleeding.

4. There is a small increased risk of PID, which is most likely to occur within the first 2-3 weeks after insertion. Patient should be instructed to return for signs and symptoms of infection.

5. Discuss common side effects:

    a. 1 to 4 months: may have frequent spotting.

    b. After 3- 6 months: reduced duration and amount of bleeding.

    c. Overall 90% reduction in menstrual bleeding.

    d. After 12 months, about 20% of women have no bleeding.

    e. The patient should keep a menstrual record and report a sudden change in menses or suspected pregnancy immediately.

    f. The Mirena system is the only one approved by FDA to reduce dysmenorrhea and leads to a significant reduction in the amount and length of bleeding. It is reasonable to believe that the other LNG IUDs would also result in improvements in dysmenorrhea and heavy bleeding.

    g. As with other progestin-only methods, persistent ovarian follicles can occur. They do not require treatment or removal of the LNG system, and they usually resolve spontaneously. However, regular follow-up by ultrasound is recommended until cysts disappear.

    h. Give patient copy of LNG system post-insertion instructions.

6. Take over-the-counter ibuprofen or naproxen sodium (follow package directions) if needed for discomfort.

7. Should strongly consider adding condoms for STD protection if patient is at risk for STDs (multiple partners, partner with multiple partners).

8. Provide counseling on preconception health counseling and future fertility.

9. Use condoms to reduce the risk of STD, including HIV.

10. The Mirena IUD is approved for use for 5 years **and the Liletta IUD is** approved for use for **6** years. However, clinical data demonstrates **their** effectiveness for up to 7 years. This information can be used when counseling women at the time of initiation as well as at the end of the FDA approval window. If the patient is satisfied with the method at the end of the FDA approval window and would like to continue using it, evidence indicates that it still provides contraception as noted above. If she would like to have it removed, this should be honored.

11. Some drugs or herbal products may decrease the serum concentration of LNG, please advise to check with a health care professional for potential interactions.

FOLLOW-UP

1. Outside of clinic hours, seek physician or emergency care if warning signs develop.

2. Re-examine and evaluate as indicated. See table below.

3. If evidence of pelvic inflammatory disease, see Nurse Protocol for Pelvic Inflammatory Disease (PID). IUD removal is not necessary unless no improvement after 2-3 days of antibiotic treatment. **http://dph.georgia.gov/nurse-protocols**

4. If pregnancy occurs, counsel patient that IUD should be removed at time of diagnosis whether pregnancy is continued or she chooses to terminate.

5. After the IUD has been in for the FDA-approved length of time, check with manufacturer regarding possible approval for a longer time.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Concern for anatomical abnormalities

2. Difficult IUD insertion or removal.

3. Suspected uterine or ectopic pregnancy.

4. To MD for IUD removal if pregnant.

5. Other complications related to IUD use.

6. Presence of actinomyces on Pap smear report with evidence of pelvic infection.

How to Be Reasonably Certain That a Woman is Not Pregnant

A health-care provider can be reasonably certain that a woman is not pregnant if she has no symptoms or signs of pregnancy and meets any one of the following criteria:

- is ≤7 days after the start of normal menses
- has not had sexual intercourse since the start of last normal menses
- has been correctly and consistently using a reliable method of contraception
- is ≤7 days after spontaneous or induced abortion
- is within 4 weeks postpartum
- is fully or nearly fully breastfeeding (exclusively breastfeeding or the vast majority [≥85%] of feeds are breastfeeds), amenorrheic, and <6 months postpartum

In situations in which the health-care provider is uncertain whether the woman might be pregnant, the benefits of starting the implant, depot medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA), combined hormonal contraceptives and progestin-only pills likely exceed any risk; therefore, starting the method should be considered at any time, with a follow-up pregnancy test in 2-4 weeks. For IUD insertion, in situations in which the health-care provider is not reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant, the woman should be provided with another contraceptive method to use until the health-care provider can be reasonably certain that she is not pregnant and can insert the IUD.

When to Start Using Specific Contraceptive Methods

Contraceptive method	When to start (if the provider is reasonably certain that the woman is not pregnant)	Additional contraception (i.e., back up) needed	Examinations or tests needed before initiation[1]
Copper-containing IUD	Anytime	Not needed	Bimanual examination and cervical inspection[2]
Levonorgestrel-releasing IUD	Anytime	If >7 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	Bimanual examination and cervical inspection[2]
Implant	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	None
Injectable	Anytime	If >7 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	None
Combined hormonal contraceptive	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 7 days.	Blood pressure measurement
Progestin-only pill	Anytime	If >5 days after menses started, use back-up method or abstain for 2 days.	None

Abbreviations: BMI = body mass index; IUD = intrauterine device; STD = sexually transmitted disease; U.S. MEC = U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use

[1] Weight (BMI) measurement is not needed to determine medical eligibility for any methods of contraception because all methods can be used (U.S. MEC 1) or generally can be used (U.S. MEC 2) among obese women. However, measuring weight and calculating BMI (weight [kg]/height [m²]) at baseline might be helpful for monitoring any changes and counseling women who might be concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.

[2] Most women do not require additional STD screening at the time of IUD insertion. If a woman with risk factors for STDs has not been screened for gonorrhea and chlamydia according to CDC's STD Treatment Guidelines (http://www.cdc.gov/std/treatment), screening can be performed at the time of IUD insertion, and insertion should not be delayed. Women with current purulent cervicitis or chlamydial infection or gonococcal infection should not undergo IUD insertion (U.S. MEC 4).

Source: For full recommendations and updates, see the U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use webpage at http://www.cdc.gov/reproductivehealth/unintendedpregnancy/usspr.htm.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion

TABLE D1. Routine follow-up after contraceptive initiation

Action	Contraceptive method				
	Cu-IUD or LNG-IUD	Implant	Injectable	CHC	POP
General follow-up					
Advise women to return at any time to discuss side effects or other problems or if they want to change the method. Advise women using IUDs, implants, or injectables when the IUD or implant needs to be removed or when a reinjection is needed. No routine follow-up visit is required.	X	X	X	X	X
Other routine visits					
Assess the woman's satisfaction with her current method and whether she has any concerns about method use.	X	X	X	X	X
Assess any changes in health status, including medications, that would change the method's appropriateness for safe and effective continued use based on U.S. MEC (i.e., category 3 and 4 conditions and characteristics) (Box 1).	X	X	X	X	X
Consider performing an examination to check for the presence of IUD strings.	X	—	—	—	—
Consider assessing weight changes and counseling women who are concerned about weight change perceived to be associated with their contraceptive method.	X	X	X	X	X
Measure blood pressure.	—	—	—	X	—

Abbreviations: CHC = combined hormonal contraceptives; Cu-IUD = copper-containing intrauterine device; HIV = human immunodeficiency virus; IUD = intrauterine device; LNG-IUD = levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine device; POP = progestin-only pills; U.S. MEC = *U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use*.

REFERENCES

1. **Robert Hatcher et al., *Contraceptive Technology,* 21st ed., Ardent Media Inc., New York, 2018. (Current)**

2. Joellen Hawkins et al., *Protocols for Nurse Practitioners in Gynecologic Settings,* 11th ed., Springer Publishing Co., New York, 2015.

3. **M. Zieman, R.A. Hatcher. *Managing Contraception, 14th ed., Ardent Media Inc.,* New York, 2017.**

4. CDC, U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 2016, MMWR 2016; 65: 3 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6503.pdf

5. CDC, U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use, 2016. MMWR 2016; 65:4 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6504.pdf

6. **GA DPH, Nurse Protocols for STD, Nurse Protocols for Registered Professional Nurses in Public Health, 2018. http://dph.georgia.gov/nurse-protocols**

7. US Department of Health and Human Services; Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. NIOSH list of antineoplastic and other hazardous drugs in healthcare settings, 2016. Available at https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html Updated September 2016. Accessed November 8, 2016.

8. McNicholas C, Swor E, Wan L, et al. Prolonged use of the etonogestrel implant and levonorgestrel intrauterine device: 2 years beyond Food and Drug Administration - approved duration. Am J Obstet Gynecol 2017; 216:586.e1-6. http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.ajog.2017.01.036

9. **Allergan and Medicines 360. FDA Approves Liletta IUD for 6 Years of Contraceptive Use. Liletta Package insert. https://media.allergan.com/actavis/actavis/media/allergan-pdf-documents/product-prescribing/liletta_shi_pi.pdf Accessed October 31, 2019.**

10. **Wolters Kluwer. Intrauterine Device Comparison Table. Facts & Comparisons® eAnswers. http://online.factsandcomparisons.com/. Published February 8, 2019. Accessed April 26, 2019.**

STANDARD APRN PROTOCOL FOR LOST IUD STRINGS

DEFINITION Inability to visibly locate IUD (intrauterine device) strings or inability to feel the IUD strings.

ETIOLOGY Lost IUD strings may be the result of expulsion of the IUD, retraction of the strings into the uterine cavity, perforation of the IUD through the cervix or uterine wall, or use of an IUD (from another country) that never had a string attached. In some rare instances, clinicians have intentionally cut strings off or cut the strings short.

SUBJECTIVE Patient may report that she cannot feel IUD strings on self-exam.

OBJECTIVE No IUD strings visible upon careful examination of the vagina and cervical opening, and inability to feel the strings.

ASSESSMENT IUD strings not visible.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

Sensitive urine pregnancy test (HCG).

THERAPEUTIC

1. If pregnancy test is positive, immediately refer patient to physician.

2. If pregnancy is ruled out by HCG and exam:

   a. Prepare cervix os with insertion using **betadine or other antiseptic**.

   b. If the patient is not pregnant and the strings are not visible, attempt to retrieve the IUD string using cytobrush, curved forceps, alligator forceps, or IUD retriever. Use tenaculum if necessary to steady the cervix

1) If unsuccessful in locating strings:

   a. Refer for pelvic ultrasound or if necessary, abdominal x-rays. Advise alternative method of contraception while trying to locate IUD.

   b. If the IUD is identified as properly positioned in the uterus, no action is necessary; reassure the patient**.**

c. If ultrasound identifies the IUD, but unable to identify in uterus, refer to MD.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

Advise the patient to use another method of contraception **until the IUD is confirmed to be located inside the uterus.**

FOLLOW-UP

Return to clinic as needed for contraception or preventive care.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

1. Immediately refer patient to physician if pregnancy test is positive.

2. Consult with a physician for any questions regarding management (see APRN Protocol for IUD Removal/Complications and Actions).

REFERENCES

1. **Robert Hatcher et al., *Contraceptive Technology,* 21st ed., Ardent Media, Inc., New York, 2018. (Current)**

2. Joellen Hawkins et al., *Protocols for Nurse Practitioners in Gynecologic Settings,* 11th ed., Springer Publishing Co., New York, 2015.

3. **M. Zieman, R.A. Hatcher. *Managing Contraception, 14th ed., Ardent Media Inc.,* New York, 2017.**

STANDARD APRN PROTOCOL FOR IUD REMOVAL and IUD COMPLICATIONS AND ACTIONS

DEFINITION Removal of an IUD by the clinician at the patient's request, due to clinical findings such as pregnancy or partial expulsion, or per recommended time frame for the device. It is important to comply with a woman's wishes if she wants to have her IUD removed.

SUBJECTIVE

1. Patient may request IUD removal for any reason.

2. Patient may report a condition that precludes IUD use, such as suspected or confirmed pregnancy or partial expulsion.

4. Patient may complain of dysmenorrhea, dyspareunia, menorrhagia, aching, abdominal pains, and tenderness on ambulation, malaise, and chills/fever.

5. History of use of the IUD use past its length of contraceptive effect.

OBJECTIVE May have findings on pelvic exam or laboratory tests that require IUD removal such as: partial expulsion, enlargement of uterus, positive pregnancy test, other pelvic infection/disease.

ASSESSMENT Indications for removal of IUD.

PLAN

DIAGNOSTIC STUDIES

If indicated:

1. Sensitive urine pregnancy test.

2. Wet mount.

3. Gonorrhea and chlamydia tests.

THERAPEUTIC (by APRN or MD)

NOTE: Hazardous agent; use appropriate precautions for handling and disposal which can be found at:
https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html

NOTE: Easier removal may be possible at the time of menses or at midcycle.

1. If patient is not pregnant, remove IUD slowly, applying gentle, steady traction to string with sponge forceps.

2. If patient is not pregnant and the IUD cannot be removed with gentle traction, use a tenaculum to steady the cervix and straighten the anteversion or retroversion.

3. If the patient is not pregnant and the strings are not visible, attempt to retrieve the IUD string using cytobrush, curved forceps, alligator forceps, or IUD retriever. Use tenaculum if necessary to steady the cervix.

4. If patient is pregnant, patient should be counseled that removal is recommended. Removal is associated with a slight risk of pregnancy loss at the time of removal, but the risk of infection, miscarriage and preterm birth are more serious if left in situ. After counseling, refer patient to physician for removal of IUD.

PATIENT EDUCATION/COUNSELING

1. Choose any method if the patient does not desire pregnancy.

2. If the patient is seeking pregnancy, return to fertility is rapid. Initiate folic acid supplementation.

3. There are no known major long-term side effects after removal of an IUD.

4. Provide counseling on preconception health counseling and future fertility.

FOLLOW-UP

Return to clinic as needed, for contraception or preventive care.

CONSULTATION/REFERRAL

Refer or consult with physician if:

1. Difficult/failed removal.

2. Patient pregnant.

3. Unable to visualize and/or probe for strings.

TABLE OF IUD COMPLICATIONS AND ACTIONS

Condition	Action
Pain from tenaculum application to the cervix.	**May consider application of topical anesthetic if available such as Lidocaine gel**
Persistently bleeding tenaculum sites	**Apply steady pressure with cotton swab** **May apply hemostatic agent (ex. Monsel's solution or silver nitrate) if pressure alone is unsuccessful**
Pain with sounding of the uterus during insertion.	Sound slowly and gently; consider smaller sound or os finder. If severe, check alignment of uterine cavity. **Refer to MD.**
Cramping/pain with each menses	**See Nurse Protocol IUD - Related Dysmenorrhea.**
Partial expulsion of an IUD	Removal of IUD, pregnancy test as needed
Increasing abdominal pain immediately and shortly after insertion	**Evaluate for infection and perforation.**
Actinomyces-like organisms on pap smear.	If no evidence of pelvic infection, no action is needed. Counsel patient that any signs of infection (pain, foul discharge, fever) warrant an evaluation.
Pelvic inflammatory disease.	See Nurse Protocol for Pelvic Inflammatory Disease. **http://dph.georgia.gov/nurse-protocols**
Pregnancy	**Refer to MD**
Ectopic pregnancy or spontaneous abortion	**Refer to MD**

REFERENCES

1. Robert Hatcher et al., *Contraceptive Technology,* 21st ed., Ardent Media, Inc., New York, 2018. (Current)

2. Joellen Hawkins et al., *Protocols for Nurse Practitioners in Gynecologic Settings,* 11th ed., Springer Publishing Co., New York, 2015.

3. **M. Zieman, R.A. Hatcher. *Managing Contraception, 14th ed., Ardent Media Inc.,* New York, 2017**

4. CDC, U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 2016, MMWR 2016; 65: 3 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6503.pdf

5. CDC, U.S. Selected Practice Recommendations for Contraceptive Use, 2016. MMWR 2016; 65:4 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/65/rr/pdfs/rr6504.pdf

6. US Department of Health and Human Services; Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. NIOSH list of antineoplastic and other hazardous drugs in healthcare settings, 2016. Available at https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2016-161/default.html. Updated September 2016. Accessed November 8, 2016.

APPENDIX A: CONTRACEPTIVES

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Women's Health Products

Category	Brand Name	Label Name	Generic Name	Estrogen	mcg	Progestin	mg	NDC	Cycle Count	Manufacturer Name
Monophasic LoDose										
Monophasic LoDose	VIENVA	VIENVA-28 TABLET	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20	levonorgestrel	0.1	70700011885	28	XIROMED/PERRIGO
Monophasic LoDose	FALMINA	FALMINA-28 TABLET	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20	levonorgestrel	0.1	16714035904	28	NORTHSTAR RX LL
Monophasic LoDose	FALMINA	FALMINA-28 TABLET	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20	levonorgestrel	0.1	16714035903	28	NORTHSTAR RX LL
Monophasic LoDose	LARISSIA	LARISSIA-28 TABLET	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20	levonorgestrel	0.1	69238153106	28	AMNEAL PHARMACE
Monophasic LoDose	LEVONORGESTREL-ETH ESTRADIOL	LEVONOR-ETH ESTRAD 0.1-0.02 MG	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20	levonorgestrel	0.1	68180085413	28	LUPIN PHARMACEU
Monophasic LoDose	LEVONORGESTREL-ETH ESTRADIOL	LEVONOR-ETH ESTRAD 0.1-0.02 MG	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20	levonorgestrel	0.1	00378728753	28	MYLAN
Monophasic LoDose	SRONYX	SRONYX 0.10-0.02 MG TABLET	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20	levonorgestrel	0.1	51862054506	28	MAYNE PHARMA IN
Monophasic LoDose	AVIANE	AVIANE-28 TABLET	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20	levonorgestrel	0.1	00555904558	28	TEVA USA
Monophasic LoDose	ORSYTHIA	ORSYTHIA-28 TABLET	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20	levonorgestrel	0.1	00603763449	28	QUALITEST/PAR P
Monophasic LoDose	LESSINA	LESSINA-28 TABLET	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20	levonorgestrel	0.1	00555901467	28	TEVA USA
Monophasic LoDose	AUBRA	AUBRA-28 TABLET	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20	levonorgestrel	0.1	50102012048	28	AFAXYS, INC.
Monophasic LoDose	AUBRA EQ	AUBRA EQ-28 TABLET	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20	levonorgestrel	0.1	50102022023	28	AFAXYS, INC.
Monophasic LoDose	ORSYTHIA	ORSYTHIA-28 TABLET	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20	levonorgestrel	0.1	00254203273	28	PAR PHARM.
Monophasic LoDose	ORSYTHIA	ORSYTHIA-28 TABLET	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20	levonorgestrel	0.1	00254203280	28	PAR PHARM.
Monophasic LoDose	AFIRMELLE	AFIRMELLE-28 TABLET	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20	levonorgestrel	0.1	65862084988	28	AUROBINDO PHARM
Monophasic LoDose	LUTERA	LUTERA-28 TABLET	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20	levonorgestrel	0.1	51862002806	28	MAYNE PHARMA IN
Monophasic LoDose	LEVONORGESTREL-ETH ESTRADIOL	LEVONOR-ETH ESTRAD 0.1-0.02 MG	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20	levonorgestrel	0.1	00378728753	28	MYLAN
Monophasic LoDose	LARIN	LARIN 21 1-20 TABLET	norethindrone ac-eth estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20	levonorgestrel	0.1	16714040803	21	NORTHSTAR RX LL
Monophasic LoDose	NORETHINDRON-ETHINYL ESTRADIOL	NORETHIND-ETH ESTRAD 1-0.02 MG	norethindrone ac-eth estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20	levonorgestrel	0.1	68462013281	21	GLENMARK PHARMA
Monophasic LoDose	LARIN FE	LARIN FE 1-20 TABLET	norethindrone-e.estradiol-iron	ethinyl estradiol	20	levonorgestrel	0.1	16714040604	28	NORTHSTAR RX LL
Monophasic LoDose	MICROGESTIN	MICROGESTIN 21 1-20 TABLET	norethindrone ac-eth estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20	norethindrone acetate	1	51862000706	21	MAYNE PHARMA IN
Monophasic LoDose	AUROVELA	AUROVELA 1 MG-20 MCG TABLET	norethindrone ac-eth estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20	norethindrone acetate	1	65862093988	21	AUROBINDO PHARM
Monophasic LoDose	NORETHINDRON-ETHINYL ESTRADIOL	NORETHIND-ETH ESTRAD 1-0.02 MG	norethindrone ac-eth estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20	norethindrone acetate	1	00378728053	21	MYLAN
Monophasic LoDose	LOESTRIN	LOESTRIN 21 1-20 TABLET	norethindrone ac-eth estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20	norethindrone acetate	1	51285013197	21	TEVA WOMEN'S HE
Monophasic LoDose	BLISOVI FE	BLISOVI FE 1-20 TABLET	norethindrone-e.estradiol-iron	ethinyl estradiol	20	norethindrone acetate	1	68180086513	28	LUPIN PHARMACEU
Monophasic LoDose	BLISOVI FE	BLISOVI FE 1-20 TABLET	norethindrone-e.estradiol-iron	ethinyl estradiol	20	norethindrone acetate	1	68180086511	28	LUPIN PHARMACEU
Monophasic LoDose	BLISOVI 24 FE	BLISOVI 24 FE TABLET	norethindrone-e.estradiol-iron	ethinyl estradiol	20	norethindrone acetate	1	68180086413	28	LUPIN PHARMACEU
Monophasic LoDose	JUNEL FE	JUNEL FE 1 MG-20 MCG TABLET	norethindrone-e.estradiol-iron	ethinyl estradiol	20	norethindrone acetate	1	00555902658	28	TEVA USA
Monophasic LoDose	NORETHIN-ETH ESTRA-FERROUS FUM	NORETH-ESTRAD-FE 1-0.02(24)-75	norethindrone-e.estradiol-iron	ethinyl estradiol	20	norethindrone acetate	1	68462037629	28	GLENMARK PHARMA
Monophasic LoDose	AUROVELA 24 FE	AUROVELA 24 FE 1 MG-20 MCG TAB	norethindrone-e.estradiol-iron	ethinyl estradiol	20	norethindrone acetate	1	65862093488	28	AUROBINDO PHARM
Monophasic LoDose	AUROVELA FE	AUROVELA FE 1-20 TABLET	norethindrone-e.estradiol-iron	ethinyl estradiol	20	norethindrone acetate	1	65862094088	28	AUROBINDO PHARM
Monophasic LoDose	TAYTULLA	TAYTULLA 1 MG-20 MCG CAPSULE	norethindrone-e.estradiol-iron	ethinyl estradiol	20	norethindrone acetate	1	00023586230	28	ALLERGAN INC.
Monophasic LoDose	NORETHIN-ETH ESTRA-FERROUS FUM	NORETH-ESTRAD-FE 1-0.02(24)-75	norethindrone-e.estradiol-iron	ethinyl estradiol	20	norethindrone acetate	1	00378730153	28	MYLAN
Monophasic LoDose	JUNEL FE 24	JUNEL FE 24 TABLET	norethindrone-e.estradiol-iron	ethinyl estradiol	20	norethindrone acetate	1	00093532862	28	TEVA USA
Monophasic LoDose	LOESTRIN FE	LOESTRIN FE 1-20 TABLET	norethindrone-e.estradiol-iron	ethinyl estradiol	20	norethindrone acetate	1	51285012570	28	TEVA WOMEN'S HE
Monophasic LoDose	MICROGESTIN FE	MICROGESTIN FE 1-20 TABLET	norethindrone-e.estradiol-iron	ethinyl estradiol	20	norethindrone acetate	1	51862001206	28	MAYNE PHARMA IN
Monophasic LoDose	TARINA FE 1-20 EQ	TARINA FE 1-20 EQ TABLET	norethindrone-e.estradiol-iron	ethinyl estradiol	20	norethindrone acetate	1	50102022823	28	AFAXYS, INC.
Monophasic LoDose	NORETHIN-ETH ESTRA-FERROUS FUM	NORETH-ESTRAD-FE 1-0.02(24)-75	norethindrone-e.estradiol-iron	ethinyl estradiol	20	norethindrone acetate	1	52544005872	28	ACTAVIS/TEVA
Monophasic LoDose	NORETHIN-ETH ESTRA-FERROUS FUM	NORETH-ESTRAD-FE 1-0.02(21)-75	norethindrone-e.estradiol-iron	ethinyl estradiol	20	norethindrone acetate	1	00378728353	28	MYLAN
Monophasic LoDose	LARIN 24 FE	LARIN 24 FE 1 MG-20 MCG TABLET	norethindrone-e.estradiol-iron	ethinyl estradiol	20	norethindrone acetate	1	16714041603	28	NORTHSTAR RX LL
Monophasic LoDose	TARINA 24 FE	TARINA 24 FE 1 MG-20 MCG TAB	norethindrone-e.estradiol-iron	ethinyl estradiol	20	norethindrone acetate	1	50102022423	28	AFAXYS, INC.

REVISED 12/19

Monophasic LoDose	DROSPIRENONE-ETHINYL ESTRADIOL	DROSPIRENONE-EE 3-0.02 MG TAB	ethinyl estradiol/drospirenone	ethinyl estradiol	20	drospirenone	3	00378729953	28	MYLAN
Monophasic LoDose	LO-ZUMANDIMINE	LO-ZUMANDIMINE 3 MG-0.02 MG TB	ethinyl estradiol/drospirenone	ethinyl estradiol	20	drospirenone	3	59651002988	28	AUROBINDO PHARM
Monophasic LoDose	LORYNA	LORYNA 3 MG-0.02 MG TABLET	ethinyl estradiol/drospirenone	ethinyl estradiol	20	drospirenone	3	70700011485	28	XIROMED/PERRIGO
Monophasic LoDose	NIKKI	NIKKI 3 MG-0.02 MG TABLET	ethinyl estradiol/drospirenone	ethinyl estradiol	20	drospirenone	3	68180088611	28	LUPIN PHARMACEU
Monophasic LoDose	NIKKI	NIKKI 3 MG-0.02 MG TABLET	ethinyl estradiol/drospirenone	ethinyl estradiol	20	drospirenone	3	68180088613	28	LUPIN PHARMACEU
Monophasic LoDose	GIANVI	GIANVI 3 MG-0.02 MG TABLET	ethinyl estradiol/drospirenone	ethinyl estradiol	20	drospirenone	3	00093542362	28	TEVA USA
Monophasic LoDose	DROSPIRENONE-ETHINYL ESTRADIOL	DROSPIRENONE-EE 3-0.02 MG TAB	ethinyl estradiol/drospirenone	ethinyl estradiol	20	drospirenone	3	68462072029	28	GLENMARK PHARMA
Monophasic LoDose	YAZ	YAZ 28 TABLET	ethinyl estradiol/drospirenone	ethinyl estradiol	20	drospirenone	3	50419040503	28	BAYER,PHARM DIV
Monophasic LoDose	DROSPIRENONE-ETH ESTRA-LEVOMEF	DROSP-EE-LEVOMEF 3-0.02-0.451	drospir/eth estra/levomefol ca	ethinyl estradiol	20	drospirenone	3	00781407515	28	SANDOZ
Monophasic LoDose	DROSPIRENONE-ETH ESTRA-LEVOMEF	DROSP-EE-LEVOMEF 3-0.02-0.451	drospir/eth estra/levomefol ca	ethinyl estradiol	20	drospirenone	3	68180089413	28	LUPIN PHARMACEU
Monophasic LoDose	BEYAZ	BEYAZ 28 TABLET	drospir/eth estra/levomefol ca	ethinyl estradiol	20	drospirenone	3	50419040703	28	BAYER,PHARM DIV
Monophasic LoDose	DROSPIRENONE-ETHINYL ESTRADIOL	DROSPIRENONE-EE 3-0.02 MG TAB	ethinyl estradiol/drospirenone	ethinyl estradiol	20	drospirenone	3	75834011629	28	NIVAGEN PHARMAC
Monophasic LoDose	JASMIEL	JASMIEL 3 MG-0.02 MG TABLET	ethinyl estradiol/drospirenone	ethinyl estradiol	20	drospirenone	3	50102024023	28	AFAXYS, INC.
Monophasic LoDose	DROSPIRENONE-ETHINYL ESTRADIOL	DROSPIRENONE-EE 3-0.02 MG TAB	ethinyl estradiol/drospirenone	ethinyl estradiol	20	drospirenone	3	59746076343	28	JUBILANT CADIST
Monophasic LoDose Chewables										
Monophasic Chewables	MINASTRIN 24 FE	MINASTRIN 24 FE CHEWABLE TAB	norethindrone-e.estradiol-iron	ethinyl estradiol	20	norethindrone acetate	1	00430054050	28	ACTAVIS/ALLERGA
Monophasic Chewables	MIBELAS 24 FE	MIBELAS 24 FE CHEWABLE TABLET	norethindrone-e.estradiol-iron	ethinyl estradiol	20	norethindrone acetate	1	68180091113	28	LUPIN PHARMACEU
Monophasic Chewables	MELODETTA 24 FE	MELODETTA 24 FE CHEWABLE TAB	norethindrone-e.estradiol-iron	ethinyl estradiol	20	norethindrone acetate	1	69238103107	28	AMNEAL PHARMACE
Monophasic LoDose Chewables	HAILEY 24 FE	HAILEY 24 FE 1 MG-20 MCG TAB	norethindrone-e.estradiol-iron	ethinyl estradiol	20	norethindrone acetate	1	68462073129	28	GLENMARK PHARMA
Monophasic LoDose Chewables	NORETHIN-ETH ESTRA-FERROUS FUM	NORETHIN-ESTRA-FE 0.8-0.025 MG	noreth-ethinyl estradiol/iron	ethinyl estradiol	25	norethindrone acetate	0.8	00378730853	28	MYLAN
Monophasic LoDose Chewables	GENERESS FE	GENERESS FE CHEWABLE TABLET	noreth-ethinyl estradiol/iron	ethinyl estradiol	25	norethindrone acetate	0.8	00023603003	28	ALLERGAN INC.
Monophasic LoDose Chewables	GENERESS FE	GENERESS FE CHEWABLE TABLET	noreth-ethinyl estradiol/iron	ethinyl estradiol	25	norethindrone acetate	0.8	52544020431	28	ACTAVIS/ALLERGA
Monophasic LoDose Chewables	KAITLIB FE	KAITLIB FE CHEWABLE TABLET	noreth-ethinyl estradiol/iron	ethinyl estradiol	25	norethindrone acetate	0.8	68180090313	28	LUPIN PHARMACEU
Monophasic LoDose Chewables	LAYOLIS FE	LAYOLIS FE CHEWABLE TABLET	noreth-ethinyl estradiol/iron	ethinyl estradiol	25	norethindrone acetate	0.8	52544006431	28	ACTAVIS/TEVA
Monophasic Chewables										
Monophasic Chewables	NORETHIN-ETH ESTRA-FERROUS FUM	NORET-ESTR-FE 0.4-0.035(21)-75	noreth-ethinyl estradiol/iron	ethinyl estradiol	35	norethindrone acetate	0.4	00378729753	28	MYLAN
Monophasic Chewables	WYMZYA FE	WYMZYA FE CHEWABLE TABLET	noreth-ethinyl estradiol/iron	ethinyl estradiol	35	norethindrone acetate	0.4	68180087313	28	LUPIN PHARMACEU
Monophasic										
Monophasic	PHILITH	PHILITH 0.4-0.035 MG TABLET	norethindrone-ethinyl estrad	ethinyl estradiol	35	norethindrone acetate	0.4	16714034704	28	NORTHSTAR RX LL
Monophasic	VYFEMLA	VYFEMLA 28 TABLET	norethindrone-ethinyl estrad	ethinyl estradiol	35	norethindrone acetate	0.4	68180087513	28	LUPIN PHARMACEU
Monophasic	BALZIVA	BALZIVA 28 TABLET	norethindrone-ethinyl estrad	ethinyl estradiol	35	norethindrone acetate	0.4	00555903458	28	TEVA USA
Monophasic	BRIELLYN	BRIELLYN TABLET	norethindrone-ethinyl estrad	ethinyl estradiol	35	norethindrone acetate	0.4	68462031629	28	GLENMARK PHARMA
Monophasic	NORTREL	NORTREL 0.5-35-28 TABLET	norethindrone-ethinyl estrad	ethinyl estradiol	35	norethindrone acetate	0.5	00555900867	28	TEVA USA
Monophasic	NECON	NECON 0.5-35-28 TABLET	norethindrone-ethinyl estrad	ethinyl estradiol	35	norethindrone acetate	0.5	51862031803	28	MAYNE PHARMA IN
Monophasic	WERA	WERA 0.5/0.035 MG 28 TABLET	norethindrone-ethinyl estrad	ethinyl estradiol	35	norethindrone acetate	0.5	16714037003	28	NORTHSTAR RX LL
Monophasic	ALYACEN	ALYACEN 1-35 28 TABLET	norethindrone-ethinyl estrad	ethinyl estradiol	35	norethindrone acetate	1	68462039429	28	GLENMARK PHARMA
Monophasic	CYCLAFEM	CYCLAFEM 1-35-28 TABLET	norethindrone-ethinyl estrad	ethinyl estradiol	35	norethindrone acetate	1	00603752149	28	QUALITEST/PAR P
Monophasic	CYCLAFEM	CYCLAFEM 1-35-28 TABLET	norethindrone-ethinyl estrad	ethinyl estradiol	35	norethindrone acetate	1	00603752117	28	QUALITEST/PAR P
Monophasic	PIRMELLA	PIRMELLA 1-35-28 TABLET	norethindrone-ethinyl estrad	ethinyl estradiol	35	norethindrone acetate	1	68180089313	28	LUPIN PHARMACEU
Monophasic	NORTREL	NORTREL 1-35 21 TABLET	norethindrone-ethinyl estrad	ethinyl estradiol	35	norethindrone acetate	1	00555900942	21	TEVA USA
Monophasic	DASETTA	DASETTA 1-35-28 TABLET	norethindrone-ethinyl estrad	ethinyl estradiol	35	norethindrone acetate	1	16714034804	28	NORTHSTAR RX LL
Monophasic	ORTHO-NOVUM	ORTHO-NOVUM 1-35-28 TABLET	norethindrone-ethinyl estrad	ethinyl estradiol	35	norethindrone acetate	1	50458017606	28	JANSSEN PHARM.
Monophasic	ORTHO-NOVUM	ORTHO-NOVUM 1-35-28 TABLET	norethindrone-ethinyl estrad	ethinyl estradiol	35	norethindrone acetate	1	50458017615	28	JANSSEN PHARM.
Monophasic	NORTREL	NORTREL 1-35 28 TABLET	norethindrone-ethinyl estrad	ethinyl estradiol	35	norethindrone acetate	1	00555901058	28	TEVA USA
Monophasic	JUNEL	JUNEL 1.5 MG-30 MCG TABLET	norethindrone ac-eth estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	30	norethindrone acetate	1.5	00555902742	21	TEVA USA
Monophasic	AUROVELA	AUROVELA 21 1.5-30 TABLET	norethindrone ac-eth estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	30	norethindrone acetate	1.5	65862093574	21	AUROBINDO PHARM
Monophasic	MICROGESTIN	MICROGESTIN 21 1.5-30 TAB	norethindrone ac-eth estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	30	norethindrone acetate	1.5	51862027906	21	MAYNE PHARMA IN
Monophasic	LARIN	LARIN 1.5 MG-30 MCG TABLET	norethindrone ac-eth estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	30	norethindrone acetate	1.5	16714040703	21	NORTHSTAR RX LL

REVISED 12/19

Monophasic	AUROVELA FE	AUROVELA FE 1.5 MG-30 MCG TAB	norethindrone-e.estradiol-iron	ethinyl estradiol	30	norethindrone acetate	1.5	65862094188	28	AUROBINDO PHARM
Monophasic	LARIN FE	LARIN FE 1.5-30 TABLET	norethindrone-e.estradiol-iron	ethinyl estradiol	30	norethindrone acetate	1.5	16714040504	28	NORTHSTAR RX LL
Monophasic	JUNEL FE	JUNEL FE 1.5 MG-30 MCG TABLET	norethindrone-e.estradiol-iron	ethinyl estradiol	30	norethindrone acetate	1.5	00555902858	28	TEVA USA
Monophasic	BLISOVI FE	BLISOVI FE 1.5-30 TABLET	norethindrone-e.estradiol-iron	ethinyl estradiol	30	norethindrone acetate	1.5	68180086611	28	LUPIN PHARMACEU
Monophasic	BLISOVI FE	BLISOVI FE 1.5-30 TABLET	norethindrone-e.estradiol-iron	ethinyl estradiol	30	norethindrone acetate	1.5	68180086613	28	LUPIN PHARMACEU
Monophasic	LOESTRIN FE	LOESTRIN FE 1.5-30 TABLET	norethindrone-e.estradiol-iron	ethinyl estradiol	30	norethindrone acetate	1.5	51285012870	28	TEVA WOMEN'S HE
Monophasic	LOESTRIN	LOESTRIN 21 1.5-30 TABLET	norethindrone ac-eth estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	30	norethindrone acetate	1.5	51285012797	21	TEVA WOMEN'S HE
Monophasic	SPRINTEC	SPRINTEC 28 DAY TABLET	norgestimate-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	35	norgestimate	0.25	00555901658	28	TEVA USA
Monophasic	NORGESTIMATE-ETHINYL ESTRADIOL	NORG-ETHIN ESTRA 0.25-0.035 MG	norgestimate-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	35	norgestimate	0.25	68180084013	28	LUPIN PHARMACEU
Monophasic	MILI	MILI 0.25-0.035 MG TABLET	norgestimate-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	35	norgestimate	0.25	65862077685	28	AUROBINDO PHARM
Monophasic	NORGESTIMATE-ETHINYL ESTRADIOL	NORG-ETHIN ESTRA 0.25-0.035 MG	norgestimate-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	35	norgestimate	0.25	00378728653	28	MYLAN
Monophasic	NORGESTIMATE-ETHINYL ESTRADIOL	NORG-ETHIN ESTRA 0.25-0.035 MG	norgestimate-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	35	norgestimate	0.25	17478026006	28	AKORN INC.
Monophasic	NORGESTIMATE-ETHINYL ESTRADIOL	NORG-ETHIN ESTRA 0.25-0.035 MG	norgestimate-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	35	norgestimate	0.25	68462030929	28	GLENMARK PHARMA
Monophasic	VYLIBRA	VYLIBRA 28 TABLET	norgestimate-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	35	norgestimate	0.25	50102023513	28	AFAXYS, INC.
Monophasic	ESTARYLLA	ESTARYLLA 0.25-0.035 MG TABLET	norgestimate-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	35	norgestimate	0.25	70700011985	28	XIROMED/PERRIGO
Monophasic	ESTARYLLA	ESTARYLLA 0.25-0.035 MG TABLET	norgestimate-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	35	norgestimate	0.25	00781405815	28	SANDOZ
Monophasic	ORTHO-CYCLEN	ORTHO-CYCLEN 28 TABLET	norgestimate-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	35	norgestimate	0.25	50458019706	28	JANSSEN PHARM.
Monophasic	PREVIFEM	PREVIFEM TABLET	norgestimate-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	35	norgestimate	0.25	00254202980	28	PAR PHARM.
Monophasic	FEMYNOR	FEMYNOR 28 TABLET	norgestimate-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	35	norgestimate	0.25	69238155106	28	AMNEAL PHARMACE
Monophasic	AMETHYST	AMETHYST 90-20 MCG TABLET	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20	levonorgestrel	0.09	52544029528	28	ACTAVIS/TEVA
Monophasic	LEVONORGESTREL-ETH ESTRADIOL	LEVONOR-ETH ESTRA 0.09-0.02 MG	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20	levonorgestrel	0.09	68462063729	28	GLENMARK PHARMA
Monophasic	LEVONORGESTREL-ETH ESTRADIOL	LEVONOR-ETH ESTRAD 0.15-0.03	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	30	levonorgestrel	0.15	00378655053	28	MYLAN
Monophasic	KURVELO	KURVELO TABLET	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	30	levonorgestrel	0.15	68180084411	28	LUPIN PHARMACEU
Monophasic	PORTIA	PORTIA-28 TABLET	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	30	levonorgestrel	0.15	00555902058	28	TEVA USA
Monophasic	LILLOW	LILLOW-28 TABLET	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	30	levonorgestrel	0.15	69238155406	28	AMNEAL PHARMACE
Monophasic	MARLISSA	MARLISSA-28 TABLET	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	30	levonorgestrel	0.15	68462038829	28	GLENMARK PHARMA
Monophasic	KURVELO	KURVELO TABLET	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	30	levonorgestrel	0.15	68180084413	28	LUPIN PHARMACEU
Monophasic	LEVORA-28	LEVORA-28 TABLET	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	30	levonorgestrel	0.15	51862009706	28	MAYNE PHARMA IN
Monophasic	EMOQUETTE	EMOQUETTE 28 DAY TABLET	desogestrel-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	30	desogestrel	0.15	00603754049	28	QUALITEST/PAR P
Monophasic	APRI	APRI 28 DAY TABLET	desogestrel-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	30	desogestrel	0.15	00555904358	28	TEVA USA
Monophasic	ISIBLOOM	ISIBLOOM 28 DAY TABLET	desogestrel-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	30	desogestrel	0.15	00781406615	28	SANDOZ
Monophasic	ISIBLOOM	ISIBLOOM 28 DAY TABLET	desogestrel-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	30	desogestrel	0.15	70700011385	28	XIROMED/PERRIGO
Monophasic	JULEBER	JULEBER 28 DAY TABLET	desogestrel-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	30	desogestrel	0.15	16714046404	28	NORTHSTAR RX LL
Monophasic	DESOGESTREL-ETHINYL ESTRADIOL	DESOGEST-ETH ESTRA 0.15-0.03MG	desogestrel-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	30	desogestrel	0.15	00378728253	28	MYLAN
Monophasic	CYRED EQ	CYRED EQ 28 DAY TABLET	desogestrel-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	30	desogestrel	0.15	50102025423	28	AFAXYS, INC.
Monophasic	RECLIPSEN	RECLIPSEN 28 DAY TABLET	desogestrel-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	30	desogestrel	0.15	00093330416	28	TEVA USA
Monophasic	ENSKYCE	ENSKYCE 28 TABLET	desogestrel-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	30	desogestrel	0.15	68180089113	28	LUPIN PHARMACEU
Monophasic	DROSPIRENONE-ETHINYL ESTRADIOL	DROSPIRENONE-EE 3-0.03 MG TAB	ethinyl estradiol/drospirenone	ethinyl estradiol	30	drospirenone	3	60505418303	28	APOTEX CORP
Monophasic	DROSPIRENONE-ETHINYL ESTRADIOL	DROSPIRENONE-EE 3-0.03 MG TAB	ethinyl estradiol/drospirenone	ethinyl estradiol	30	drospirenone	3	68180090213	28	LUPIN PHARMACEU
Monophasic	DROSPIRENONE-ETHINYL ESTRADIOL	DROSPIRENONE-EE 3-0.03 MG TAB	ethinyl estradiol/drospirenone	ethinyl estradiol	30	drospirenone	3	75834011529	28	NIVAGEN PHARMAC
Monophasic	SYEDA	SYEDA 28 TABLET	ethinyl estradiol/drospirenone	ethinyl estradiol	30	drospirenone	3	70700011585	28	XIROMED/PERRIGO
Monophasic	OCELLA	OCELLA 3 MG-0.03 MG TABLET	ethinyl estradiol/drospirenone	ethinyl estradiol	30	drospirenone	3	00555913167	28	TEVA USA
Monophasic	DROSPIRENONE-ETHINYL ESTRADIOL	DROSPIRENONE-EE 3-0.03 MG TAB	ethinyl estradiol/drospirenone	ethinyl estradiol	30	drospirenone	3	00378730053	28	MYLAN
Monophasic	DROSPIRENONE-ETHINYL ESTRADIOL	DROSPIRENONE-EE 3-0.03 MG TAB	ethinyl estradiol/drospirenone	ethinyl estradiol	30	drospirenone	3	68462073329	28	GLENMARK PHARMA
Monophasic	ZARAH	ZARAH TABLET	ethinyl estradiol/drospirenone	ethinyl estradiol	30	drospirenone	3	51862003603	28	MAYNE PHARMA IN

Monophasic	TYDEMY	TYDEMY TABLET	drospir/eth estra/levomefol ca	ethinyl estradiol	30	drospirenone	3	68180090413	28	LUPIN PHARMACEU
Monophasic	DROSPIRENONE-ETH ESTRA-LEVOMEF	DROSP-EE-LEVOMEF 3-0.03-0.451	drospir/eth estra/levomefol ca	ethinyl estradiol	30	drospirenone	3	00781410315	28	SANDOZ
Monophasic	SAFYRAL	SAFYRAL TABLET	drospir/eth estra/levomefol ca	ethinyl estradiol	30	drospirenone	3	50419040303	28	BAYER,PHARM DIV
Monophasic	KELNOR 1-35	KELNOR 1-35 28 TABLET	ethynodiol d-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	35	ethynodiol diacetate	1	00555906458	28	TEVA USA
Monophasic	ETHYNODIOL-ETHINYL ESTRADIOL	ETHYNODIOL-ETH ESTRA 1MG-35MCG	ethynodiol d-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	35	ethynodiol diacetate	1	00378730753	28	MYLAN
Monophasic	ZOVIA 1-35E	ZOVIA 1-35E TABLET	ethynodiol d-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	35	ethynodiol diacetate	1	51862026006	28	MAYNE PHARMA IN
Monophasic, Extended Cycle										
Monophasic, Extended Cycle	LEVONORGESTREL-ETH ESTRADIOL	LEVONOR-ETH ESTRAD 0.15-0.03	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	30	levonorgestrel	0.15	68462067295	91	GLENMARK PHARMA
Monophasic, Extended Cycle	INTROVALE	INTROVALE 0.15-0.03 MG TABLET	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	30	levonorgestrel	0.15	70700011787	91	XIROMED/PERRIGO
Monophasic, Extended Cycle	INTROVALE	INTROVALE 0.15-0.03 MG TABLET	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	30	levonorgestrel	0.15	00781558436	91	SANDOZ
Monophasic, Extended Cycle	SETLAKIN	SETLAKIN 0.15 MG-0.03 MG TAB	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	30	levonorgestrel	0.15	16714036603	91	NORTHSTAR RX LL
Monophasic, Extended Cycle	QUASENSE	QUASENSE 0.15-0.03 MG TABLET	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	30	levonorgestrel	0.15	52544096691	91	ACTAVIS/TEVA
Monophasic, Extended Cycle	LEVONORGESTREL-ETH ESTRADIOL	LEVONOR-ETH ESTRAD 0.15-0.03	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	30	levonorgestrel	0.15	00378728153	91	MYLAN
Monophasic, Extended Cycle	JOLESSA	JOLESSA 0.15 MG-0.03 MG TABLET	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	30	levonorgestrel	0.15	00555912366	91	TEVA USA
Monophasic, Extended Cycle	LEVONORGESTREL-ETH ESTRADIOL	LEVONOR-ETH ESTRAD 0.15-0.03	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	30	levonorgestrel	0.15	68180084313	91	LUPIN PHARMACEU
Biphasic LoDose, Extended Cycle										
Biphasic LoDose, Extended Cycle	LOSEASONIQUE	LOSEASONIQUE TABLET	l-norgest/e.estradiol-e.estrad	ethinyl estradiol	20/10	levonorgestrel	0.1/0	51285009287	91	TEVA WOMEN'S HE
Biphasic LoDose, Extended Cycle	LEVONORG-ETH ESTRAD ETH ESTRAD	LEVONO-E ESTRAD 0.10-0.02-0.01	l-norgest/e.estradiol-e.estrad	ethinyl estradiol	20/10	levonorgestrel	0.1/0	00378728490	91	MYLAN
Biphasic LoDose, Extended Cycle	CAMRESE LO	CAMRESE LO TABLET	l-norgest/e.estradiol-e.estrad	ethinyl estradiol	20/10	levonorgestrel	0.1/0	00093614882	91	TEVA USA
Biphasic LoDose, Extended Cycle	LEVONORG-ETH ESTRAD ETH ESTRAD	LEVONO-E ESTRAD 0.10-0.02-0.01	l-norgest/e.estradiol-e.estrad	ethinyl estradiol	20/10	levonorgestrel	0.1/0	68180084813	91	LUPIN PHARMACEU
Biphasic LoDose, Extended Cycle	LEVONORG-ETH ESTRAD ETH ESTRAD	LEVONO-E ESTRAD 0.10-0.02-0.01	l-norgest/e.estradiol-e.estrad	ethinyl estradiol	20/10	levonorgestrel	0.1/0	68180084811	91	LUPIN PHARMACEU
Biphasic LoDose, Extended Cycle	AMETHIA LO	AMETHIA LO TABLET	l-norgest/e.estradiol-e.estrad	ethinyl estradiol	20/10	levonorgestrel	0.1/0	51862004591	91	MAYNE PHARMA IN
Biphasic										
Biphasic	LO LOESTRIN FE	LO LOESTRIN FE 1-10 TABLET	norethindrone-e.estradiol-iron	ethinyl estradiol	10/10	norethindrone	1.0/0	00430042014	28	ACTAVIS/ALLERGA
Biphasic	VIORELE	VIORELE 28 DAY TABLET	desog-e.estradiol/e.estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20/10	desogestrel	0.15/0	68462031829	28	GLENMARK PHARMA
Biphasic	PIMTREA	PIMTREA 28 DAY TABLET	desog-e.estradiol/e.estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20/10	desogestrel	0.15/0	16714040404	28	NORTHSTAR RX LL
Biphasic	KARIVA	KARIVA 28 DAY TABLET	desog-e.estradiol/e.estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20/10	desogestrel	0.15/0	00555905058	28	TEVA USA
Biphasic	DESOGESTR-ETH ESTRAD ETH ESTRA	DESOGESTR-ETH ESTRAD ETH ESTRA	desog-e.estradiol/e.estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20/10	desogestrel	0.15/0	00378729653	28	MYLAN
Biphasic	AZURETTE	AZURETTE 28 DAY TABLET	desog-e.estradiol/e.estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20/10	desogestrel	0.15/0	51862007206	28	MAYNE PHARMA IN
Biphasic	BEKYREE	BEKYREE 28 DAY TABLET	desog-e.estradiol/e.estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20/10	desogestrel	0.15/0	68180087913	28	LUPIN PHARMACEU
Biphasic	BEKYREE	BEKYREE 28 DAY TABLET	desog-e.estradiol/e.estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20/10	desogestrel	0.15/0	68180088013	28	LUPIN PHARMACEU
Biphasic	MIRCETTE	MIRCETTE 28 DAY TABLET	desog-e.estradiol/e.estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20/10	desogestrel	0.15/0	51285012058	28	TEVA WOMEN'S HE
Triphasic Lo										
Triphasic Lo	TRI-LO-MARZIA	TRI-LO-MARZIA TABLET	norgestimate-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	25/25/25	norgestimate	0.18/0.215/0.25	68180083713	28	LUPIN PHARMACEU
Triphasic Lo	TRI-LO-MILI	TRI-LO-MILI TABLET	norgestimate-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	25/25/25	norgestimate	0.18/0.215/0.25	65862077885	28	AUROBINDO PHARM
Triphasic Lo	NORGESTIMATE-ETHINYL ESTRADIOL	NORG-EE 0.18-0.215-0.25/0.025	norgestimate-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	25/25/25	norgestimate	0.18/0.025/0.25	68462071929	28	GLENMARK PHARMA
Triphasic Lo	TRI-LO-SPRINTEC	TRI-LO-SPRINTEC TABLET	norgestimate-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	25/25/25	norgestimate	0.18/0.025/0.25	00093214062	28	TEVA USA
Triphasic Lo	ORTHO TRI-CYCLEN LO	ORTHO TRI-CYCLEN LO TABLET	norgestimate-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	25/25/25	norgestimate	0.18/0.025/0.25	50458025106	28	JANSSEN PHARM.
Triphasic Lo	TRI-VYLIBRA LO	TRI-VYLIBRA LO TABLET	norgestimate-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	25/25/25	norgestimate	0.18/0.025/0.25	50102023113	28	AFAXYS, INC.
Triphasic Lo	TRI-LO-ESTARYLLA	TRI-LO-ESTARYLLA TABLET	norgestimate-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	25/25/25	norgestimate	0.18/0.025/0.25	70700012085	28	XIROMED/PERRIGO

REVISED 12/19

Triphasic										
Triphasic	TILIA FE	TILIA FE 28 TABLET	norethindrone-e.estradiol-iron	ethinyl estradiol	20/30/35	norethindrone	1.0/1.0/1.0	51862028403	28	MAYNE PHARMA IN
Triphasic	ESTROSTEP FE	ESTROSTEP FE-28 TABLET	norethindrone-e.estradiol-iron	ethinyl estradiol	20/30/35	norethindrone	1.0/1.0/1.0	00430000531	28	ACTAVIS/ALLERGA
Triphasic	TRI-LEGEST FE	TRI-LEGEST FE-28 DAY TABLET	norethindrone-e.estradiol-iron	ethinyl estradiol	20/30/35	norethindrone	1.0/1.0/1.0	00555903270	28	TEVA USA
Triphasic	LEENA	LEENA 28 TABLET	norethindrone-ethinyl estrad	ethinyl estradiol	35/35/35	norethindrone	0.5/1.0/0.5	51862047106	28	MAYNE PHARMA IN
Triphasic	ARANELLE	ARANELLE 28 TABLET	norethindrone-ethinyl estrad	ethinyl estradiol	35/35/35	norethindrone	0.5/1.0/0.5	00555906667	28	TEVA USA
Triphasic	ORTHO-NOVUM	ORTHO-NOVUM 7-7-7-28 TABLET	norethindrone-ethinyl estrad	ethinyl estradiol	35/35/35	norethindrone	0.5/0.75/1.0	50458017806	28	JANSSEN PHARM.
Triphasic	NORTREL	NORTREL 7-7-7-28 TABLET	norethindrone-ethinyl estrad	ethinyl estradiol	35/35/35	norethindrone	0.5/0.75/1.0	00555901258	28	TEVA USA
Triphasic	ALYACEN	ALYACEN 7-7-7-28 TABLET	norethindrone-ethinyl estrad	ethinyl estradiol	35/35/35	norethindrone	0.5/0.75/1.0	68462055629	28	GLENMARK PHARMA
Triphasic	CYCLAFEM	CYCLAFEM 7-7-7-28 TABLET	norethindrone-ethinyl estrad	ethinyl estradiol	35/35/35	norethindrone	0.5/0.75.1.0	00603752549	28	QUALITEST/PAR P
Triphasic	CYCLAFEM	CYCLAFEM 7-7-7-28 TABLET	norethindrone-ethinyl estrad	ethinyl estradiol	35/35/35	norethindrone	0.5/0.75.1.0	00603752517	28	QUALITEST/PAR P
Triphasic	DASETTA	DASETTA 7/7/7-28 TABLET	norethindrone-ethinyl estrad	ethinyl estradiol	35/35/35	norethindrone	05/0.75/1.0	16714034604	28	NORTHSTAR RX LL
Triphasic	PIRMELLA	PIRMELLA 7-7-7-28 TABLET	norethindrone-ethinyl estrad	ethinyl estradiol	35/35/35	norethindrone	0.5/.075/1.0	68180089213	28	LUPIN PHARMACEU
Triphasic	NORGESTIMATE-ETHINYL ESTRADIOL	NORG-EE 0.18-0.215-0.25/0.035	norgestimate-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	35/35/35	norgestimate	0.18/0.215/0.25	17478026106	28	AKORN INC.
Triphasic	NORGESTIMATE-ETHINYL ESTRADIOL	NORG-EE 0.18-0.215-0.25/0.035	norgestimate-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	35/35/35	norgestimate	0.18/0.215/0.25	68462056529	28	GLENMARK PHARMA
Triphasic	NORGESTIMATE-ETHINYL ESTRADIOL	NORG-EE 0.18-0.215-0.25/0.035	norgestimate-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	35/35/35	norgestimate	0.18/0.215/0.25	68180083813	28	LUPIN PHARMACEU
Triphasic	TRI-LINYAH	TRI-LINYAH TABLET	norgestimate-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	35/35/35	norgestimate	0.18/0.215/0.25	16714036304	28	NORTHSTAR RX LL
Triphasic	TRINESSA	TRINESSA TABLET	norgestimate-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	35/35/35	norgestimate	0.18/0.215/0.25	52544024828	28	ACTAVIS/TEVA
Triphasic	TRI-ESTARYLLA	TRI-ESTARYLLA TABLET	norgestimate-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	35/35/35	norgestimate	0.18/0.215/0.25	00781406015	28	SANDOZ
Triphasic	TRI-ESTARYLLA	TRI-ESTARYLLA TABLET	norgestimate-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	35/35/35	norgestimate	0.18/0.215/0.25	70700012185	28	XIROMED/PERRIGO
Triphasic	TRI-SPRINTEC	TRI-SPRINTEC TABLET	norgestimate-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	35/35/35	norgestimate	0.18/0.215/0.25	00555901858	28	TEVA USA
Triphasic	ORTHO TRI-CYCLEN	ORTHO TRI-CYCLEN 28 TABLET	norgestimate-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	35/35/35	norgestimate	0.18/0.215/0.25	50458019106	28	JANSSEN PHARM.
Triphasic	TRI-PREVIFEM	TRI-PREVIFEM TABLET	norgestimate-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	35/35/35	norgestimate	0.18/0.215/0.25	00254203080	28	PAR PHARM.
Triphasic	TRI FEMYNOR	TRI FEMYNOR 28 TABLET	norgestimate-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	35/35/35	norgestimate	0.18/0.215/0.25	69238160706	28	AMNEAL PHARMACE
Triphasic	NORGESTIMATE-ETHINYL ESTRADIOL	NORG-EE 0.18-0.215-0.25/0.035	norgestimate-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	35/35/35	norgestimate	0.18/0.215/0.25	00378729353	28	MYLAN
Triphasic	TRI-MILI	TRI-MILI 28 TABLET	norgestimate-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	35/35/35	norgestimate	0.18/0.215/0.25	65862077785	28	AUROBINDO PHARM
Triphasic	TRI-VYLIBRA	TRI-VYLIBRA 28 TABLET	norgestimate-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	35/35/35	norgestimate	0.18/0.215/0.25	50102023313	28	AFAXYS, INC.
Triphasic	LEVONORG-ETH ESTRAD ETH ESTRAD	LEVONORG 0.15MG-EE 20-25-30MCG	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	20/25/30	levonorgestrel	0.15/0.15/0.15	51862048965	91	MAYNE PHARMA IN
Triphasic	LEVONEST	LEVONEST-28 TABLET	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	30/40/30	levonorgestrel	0.05/0.075/0.125	16714034004	28	NORTHSTAR RX LL
Triphasic	TRIVORA-28	TRIVORA-28 TABLET	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	30/40/30	levonorgestrel	0.05/0.075/0.125	51862051006	28	MAYNE PHARMA IN
Triphasic	MYZILRA	MYZILRA-28 TABLET	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	30/40/30	levonorgestrel	0.05/0.075/0.125	00603762549	28	QUALITEST/PAR P
Triphasic	MYZILRA	MYZILRA-28 TABLET	levonorgestrel-ethin estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	30/40/30	levonorgestrel	0.05/0.075/0.125	00603762517	28	QUALITEST/PAR P
Triphasic	VELIVET	VELIVET 28 DAY TABLET	desogestrel-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	25/25/25	desogestrel	0.1/0.125/0.15	00555905167	28	TEVA USA
Triphasic	CAZIANT	CAZIANT 28 DAY TABLET	desogestrel-ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	25/25/25	desogestrel	0.1/0.125/0.15	51862023803	28	MAYNE PHARMA IN
Quadriphasic										
Quadriphasic	NATAZIA	NATAZIA 28 TABLET	estradiol valerate/dienogest	Estradiol valerate	3000/2000/2000/1000	dienogest	0/2/3/0	50419040903	28	BAYER,PHARM DIV
Quadriphasic, Extended Cycle	FAYOSIM	FAYOSIM TABLET	l-norgest/e.estradiol-e.estrad	ethinyl estradiol	20/25/30/10	levonorgestrel	0.15/0.15/0.15/0	68180086012	91	LUPIN PHARMACEU
Quadriphasic, Extended Cycle	QUARTETTE	QUARTETTE TABLET	l-norgest/e.estradiol-e.estrad	ethinyl estradiol	20/25/30/10	levonorgestrel	015/0.15/0.15/0	51285043187	91	TEVA WOMEN'S HE
Quadriphasic, Extended Cycle	RIVELSA	RIVELSA TABLET	l-norgest/e.estradiol-e.estrad	ethinyl estradiol	20/25/30/10	levonorgestrel	0.15/0.015/0.15/0	00093603182	91	TEVA USA

REVISED 12/19

Progestin Only										
Progestin Only	SHAROBEL	SHAROBEL 0.35 MG TABLET	norethindrone			norethindrone	0.35	16714044104	28	NORTHSTAR RX LL
Progestin Only	DEBLITANE	DEBLITANE 0.35 MG TABLET	norethindrone			norethindrone	0.35	16714044004	28	NORTHSTAR RX LL
Progestin Only	NORETHINDRONE	NORETHINDRONE 0.35 MG TABLET	norethindrone			norethindrone	0.35	00378727253	28	MYLAN
Progestin Only	NORETHINDRONE	NORETHINDRONE 0.35 MG TABLET	norethindrone			norethindrone	0.35	68462030529	28	GLENMARK PHARMA
Progestin Only	NORLYDA	NORLYDA 0.35 MG TABLET	norethindrone			norethindrone	0.35	69238158306	28	AMNEAL PHARMACE
Progestin Only	NORETHINDRONE	NORETHINDRONE 0.35 MG TABLET	norethindrone			norethindrone	0.35	00378729253	28	MYLAN
Progestin Only	INCASSIA	INCASSIA 0.35 MG TABLET	norethindrone			norethindrone	0.35	65862092585	28	AUROBINDO PHARM
Progestin Only	HEATHER	HEATHER TABLET	norethindrone			norethindrone	0.35	68462030329	28	GLENMARK PHARMA
Progestin Only	JOLIVETTE	JOLIVETTE TABLET	norethindrone			norethindrone	0.35	52544089228	28	ACTAVIS/TEVA
Progestin Only	NORETHINDRONE	NORETHINDRONE 0.35 MG TABLET	norethindrone			norethindrone	0.35	68180087611	28	LUPIN PHARMACEU
Progestin Only	NORETHINDRONE	NORETHINDRONE 0.35 MG TABLET	norethindrone			norethindrone	0.35	68180087613	28	LUPIN PHARMACEU
Progestin Only	ERRIN	ERRIN 0.35 MG TABLET	norethindrone			norethindrone	0.35	51862088603	28	MAYNE PHARMA IN
Progestin Only	ORTHO MICRONOR	ORTHO MICRONOR 0.35 MG TABLET	norethindrone			norethindrone	0.35	50458019406	28	JANSSEN PHARM.
Progestin Only	ORTHO MICRONOR	ORTHO MICRONOR 0.35 MG TABLET	norethindrone			norethindrone	0.35	50458019416	28	JANSSEN PHARM.
Progestin Only	NORA-BE	NORA-BE TABLET	norethindrone			norethindrone	0.35	52544062928	28	ACTAVIS/TEVA
Progestin Only	CAMILA	CAMILA 0.35 MG TABLET	norethindrone			norethindrone	0.35	51862088403	28	MAYNE PHARMA IN
Progestin Only	JENCYCLA	JENCYCLA 0.35 MG TABLET	norethindrone			norethindrone	0.35	68180087713	28	LUPIN PHARMACEU
Progestin Only	TULANA	TULANA 0.35 MG TABLET	norethindrone			norethindrone	0.35	50102020013	28	AFAXYS, INC.
Progestin Only	SLYND	SLYND 4 MG TABLET	drospirenone			drospirenone	4	00642747001	28	EXELTIS USA, IN
Vaginal Ring										
Vaginal Ring	NUVARING	NUVARING VAGINAL RING	etonogestrel/ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	0.015	etonogestrel	0.12	00052027303	1	ORGANON PHARM.
Vaginal Ring	ANNOVERA	ANNOVERA VAGINAL RING	segesterone acetate/ethinyl estradiol	ethinyl estradiol	0.013	segesterone acetate	0.15	50261031301	1	THERAPEUTICSMD
Injectible DMPA										
Injectible DMPA	MEDROXYPROGESTERONE ACETATE	MEDROXYPROGESTERONE 150 MG/ML	medroxyprogesterone acetate			medroxyprogesterone acetate	150	00703680101	1	TEVA PARENTERAL
Injectible DMPA	MEDROXYPROGESTERONE ACETATE	MEDROXYPROGESTERONE 150 MG/ML	medroxyprogesterone acetate			medroxyprogesterone acetate	150	00703680104	1	TEVA PARENTERAL
Injectible DMPA	MEDROXYPROGESTERONE ACETATE	MEDROXYPROGESTERONE 150 MG/ML	medroxyprogesterone acetate			medroxyprogesterone acetate	150	59762453802	1	GREENSTONE LLC.
Injectible DMPA	MEDROXYPROGESTERONE ACETATE	MEDROXYPROGESTERONE 150 MG/ML	medroxyprogesterone acetate			medroxyprogesterone acetate	150	59762453701	1	GREENSTONE LLC.
Injectible DMPA	MEDROXYPROGESTERONE ACETATE	MEDROXYPROGESTERONE 150 MG/ML	medroxyprogesterone acetate			medroxyprogesterone acetate	150	59762453702	1	GREENSTONE LLC.
Injectible DMPA	DEPO-PROVERA	DEPO-PROVERA 150 MG/ML SYRINGE	medroxyprogesterone acetate			medroxyprogesterone acetate	150	00009737611	1	PFIZER US PHARM
Injectible DMPA	DEPO-PROVERA	DEPO-PROVERA 150 MG/ML VIAL	medroxyprogesterone acetate			medroxyprogesterone acetate	150	00009074630	1	PHARMACI/PFIZER
Injectible DMPA	DEPO-PROVERA	DEPO-PROVERA 150 MG/ML VIAL	medroxyprogesterone acetate			medroxyprogesterone acetate	150	00009074635	1	PHARMACI/PFIZER
Injectible DMPA	DEPO-SUBQ PROVERA 104	DEPO-SUBQ PROVERA 104 SYRINGE	medroxyprogesterone acetate			medroxyprogesterone acetate	104	00009470913	0.65	PFIZER US PHARM
Implant										
Long Term Reversible Contraception (LARC)	NEXPLANON	NEXPLANON 68 MG IMPLANT	etonogestrel			etonogestrel	68	00052433001	1	ORGANON PHARM.
IUD's										
Long Term Reversible Contraception	MIRENA	MIRENA 52 MG SYSTEM	levonorgestrel			levonorgestrel	52	50419042301	1	BAYER,PHARM DIV
Long Term Reversible Contraception	LILETTA		levonorgestrel			levonorgestrel	52	00023585801	1	ALLERGAN INC.
Long Term Reversible Contraception	KYLEENA	KYLEENA 19.5 MG SYSTEM	levonorgestrel			levonorgestrel	19.5	50419042401	1	BAYER,PHARM DIV
Long Term Reversible Contraception	SKYLA	SKYLA 13.5 MG SYSTEM	levonorgestrel			levonorgestrel	13.5	50419042201	1	BAYER,PHARM DIV
IUD's NON-HORMONAL										
Long Term Reversible Contraception (LARC), IUD, Non-hormonal	PARAGARD T 380-A	PARAGARD T 380-A IUD	copper					51285020401	1	TEVA/COOPERSURG
Long Term Reversible Contraception (LARC), IUD, Non-hormonal	PARAGARD T 380-A	PARAGARD T 380-A IUD	copper					59365512801	1	COOPERSURGICAL

Department of Public Health, Office of Pharmacy 2019

REVISED 12/19

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

LEGAL REFERENCES

LEGAL REFERENCES

O.C.G.A. § 43-34-23 - Delegation of authority to nurse or physician assistant to order or dispense drugs, medical treatments or diagnostic studies. The nurse protocol statute law may be accessed online at http://www.lexisnexis.com/hottopics/gacode/Default.asp

Rules of Georgia Board of Nursing: Regulation 410-11-.13 and 410-11-.14 (Advanced Practice Registered Nurse Protocols). Georgia Board of Nursing Laws, Rules, Regulations and Policies may be accessed online at http://sos.ga.gov/index.php/licensing/plb/45

Rules of Georgia State Board of Pharmacy: Chapter 480-30, Dispensing of Drugs under Authority of Job Description or Nurse Protocol: 480-30-.01-.07 Georgia Board of Pharmacy Policies and Laws may be accessed online at http://gbp.georgia.gov/lawspolicies-rules

O.C.G.A. § 26-4-130 – Dispensing drugs; compliance with labeling and packaging requirements; records available for inspection by board may be accessed on line at http://gbp.georgia.gov/laws-policies-rules

O.C.G.A. § 43-26-5 - Georgia Registered Professional Nurse Practice Act: General Powers and responsibilities of board may be accessed on line at http://www.lexisnexis.com/hottopics/gacode/Default.asp OR http://sos.ga.gov/index.php/licensing/plb/45

O.C.G.A. § 43-34-103 (Physician Assistant Act) - may be accessed on line at http://www.lexisnexis.com/hottopics/gacode/Default.asp

O.C.G.A. § 43-26-1 Georgia Registered Professional Nurse Practice Act may be accessed on line at http://sos.ga.gov/index.php/licensing/plb/45 OR http://sos.ga.gov/PLB/acrobat/Forms/38%20Reference%20-20Nurse%20Practice%20Act.pdf